nto English by**Kautilya's**

***Arthashastra***

***Translated into English by***

**R. Shamasastry**

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

Contents

[Summary 8](#_Toc411877448)

[BOOK I. Concerning Discipline. 8](#_Toc411877449)

[BOOK II. The Duties of Government Superintendents. 8](#_Toc411877450)

[BOOK III. Concerning Law. 8](#_Toc411877451)

[BOOK IV. Removal of Thorns. 9](#_Toc411877452)

[BOOK V. Conduct of Courtiers. 9](#_Toc411877453)

[BOOK VI. The Source of Sovereign States. 9](#_Toc411877454)

[BOOK VII. The End of Sixfold Policy. 9](#_Toc411877455)

[BOOK VIII. Concerning Vices and Calamities. 9](#_Toc411877456)

[BOOK IX. The Work of an Invader. 10](#_Toc411877457)

[BOOK X. Relating to War. 10](#_Toc411877458)

[BOOK XI. The Conduct of Corporations. 10](#_Toc411877459)

[BOOK XII. Concerning a Powerful Enemy. 10](#_Toc411877460)

[BOOK XIII. Strategic Means to Capture a Fortress. 10](#_Toc411877461)

[BOOK XIV. Secret Means. 10](#_Toc411877462)

[BOOK XV. The Plan of a Treatise. 11](#_Toc411877463)

[Book I, "Concerning Discipline" 11](#_Toc411877464)

[CHAPTER I. THE LIFE OF A KING 11](#_Toc411877465)

[Chapter II, "Determination of the place of Anvikshaki" 11](#_Toc411877466)

[Chapter III, Determination of the place of the Triple 12](#_Toc411877467)

[Chapter IV, Determination of the Place of Varta and of Dandaniti 13](#_Toc411877468)

[CHAPTER V. ASSOCIATION WITH THE AGED. 14](#_Toc411877469)

[CHAPTER VI. RESTRAINT OF THE ORGANS OF SENSE. 15](#_Toc411877470)

[CHAPTER VII. RESTRAINT OF THE ORGANS OF SENSE. 16](#_Toc411877471)

[CHAPTER VIII. CREATION OF MINISTERS. 17](#_Toc411877472)

[CHAPTER IX. THE CREATION OF COUNCILLORS AND PRIESTS**.** 18](#_Toc411877473)

[CHAPTER X. ASCERTAINING BY TEMPTATIONS PURITY OR IMPURITY IN THE CHARACTER OF MINISTERS. 19](#_Toc411877474)

[CHAPTER XI. THE INSTITUTION OF SPIES. 20](#_Toc411877475)

[CHAPTER XII. INSTITUTION OF SPIES. 22](#_Toc411877476)

[CHAPTER XIII. PROTECTION OF PARTIES FOR OR AGAINST ONE'S OWN CAUSE IN ONE'S OWN STATE. 24](#_Toc411877477)

[CHAPTER XIV. WINNING OVER FACTIONS FOR OR AGAINST AN ENEMY'S CAUSE IN AN ENEMY'S STATE. 26](#_Toc411877478)

[CHAPTER XV. THE BUSINESS OF COUNCIL MEETING. 28](#_Toc411877479)

[CHAPTER XVI. THE MISSION OF ENVOYS. 30](#_Toc411877480)

[CHAPTER XVII. PROTECTION OF PRINCES. 32](#_Toc411877481)

[CHAPTER XVIII. THE CONDUCT OF A PRINCE KEPT UNDER RESTRAINT AND THE TREATMENT OF A RESTRAINED PRINCE. 35](#_Toc411877482)

[CHAPTER XIX. THE DUTIES OF A KING. 36](#_Toc411877483)

[CHAPTER XX. DUTY TOWARDS THE HAREM. 38](#_Toc411877484)

[CHAPTER XXI. PERSONAL SAFETY. 40](#_Toc411877485)

[Book II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents" 42](#_Toc411877486)

[CHAPTER I. FORMATION OF VILLAGES. 42](#_Toc411877487)

[CHAPTER II. DIVISION OF LAND. 45](#_Toc411877488)

[CHAPTER III. CONSTRUCTION OF FORTS 46](#_Toc411877489)

[CHAPTER IV. BUILDINGS WITHIN THE FORT. 48](#_Toc411877490)

[CHAPTER VI. THE BUSINESS OF COLLECTION OF REVENUE BY THE COLLECTOR-GENERAL. 52](#_Toc411877491)

[CHAPTER VII. THE BUSINESS OF KEEPING UP ACCOUNTS IN THE OFFICE OF ACCOUNTANTS. 55](#_Toc411877492)

[CHAPTER VIII. DETECTION OF WHAT IS EMBEZZLED BY GOVERNMENT SERVANTS OUT OF STATE REVENUE. 58](#_Toc411877493)

[CHAPTER IX. EXAMINATION OF THE CONDUCT OF GOVERNMENT SERVANTS. 60](#_Toc411877494)

[CHAPTER X. THE PROCEDURE OF FORMING ROYAL WRITS. 62](#_Toc411877495)

[CHAPTER XI. EXAMINATION OF GEMS THAT ARE TO BE ENTERED INTO THE TREASURY. 66](#_Toc411877496)

[CHAPTER XII. CONDUCTING MINING OPERATIONS AND MANUFACTURE. 71](#_Toc411877497)

[CHAPTER XIII. SUPERINTENDENT OF GOLD IN THE GOLDSMITH'S OFFICE. 75](#_Toc411877498)

[CHAPTER XIV. THE DUTIES OF THE STATE GOLDSMITH IN THE HIGH ROAD. 78](#_Toc411877499)

[CHAPTER XV. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF STOREHOUSE. 82](#_Toc411877500)

[CHAPTER XVI. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF COMMERCE. 87](#_Toc411877501)

[CHAPTER XVII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF FOREST PRODUCE. 88](#_Toc411877502)

[CHAPTER XVIII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF THE ARMOURY. 90](#_Toc411877503)

[CHAPTER XIX. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES. 91](#_Toc411877504)

[CHAPTER XX. MEASUREMENT OF SPACE AND TIME. 94](#_Toc411877505)

[CHAPTER XXI. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF TOLLS. 97](#_Toc411877506)

[CHAPTER XXII. REGULATION OF TOLL-DUES. 99](#_Toc411877507)

[CHAPTER XXIII. SUPERINTENDENT OF WEAVING. 100](#_Toc411877508)

[CHAPTER XXIV. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF AGRICULTURE. 101](#_Toc411877509)

[CHAPTER XXV. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF LIQUOR. 104](#_Toc411877510)

[CHAPTER XXVI. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF SLAUGHTER-HOUSE. 108](#_Toc411877511)

[CHAPTER XXVII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF PROSTITUTES. 109](#_Toc411877512)

[CHAPTER XXVIII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF SHIPS. 111](#_Toc411877513)

[CHAPTER XXIX. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF COWS. 113](#_Toc411877514)

[CHAPTER XXX. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF HORSES. 116](#_Toc411877515)

[CHAPTER XXXI. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF ELEPHANTS. 120](#_Toc411877516)

[CHAPTER XXXII. TRAINING OF ELEPHANTS. 122](#_Toc411877517)

[CHAPTER XXXIII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF CHARIOTS; THE SUPERINTENDENT OF INFANTRY AND THE DUTY OF THE COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF. 123](#_Toc411877518)

[CHAPTER XXXIV. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF PASSPORTS. 125](#_Toc411877519)

[CHAPTER XXXV. THE DUTY OF REVENUE-COLLECTORS; SPIES IN THE GUISE OF HOUSEHOLDERS, MERCHANTS AND ASCETICS. 125](#_Toc411877520)

[CHAPTER XXXVI. THE DUTY OF A CITY SUPERINTENDENT. 127](#_Toc411877521)

[Book III, "Concerning Law" 131](#_Toc411877522)

[CHAPTER I. DETERMINATION OF FORMS OF AGREEMENT; DETERMINATION OF LEGAL DISPUTES. 131](#_Toc411877523)

[CHAPTER II. CONCERNING MARRIAGE. THE DUTY OF MARRIAGE, THE PROPERTY OF A WOMAN, AND COMPENSATIONS FOR REMARRIAGE. 134](#_Toc411877524)

[CHAPTER III. THE DUTY OF A WIFE; MAINTENANCE OF A WOMAN; CRUELTY TO WOMEN; ENMITY BETWEEN HUSBAND AND WIFE; A WIFE's TRANSGRESSION; HER KINDNESS TO ANOTHER; AND FORBIDDEN TRANSACTIONS. 137](#_Toc411877525)

[CHAPTER IV. VAGRANCY, ELOPEMENT AND SHORT AND LONG SOJOURNMENTS. 139](#_Toc411877526)

[CHAPTER VI. SPECIAL SHARES IN INHERITANCE. 144](#_Toc411877527)

[CHAPTER VII. DISTINCTION BETWEEN SONS. 145](#_Toc411877528)

[CHAPTER VIII. BUILDINGS. 147](#_Toc411877529)

[CHAPTER IX. SALE OF BUILDINGS, BOUNDARY DISPUTES, DETERMINATION OF BOUNDARIES, AND MISCELLANEOUS HINDRANCES. 149](#_Toc411877530)

[CHAPTER X. DESTRUCTION OF PASTURE-LANDS, FIELDS AND ROADS, AND NON-PERFORMANCE OF AGREEMENTS. 151](#_Toc411877531)

[CHAPTER XI. RECOVERY OF DEBTS. 154](#_Toc411877532)

[CHAPTER XII. CONCERNING DEPOSITS. 157](#_Toc411877533)

[CHAPTER XIII. RULES REGARDING SLAVES AND LABOURERS. 161](#_Toc411877534)

[CHAPTER XIV. RULES REGARDING LABOURERS; AND CO-OPERATIVE UNDERTAKING. 163](#_Toc411877535)

[CHAPTER XV. RESCISSION OF PURCHASE AND SALE. 165](#_Toc411877536)

[CHAPTER XVI. RESUMPTION OF GIFTS, SALE WITHOUT OWNERSHIP AND OWNERSHIP. 167](#_Toc411877537)

[CHAPTER XVII. ROBBERY. 169](#_Toc411877538)

[CHAPTER XVIII. DEFAMATION. 170](#_Toc411877539)

[CHAPTER XIX. ASSAULT. 171](#_Toc411877540)

[CHAPTER XX. GAMBLING AND BETTING AND MISCELLANEOUS OFFENCES. 173](#_Toc411877541)

[Book IV, "The Removal of Thorns" 176](#_Toc411877542)

[CHAPTER I. PROTECTION OF ARTISANS. 176](#_Toc411877543)

[CHAPTER II. PROTECTION OF MERCHANTS. 179](#_Toc411877544)

[CHAPTER III. REMEDIES AGAINST NATIONAL CALAMITIES. 181](#_Toc411877545)

[CHAPTER IV. SUPPRESSION OF THE WICKED LIVING BY FOUL MEANS. 184](#_Toc411877546)

[CHAPTER V. DETECTION OF YOUTHS OF CRIMINAL TENDENCY BY ASCETIC SPIES. 185](#_Toc411877547)

[CHAPTER VI. SEIZURE OF CRIMINALS ON SUSPICION OR IN THE VERY ACT. 187](#_Toc411877548)

[CHAPTER VII. EXAMINATION OF SUDDEN DEATH. 190](#_Toc411877549)

[CHAPTER VIII. TRIAL AND TORTURE TO ELICIT CONFESSION. 192](#_Toc411877550)

[CHAPTER IX. PROTECTION OF ALL KINDS OF GOVERNMENT DEPARTMENTS. 194](#_Toc411877551)

[CHAPTER X. FINES IN LIEU OF MUTILATION OF LIMBS. 197](#_Toc411877552)

[CHAPTER XI. DEATH WITH OR WITHOUT TORTURE. 199](#_Toc411877553)

[CHAPTER XII. SEXUAL INTERCOURSE WITH IMMATURE GIRLS. 201](#_Toc411877554)

[CHAPTER XIII. PUNISHMENT FOR VIOLATING JUSTICE. 203](#_Toc411877555)

[Book V, "The Conduct of Courtiers" 206](#_Toc411877556)

[CHAPTER I. CONCERNING THE AWARDS OF PUNISHMENTS. 206](#_Toc411877557)

[CHAPTER II. REPLENISHMENT OF THE TREASURY. 210](#_Toc411877558)

[CHAPTER III. CONCERNING SUBSISTENCE TO GOVERNMENT SERVANTS. 214](#_Toc411877559)

[CHAPTER IV. THE CONDUCT OF A COURTIER. 216](#_Toc411877560)

[CHAPTER V. TIME-SERVING. 218](#_Toc411877561)

[CHAPTER VI. CONSOLIDATION OF THE KINGDOM AND ABSOLUTE SOVEREIGNTY. 220](#_Toc411877562)

[CHAPTER I. THE ELEMENTS OF SOVEREIGNTY. 222](#_Toc411877563)

[CHAPTER II. CONCERNING PEACE AND EXERTION. 224](#_Toc411877564)

[Book VII, "The End of the Six-Fold Policy" 227](#_Toc411877565)

[CHAPTER I. THE SIX-FOLD POLICY, AND DETERMINATION OF DETERIORATION, STAGNATION AND PROGRESS. 227](#_Toc411877566)

[CHAPTER II. THE NATURE OF ALLIANCE. 230](#_Toc411877567)

[CHAPTER III. THE CHARACTER OF EQUAL, INFERIOR AND SUPERIOR KINGS; AND FORMS OF AGREEMENT MADE BY AN INFERIOR KING. 231](#_Toc411877568)

[CHAPTER IV. NEUTRALITY AFTER PROCLAIMING WAR OR AFTER CONCLUDING A TREATY OF PEACE; 234](#_Toc411877569)

[CHAPTER V. CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT MARCHING AGAINST AN ASSAILABLE ENEMY AND A STRONG ENEMY; CAUSES LEADING TO THE DWINDLING, GREED, AND DISLOYALTY OF THE ARMY; AND CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT THE COMBINATION OF POWERS. 236](#_Toc411877570)

[CHAPTER VI. THE MARCH OF COMBINED POWERS; AGREEMENT OF PEACE WITH OR WITHOUT DEFINITE TERMS; AND PEACE WITH RENEGADES. 240](#_Toc411877571)

[CHAPTER VII. PEACE AND WAR BY ADOPTING THE 243](#_Toc411877572)

[CHAPTER VIII. THE ATTITUDE OF AN ASSAILABLE ENEMY; AND FRIENDS THAT DESERVE HELP. 246](#_Toc411877573)

[CHAPTER IX. AGREEMENT FOR THE ACQUISITION OF A FRIEND OR GOLD. 248](#_Toc411877574)

[CHAPTER X. AGREEMENT OF PEACE FOR THE ACQUISITION OF LAND. 251](#_Toc411877575)

[CHAPTER XI. INTERMINABLE AGREEMENT. 253](#_Toc411877576)

[CHAPTER XII. AGREEMENT FOR UNDERTAKING A WORK. 256](#_Toc411877577)

[CHAPTER XIII. CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT AN ENEMY IN THE REAR. 258](#_Toc411877578)

[CHAPTER XIV. RECRUITMENT OF LOST POWER. 261](#_Toc411877579)

[CHAPTER XV. MEASURES CONDUCIVE TO PEACE WITH A STRONG AND PROVOKED ENEMY; AND THE ATTITUDE OF A CONQUERED ENEMY. 263](#_Toc411877580)

[CHAPTER XVI. THE ATTITUDE OF A CONQUERED KING. 265](#_Toc411877581)

[CHAPTER XVII. MAKING PEACE AND BREAKING IT. 267](#_Toc411877582)

[CHAPTER XVIII. THE CONDUCT OF A MADHYAMA KING, A NEUTRAL KING, AND OF A CIRCLE OF STATES. 270](#_Toc411877583)

[Book VIII, "Concerning Vices and Calamities" 274](#_Toc411877584)

[CHAPTER I. THE AGGREGATE OF THE CALAMITIES OF THE ELEMENTS OF SOVEREIGNTY. 274](#_Toc411877585)

[CHAPTER II. CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT THE TROUBLES OF THE KING AND OF HIS KINGDOM. 277](#_Toc411877586)

[CHAPTER III. THE AGGREGATE OF THE TROUBLE OF MEN. 278](#_Toc411877587)

[CHAPTER IV. THE GROUP OF MOLESTATIONS, THE GROUP OF OBSTRUCTIONS, AND THE GROUP OF FINANCIAL TROUBLES. 281](#_Toc411877588)

[CHAPTER V. THE GROUP OF TROUBLES OF THE ARMY, AND THE GROUP OF TROUBLES OF A FRIEND. 284](#_Toc411877589)

[Book VIII: Concerning Vices and Calamities 288](#_Toc411877590)

[CHAPTER I. THE AGGREGATE OF THE CALAMITIES OF THE ELEMENTS OF SOVEREIGNTY. 288](#_Toc411877591)

[CHAPTER II. CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT THE TROUBLES OF THE KING AND OF HIS KINGDOM. 290](#_Toc411877592)

[CHAPTER III. THE AGGREGATE OF THE TROUBLE OF MEN. 292](#_Toc411877593)

[CHAPTER IV. THE GROUP OF MOLESTATIONS, THE GROUP OF OBSTRUCTIONS, AND THE GROUP OF FINANCIAL TROUBLES. 295](#_Toc411877594)

[CHAPTER V. THE GROUP OF TROUBLES OF THE ARMY, AND THE GROUP OF TROUBLES OF A FRIEND. 298](#_Toc411877595)

[Book IX, "The Work of an Invader" 301](#_Toc411877596)

[CHAPTER I. THE KNOWLEDGE OF POWER, PLACE, TIME, STRENGTH, AND WEAKNESS; THE TIME OF INVASION. 301](#_Toc411877597)

[CHAPTER II. THE TIME OF RECRUITING THE ARMY; THE FORM OF EQUIPMENT; AND THE WORK OF ARRAYING A RIVAL FORCE. 304](#_Toc411877598)

[CHAPTER III. CONSIDERATION OF ANNOYANCE IN THE REAR; AND REMEDIES AGAINST INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL TROUBLES. 307](#_Toc411877599)

[CHAPTER IV. CONSIDERATION ABOUT LOSS OF MEN, WEALTH, AND PROFIT. 310](#_Toc411877600)

[CHAPTER V. EXTERNAL AND INTERNAL DANGERS. 311](#_Toc411877601)

[CHAPTER VI. PERSONS ASSOCIATED WITH TRAITORS AND ENEMIES 313](#_Toc411877602)

[CHAPTER VII. DOUBTS ABOUT WEALTH AND HARM; AND SUCCESS TO BE OBTAINED BY THE EMPLOYMENT OF ALTERNATIVE STRATEGIC MEANS. 316](#_Toc411877603)

[Book X, "Relating to War" 321](#_Toc411877604)

[CHAPTER I. ENCAMPMENT. 321](#_Toc411877605)

[CHAPTER II. MARCH OF THE CAMP; AND PROTECTION OF THE ARMY IN TIMES OF DISTRESS AND ATTACK. 321](#_Toc411877606)

[CHAPTER III. FORMS OF TREACHEROUS FIGHTS; ENCOURAGEMENT TO ONE'S OWN ARMY AND FIGHT BETWEEN ONE'S OWN AND ENEMY'S ARMIES. 323](#_Toc411877607)

[CHAPTER IV. BATTLEFIELDS; THE WORK OF INFANTRY, CAVALRY, CHARIOTS, AND ELEPHANTS. 326](#_Toc411877608)

[CHAPTER V. THE DISTINCTIVE ARRAY OF TROOPS IN RFSPECT OF WINGS, FLANKS, AND FRONT;DISTINCTION BETWEEN STRONG AND WEAK TROOPS; AND BATTLE WITH INFANTRY, CAVALRY, CHARIOTS AND ELEPHANTS. 328](#_Toc411877609)

[CHAPTER VI. THE ARRAY OF THE ARMY LIKE A STAFF, A SNAKE, A CIRCLE, OR IN DETACHED ORDER; THE ARRAY OF THE ARMY AGAINST THAT OF AN ENEMY. 330](#_Toc411877610)

[Book XII, "Concerning a Powerful Enemy" 336](#_Toc411877611)

[CHAPTER I. THE DUTIES OF A MESSENGER. 336](#_Toc411877612)

[CHAPTER II. BATTLE OF INTRIGUE. 338](#_Toc411877613)

[CHAPTER III. SLAYING THE COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF AND INCITING A CIRCLE OF STATES. 340](#_Toc411877614)

[CHAPTER IV. SPIES WITH WEAPONS, FIRE, AND POISON; AND DESTRUCTION OF SUPPLY, STORES AND GRANARIES. 342](#_Toc411877615)

[CHAPTER III. THE WORK OF SPIES IN A SIEGE. 351](#_Toc411877616)

[CHAPTER IV. THE OPERATION OF A SIEGE. 354](#_Toc411877617)

[CHAPTER V. RESTORATION OF PEACE IN A CONQUERED COUNTRY. 358](#_Toc411877618)

[Book XIV, "Secret Means" 360](#_Toc411877619)

[CHAPTER I. MEANS TO INJURE AN ENEMY. 360](#_Toc411877620)

[CHAPTER II. WONDERFUL AND DELUSIVE CONTRIVANCES. 364](#_Toc411877621)

[CHAPTER III. THE APPLICATION OF MEDICINES AND MANTRAS. 367](#_Toc411877622)

[CHAPTER IV. REMEDIES AGAINST THE INJURIES OF ONE'S OWN ARMY. 372](#_Toc411877623)

[Book XV, "The Plan of a Treatise" 374](#_Toc411877624)

[CHAPTER I. PARAGRAPHICAL DIVISIONS OF THIS TREATISE**.** 374](#_Toc411877625)

2

**Table of Contents**

Book I, "Concerning Discipline" .............................................................. 3

Book II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents" ....................... 60

Book III, "Concerning Law" ................................................................. 213

Book IV, "The Removal of Thorns" ...................................................... 285

Book V, "The Conduct of Courtiers" ................................................... 336

Book VI: The Source of Sovereign States ............................................ 362

Book VII, "The End of the Six-Fold Policy" .......................................... 370

Book VIII: Concerning Vices and Calamities ........................................ 467

Book IX, "The Work of an Invader" ..................................................... 490

Book X, "Relating to War" ................................................................... 521

Book XI, "The Conduct of Corporations" ............................................ 541

Book XII, "Concerning a Powerful Enemy" ......................................... 547

Book XIII, "Strategic Means to Capture a Fortress" ............................ 563

Book XIV, "Secret Means" ................................................................... 584

Book XV, "The Plan of a Treatise" ....................................................... 607

# Summary

## BOOK I. Concerning Discipline.

The end of Sciences; association with the aged; restraint of

the organs of sense; the creation of ministers; the creation of

councillors and priests; ascertaining by temptations purity or

impurity in the character of ministers; the institution of spies.

Protection of parties for or against one's own cause in one's own

state; winning over the factions for or against an enemy's cause in

an enemy's state; the business of council meeting; the mission of

envoys; protection of princes; the conduct of a prince kept under

restraint; treatment of a prince kept under restraint; the duties of a

king; duty towards the harem; personal safety.

## BOOK II. The Duties of Government Superintendents.

Formation of villages; division of land; construction of forts;

buildings within the fort; the duty of the chamberlain; the business

of collection of revenue by the collector-general; the business of

keeping up accounts in the office of accountants; detection of what

is embezzled by government servants out of state-revenue;

examination of the conduct of Government servants; the procedure

of forming royal writs; the superintendent of the treasury;

examination of gems that are to be entered into the treasury;

conducting mining operations and manufacture; the superintendent

of gold; the duties of the state goldsmith in the high road; the

superintendent of store-house; the superintendent of commerce;

the superintendent of forest produce; the superintendent of the

armoury; the superintendent of weights and measures;

measurement of space and time; the superintendent of tolls; the

superintendent of weaving; the superintendent of agriculture; the

superintendent of liquor; the superintendent of slaughter-house; the

superintendent of prostitutes; the superintendent of ships; the

superintendent of cows; the superintendent of horses; the

superintendent of elephants; the superintendent of chariots; the

superintendent of infantry; the duty of the commander-in-chief ,

the superintendent of passports; the superintendent of pasture

lands; the duty of revenue collectors; spies in the guise of

householders, merchants, and ascetics; the duty of a city

superintendent.

## BOOK III. Concerning Law.

Determination of forms of agreements; determination of legal

disputes; concerning marriage; division of inheritance; buildings;

non-performance of agreements; recovery of debts; concerning

deposits; rules regarding slaves and labourers; co-operative

undertakings; rescision of purchase and sale; resumption of gifts,

and sale without ownership; ownership; robbery; defamation;

assault; gambling and betting, and miscellaneous.

## BOOK IV. Removal of Thorns.

Protection of artisans; protection of merchants; remedies

against national calamities; suppression of the wicked living by

foul means; detection of youths of criminal tendency by ascetic

spies; seizure of criminals on suspicion or in the very act;

examination of sudden death; trial and torture to elicit confession;

protection of all kinds of government departments; fines in lieu of

mutilation of limbs; death with or without torture; sexual

intercourse with immature girls; atonement for violating justice.

## BOOK V. Conduct of Courtiers.

Concerning the awards of punishments; replenishment of the

treasury; concerning subsistence to government servants; the

conduct of a courtier; time-serving; consolidation of the kingdom

and absolute sovereignty.

## BOOK VI. The Source of Sovereign States.

The elements of sovereignty; concerning peace and exertion.

## BOOK VII. The End of Sixfold Policy.

The sixfold policy; determination of deterioration, stagnation,

and progress; the nature of alliance; the character of equal, inferior

and superior kings; forms of agreement made by an inferior king;

neutrality after proclaiming war or after concluding a treaty of

peace; marching after proclaiming war or after making peace; the

march of combined powers; considerations about marching against

an assailable enemy and a strong enemy; causes leading to the

dwindling, greed and disloyalty of the army; considerations about

the combination of powers; the march of combined powers;

agreement of peace with or without definite terms; and peace with

renegades; peace and war by adopting the double policy; the

attitude of an assailable enemy; friends that deserve help;

agreement for the acquisition of a friend or gold; agreement of

peace for the acquisition of land; agreement for undertaking a

work; considerations about an enemy in the rear; recruitment of

lost power; measures conducive to peace with a strong and

provoked enemy; the attitude of a conquered enemy; the attitude of

a conquered king; making peace and breaking it; the conduct of a

*Madhyama* king; of a neutral king and of a circle of states.

## BOOK VIII. Concerning Vices and Calamities.

The aggregate of the calamities of the elements of

sovereignty; considerations about the troubles of the king and his

kingdom; the aggregate of the troubles of men; the group of

molestations; the group of obstructions; and the group of financial

troubles; the group of troubles of the army; and the group of

troubles of a friend.

## BOOK IX. The Work of an Invader.

The knowledge of power, place, time, strength and weakness;

the time of invasion; the time for recruiting the army; the form of

equipment; the work of arraying a rival force; considerations of

annoyance in the rear; remedies against internal and external

troubles; consideration about loss of men, wealth and profit.

Internal and external dangers; persons associated with traitors and

enemies; doubts about wealth and harm; and success to be obtained

by the employment of alternative strategic means.

## BOOK X. Relating to War.

Encampment; march of the camp; protection of the army in

times of distress and attack; forms of treacherous fights;

encouragement to one's own army; the fight between one's own

and enemy's armies; battle-fields; the work of infantry, cavalry,

chariots and elephants; distinctive array of troops in respect of

wings, flanks and front; distinction between strong and weak

troops; battles with infantry, cavalry, chariots and elephants; the

array of the army like a staff, a snake, a circle or in detached order;

the array of the army against that of an enemy.

## BOOK XI. The Conduct of Corporations.

Causes of dissension; secret punishment.

## BOOK XII. Concerning a Powerful Enemy.

The duties of a messenger; battle of intrigue; slaying the

commander-in-chief, and inciting a circle of states; spies with

weapons, fire, and poison; destruction of supply of stores, and of

granaries; capture of the enemy by means of secret contrivances or

by means of the army; and complete victory.

## BOOK XIII. Strategic Means to Capture a Fortress.

Sowing the seeds of dissension; enticement of kings by secret

contrivances; the work of spies in a siege; the operation of a siege;

restoration of peace in a conquered country.

## BOOK XIV. Secret Means.

Means to injure an enemy; wonderful and delusive

contrivances; remedies against the injuries of one's own army.

## BOOK XV. The Plan of a Treatise.

Paragraphical divisions of this treatise.

Such are the contents of this Science. There are on the whole

15 books, 150 chapters, 180 sections and 6,000 *slokas*.

This *Sástra*, bereft of undue enlargement and easy to grasp

and understand, has been composed by Kautilya in words the

meaning of which has been definitely settled.

[Thus ends Chapter I, "Life of a King" in Book I, "Concerning

Discipline" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

# Book I, "Concerning Discipline"

## CHAPTER I. THE LIFE OF A KING

Óm.

Salutation to *Sukra* and *Brihaspati*.

This *Arthasástra* is made as a compendium of almost all the

*Arthasástras*, which, in view of acquisition and maintenance of the

earth, have been composed by ancient teachers.

Of this work, the following are the contents by sections and

books:

## Chapter II, "Determination of the place of Anvikshaki"

*Determination of the place of Anvikshaki.*

*ANVIKSHAKI*, the triple Védas (*Trayi*), *Várta* (agriculture,

cattle-breeding and trade), and *Danda*-*Niti* (science of

government) are what are called the four sciences.

The school of Manu (*Manava*) hold that there are only three

sciences: the triple Vedas, *Varta* and the science of government,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

9

inasmuch as the science of *Anvikshaki* is nothing but a special

branch of the Vedas.

The school of *Brihaspati* say that there are only two sciences:

*Varta* and the science of government, inasmuch as the Triple

Vedas are merely an abridgment (*Samvarana*, pretext?) for a man

experienced in affairs temporal (*Lokayatravidah*).

The school of *Usanas* declare that there is only one science,

and that the science of government; for, they say, it is in that

science that all other sciences have their origin and end.

But Kautilya holds that four and only four are the sciences;

wherefore it is from these sciences that all that concerns

righteousness and wealth is learnt, therefore they are so called.

*Anvikshaki* comprises the Philosophy of *Sankhya*, *Yoga*, and

*Lokayata* (Atheism ?).

Righteous and unrighteous acts (*Dharmadharmau*) are learnt

from the triple Vedas; wealth and non-wealth from *Varta*; the

expedient and the inexpedient (*Nayanayau*), as well as potency and

impotency (*Balabale*) from the science of government.

When seen in the light of these sciences, the science of

*Anvikshaki* is most beneficial to the world, keeps the mind steady

and firm in weal and woe alike, and bestows excellence of

foresight, speech and action.

Light to all kinds of knowledge, easy means to accomplish all

kinds of acts and receptacle of all kinds of virtues, is the Science of

*Anvikshaki* ever held to be.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "Determination of the place of Anvikshaki"

among Sciences in Book I, "Concerning Discipline" of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

10

Arthasástra of Kautilya.]

## Chapter III, Determination of the place of the Triple

Vedas *Determination of the place of the Triple Vedas.*

THE three Vedas, *Sama*, *Rik* and *Yajus*, constitute the triple

Vedas. These together with *Atharvaveda* and the *Itihasaveda* are

(known as) the Vedas.

*Siksha* (Phonetics), *Kalpa* (ceremonial injunctions),

*Vyakarana* (grammar), *Nirukta* (glossarial explanation of obscure

Vedic terms), *Chandas* (Prosody), and Astronomy form the *Angas*.

As the triple Vedas definitely determine the respective duties

of the four castes and of the four orders of religious life, they are

the most useful.

The duty of the Brahman is study, teaching, performance of

sacrifice, officiating in others' sacrificial performance and the

giving and receiving of gifts.

That of a *Kshatriya* is study, performance of sacrifice, giving

gifts, military occupation, and protection of life.

That of a *Vaisya* is study, performance of sacrifice, giving

gifts, agriculture, cattle breeding, and trade.

That of a *Sudra* is the serving of twice-born (*dvijati*),

agriculture, cattle-breeding, and trade (*varta*), the profession of

artizans and court-bards (*karukusilavakarma*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

11

The duty of a householder is earning livelihood by his own

profession, marriage among his equals of different ancestral *Rishis*,

intercourse with his wedded wife after her monthly ablution, gifts

to gods, ancestors, guests, and servants, and the eating of the

remainder.

That of a student (*Brahmacharin*) is learning the Vedas,

fire-worship, ablution, living by begging, and devotion to his

teacher even at the cost of his own life, or in the absence of his

teacher, to the teacher's son, or to an elder classmate.

That of a *Vanaprastha* (forest-recluse) is observance of

chastity, sleeping on the bare ground, keeping twisted locks,

wearing deer-skin, fire-worship, ablution, worship of gods,

ancestors, and guests, and living upon food stuffs procurable in

forests.

That of an ascetic retired from the world (*Parivrajaka*) is

complete control of the organs of sense, abstaining from all kinds

of work, disowning money, keeping from society, begging in many

places, dwelling in forests, and purity both internal and external.

Harmlessness, truthfulness, purity, freedom from spite,

abstinence from cruelty, and forgiveness are duties common to all.

The observance of one's own duty leads one to *Svarga* and

infinite bliss (*Anantya*). When it is violated, the world will come to

an end owing to confusion of castes and duties.

Hence the king shall never allow people to swerve from their

duties; for whoever upholds his own duty, ever adhering to the

customs of the *Aryas*, and following the rules of caste and divisions

of religious life, will surely. be happy both here and hereafter. For

the world, when maintained in accordance with injunctions of the

triple Vedas, will surely progress, but never perish.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

12

[Thus ends Chapter III, "Determination of the place of the Triple

Vedas" among Sciences in Book I, "Concerning Discipline" of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## Chapter IV, Determination of the Place of Varta and of Dandaniti

*Varta and Dandaniti.*

AGRICULTURE, cattle-breeding and trade constitute *Varta*.

It is most useful in that it brings in grains, cattle, gold, forest

produce (*kupya*), and free labour (*vishti*). It is by means of the

treasury and the army obtained solely through *Varta* that the king

can hold under his control both his and his enemy's party.

That sceptre on which the well-being and progress of the

sciences of *Anvikshaki*, the triple *Vedas*, and *Varta* depend is

known as *Danda* (punishment). That which treats of *Danda* is the

law of punishment or science of government (*dandaniti*).

It is a means to make acquisitions, to keep them secure, to

improve them, and to distribute among the deserved the profits of.

improvement. It is on this science of government that the course of

the progress of the world depends.

"Hence," says my teacher, "whoever is desirous of the

progress of the world shall ever hold the sceptre raised

(*udyatadanda*). Never can there be a better instrument than the

sceptre to bring people under control."

"No," says Kautilya; for whoever imposes severe punishment

becomes repulsive to the people; while he who awards mild

punishment becomes contemptible. But whoever imposes

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

13

punishment as deserved becomes respectable. For punishment

(*danda*) when awarded with due consideration, makes the people

devoted to righteousness and to works productive of wealth and

enjoyment; while punishment, when ill-awarded under the

influence of greed and anger or owing to ignorance, excites fury

even among hermits and ascetics dwelling in forests, not to speak

of householders.

But when the law of punishment is kept in abeyance, it gives

rise to such disorder as is implied in the proverb of fishes

(*matsyanyayamudbhavayati*); for in the absence of a magistrate

(*dandadharabhave*), the strong will swallow the weak; but under

his protection, the weak resist the strong.

This people (*loka*) consisting of four castes and four orders of

religious life, when governed by the king with his sceptre, will

keep to their respective paths, ever devotedly adhering to their

respective duties and occupations.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, "Determination of the Place of Varta and of

Dandaniti" among Sciences in Book I, "Concerning Discipline" of

the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. "The End of Sciences" is completed.]

## CHAPTER V. ASSOCIATION WITH THE AGED.

HENCE the (first) three sciences (out of the four) are

dependent for their well-being on the science of government.

*Danda*, punishment, which alone can procure safety and security of

life is, in its turn, dependent on discipline (*vinaya*).

Discipline is of two kinds: artificial and natural; for

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

14

instruction (*kriya*) can render only a docile being conformable to

the rules of discipline, and not an undocile being (*adravyam*). The

study of sciences can tame only those who are possessed of such

mental faculties as obedience, hearing, grasping, retentive

memory, discrimination, inference, and deliberation, but not others

devoid of such faculties.

Sciences shall be studied and their precepts strictly observed

under the authority of specialist teachers.

Having undergone the ceremony of tonsure, the student shall

learn the alphabet (*lipi*) and arithmetic. After investiture with

sacred thread, he shall study the triple Vedas, the science of

Anvikshaki under teachers of acknowledged authority (*sishta*), the

science of *Vatra* under government superintendents, and the

science of *Dandaniti* under theoretical and practical politicians

(*vaktriprayoktribhyah*).

He (the prince) shall observe celibacy till he becomes sixteen

years old. Then he shall observe the ceremony of tonsure (*godana*)

and marry.

In view of maintaining efficient discipline, he shall ever and

invariably keep company with aged professors of sciences in

whom alone discipline has its firm root.

He shall spend the forenoon in receiving lessons in military

arts concerning elephants, horses, chariots, and weapons, and the

afternoon in hearing the *Itihasa*.

*Purana*, *Itivritta* (history), *Akhyayika* (tales), *Udaharana*

(illustrative stories), *Dharmasastra*, and *Arthasastra* are (known

by the name) *Itihasa*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

15

During the rest of the day and night, he shall not only receive

new lessons and revise old lessons, but also hear over and again

what has not been clearly understood.

For from hearing (*sutra*) ensues knowledge; from knowledge

steady application (*yoga*) is possible; and from application

self-possession (*atmavatta*) is possible. This is what is meant by

efficiency of learning (*vidhyasamarthyam*).

The king who is well educated and disciplined in sciences,

devoted to good Government of his subjects, and bent on doing

good to all people will enjoy the earth unopposed.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "Association with the Aged" in Book I,

"Concerning Discipline" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER VI. RESTRAINT OF THE ORGANS OF SENSE.

*The Shaking off of the Aggregate of the Six Enemies.*

RESTRAINT of the organs of sense, on which success in

study and discipline depends can be enforced by abandoning lust,

anger, greed, vanity (*mána*), haughtiness (*mada*), and overjoy

(*harsha*).

Absence of discrepancy (*avipratipatti*) in the perception of

sound, touch, colour, flavour, and scent by means of the ear, the

skin, the eyes, the tongue, and the nose, is what is meant by the

restraint of the organs of sense. Strict observance of the precepts of

sciences also means the same; for the sole aim of all the sciences is

nothing but restraint of the organs of sense.

Whosoever is of reverse character, whoever has not his

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

16

organs of sense under his control, will soon perish, though

possessed of the whole earth bounded by the four quarters.

For example: *Bhoja*, known also by the name, *Dándakya*,

making a lascivious attempt on a *Bráhman* maiden, perished along

with his kingdom and relations;

So also *Karála*, the *Vaideha*. Likewise *Janamejaya* under the

influence of anger against *Bráhmans*, as well as *Tálajangha*

against the family of *Bhrigus*.

*Aila* in his attempt under the influence of greed to make

exactions from *Bráhmans*, as well as *Ajabindu*, the *Sauvíra* (in a

similar attempt);

*Rávana* unwilling under the influence of vanity to restore a

stranger's wife, as well as *Duryodhana* to part with a portion of his

kingdom; *Dambhodbhava* as well as *Arjuna* of *Haihaya* dynasty

being so haughty as to despise all people;

*Vátápi* in his attempt under the influence of overjoy to attack

*Agastya*, as well as the corporation of the *Vrishnis* in their attempt

against *Dvaipáyana*.

Thus these and other several kings, falling a prey to the

aggregate of the six enemies and having failed to restrain their

organs of sense, perished together with their kingdom and

relations. Having driven out the aggregate of the six enemies, as

well as *Ambarísha* of *Jámadagnya* famous for his restraint of the

organs of sense *Nábhága* long enjoyed the earth.

[Thus ends Chapter VI, "The Shaking off of the Aggregate of the

Six Enemies" in the section of the "Restraint Of the Organs of

Sense" in Book I, "Concerning Discipline" of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

17

## CHAPTER VII. RESTRAINT OF THE ORGANS OF SENSE.

*The Life of a Saintly King.*

HENCE by overthrowing the aggregate of the six enemies, he

shall restrain the organs of sense; acquire wisdom by keeping

company with the aged; see through his spies; establish safety and

security by being ever active; maintain his subjects in the

observance of their respective duties by exercising authority; keep

up his personal discipline by receiving lessons in the sciences; and

endear himself to the people by bringing them in contact with

wealth and doing good to them.

Thus with his organs of sense under his control, he shall keep

away from hurting the women and property of others; avoid not

only lustfulness, even in dream, but also falsehood, haughtiness,

and evil proclivities; and keep away from unrighteous and

uneconomical transactions.

Not violating righteousness and economy, he shall enjoy his

desires. He shall never be devoid of happiness. He may enjoy in an

equal degree the three pursuits of life, charity, wealth, and desire,

which are inter-dependent upon each other. Any one of these three,

when enjoyed to an excess, hurts not only the other two, but also

itself.

Kautilya holds that wealth and wealth alone is important,

inasmuch as charity and desire depend upon wealth for their

realisation.

Those teachers and ministers who keep him from falling a

prey to dangers, and who, by striking the hours of the day as

determined by measuring shadows (*chháyánálikápratodena*) warn

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

18

him of his careless proceedings even in secret shall invariably be

respected.

Sovereignty (*rájatva*) is possible only with assistance. A

single wheel can never move. Hence he shall employ ministers and

hear their opinion.

[Thus ends Chapter VII, “The Life of a Saintly King” in the section

of the “Restraint of the Organs of Sense,” in Book I, “Concerning

Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya; “Restraint of the

Organs of Sense" is completed.]

## CHAPTER VIII. CREATION OF MINISTERS.

"THE King," says *Bháradvája*, "shall employ his classmates

as his ministers; for they can be trusted by him inasmuch as he has

personal knowledge of their honesty and capacity."

“No,” says *Visáláksha*, "for, as they have been his playmates

as well, they would despise him. But he shall employ as ministers

those whose secrets, possessed of in common, are well known to

him. Possessed of habits and defects in common. with the king,

they would never hurt him lest he would betray their secrets."

“Common is this fear,” says *Parásara*, “for under the fear of

betrayal of his own secrets, the king may also follow them in their

good and bad acts.

"Under the control of as many persons as are made aware by

the king of his own secrets, might he place himself in all humility

by that disclosure. Hence he shall employ as ministers those who

have proved faithful to him under difficulties fatal to life and are of

tried devotion."

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

19

"No,” says *Pisuna*, “for this is devotion, but not intelligence

(*buddhigunah*). He shall appoint as ministers those who, when

employed as financial matters, show as much as, or more than, the

fixed revenue, and are thus of tried ability.”

"No," says *Kaunapadanta*, "for such persons are devoid of

other ministerial qualifications; he shall, therefore, employ as

ministers those whose fathers and grandfathers had been ministers

before; such persons, in virtue of their knowledge of past events

and of an established relationship with the king, will, though

offended, never desert him; for such faithfulness is seen even

among dumb animals; cows, for example, stand aside from strange

cows and ever keep company with accustomed herds."

"No," says *Vátavyádhi*, "for such persons, having acquired

complete dominion over the king, begin to play themselves as the

king. Hence he shall employ as ministers such new persons as are

proficient in the science of polity. It is such new persons who will

regard the king as the real sceptre-bearer (*dandadhara*) and dare

not offend him."

"No," says the son of *Báhudantí* (a woman); "for a man

possessed of only theoretical knowledge and having no experience

of practical politics is likely to commit serious blunders when

engaged in actual works. Hence he shall employ as ministers such

as are born of high family and possessed of wisdom, purity of

purpose, bravery and loyal feelings inasmuch as ministerial

appointments shall purely depend on qualifications."

"This," says Kautilya, "is satisfactory in all respects; for a

man's ability is inferred from his capacity shown in work. And in

accordance in difference in the working capacity,

Having divided the spheres of their powers and having

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

20

definitely taken into consideration the place and time where and

when they have to work, such persons shall be employed not as

councillors (mantrinah) but as ministerial officers (*amátyah*).

[Thus ends Chapter VIII, “Creation of Ministers” in Book I,

“Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER IX. THE CREATION OF COUNCILLORS AND PRIESTS**.**

NATIVE, born of high family, influential, well trained in arts,

possessed of foresight, wise, of strong memory, bold, eloquent,

skillful, intelligent, possessed of enthusiasm, dignity, and

endurance, pure in character, affable, firm in loyal devotion,

endowed with excellent conduct, strength, health and bravery, free

from procrastination and ficklemindedness, affectionate, and free

from such qualities as excite hatred and enmity--these are the

qualifications of a ministerial officer (*amátyasampat*).

Such as are possessed of one-half or one-quarter of the above

qualifications come under middle and low ranks.

Of these qualifications, native birth and influential position

shall be ascertained from reliable persons; educational

qualifications (*silpa*) from professors of equal learning; theoretical

and practical knowledge, foresight, retentive memory, and

affability shall be tested from successful, application in works;

eloquence, skillfulness and flashing intelligence from power

shown in narrating stories (*katháyogeshu*, *i.e*., in conversation);

endurance, enthusiasm, and bravery in troubles; purity of life,

friendly disposition, and loyal devotion by frequent association;

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

21

conduct, strength, health, dignity, and freedom from indolence and

ficklemindedness shall be ascertained from their intimate friends;

and affectionate and philanthrophic nature by personal experience.

The works of a king may be visible, invisible (*paroksha*) and

inferential.

That which he sees is visible; and that which he is taught by

another is invisible; and inference of the nature of what is not

accomplished from what is accomplished is inferential..

As works do not happen to be simultaneous, are various in

form, and pertain to distant and different localities, the king shall,

in view of being abreast of time and place, depute his ministers to

carry them out. Such is the work of ministers.

Him whose family and character are highly spoken of, who is

well educated in the *Vedás* and the six *Angas*, is skillful in reading

portents providential or accidental, is well versed in the science of

government, and who is obedient and who can prevent calamities

providential or human by performing such expiatory rites as are

prescribed in the *Atharvaveda*, the king shall employ as high priest.

As a student his teacher, a son his father, and a servant his master,

the king shall follow him.

That *Kshatriya* breed which is brought up by *Bráhmans*, is

charmed with the counsels of good councillors, and which

faithfully follows the precepts of the *sástras* becomes invincible

and attains success though unaided with weapons.

[Thus ends Chapter IX, “Creation of Councillors and Priests” in

Book I “Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

22

## CHAPTER X. ASCERTAINING BY TEMPTATIONS PURITY OR IMPURITY IN THE CHARACTER OF MINISTERS.

ASSISTED by his prime minister (*mantri*) and his high priest,

the king shall, by offering temptations, examine the character of

ministers (*amátya*) appointed in government departments of

ordinary nature.

The king shall dismiss a priest who, when ordered, refuses to

teach the *Vedás* to an outcaste person or to officiate in a sacrificial

performance (apparently) undertaken by an outcaste person

(*ayájya*).

Then the dismissed priest shall, through the medium of spies

under the guise of class-mates (*satri*), instigate each minister one

after another, saying on oath "this king is unrighteous; well let us

set up in his place another king who is righteous, or who is born of

the same family as of this king, or who is kept imprisoned, or a

neighbouring king of his family and of self-sufficiency

(*ekapragraha*), or a wild chief (*atavika*), or an upstart

(*aupapádika*); this attempt is to the liking of all of us; what dost

thou think ?"

If any one or all of the ministers refuse to acquiesce in such a

measure, he or they shall be considered pure. This is what is called

religious allurement.

A commander of the army, dismissed from service for

receiving condemnable things (*asatpragraha*) may, through the

agency of spies under the guise of class-mates (*satri*), incite each

minister to murder the king in view of acquiring immense wealth,

each minister being asked "this attempt is to the liking of all of us;

what dost thou think?"

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

23

If they refuse to agree, they are to be considered pure. This is

what is termed monetary allurement.

A woman-spy under the guise of an ascetic and highly

esteemed in the harem of the king may allure each prime minister

(*mahámátra*) one after another, saying "the queen is enamoured of

thee and has made arrangements for thy entrance into her chamber;

besides this, there is also the certainty of large acquisitions of

wealth."

If they discard the proposal, they are pure. This is what is

styled love-allurement.

With the intention of sailing on a commercial vessel

(*prahavananimittam*), a minister may induce all other ministers to

follow him. Apprehensive of danger, the king may arrest them all.

A spy under the guise of a fraudulent disciple, pretending to have

suffered imprisonment may incite each of the ministers thus

deprived of wealth and rank, saying, "the king has betaken himself

to an unwise course; well, having murdered him, let us put another

in his stead. We all like this; what dost thou think?"

If they refuse to agree, they are pure. This is what is termed

allurement under fear.

Of these tried ministers, those whose character has been

tested under religious allurements shall be employed in civil and

criminal courts (*dharmasthaníyakantaka sodhaneshu*); those

whose purity has been tested under monetary allurements shall be

employed in the work of a revenue collector and chamberlain;

those who have been tried under love-allurements shall be

appointed to superintend the pleasure-grounds (*vihára*) both

external and internal; those who have been tested by allurements

under fear shall be appointed to immediate service; and those

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

24

whose character has been tested under all kinds of allurements

shall be employed as prime ministers (*mantrinah*), while those who

are proved impure under one or all of these allurements shall be

appointed in mines, timber and elephant forests, and

manufactories.

Teachers have decided that in accordance with ascertained

purity, the king shall employ in corresponding works those

ministers whose character has been tested under the three pursuits

of life, religion, wealth and love, and under fear.

Never, in the view of Kautilya, shall the king make himself or

his queen an object (*laksham*, butt) of testing the character of his

councillors, nor shall he vitiate the pure like water with poison.

Sometimes the prescribed medicine may fail to reach the

person of moral disease; the mind of the valiant, though naturally

kept steadfast, may not, when once vitiated and repelled under the

four kinds of allurements, return to and recover its original form.

Hence having set up an external object as the butt for all the

four kinds of allurements, the king shall, through the agency of

spies (*satri*), find out the pure or impure character of his ministers

(*amátya*).

[Thus ends Chapter X, “Ascertaining by Temptations Purity or

Impurity in the Character of Ministers,” in Book I, “Concerning

Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER XI. THE INSTITUTION OF SPIES.

ASSISTED by the council of his ministers tried under

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

25

espionage, the king shall proceed to create spies: --Spies under the

guise of a fraudulent disciple (*kápatikachhátra*), a recluse

(*udásthita*), a householder (*grihapaitika*), a merchant (*vaidehaka*),

an ascetic practising austerities (*tápasa*), a class-mate or a

colleague (*satri*), a fire-brand (*tíkshna*), a poisoner (*rasada*), and a

mendicant woman (*bhikshuki*).

A skillful person capable of guessing the mind of others is a

fraudulent disciple. Having encouraged such a spy with honour and

money rewards, the minister shall tell him, "sworn to the king and

myself, thou shalt inform us of whatever wickedness thou findest

in others."

One who is initiated in asceticism and is possessed of

foresight and pure character is a recluse. This spy, provided with

much money and many disciples, shall carry on agriculture,

cattle-rearing, and trade (*vártakarma*) on the lands allotted to him

for the purpose. Out of the produce and profits thus acquired, he

shall provide all ascetics with subsistence, clothing and lodging,

and send on espionage such among those under his protection as

are desirous to earn a livelihood (*vrittikáma*), ordering each of

them to detect a particular kind of crime committed in connection

with the king's wealth and to report of it when they come to receive

their subsistence and wages. All the ascetics (under the recluse)

shall severally send their followers on similar errands.

A cultivator, fallen from his profession, but possessed of

foresight and pure character is termed a householder spy. This spy

shall carry on the cultivation of lands allotted to him for the

purpose, and maintain cultivators, etc.--as before.

A trader, fallen from his profession, but possessed of

foresight and pure character, is a merchant spy. This spy shall carry

on the manufacture of merchandise on lands allotted to him for the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

26

purpose, etc.,--as before.

A man with shaved head (*munda*) or braided hair (*jatila*) and

desirous to earn livelihood is a spy under the guise of an ascetic

practising austerities. Such a spy surrounded by a host of disciples

with shaved head or braided hair may take his abode in the suburbs

of a city, and pretend as a person barely living on a handful of

vegetables or meadow grass (*yavasamushti*) taken once in the

interval of a month or two, but he may take in secret his favourite

food-stuffs (*gúdhamishtamáháram*).

Merchant spies pretending to be his disciples may worship

him as one possessed of preternatural powers. His other disciples

may widely proclaim that "this ascetic is an accomplished expert of

preternatural powers."

Regarding those persons who, desirous of knowing their

future, throng to him, he may, through palmistry, foretell such

future events as he can ascertain by the nods and signs of his

disciples (*angavidyayá sishyasanjnábhischa*) concerning the

works of highborn people of the country,--*viz.,* small profits,

destruction by fire, fear from robbers, the execution of the

seditious, rewards for the good, forecast of foreign affairs (*videsa*

*pravrittivijnánam*), saying, “this will happen to-day, that

to-morrow, and that this king will do.” Such assertions of the

ascetic his disciples shall corroborate (by adducing facts and

figures).

He shall also foretell not only the rewards which persons

possessed of foresight, eloquence, and bravery are likely to receive

at the hands of the king, but also probable changes in the

appointments of ministers.

The king's minister shall direct his affairs in conformity to the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

27

forecast made by the ascetic. He shall appease with offer of wealth

and honour those who have had some well known cause to be

disaffected, and impose punishments in secret on those who are for

no reason disaffected or who are plotting against the king.

Honoured by the king with awards of money and titles, these

five institutes of espionage (*samstháh*) shall ascertain the purity of

character of the king's servants.

[Thus ends Chapter XI, "The Institution of Spies" in Book I,

“Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER XII. INSTITUTION OF SPIES.

*Creation of Wandering Spies.*

THOSE orphans (*asambandhinah*) who are to be necessarily

fed by the state and are put to study science, palmistry (*angavidya*),

sorcery (*máyágata*), the duties of the various orders of religious

life, legerdemain (*jambhakavidya*), and the reading of omens and

augury (*antara-chakra*), are classmate spies or spies learning by

social intercourse (*samsargavidyasatrinah*).

Such brave desperados of the country who, reckless of their

own life, confront elephants or tigers in fight mainly for the

purpose of earning money are termed firebrands or fiery spies

(*tíkshna*).

Those who have no trace of filial affection left in them and

who are very cruel and indolent are poisoners (*rasada*).

A poor widow of *Bráhman* caste, very clever, and desirous to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

28

earn her livelihood is a woman ascetic (*parivrájiká*). Honoured in

the king's harem, such a woman shall frequent the residences of the

king's prime ministers (*mahámátrakuláni*).

The same rule shall apply to women with shaved head

(*munda*), as well as to those of *súdra* caste. All these are wandering

spies (*sancháráh*).

Of these spies, those who are of good family, loyal, reliable,

well-trained in the art of putting on disguises appropriate to

countries and trades, and possessed of knowledge of many

languages and arts shall be sent by the king to espy in his own

country the movements of his ministers, priests, commanders of

the army, the heir-apparent, the doorkeepers, the officer in charge

of the harem, the magistrate (*prasástri*), the collector-general

(*samáhartri*), the chamberlain (*sannidhátri*), the commissioner

(pradeshtri), the city constable (*náyaka*), the officer in charge of

the city (*paura*), the superintendent of transactions (*vyávahárika*),

the superintendent of manufactories (*karmántika*), the assembly of

councillors (*mantriparishad*), heads of departments (*adhyaksháh*),

the commissary-general (*dandapála*), and officers in charge of

fortifications, boundaries, and wild tracts.

Fiery spies, such as are employed to hold the royal umbrella,

vase, fan, and shoes, or to attend at the throne, chariot, and

conveyance shall espy the public character (*báhyam cháram*) of

these (officers).

Classmate spies shall convey this information (*i.e.*, that

gathered by the fiery spies) to the institutes of espionage

(*samsthásvarpayeyuh*).

Poisoners such as a sauce-maker (*súda*), a cook (*arálika*),

procurer of water for bathing (*snápaka*) shampooer, the spreader of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

29

bed (*ástaraka*), a barber (*kalpaka*), toilet-maker (*prasádaka*), a

water-servant; servants such as have taken the appearance of a

hump-backed person, a dwarf, a pigmy (*kiráta*), the dumb, the

deaf, the idiot, the blind; artisans such as actors, dancers, singers,

players on musical instruments, buffoons, and a bard; as well as

women shall espy the private character of these officers.

A mendicant woman shall convey this information to the

institute of espionage.

The immediate officers of the institutes of espionage

(*samsthánámantevásinah*) shall by making use of signs or writing

(*samjnálipibhih*) set their own spies in motion (to ascertain the

validity of the information).

Neither the institutes of espionage nor they (the wandering

spies) shall know each other.

If a mendicant woman is stopped at the entrance, the line of

door-keepers., spies under the guise of father and mother

(*mátápitri vyanjanáh*), women artisans, court-bards, or prostitutes

shall, under the pretext of taking in musical instruments, or through

cipher-writing (*gudhalekhya*), or by means of signs, convey the

information to its destined place (*cháram nirhareyuh*.)

(Spies of the institutes of espionage) may suddenly go out

under the pretext of long standing disease, or lunacy, or by setting

fire (to something) or by administering poison (to some one).

When the information thus received from these three different

sources is exactly of the same version, it shall be held reliable. If

they (the three sources) frequently differ, the spies concerned shall

either be punished in secret or dismissed.

Those spies who are referred to in Book IV, "Removal of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

30

Thorns," shall receive their salaries from those kings (*para*, *i.e.,*

foreign) with whom they live as servants; but when they aid both

the states in the work of catching hold of robbers, they shall

become recipients of salaries from both the states

(*ubhayavetanáh*).

Those whose sons and wives are kept (as hostages) shall be

made recipients of salaries from two states and considered as under

the mission of enemies. Purity of character of such persons shall be

ascertained through persons of similar profession.

Thus with regard to kings who are inimical, friendly,

intermediate, of low rank, or neutral, and with regard to their

eighteen government departments (*ashtáldasa-tírtha*), spies shall

be set in motion.

The hump-backed, the dwarf, the eunuch, women of

accomplishments, the dumb, and various grades of *Mlechcha* caste

shall be spies inside their houses.

Merchant spies inside forts; saints and ascetics in the suburbs

of forts; the cultivator and the recluse in country parts; herdsmen in

the boundaries of the country; in forests, forest-dwellers,

*sramanás*, and chiefs of wild tribes, shall be stationed to ascertain

the movements of enemies. All these spies shall be very quick in

the dispatch of their work.

Spies set up by foreign kings shall also be found out by local

spies; spies by spies of like profession. It is the institutes of

espionage, secret or avowed, that set spies in motion.

Those chiefs whose inimical design has been found out by

spies supporting the king's cause shall, in view of affording

opportunity to detect the spies of foreign kings, be made to live on

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

31

the boundaries of the state.

[Thus ends Chapter XII, “Creation of Wandering Spies” in the

section of “The Institution of Spies,” in Book I. “Concerning

Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER XIII. PROTECTION OF PARTIES FOR OR AGAINST ONE'S OWN CAUSE IN ONE'S OWN STATE.

HAVING set up spies over his prime ministers (*mahámátra*),

the king shall proceed to espy both citizens and country people.

Classmate spies (*satri*) formed as opposing factions shall

carry on disputations in places of pilgrimage (*tírtha*), in

assemblies, houses, corporations (*púga*), and amid congregations

of people. One spy may say:--

"This king is said to be endowed with all desirable qualities;

he seems to be a stranger to such tendencies as would lead him to

oppress citizens and country people by levying heavy fines and

taxes."

Against those who seem to commend this opinion, another

spy may interrupt the speaker and say:--

"People suffering from anarchy as illustrated by the

proverbial tendency of a large fish swallowing a small one

(*mátsyanyáyábhibhútah prajáh*), first elected *Manu*, the

*Vaivasvata*, to be their king; and allotted one-sixth of the grains

grown and one-tenth of merchandise as sovereign dues. Fed by this

payment, kings took upon themselves the responsibility of

maintaining the safety and security of their subjects

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

32

(*yogakshemavaháh*), and of being answerable for the sins of their

subjects when the principle of levying just punishments and taxes

has been violated. Hence hermits, too, provide the king with

one-sixth of the grains gleaned by them, thinking that „it is a tax

payable to him who protects us.‟ It is the king in whom the duties

of both *Indra* (the rewarder) and *Yama* (the punisher) are blended,

and he is a visible dispenser of punishments and rewards (*hedaprasáda*);

whoever disregards kings will be visited with divine

punishments, too. Hence kings shall never be despised."

Thus treacherous opponents of sovereignty shall be silenced.

Spies shall also know the rumours prevalent in the state. Spies

with shaved heads or braided hair shall ascertain whether there

prevails content or discontent among those who live upon the

grains, cattle, and gold of the king, among those who supply the

same (to the king) in weal or woe, those who keep under restraint a

disaffected relative of the king or a rebellious district, as well as

those who drive away an invading enemy or a wild tribe. The

greater the contentment of such persons, the more shall be the

honour shown to them; while those who are disaffected shall be

ingratiated by rewards or conciliation; or dissension may be sown

among them so that they may alienate themselves from each other,

from a neighbouring enemy, from a wild tribe, or from a banished

or imprisoned prince. Failing this measure, they may be so

employed in collecting fines and taxes as to incur the displeasure of

the people. Those who are inebriated with feelings of enmity may

be put down by punishment in secret or by making them incur the

displeasure of the whole country. Or having taken the sons and

wives of such treacherous persons under State protection, they may

be made to live in mines, lest they may afford shelter to enemies.

Those that are angry, those that are greedy, those that are

alarmed, as well as those that despise the king are the instruments

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

33

of enemies. Spies under the guise of astrologers and tellers of

omens and augury shall ascertain the relationship of such persons

with each other and with foreign kings.

Honours and rewards shall be conferred upon those that are

contented, while those that are disaffected shall be brought round

by conciliation, by gifts, or by sowing dissension, or by

punishment.

Thus in his own state a wise king shall guard factions among

his people, friendly or hostile, powerful or powerless against the

intrigue of foreign kings.

[Thus ends Chapter XIII, “Protection of Parties for or against One's

Own Cause in One's Own State,” in Book I, “Concerning

Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER XIV. WINNING OVER FACTIONS FOR OR AGAINST AN ENEMY'S CAUSE IN AN ENEMY'S STATE.

PROTECTION of parties for or against one's own cause in

one's own state has been dealt with. Similar measures in

connection with parties in a foreign state are to be treated of.

Those who are deluded with false promise of large rewards;

those of whom one party, though equally skillful as another party

in artistic work or in turning out productive or beneficial works, is

slighted by bestowing larger rewards on its rival party; those who

are harassed by courtiers (*Vallabhá-varuddháh*); those who are

invited to be slighted; those who are harassed by banishment; those

who in spite of their large outlay of money have failed in their

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

34

undertakings; those who are prevented from the exercise of their

rights or from taking possession of their inheritance; those who

have fallen from their rank and honours in government service;

those who are shoved to the corner by their own kinsmen; those

whose women are violently assaulted; those who are thrown in jail;

those who are punished in secret; those who are warned of their

misdeeds; those whose property has been wholly confiscated;

those who have long suffered from imprisonment; those whose

relatives are banished---all these come under the group of

provoked persons.

He who has fallen a victim to misfortune by his own

misdeeds; he who is offended (by the king); he whose sinful deeds

are brought to light; he who is alarmed at the award of punishment

on a man of like guilt; he whose lands have been confiscated; he

whose rebellious spirit is put down by coercive measures; he who,

as a superintendent of all government departments, has suddenly

amassed a large amount of wealth; he who, as a relative of such a

rich man aspires to inherit his wealth; he who is disliked by the

king; and he who hates the king,--all these come under the group of

persons alarmed.

He who is impoverished; he who has lost much wealth; he

who is niggardly; he who is addicted to evil propensities; and he

who is engaged in dangerous transactions,---all these constitute the

group of ambitious persons.

He who is self-sufficient; he who is fond of honours; he who

is intolerant of his rival's honour; he who is esteemed low; he who

is of a fiery spirit; he who is foolhardy as well as he who is not

content with what he has been enjoying,--all these come under the

group of haughty persons.

Of these, he who clings to a particular faction shall be so

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

35

deluded by spies with shaved head or braided hair as to believe that

he is intriguing with that party. Partisans under provocation, for

example, may be won over by telling that „just as an elephant in rut

and mounted over by a driver under intoxication tramples under its

foot whatever it comes across, so this king, dispossessed of the eye

of science, blindly attempts to oppress both citizens and country

people; it is possible to restrain him by setting up a rival elephant

against him; so have forbearance enough (to wait).‟

Likewise alarmed persons may be won over by telling that

„just as a hidden snake bites and emits poison over whatever alarms

it, so this king apprehensive of danger from thee will ere long emit

the poison of his resentment on thee; so thou mayest better go

elsewhere.‟

Similarly ambitious persons may be won over by telling that

„just as a cow reared by dog-keepers gives milk to dogs, but not to

*Bráhmans*, so this king gives milk (rewards) to those who are

devoid of valour, foresight, eloquence and bravery, but not to those

who are possessed of noble character; so the other king who is

possessed of power to discriminate men from men may be

courted.‟

In like manner haughty persons may be won over by telling

that „just as a reservoir of water belonging to *Chándálas* is

serviceable only to *Chándálas*, but not to others, so this king of

low-birth confers his patronage only on low-born people, but not

on *Aryas* like thee; so the other king who is possessed of power to

distinguish between men and men may be courted.‟

All these disaffected persons, when acquiescing to the above

proposals, may be made under a solumn compact (*panakarmaná*)

to form a combination together with the spies to achieve their end.

Likewise friends of a foreign king may also be won over by

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

36

means of persuation and rewards, while implacable enemies may

be brought round by sowing dissensions, by threats, and by

pointing out the defects of their master.

[Thus ends Chapter XIV, "Winning over Factions for or against an

Enemy's Cause in an Enemy‟s State," in Book I, "Concerning

Discipline" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER XV. THE BUSINESS OF COUNCIL MEETING.

HAVING gained a firm hold on the affection of both local

and foreign parties both in his own and enemy's state, the king shall

proceed to think of administrative measures.

All kinds of administrative measures are preceded by

deliberations in a well-formed council. The subject matter of a

council shall be entirely secret and deliberations in it shall be so

carried that even birds cannot see them; for it is said that the

secrecy of counsels was divulged by parrots, minas, dogs and other

low creatures of mean birth. Hence without providing himself with

sufficient safeguard against disclosure, he shall never enter into

deliberations in a council.

Whoever discloses counsels shall be torn to pieces. The

disclosure of counsels may be detected by observing changes in the

attitude and countenance of envoys, ministers, and masters.

Change in conduct is change in attitude (*ingitamanyathávrittih*);

and observation of physical appearance is countenance

(*ákritigrahanamákárah*).

Maintenance of the secrecy of a council-matter, and keeping

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

37

guard over officers that have taken part in the deliberation over it

(shall be strictly observed) till the time of starting the work so

considered approaches.

Carelessness, intoxication, talking in sleep, love and other

evil habits of councillors are the causes of the betrayal of counsels.

Whoever is of hidden nature or is disregarded will disclose

counsels. Hence steps shall be taken to safeguard counsels against

such dangers. Disclosure of counsels is advantageous to persons

other than the king and his officers.

"Hence," says *Bháradvája*, "the king shall singly deliberate

over secret matters; for ministers have their own ministers, and

these latter some of their own; this kind of successive line of

ministers tends to the disclosure of counsels.

"Hence no outside person shall know anything of the work

which the king has in view. Only those who are employed to carry

it out shall know it either when it is begun or when accomplished."

“No deliberation,” says *Visáláksha*, “made by a single person

will be successful; the nature of the work which a sovereign has to

do is to be inferred from the consideration of both the visible and

invisible causes. The perception of what is not or cannot be seen,

the conclusive decision of whatever is seen, the clearance of doubts

as to whatever is susceptible of two opinions, and the inference of

the whole when only a part is seen--all this is possible of decision

only by ministers. Hence he shall sit at deliberation with persons of

wide intellect.

He shall despise none, but hear the opinions of all. A wise

man shall make use of even a child's sensible utterance.

"This is," says *Parásara* "ascertaining the opinions of others,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

38

but not keeping counsels. He shall ask his ministers for their

opinion, on a work similar to the one he has in view, telling them

that "this is the work; it happened thus; what is to be done if it will

turn out thus"; and he shall do as they decide. If it is done thus, both

the ascertainment of opinions and maintenance of secrecy can be

attained."

“Not so,” says *Pisuna*, “for ministers, when called for their

opinions regarding a distant undertaking, or an accomplished or an

unaccomplished work, either approach the subject with

indifference or give their opinions half-heartedly. This is a serious

defect. Hence he shall consult such persons as are believed to be

capable of giving decisive opinion regarding those works about

which he seeks for advice. If he consults thus, he can secure good

advice as well as secrecy of counsel."

"Not so," says Kautilya, "for this (kind of seeking for advice)

is infinite and endless. He shall consult three or four ministers.

Consultation with a single (minister) may not lead to any definite

conclusion in cases of complicated issues. A single minister

proceeds willfully and without restraint. In deliberating with two

ministers, the king may be overpowered by their combined action,

or imperiled by their mutual dissension. But with three or four

ministers he will not come to any serious grief, but will arrive at

satisfactory results. With ministers more than four in number, he

will have to come to a decision after a good deal of trouble; nor will

secrecy of counsel be maintained without much trouble. In

accordance with the requirements of place, time, and nature of the

work in view, he may, as he deems it proper, deliberate with one or

two ministers or by himself.

Means to carry out works, command of plenty of men and

wealth, allotment of time and place, remedies against dangers, and

final success are the five constituents of every council-deliberation.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

39

The king may ask his ministers for their opinion either

individually or collectively, and ascertain their ability by judging

over the reasons they assign for their opinions.

He shall lose no time when the opportunity waited for

arrives; nor shall he sit long at consultation with those whose

parties he intends to hurt.

The school of Manu say that the assembly of ministers

(*mantriparishad*) shall be made to consist of twelve members.

The school of *Brihaspathi* say that it shall consist of sixteen

members.

The school of *Usanas* say that it shall consist of twenty

members.

But Kautilya holds that it shall consist of as many members as

the needs of his dominion require (*yathásámarthyam*).

Those ministers shall have to consider all that concerns the

parties of both the king and his enemy. They shall also set

themselves to start the work that is not yet begun, to complete what

has been begun, to improve what has been accomplished, and to

enforce strict obedience to orders (*niyogasampadam*).

He shall supervise works in company with his officers that are

near (*ásannaih*); and consult by sending writs

(*patrasampreshanena*) those that are (not) near (*ásanna*).

One thousand sages form Indra's assembly of ministers

(*mantriparishad*). They are his eyes. Hence he is called

thousand-eyed though he possesses only two eyes.

In works of emergency, he shall call both his ministers and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

40

the assembly of ministers (*mantrino mantriparishadam cha*), and

tell them of the same. He shall do whatever the majority

(*bhúyishtháh*) of the members suggest or whatever course of action

leading to success (*káryasiddhikaram va*) they point out. And

while doing any work,

None of his enemies (pare) shall know his secret, but he shall

know the weak points of his enemy. Like a tortoise he shall draw in

his limbs that are stretched out.

Just as balls of meal offered to ancestors by a person not

learned in the Vedas are unfit to be eaten by wise men, so whoever

is not well versed in sciences shall be unfit to hear of council

deliberations.

[Thus ends Chapter XV, "The Business of Council-meeting" in

Book I, “Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER XVI. THE MISSION OF ENVOYS.

WHOEVER has succeeded as a councillor is an envoy.

Whoever possesses ministerial qualifications is a

*chargé-d'affaires* (*nisrishtárthah*).

Whoever possesses the same qualifications less by

one-quarter is an agent entrusted with a definite mission

(*parimitárthah*).

Whoever possesses the same qualifications less by one-half is

a conveyer of royal writs (*sásanaharah*).

Having made excellent arrangements for carriage,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

41

conveyance, servants and subsistence, he (an envoy) shall start on

his mission, thinking that "the enemy shall be told thus: the enemy

(*para*) will say, thus; this shall be the reply to him; and thus he shall

be imposed upon."

The envoy shall make friendship with the enemy's officers

such as those in charge of wild tracts, of boundaries, of cities, and

of country parts. He shall also contrast the military stations, sinews

of war, and strong-holds of the enemy with those of his own

master. He shall ascertain the size and area of forts and of the state,

as well as strongholds of precious things and assailable and

unassailable points.

Having obtained permission, he shall enter into the capital of

the enemy and state the object of the mission as exactly as

entrusted to him even at the cost of his own life.

Brightness in the tone, face, and eyes of the enemy; respectful

reception of the mission; enquiry about the health of friends; taking

part in the narration of virtues; giving a seat close to the throne;

respectful treatment of the envoy; remembrance of friends; closing

the mission with satisfaction;--all these shall be noted as indicating

the good graces of the enemy and the reverse his displeasure.

A displeased enemy maybe told:--

"Messengers are the mouth-pieces of kings, not only of

thyself, but of all; hence messengers who, in the face of weapons

raised against them, have to express their mission as exactly as they

are entrusted with do not, though outcasts, deserve death; where is

then reason to put messengers of *Bráhman* caste to death? This is

another's speech. This (*i.e.,* delivery of that speech verbatim) is the

duty of messengers."

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

42

Not puffed up with the respects shown to him, he shall stay

there till he is allowed to depart. He shall not care for the

mightiness of the enemy; shall strictly avoid women and liquor;

shall take bed single; for it is well-known that the intentions of

envoys are ascertained while they are asleep or under the influence

of liquor.

He shall, through the agency of ascetic and merchant spies or

through their disciples or through spies under the disguise of

physicians, and heretics, or through recipients of salaries from two

states (*ubhayavétana*), ascertain the nature of the intrigue prevalent

among parties favourably disposed to his own master, as well as

the conspiracy of hostile factions, and understand the loyalty or

disloyalty of the people to the enemy besides any assailable points.

If there is no possibility of carrying on any such conversation

(conversation with the people regarding their loyalty), he may try

to gather such information by observing the talk of beggars,

intoxicated and insane persons or of persons babbling in sleep, or

by observing the signs made in places of pilgrimage and temples or

by deciphering paintings and secret writings

(*chitra-gúdha-lékhya-samjñá-bhih*).

Whatever information he thus gathers he shall try to test by

intrigues.

He shall not check the estimate which the enemy makes of

the elements of sovereignty of his own master; but he shall only say

in reply, „All is known to thee.‟ Nor shall he disclose the means

employed (by his master) to achieve an end in view.

If he has not succeeded in his mission, but is still detained, he

shall proceed to infer thus:--

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

43

Whether seeing the imminent danger into which my master is

likely to fall and desirous of averting his own danger; whether in

view of inciting against my master an enemy threatening in the rear

or a king whose dominion in the rear is separated by other

intervening states; whether in view of causing internal rebellion in

my master's state, or of inciting a wild chief (*átavika*) against my

master; whether in view of destroying my master by employing a

friend or a king whose dominion stretches out in the rear of my

master's state (*ákranda*); whether with the intention of averting the

internal trouble in his own state or of preventing a foreign invasion

or the inroads of a wild chief; whether in view of causing the

approaching time of my master's expedition to lapse; whether with

the desire of collecting raw materials and merchandise, or of

repairing his fortifications, or of recruiting a strong army capable

to fight; whether waiting for the time and opportunity necessary for

the complete training of his own army; or whether in view of

making a desirable alliance in order to avert the present contempt

brought about by his own carelessness, this king detains me thus?

Then he may stay or get out as he deems it desirable; or he

may demand a speedy settlement of his mission.

Or having intimated an unfavourable order (*sásana*) to the

enemy, and pretending apprehension of imprisonment or death, he

may return even without permission; otherwise he may be

punished.

Transmission of missions, maintenance of treaties, issue of

ultimatum (*pratápa*), gaining of friends, intrigue, sowing

dissension among friends, fetching secret force; carrying away by

stealth relatives and gems, gathering information about the

movements of spies, bravery, breaking of treaties of peace,

winning over the favour of the envoy and government officers of

the enemy,---these are the duties of an envoy (*dúta*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

44

The king shall employ his own envoys to carry on works of

the above description, and guard himself against (the mischief of)

foreign envoys by employing counter envoys, spies, and visible

and invisible watchmen.

[Thus ends Chapter XVI, “The Mission of Envoys” in Book I,

“Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER XVII. PROTECTION OF PRINCES.

*Protection of Princes*

HAVING secured his own personal safety first from his

wives and sons, the king can be in a position to maintain the

security of his kingdom against immediate enemies as well as

foreign kings.

We shall treat of "Protection of Wives" in connection with

"Duties toward's the Harem."

Ever since the birth of princes, the king shall take special

care of them.

“For,” says *Bháradvája*, “princes like crabs have a notorious

tendency of eating up their begetter. When they are wanting in

filial affection, they shall better be punished in secret

(*upámsudandah*).”

"This is,” says *Visáláksha*, “cruelty, destruction of fortune,

and extirpation of the seed of the race of *Kshattriyas*. Hence it is

better to keep them under guard in a definite place.”

“This,” say the school of *Parásara*, “is akin to the fear from a

lurking snake (*ahibhayam*); for a prince may think that

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

45

apprehensive of danger, his father has locked him up, and may

attempt to put his own father on his lap. Hence it is better to keep a

prince under the custody of boundary guards or inside a fort."

"This," says *Pisuna*, “is akin to the fear (from a wolf in the

midst) of a flock of sheep (*aurabhrakam bhayam*); for after

understanding the cause of his rustication, he may avail himself of

the opportunity to, make an alliance with the boundary guards

(against his father). Hence it is better to throw him inside a fort

belonging to a foreign king far away from his own state."

“This,” says *Kaunapadanta*, “is akin to the position of a calf

(*vatsasthánam*); for just as a man milks a cow with the help of its

calf, so the foreign king may milk (reduce) the prince's father.

Hence it is better to make a prince live with his maternal relations."

“This,” says *Vátavyádhi* “is akin to the position of a flag

(*dhvajasthánamétat*): for as in the case of *Aditi* and *Kausika*, the

prince's maternal relations may, unfurling this flag, go on begging.

Hence princes may be suffered to dissipate their lives by sensual

excesses (*grámyadharma*) inasmuch as revelling sons do not

dislike their indulgent father."

"This," says Kautilya, "is death in life; for no sooner is a royal

family with a prince or princes given to dissipation attacked, than it

perishes like a worm-eaten piece of wood. Hence when the queen

attains the age favourable for procreation, priests shall offer to

*Indra* and *Brihaspati* the requisite oblations. When she is big with a

child, the king shall observe the instructions of midwifery with

regard to gestation and delivery. After delivery, the priests shall

perform the prescribed purificatory ceremonials. When the prince

attains the necessary age, adepts shall train him under proper

discipline."

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

46

"Any one of the classmate spies," say (politicians known as)

*Ambhíyas*, "may allure the prince towards hunting, gambling,

liquor, and women, and instigate him to attack his own father and

snatch the reins of government in his own hands. Another spy shall

prevent him from such acts."

"There can be," says Kautilya, "no greater crime or sin than

making wicked impressions on an innocent mind; just as a fresh

object is stained with whatever it is brought in close association, so

a prince with fresh mind is apt to regard as scientific injunctions all

that he is told of. Hence he shall be taught only of righteousness

and of wealth (*artha*), but not of unrighteousness and of

non-wealth. Classmate spies shall be so courteous towards him as

to say "thine are we." When under the temptation of youth, he turns

his eye towards women, impure women under the disguise of

*Aryas* shall, at night and in lonely places, terrify him; when fond of

liquor, he shall be terrified by making him drink such liquor as is

adulterated with narcotics (*yógapána*); when fond of gambling, he

shall be terrified by spies under the disguise of fraudulent persons;

when fond of hunting, he shall be terrified by spies under the

disguise of highway robbers; and when desirous of attacking his

own father, he shall, under the pretence of compliance, be

gradually persuaded of the evil consequences of such attempts, by

telling: a king is not made by a mere wish; failure of thy attempt

will bring about thy own death; success makes thee fall into hell

and causes the people to lament (for thy father) and destroy the

only clod (*ekalóshtavadhascha*, *i.e.*, thyself)."

When a king has an only son who is either devoid of worldly

pleasures or is a favourite child, the king may keep him under

chains. If a king has many sons, he may send some of them to

where there is no heir apparent, nor a child either just born or in the

embryo.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

47

When a prince is possessed of good and amicable qualities, he

may be made the commander-in-chief or installed as heir apparent.

Sons are of three kinds: those of sharp intelligence; those of

stagnant intelligence; and those of perverted mind.

Whoever carries into practice whatever he is taught

concerning righteousness and wealth is one of sharp intelligence;

whoever never carries into practice the good instructions he has

imbibed is one of stagnant intelligence; and whoever entangles

himself in dangers and hates righteousness and wealth is one of

perverted mind.

If a king has an only son (of the last type), attempts shall be

made to procreating a son to him; or sons may be begotten on his

daughters.

When a king is too old or diseased (to beget sons), he may

appoint a maternal relation or a blood relation (*kulya*) of his or any

one of his neighbouring kings possessed of good and amicable

qualities to sow the seed in his own field (*kshétrebíjam*, *i.e.*, to

beget a son on his wife.)

But never shall a wicked and an only son be installed on the

royal throne.

A royal father who is the only prop for many (people) shall be

favourably disposed towards his son. Except in dangers,

sovereignty falling to the lot of the eldest (son) is always respected.

Sovereignty may (sometimes) be the property of a clan; for the

corporation of clans is invincible in its nature and being free from

the calamities of anarchy, can have a permanent existence on earth.

[Thus ends Chapter XVII, “Protection of Princes” in Book I,

“Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

48

## CHAPTER XVIII. THE CONDUCT OF A PRINCE KEPT UNDER RESTRAINT AND THE TREATMENT OF A RESTRAINED PRINCE.

A PRINCE, though put to troubles and employed in an

unequal task, shall yet faithfully follow his father unless that task

costs his life, enrages the people, or causes any other serious

calamities. If he is employed in a good or meritorious work, he

shall try to win the good graces of the superintendent of that work,

carry the work to a profitable end beyond expectation, and present

his father with the proportional profit derived from that work as

well as with the excessive profit due to his skill. If the king is not

still pleased with him and shows undue partiality to another prince

and other wives, he may request the king to permit him for a

forest-life.

Or if he apprehends imprisonment or death, he may seek

refuge under a neighbouring king who is known to be righteous,

charitable, truthful, and not given to cunning, but also welcomes

and respects guests of good character. Residing therein he may

provide himself with men and money, contract

marriage-connection with influential personages, and not only

make alliance with wild tribes, but win over the parties (in his

father's state).

Or moving alone, he may earn his livelihood by working in

gold mines or ruby mines or by manufacturing gold and silver

ornaments or any other commercial commodities. Having acquired

close intimacy with heretics (*páshanda*), rich widows, or

merchants carrying on ocean traffic he may, by making use of

poison (*madanarasa*), rob them of their wealth as well as the

wealth of gods unless the latter is enjoyable by *Bráhmans* learned

in the Vedas. Or he may adopt such measures as are employed to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

49

capture the villages of a foreign king. Or he may proceed (against

his father) with the help of the servants of his mother.

Or having disguised himself as a painter, a carpenter,

court-bard, a physician, a buffoon, or a heretic, and assisted by

spies under similar disguise, he may, when opportunity affords

itself, present himself armed with weapons and poison before the

king, and address him :--

"I am the heir-apparent; it does not become thee to enjoy the

state alone when it is enjoyable by both of us, or when others justly

desire such enjoyment; I ought not to be kept away by awarding an

allowance of double the subsistence and salary."

These are the measures that a prince kept under restraint has

to take.

Spies or his mother, natural or adoptive, may reconcile an

heir-apparent under restraint and bring him to the court.

Or secret emissaries armed with weapons and poison may kill

an abandoned prince. If he is not abandoned, he may be caught

hold of at night by employing women equal to the occasion, or by

making use of liquor, or on the occasion of hunting, and brought

back (to the court).

When thus brought back, he shall be conciliated by the king

with promise of sovereignty „after me‟ (*i.e*., after the king's death),

and kept under guard, in a definite locality. Or if the king has many

sons, an unruly prince may be banished.

[Thus ends Chapter XVIII, “The Conduct of a Prince kept under

Restraint and the Treatment of a Restrained Prince,” in Book I,

“Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

50

## CHAPTER XIX. THE DUTIES OF A KING.

IF a king is energetic, his subjects will be equally energetic. If

he is reckless, they will not only be reckless likewise, but also eat

into his works. Besides, a reckless king will easily fall into the

hands of his enemies. Hence the king shall ever be wakeful.

He shall divide both the day and the night into eight *nálikas*

(1½ hours), or according to the length of the shadow (cast by a

gnomon standing in the sun): the shadow of three *purushás* (36

*angulás* or inches), of one *purushá* (12 inches), of four *angulás* (4

inches), and absence of shadow denoting midday are the four

one-eighth divisions of the forenoon; like divisions (in the reverse

order) in the afternoon.

Of these divisions, during the first one-eighth part of the day,

he shall post watchmen and attend to the accounts of receipts and

expenditure; during the second part, he shall look to the affairs of

both citizens and country people; during the third, he shall not only

bathe and dine, but also study; during the fourth, he shall not only

receive revenue in gold (*hiranya*), but also attend to the

appointments of superintendents; during the fifth, he shall

correspond in writs (*patrasampreshanena*) with the assembly of

his ministers, and receive the secret information gathered by his

spies; during the sixth, he may engage himself in his favourite

amusements or in self-deliberation; during the seventh, he shall

superintend elephants, horses, chariots, and infantry, and during

the eighth part, he shall consider various plans of military

operations with his commander-in-chief.

At the close of the day, he shall observe the evening prayer

(*sandhya*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

51

During the first one-eighth part of the night, he shall receive

secret emissaries; during the second, he shall attend to bathing and

supper and study; during the third, he shall enter the bed-chamber

amid the sound of trumpets and enjoy sleep during the fourth and

fifth parts; having been awakened by the sound of trumpets during

the sixth part, he shall recall to his mind the injunctions of sciences

as well as the day's duties; during the seventh, he shall sit

considering administrative measures and send out spies; and

during the eighth division of the night, he shall receive

benedictions from sacrificial priests, teachers, and the high priest,

and having seen his physician, chief cook and astrologer, and

having saluted both a cow with its calf and a bull by

circumambulating round them, he shall get into his court.

Or in conformity to his capacity, he may alter the timetable

and attend to his duties.

When in the court, he shall never cause his petitioners to wait

at the door, for when a king makes himself inaccessible to his

people and entrusts his work to his immediate officers, he may be

sure to engender confusion in business, and to cause thereby public

disaffection, and himself a prey to his enemies.

He shall, therefore, personally attend to the business of gods,

of heretics, of *Bráhmans* learned in the Vedas, of cattle, of sacred

places, of minors, the aged, the afflicted, and the helpless, and of

women;---all this in order (of enumeration) or according to the

urgency or pressure of those works.

All urgent calls he shall hear at once, but never put off; for

when postponed, they will prove too hard or impossible to

accomplish.

Having seated himself in the room where the sacred fire has

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

52

been kept, he shall attend to the business of physicians and ascetics

practising austerities; and that in company with his high priest and

teacher and after preliminary salutation (to the petitioners).

Accompanied by persons proficient in the three sciences

(*trividya*) but not alone lest the petitioners be offended, he shall

look to the business of those who are practising austerities, as well

as of those who are experts in witchcraft and *Yóga*.

Of a king, the religious vow is his readiness to action;

satisfactory discharge of duties is his performance of sacrifice;

equal attention to all is the offer of fees and ablution towards

consecration.

In the happiness of his subjects lies his happiness; in their

welfare his welfare; whatever pleases himself he shall not consider

as good, but whatever pleases his subjects he shall consider as

good.

Hence the king shall ever be active and discharge his duties;

the root of wealth is activity, and of evil its reverse.

In the absence of activity acquisitions present and to come

will perish; by activity he can achieve both his desired ends and

abundance of wealth.

[Thus ends Chapter XIX, “The Duties of a King” in Book I.

“Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

## CHAPTER XX. DUTY TOWARDS THE HAREM.

ON a site naturally best fitted for the purpose, the king shall

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

53

construct his harem consisting of many compartments, one within

the other, enclosed by a parapet and a ditch, and provided with a

door.

He shall construct his own residential palace after the model

of his treasury-house; or he may have his residential abode in the

centre of the delusive chamber (*móhanagriha*), provided with

secret passages made into the walls; or in an underground chamber

provided with the figures of goddesses and of altars (*chaitya*)

carved on the wooden door-frame, and connected with many

underground passages for exit; or in an upper storey provided with

a staircase hidden in a wall, with a passage for exit made in a

hollow pillar, the whole building being so constructed with

mechanical contrivance as to be caused to fall down when

necessary.

Or considering the danger from his own classmates

(*sahádhyáyi*), such contrivances as the above, mainly intended as

safeguards against danger, may be made on occasions of danger or

otherwise as he deems fit.

No other kind of fire can burn that harem which is thrice

circumambulated from right to left by a fire of human make

(*manushénágnina*); nor can there be kindled any other fire. Nor can

fire destroy that harem the walls of which are made of mud mixed

with ashes produced by lightning, and wetted in hail-water

(*karaka-vári*).

Poisonous snakes will not dare to enter into such buildings as

are provided with *Jívanti* (*Fæderia Foetida*), *svéta* (*Aconitum*

*Ferox*), *mushkakapushpa* (?), and *vandáka* (*Epidendrum*

*Tesselatum*), and as are protected by the branches of *péjáta* (?) and

of *asvattha* (*Ficus Religiosa*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

54

Cats, peacocks, mangooses, and the spotted deer eat up

snakes*.*

Parrots, minas (*sárika*), and Malbar birds (*bhringarája*)

shriek when they perceive the smell of snake-poison.

The heron (*crauncha*) swoons in the vicinity of poison; the

pheasant (*jívanjívaka*) feels distress; the youthful cuckoo

(*mattakókila*) dies; the eyes of partridge (*chakóra*) are reddened.

Thus remedies shall be applied against fire and poison.

On one side in the rear of the harem, there shall be made for

the residence of women compartments provided not only with all

kinds of medicines useful in midwifery and diseases, but also with

well known pot-herbs (*prakhyátasamsthávriksha*), and a

water-reservoir; outside these compartments, the residences of

princes and princesses; in front (of the latter building), the

toilet-ground (*alankára bhúmih*), the council-ground

(*mantrabhúmib*), the court, and the offices of the heir-apparent and

of superintendents.

In the intervening places between two compartments, the

army of the officer in charge of the harem shall be stationed.

When in the interior of the harem, the king shall see the queen

only when her personal purity is vouchsafed by an old

maid-servant. He shall not touch any woman (unless he is apprised

of her personal purity); for hidden in the queen's chamber, his own

brother slew king *Bhadrasena*; hiding himself under the bed of his

mother, the son killed king *Kárusa*; mixing fried rice with poison,

as though with honey, his own queen poisoned *Kásirája*; with an

anklet painted with poison, his own queen killed *Vairantya*; with a

gem of her zone bedaubed with poison, his own queen killed

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

55

*Sauvíra*; with a looking glass painted with poison, his own queen

killed *Jálútha*; and with a weapon hidden under her tuft of hair, his

own queen slew *Vidúratha*.

Hence the king shall always be careful to avoid such lurking

dangers. He shall keep away his wives from the society of ascetics

with shaved head or braided hair, of buffoons, and of outside

prostitutes (*dási*). Nor shall women of high birth have occasion to

see his wives except appointed midwives.

Prostitutes (*rúpájíva*) with personal cleanliness effected by

fresh bath and with fresh garments and ornaments shall attend the

harem.

Eighty men and fifty women under the guise of fathers and

mothers, and aged persons, and eunuchs shall not only ascertain

purity and impurity in the life of the inmates of the harem, but also

so regulate the affairs as to be conducive to the happiness of the

king.

Every person in the harem shall live in the place assigned to

him, and shall never move to the place assigned to others. No one

of the harem shall at any time keep company with any outsider.

The passage of all kinds of commodities from or into the

harem shall be restricted and shall, after careful examination, be

allowed to reach their destination either inside or outside the harem

as indicated by the seal-mark (*mudrá*).

[Thus ends Chapter XX, “Duty towards the Harem” in Book I,

“Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

56

## CHAPTER XXI. PERSONAL SAFETY.

ON getting up from the bed, the king shall be received by

troops of women armed with bows. In the second compartment, he

shall be received by the *Kanchuki* (presenter of the king's coat), the

*Ushnisi* (presenter of king's head-dress), aged persons, and other

harem attendants.

In the third compartment, he shall be received by crooked and

dwarfish persons; in the fourth, by prime ministers, kinsmen, and

door-keepers with barbed missiles in their hand.

The king shall employ as his personal attendants those whose

fathers and grandfathers had been royal servants, those who bear

close relationship to the king, those who are well trained and loyal,

and those who have rendered good service.

Neither foreigners, nor those who have earned neither

rewards nor honour by rendering good service, nor even natives

found engaged in inimical works shall form the bodyguard of the

king or the troops of the officers in charge of the harem.

In a well-guarded locality, the head-cook (*máhánasika*) shall

supervise the preparation of varieties of relishing dishes. The king

shall partake of such fresh dishes after making an oblation out of

them first to the fire and then to birds.

When the flame and the smoke turn blue and crackle, and

when birds (that eat the oblation) die, presence of poison (in the

dish) shall be inferred. When the vapour arising from cooked rice

possesses the colour of the neck of a peacock, and appears chill as

if suddenly cooled, when vegetables possess an unnatural colour,

and are watery and hardened, and appear to have suddenly turned

dry, being possessed of broken layers of blackish foam, and being

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

57

devoid of smell, touch and taste natural to them; when utensils

reflect light either more or less than usual, and are covered with a

layer of foam at their edges; when any liquid preparation possesses

streaks on its surface; when milk bears a bluish streak in the centre

of its surface; when liquor and water possess reddish streaks; when

curd is marked with black and dark streaks, and honey with white

streaks; when watery things appear parched as if overcooked and

look blue and swollen; when dry things have shrinked and changed

in their colour; when hard things appear soft, and soft things hard;

when minute animalculæ die in the vicinity of the dishes; when

carpets and curtains possess blackish circular spots, with their

threads and hair fallen off; when metallic vessels set with gems

appear tarnished as though by roasting, and have lost their polish,

colour, shine, and softness of touch, presence of poison shall be

inferred.

As to the person who has administered poison, the marks are

parched and dry mouth; hesitation in speaking; heavy perspiration;

yawning; too much bodily tremour; frequent tumbling; evasion of

speech; carelessness in work; and unwillingness to keep to the

place assigned to him.

Hence physicians and experts capable of detecting poison

shall ever attend upon the king.

Having taken out from the store-room of medicines that

medicine the purity of which has been proved by experiment, and

having himself together with the decoctioner and the purveyor

(*páchaka* and *póshaka*) tasted it, the physician shall hand over the

medicine to the king. The same rule shall apply to liquor and other

beverages.

Having cleaned their person and hands by fresh bath and put

on newly-washed garment, servants in charge of dresses, and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

58

toilets shall serve the king with dresses and toilets received under

seal from the officer in charge of the harem.

Prostitutes shall do the duty of bath-room servants,

shampooers, bedding-room servants, washermen, and flower

garland-makers, while presenting to the king water, scents, fragrant

powders, dress and garlands, servants along with the above

prostitutes shall first touch these things by their eyes, arms and

breast.

The same rule shall apply to whatever has been received from

an outside person.

Musicians shall entertain the king with those kinds of

amusements in which weapons, fire, and poison are not made use

of. Musical instruments as well as the ornaments of horses,

chariots, and elephants shall invariably be kept inside (the harem).

The king shall mount over chariots or beasts of burden only

when they are first mounted over by his hereditary driver or rider.

He shall get into a boat only when it is piloted by a

trustworthy sailor and is conjoined to a second boat. He shall never

sail on any ship which had once been weatherbeaten; and (while

boating on a good ship) his army shall all the while stand on the

bank or the shore.

He shall get into such water as is free from large fishes

(*matsya*) and crocodiles. He shall ramble only in such forests as are

freed from snakes and crocodiles (*gráha*).

With a view of acquiring efficiency in the skill of shooting

arrows at moving objects, he shall engage himself in sports in such

forests as are cleared by hunters and hound-keepers from the fear

of high-way-robbers, snakes, and enemies.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

59

Attended by trustworthy bodyguard armed with weapons, he

shall give interview to saints and ascetics. Surrounded by his

assembly of minsters, he shall receive the envoys of foreign states.

Attired in military dress and having mounted a horse, a

chariot, or an elephant, he shall go see his army equipped in

military array.

On the occaision of going out of, and coming into (the

capital), the king‟s road shall on both sides be well guarded by

staff-bearers and freed from the presence of armed persons,

ascetics, and the cripple (vyanga).

He shall go to witness festive trains, fairs (*yátra*), procession,

or sacrificial performances only when they are policed by bands of

„The Ten Communities.‟ (*dasavargikadhishthitáni*).

Just as he attends to the personal safety of others through the

agency of spies, so a wise king shall also take care to secure his

person from external dangers.

[Thus ends Chapter XX, “Personal Safety” in Book I, “Concerning

Discipline” of the Arthasástra of Kautilya. With this, the Book I,

“Concerning Discipline” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya, has

ended.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 1-50.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

60

# Book II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents"

## CHAPTER I. FORMATION OF VILLAGES.

EITHER by inducing foreigners to immigrate

(*paradesapraváhanena*) or by causing the thickly-populated

centres of his own kingdom to send forth the excessive population

(*svadésábhishyandavámanéna vá*), the king may construct villages

either on new sites or on old ruins (*bhútapúrvama vá*).

Villages consisting each of not less than a hundred families

and of not more than five-hundred families of agricultural people

of *súdra* caste, with boundaries extending as far as a *krósa* (2250

yds.) or two, and capable of protecting each other shall be formed.

Boundaries shall be denoted by a river, a mountain, forests,

bulbous plants (*grishti*), caves, artificial buildings (*sétubandha*), or

by trees such as *sálmali* (silk cotton tree), samí (*Acacia Suma*), and

kshíravriksha (milky trees).

There shall be set up a *stháníya* (a fortress of that name) in the

centre of eight-hundred villages, a drónamukha in the centre of

four-hundred villages, a khárvátika in the centre of two-hundred

villages and sangrahana in the midst of a collection of ten villages.

There shall be constructed in the extremities of the kingdom

forts manned by boundary-guards (*antapála*) whose duty shall be

to guard the entrances into the kingdom. The interior of the

kingdom shall be watched by trap-keepers (*vágurika*), archers

(*sábara*), hunters (*pulinda*), chandálas, and wild tribes

(*aranyachára*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

61

Those who perform sacrifices (*ritvik*), spiritual guides,

priests, and those learned in the Vedas shall be granted

Brahmadaya lands yielding sufficient produce and exempted from

taxes and fines (*adandkaráni*).

Superintendents, Accountants, Gopas, Sthánikas, Veterinary

Surgeons (*Aníkastha*), physicians, horse-trainers, and messengers

shall also be endowed with lands which they shall have no right to

alienate by sale or mortgage.

Lands prepared for cultivation shall be given to tax-payers

(*karada*) only for life (*ekapurushikáni*).

Unprepared lands shall not be taken away from those who are

preparing them for cultivation.

Lands may be confiscated from those who do not cultivate

them; and given to others; or they may be cultivated by village

labourers (*grámabhritaka*) and traders (*vaidehaka*), lest those

owners who do not properly cultivate them might pay less (to the

government). If cultivators pay their taxes easily, they may be

favourably supplied with grains, cattle, and money.

The king shall bestow on cultivators only such favour and

remission (*anugrahaparihárau*) as will tend to swell the treasury,

and shall avoid such as will deplete it.

A king with depleted treasury will eat into the very vitality of

both citizens and country people. Either on the occasion of opening

new settlements or on any other emergent occasions, remission of

taxes shall be made.

He shall regard with fatherly kindness those who have passed

the period of remission of taxes.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

62

He shall carry on mining operations and manufactures,

exploit timber and elephant forests, offer facilities for

cattlebreeding and commerce, construct roads for traffic both by

land and water, and set up market towns (*panyapattana*).

He shall also construct reservoirs (*sétu*) filled with water

either perennial or drawn from some other source. Or he may

provide with sites, roads, timber, and other necessary things those

who construct reservoirs of their own accord. Likewise in the

construction of places of pilgrimage (*punyasthána*) and of groves.

Whoever stays away from any kind of cooperative

construction (*sambhúya setubhandhát*) shall send his servants and

bullocks to carry on his work, shall have a share in the expenditure,

but shall have no claim to the profit.

The king shall exercise his right of ownership (*swámyam*)

with regard to fishing, ferrying and trading in vegetables

(*haritapanya*) in reservoirs or lakes (*sétushu*).

Those who do not heed the claims of their slaves (*dása*),

hirelings (*áhitaka*), and relatives shall be taught their duty.

The king shall provide the orphans, (*bála*), the aged, the

infirm, the afflicted, and the helpless with maintenance. He shall

also provide subsistence to helpless women when they are carrying

and also to the children they give birth to.

Elders among the villagers shall improve the property of

bereaved minors till the latter attain their age; so also the property

of Gods.

When a capable person other than an apostate (*patita*) or

mother neglects to maintain his or her child, wife, mother, father,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

63

minor brothers, sisters, or widowed girls (*kanyá vidhaváscha*), he

or she shall be punished with a fine of twelve panas.

When, without making provision for the maintenance of his

wife and sons, any person embraces ascetism, he shall be punished

with the first amercement; likewise any person who converts a

woman to ascetism (*pravrájayatah*).

Whoever has passed the age of copulation may become an

ascetic after distributing the properties of his own acquisition

(among his sons); otherwise, he will be punished.

No ascetic other than a *vánaprastha* (forest-hermit), no

company other than the one of local birth (*sajátádanyassanghah*),

and no guilds of any kind other than local cooperative guilds

(*sámuttháyiká-danyassamayánubandhah*) shall find entrance into

the villages of the kingdom. Nor shall there be in villages buildings

(*sáláh*) intended for sports and plays. Nor, in view of procuring

money, free labour, commodities, grains, and liquids in plenty,

shall actors, dancers, singers, drummers, buffoons (*vágjívana*), and

bards (*kusílava*) make any disturbance to the work of the villagers;

for helpless villagers are always dependent and bent upon their

fields.

The king shall avoid taking possession of any country which

is liable to the inroads of enemies and wild tribes and which is

harassed by frequent visitations of famine and pestilence. He shall

also keep away from expensive sports.

He shall protect agriculture from the molestation of

oppressive fines, free labour, and taxes (*dandavishtikarábádhaih*);

herds of cattle from thieves, tigers, poisonous creatures and

cattle-disease.

He shall not only clear roads of traffic from the molestations

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

64

of courtiers (*vallabha*), of workmen (*kármika*), of robbers, and of

boundary-guards, but also keep them from being destroyed by

herds of cattle.

Thus the king shall not only keep in good repair timber and

elephant forests, buildings, and mines created in the past, but also

set up new ones.

[Thus ends Chapter I, "Formation of Villages” in Book II, “The

Duties of Government Superintendents,” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of twenty-second chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. DIVISION OF LAND.

THE King shall make provision for pasture grounds on

uncultivable tracts.

Bráhmans shall be provided with forests for sóma plantation,

for religious learning, and for the performance of penance, such

forests being rendered safe from the dangers from animate or

inanimate objects, and being named after the tribal name (*gótra*) of

the Bráhmans resident therein.

A forest as extensive as the above, provided with only one

entrance rendered inaccessible by the construction of ditches all

round, with plantations of delicious fruit trees, bushes, bowers, and

thornless trees, with an expansive lake of water full of harmless

animals, and with tigers (*vyála*), beasts of prey (*márgáyuka*), male

and female elephants, young elephants, and bisons—all deprived

of their claws and teeth—shall be formed for the king's sports.

On the extreme limit of the country or in any other suitable

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

65

locality, another game-forest with game-beasts; open to all, shall

also be made. In view of procuring all kinds of forest-produce

described elsewhere, one or several forests shall be specially

reserved.

Manufactories to prepare commodities from forest produce

shall also be set up.

Wild tracts shall be separated from timber-forests. In the

extreme limit of the country, elephant forests, separated from wild

tracts, shall be formed.

The superintendent of forests with his retinue of forest guards

shall not only maintain the up-keep of the forests, but also acquaint

himself with all passages for entrance into, or exit from such of

them as are mountainous or boggy or contain rivers or lakes.

Whoever kills an elephant shall be put to death.

Whoever brings in the pair of tusks of an elephant, dead from

natural causes, shall receive a reward of four-and-a-half panas.

Guards of elephant forests, assisted by those who rear

elephants, those who enchain the legs of elephants, those who

guard the boundaries, those who live in forests, as well as by those

who nurse elephants, shall, with the help of five or seven female

elephants to help in tethering wild ones, trace the whereabouts of

herds of elephants by following the course of urine and dungs left

by elephants and along forest-tracts covered over with branches of

Bhallátaki (*Semicarpus Anacardium*), and by observing the spots

where elephants slept or sat before or left dungs, or where they had

just destroyed the banks of rivers or lakes. They shall also precisely

ascertain whether any mark is due to the movements of elephants

in herds, of an elephant roaming single, of a stray elephant, of a

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

66

leader of herds, of a tusker, of a rogue elephant, of an elephant in

rut, of a young elephant, or of an elephant that has escaped from the

cage.

Experts in catching elephants shall follow the instructions

given to them by the elephant doctor (*aníkastha*) and catch such

elephants as are possessed of auspicious characteristics and good

character.

The victory of kings (in battles) depends mainly upon

elephants; for elephants, being of large bodily frame, are capable

not only to destroy the arrayed army of an enemy, his fortifications,

and encampments, but also to undertake works that are dangerous

to life.

Elephants bred in countries, such as Kálinga, Anga, Karúsa,

and the East are the best; those of the Dasárna and western

countries are of middle quality; and those of Sauráshtra and

Panchajana countries are of low quality. The might and energy of

all can, however, be improved by suitable training.

[Thus ends Chapter II, “Division of Land” in Book II, “The Duties

of Government Superintendents” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.

End of twenty-third chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. CONSTRUCTION OF FORTS

ON all the four quarters of the boundaries of the kingdom,

defensive fortifications against an enemy in war shall be

constructed on grounds best fitted for the purpose: a

water-fortification (*audaka*) such as an island in the midst of a

river, or a plain surrounded by low ground; a mountainous

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

67

fortification (*párvata*) such as a rocky tract or a cave; a desert

(*dhánvana*) such as a wild tract devoid of water and overgrown

with thicket growing in barren soil; or a forest fortification

(*vanadurga*) full of wagtail (*khajana*), water and thickets.

Of these, water and mountain fortifications are best suited to

defend populous centres; and desert and forest fortifications are

habitations in wilderness (*atavísthánam*).

Or with ready preparations for flight the king may have his

fortified capital (*stháníya*) as the seat of his sovereignty

(*samudayásthánam*) in the centre of his kingdom: in a locality

naturally best fitted for the purpose, such as the bank of the

confluence of rivers, a deep pool of perennial water, or of a lake or

tank, a fort, circular, rectangular, or square in form, surrounded

with an artificial canal of water, and connected with both land and

water paths (may be constructed).

Round this fort, three ditches with an intermediate space of

one danda (6 ft.) from each other, fourteen, twelve and ten dandas

respectively in width, with depth less by one quarter or by one-half

of their width, square at their bottom and one-third as wide as at

their top, with sides built of stones or bricks, filled with perennial

flowing water or with water drawn from some other source, and

possessing crocodiles and lotus plants shall be constructed.

At a distance of four dandas (24 ft.) from the (innermost)

ditch, a rampart six dandas high and twice as much broad shall be

erected by heaping mud upwards and by making it square at the

bottom, oval at the centre pressed by the trampling of elephants and

bulls, and planted with thorny and poisonous plants in bushes.

Gaps in the rampart shall be filled up with fresh earth.

Above the rampart, parapets in odd or even numbers and with

an intermediate, space of from 12 to 24 hastas from each other shall

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

68

be built of bricks and raised to a height of twice their breadth.

The passage for chariots shall be made of trunks of palm trees

or of broad and thick slabs of stones with spheres like the head of a

monkey carved on their surface; but never of wood as fire finds a

happy abode in it.

Towers, square throughout and with moveable staircase or

ladder equal to its height, shall also be constructed.

In the intermediate space measuring thirty dandas between

two towers, there shall be formed a broad street in two

compartments covered over with a roof and two-and-half times as

long as it is broad.

Between the tower and the broad street there shall be

constructed an Indrakósa which is made up of covering pieces of

wooden planks affording seats for three archers.

There shall also be made a road for Gods which shall

measure two hastas inside (the towers ?), four times as much by the

sides, and eight hastas along the parapet.

Paths (*chárya*, to ascend the parapet ?) as broad as a danda (6

ft.) or two shall also be made.

In an unassailable part (of the rampart), a passage for flight

(*pradhávitikám*), and a door for exit (*nishkuradwáram*) shall be

made.

Outside the rampart, passages for movements shall be closed

by forming obstructions such as a knee-breaker (*jánubhanjaní*), a

trident, mounds of earth, pits, wreaths of thorns, instruments made

like the tail of a snake, palm leaf, triangle, and of dog's teeth, rods,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

69

ditches filled with thorns and covered with sand, frying pans and

water-pools.

Having made on both sides of the rampart a circular hole of a

danda-and-a-half in diametre, an entrance gate (to the fort)

one-sixth as broad as the width of the street shall be fixed.

A square (*chaturásra*) is formed by successive addition of

one danda up to eight dandas commencing from five, or in the

proportion, one-sixth of the length up to one-eighth.

The rise in level (*talotsedhah*) shall be made by successive

addition of one hasta up to 18 hastas commencing from 15 hastas.

In fixing a pillar, six parts are to form its height, on the floor,

twice as much (12 parts) to be entered into the ground, and

one-fourth for its capital.

Of the first floor, five parts (are to be taken) for the formation

of a hall (*sálá*), a well, and a boundary-house; two-tenths of it for

the formation of two platforms opposite to each other

(*pratimanchau*); an upper storey twice as high as its width;

carvings of images; an upper-most storey, half or three-fourths as

broad as the first floor; side walls built of bricks; on the left side, a

staircase circumambulating from left to right; on the right, a secret

staircase hidden in the wall; a top-support of ornamental arches

(*toranasirah*) projecting as far as two hastas; two door-panels,

(each) occupying three-fourths of the space; two and two

cross-bars (*parigha*, to fasten the door); an iron-bolt (*indrakila*) as

long as an aratni (24 angulas); a boundary gate (*ánidváram*) five

hastas in width; four beams to shut the door against elephants; and

turrets (*hastinakha*) (outside the rampart) raised up to the height of

the face of a man, removable or irremovable, or made of earth in

places devoid of water.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

70

A turret above the gate and starting from the top of the parapet

shall be constructed, its front resembling an alligator up to

three-fourths of its height.

In the centre of the parapets, there shall be constructed a deep

lotus pool; a rectangular building of four compartments, one within

the other; an abode of the Goddess Kumiri (*Kumárípuram*), having

its external area one-and-a-half times as broad as that of its

innermost room; a circular building with an arch way; and in

accordance with available space and materials, there shall also be

constructed canals (*kulyá*) to hold weapons and three times as long

as broad.

In those canals, there shall be collected stones, spades

(*kuddála*), axes (*kuthári*), varieties of staffs, cudgel (*musrinthi*),

hammers (*mudgara*), clubs, discus, machines (*yantra*), and such

weapons as can destroy a hundred persons at once (*sataghni*),

together with spears, tridents, bamboo-sticks with pointed edges

made of iron, camel-necks, explosives (*agnisamyógas*), and

whatever else can be devised and formed from available materials.

[Thus ends Chapter III, "Construction of Forts,” in Book II, “The

Duties of Government Superintendents” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of twenty-fourth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. BUILDINGS WITHIN THE FORT.

DEMARCATION of the ground inside the fort shall be made

first by opening three royal roads from west to east and three from

south to north.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

71

The fort shall contain twelve gates, provided with both a land

and water-way kept secret.

Chariot-roads, royal roads, and roads leading to drónamukha,

stháníya, country parts, and pasture grounds shall each be four

dandas (24 ft.) in width.

Roads leading to sayóníya (?), military stations (*vyúha*),

burial or cremation grounds, and to villages shall be eight dandas in

width.

Roads to gardens, groves, and forests shall be four dandas.

Roads leading to elephant forests shall be two dandas.

Roads for chariots shall be five aratnis (7½ ft.). Roads for

cattle shall measure four aratnis; and roads for minor quadrupeds

and men two aratnis.

Royal buildings shall be constructed on strong grounds.

In the midst of the houses of the people of all the four castes

and to the north from the centre of the ground inside the fort, the

king‟s palace, facing either the north or the east shall, as described

elsewhere (Chapter XX, Book I), be constructed occupying

one-ninth of the whole site inside the fort.

Royal teachers, priests, sacrificial place, water-reservoir and

ministers shall occupy sites east by north to the palace.

Royal kitchen, elephant stables, and the store-house shall be

situated on sites east by south.

On the eastern side, merchants trading in scents, garlands,

grains, and liquids, together with expert artisans and the people of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

72

Kshatriya caste shall have their habitations.

The treasury, the accountant‟s office, and various

manufactories (*karmanishadyáscha*) shall be situated on sites

south by east.

The store-house of forest produce and the arsenal shall be

constructed on sites south by west.

To the south, the superintendents of the city, of commerce, of

manufactories, and of the army as well as those who trade in

cooked rice, liquor, and flesh, besides prostitutes, musicians, and

the people of Vaisya caste shall live.

To the west by south, stables of asses, camels, and working

house.

To the west by north, stables of conveyances and chariots.

To the west, artisans manufacturing worsted threads, cotton

threads, bamboo-mats, skins, armours, weapons, and gloves as

well as the people of Súdra caste shall have their dwellings.

To the north by west, shops and hospitals.

To the north by east, the treasury and the stables of cows and

horses.

To the north, the royal tutelary deity of the city, ironsmiths,

artisans working on precious stones, as well as Bráhmans shall

reside.

In the several corners, guilds and corporations of workmen

shall reside.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

73

In the centre of the city, the apartments of Gods such as

Aparájita, Apratihata, Jayanta, Vaijayanta, Siva, Vaisravana,

Asvina (divine physicians), and the honourable liquor-house

(*Srí-madiragriham*), shall be situated.

In the corners, the guardian deities of the ground shall be

appropriately set up.

Likewise the principal gates such as Bráhma, Aindra, Yámya,

and Sainápatya shall be constructed; and at a distance of 100 bows

(dhanus = 108 angulas) from the ditch (on the counterscarp side),

places of worship and pilgrimage, groves and buildings shall be

constructed.

Guardian deities of all quarters shall also be set up in

quarters appropriate to them.

Either to the north or the east, burial or cremation grounds

shall be situated; but that of the people of the highest caste shall be

to the south (of the city).

Violation of this rule shall be punished with the first

amercement.

Heretics and Chandálas shall live beyond the burial grounds.

Families of workmen may in any other way be provided with

sites befitting with their occupation and field work. Besides

working in flower-gardens, fruit-gardens, vegetable-gardens, and

paddy-fields allotted to them, they (families) shall collect grains

and merchandise in abundance as authorised.

There shall be a water-well for every ten houses.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

74

Oils, grains, sugar, salt, medicinal articles, dry or fresh

vegetables, meadow grass, dried flesh, haystock, firewood, metals,

skins, charcoal, tendons (*snáyu*), poison, horns, bamboo, fibrous

garments, strong timber, weapons, armour, and stones shall also be

stored (in the fort) in such quantities as can be enjoyed for years

together without feeling any want. Of such collection, old things

shall be replaced by new ones when received.

Elephants, cavalry, chariots, and infantry shall each be

officered with many chiefs inasmuch as chiefs, when many, are

under the fear of betrayal from each other and scarcely liable to the

insinuations and intrigues of an enemy.

The same rule shall hold good with the appointment of

boundary, guards, and repairers of fortifications.

Never shall *báhirikas* who are dangerous to the well being of

cities and countries be kept in forts. They may either be thrown in

country parts or compelled to pay taxes.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, “ Buildings within the Fort” in Book II,

“The Duties of the Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of twenty-fifth chapter from the

beginning.]

**CHAPTER V. THE DUTIES OF THE CHAMBERLAIN.**

THE Chamberlain (*sannidhátá* = one who ever attends upon

the king) shall see to the construction of the treasury-house,

trading-house, the store-house of grains, the storehouse of forest

produce, the armoury and the jail.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

75

Having dug up a square well not too deep to be moist with

water, having paved both the bottom and the sides with slabs of

stone, he shall, by using strong timber, construct in that well a

cage-like under-ground chamber of three stories high, the top-most

being on a level with the surface of the ground, with many

compartments of various design, with floor plastered with small

stones, with one door, with a movable staircase, and solemnised

with the presence of the guardian deity.

Above this chamber, the treasury house closed on both sides,

with projecting roofs and extensively opening into the store-house

shall be built of bricks.

He may employ outcast men (*abhityakta-purusha*) to build at

the extreme boundary of the kingdom a palacious mansion to hold

substantial treasure against dangers and calamities.

The trading-house shall be a quadrangle enclosed by four

buildings with one door, with pillars built of burnt bricks, with

many compartments, and with a row of pillars on both sides kept

apart.

The store-house shall consist of many spacious rooms and

enclose within itself the store-house of forest produce separated

from it by means of wall and connected with both the underground

chamber and the armoury.

The court (*dharmasthíya*) and the office of the ministers

(*mahámátríya*) shall be built in a separate locality.

Provided with separate accommodation for men and women

kept apart and with many compartments well guarded, a jail shall

also be constructed.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

76

All these buildings shall be provided with halls (*sála*) pits

(*kháta*—privy [?]), water-well, bath-room, remedies against fire

and poison, with cats, mangooses, and with necessary means to

worship the guardian gods appropriate to each.

In (front of) the store-house a bowl (*kunda*) with its mouth as

wide as an *aratni* (24 *angulag*) shall be set up as rain-gauge

(*varshamána*).

Assisted by experts having necessary qualifications and

provided with tools and instruments, the chamberlain shall attend

to the business of receiving gems either old or new, as well as raw

materials of superior or inferior value.

In cases of deception in gems, both the deceiver and the

abettor shall be punished with the highest amercement; in the case

of superior commodities, they shall be punished with the

middle-most amercement; and in that of commodities of inferior

value, they shall be compelled not only to restore the same, but also

pay a fine equal to the value of the articles.

He shall receive only such gold coins as have been declared to

be pure by the examiner of coins.

Counterfeit coins shall be cut into pieces.

Whoever brings in counterfeit coins shall be punished with

the first amercement.

Grains pure and fresh shall be received in full measures;

otherwise a fine of twice the value of the grains shall be imposed.

The same rule shall hold good with the receipt of

merchandise, raw materials, and weapons.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

77

In all departments, whoever, whether as an officer (*yukta*), a

clerk (*upayukta*), or a servant (*tatpurusha*), misappropriates sums

from one to four panas or any other valuable things shall be

punished with the first, middlemost, and highest amercements and

death respectively.

If the officer who is in charge of the treasury causes loss in

money, he shall be whipped (*ghátah*), while his abettors shall

receive half the punishment; if the loss is due to ignorance, he shall

be censured.

If, with the intention of giving a hint, robbers are frightened

(by the guards), (the latter) shall be tortured to death.

Hence assisted by trustworthy persons, the chamberlain shall

attend to the business of revenue collection.

He shall have so thorough a knowledge of both external and

internal incomes running even for a hundred years that, when

questioned, he can point out without hesitation the exact amount of

net balance that remains after expenditure has been met with.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "The Duty of the Chamberlain" in Book II,

"The Duties of the Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of twenty-sixth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER VI. THE BUSINESS OF COLLECTION OF REVENUE BY THE COLLECTOR-GENERAL.

THE Collector-General shall attend to (the collection of

revenue from) forts (*durga*), country-parts (*ráshtra*), mines

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

78

(*khani*), buildings and gardens (*setu*), forests (*vana*), herds of cattle

(*vraja*), and roads of traffic (*vanikpatha*).

Tolls, fines, weights and measures, the town-clerk

(*nágaraka*), the superintendent of coinage (*lakshanádhyakshah*),

the superintendent of seals and pass-ports, liquor, slaughter of

animals, threads, oils,. ghee, sugar (*kshára*), the state-goldsmith

(*sauvarnika*), the warehouse of merchandise, the prostitute,

gambling, building sites (*vástuka*), the corporation of artisans and

handicrafts-men (*kárusilpiganah*), the superintendent of gods, and

taxes collected at the gates and from the people (known as)

*Báhirikas* come under the head of forts.

Produce from crown-lands (*sita*), portion of produce payable

to the government (*bhága*), religious taxes (*bali*), taxes paid in

money (*kara*), merchants, the superintendent of rivers, ferries,

boats, and ships, towns, pasture grounds, road-cess (*vartani*), ropes

(*rajjú*) and ropes to bind thieves (*chórarajjú*) come under the head

of country parts.

Gold, silver, diamonds, gems, pearls, corals, conch-shells,

metals (*loha*), salt, and other minerals extracted from plains and

mountain slopes come under the head of mines.

Flower-gardens, fruit-gardens, vegetable-gardens, wet fields,

and fields where crops are grown by sowing roots for seeds

(*múlavápáh*, *i.e.*, sugar-cane crops, etc.) come under *sétu*.

Game-forests, timber-forests, and elephant-forests are

forests.

Cows, buffaloes, goats, sheep, asses, camels, horses, and

mules come under the head of herds.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

79

Land and water ways are the roads of traffic.

All these form the body of income (*áyasaríram*).

Capital (*múla*), share (*bhága*), premia (*vyáji*), *parigha* (?)

fixed taxes (*klripta*), premia on coins (*rúpika*), and fixed fines

(*atyaya*) are the several forms of revenue (*áyamukha*, *i.e*., the

mouth from which income is to issue).

The chanting of auspicious hymns during the worship of gods

and ancestors, and on the occasion of giving gifts, the harem, the

kitchen, the establishment of messengers, the store-house, the

armoury, the warehouse, the store-house of raw materials,

manufactories (*karmánta*), free labourers (*vishti*), maintenance of

infantry, cavalry, chariots, and elephants, herds of cows, the

museum of beasts, deer, birds, and snakes, and storage of firewood

and fodder constitute the body of expenditure (*vyayasaríram*).

The royal year, the month, the *paksha*, the day, the dawn

(*vyushta*), the third and seventh *pakshas* of (the seasons such as)

the rainy season, the winter season, and the summer short of their

days, the rest complete, and a separate intercalary month are (the

divisions of time).

He shall also pay attention to the work in hand (*karaníya*), the

work accomplished (*siddham*), part of a work in hand (*sésha*),

receipts, expenditure, and net balance.

The business of upkeeping the government (*samsthánam*),

the routine work (*prachárah*), the collection of necessaries of life,

the collection and audit of all kinds of revenue,—these constitute

the work in hand.

That which has been credited to the treasury; that which has

been taken by the king; that which has been spent in connection

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

80

with the capital city not entered (into the register) or continued

from year before last, the royal command dictated or orally

intimated to be entered (into the register),—all these constitute the

work accomplished.

Preparation of plans for profitable works, balance of fines

due, demand for arrears of revenue kept in abeyance, and

examination of accounts,—these constitute what is called part of a

work in hand which may be of little or no value.

Receipts may be (1) current, (2) last balance, and (3)

accidental (*anyajátah*= received from external source).

What is received day after day is termed current (*vartamána*).

Whatever has been brought forward from year before last,

whatever is in the hands of others, and whatever has changed hands

is termed last balance (*puryushita*).

Whatever has been lost and forgotten (by others), fines levied

from government servants, marginal revenue (*pársva*),

compensation levied for any damage (*párihínikam*), presentations

to the king, the property of those who have fallen victims to

epidemics (*damaragatakasvam*) leaving no sons, and

treasure-troves,---all these constitute accidental receipts.

Investment of capital (*vikshépa*), the relics of a wrecked

undertaking, and the savings from an estimated outlay are the

means to check expenditure (*vyayapratyayah*).

The rise in price of merchandise due to the use of different

weights and measures in selling is termed *vyáji*; the enhancement

of price due to bidding among buyers is also another source of

profit.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

81

Expenditure is of two kinds—daily expenditure and

profitable expenditure.

What is continued every day is daily.

Whatever is earned once in a *paksha*, a month, or a year is

termed profit.

Whatever is spent on these two heads is termed as daily

expenditure and profitable expenditure respectively.

That which remains after deducting all the expenditure

already incurred and excluding all revenue to be realised is net

balance (*nívi*) which may have been either just realised or brought

forward.

Thus a wise collector-general shall conduct the work of

revenue-collection, increasing the income and decreasing the

expenditure.

[Thus ends Chapter VI, “The Business of Collection of Revenue by

the Collector-General” in Book II, “The Duties of Government

Superintendents” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

twenty-seventh chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER VII. THE BUSINESS OF KEEPING UP ACCOUNTS IN THE OFFICE OF ACCOUNTANTS.

THE superintendent of accounts shall have the accountant's

office constructed with its door facing either the north or the east,

with seats (for clerks) kept apart and with shelves of account-books

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

82

well arranged.

Therein the number of several departments; the description of

the work carried on and of the results realised in several

manufactories (*Karmánta*); the amount of profit, loss, expenditure,

delayed earnings, the amount of *vyáji* (premia in kind or cash)

realised, —the status of government agency employed, the amount

of wages paid, the number of free labourers engaged (*vishti*)

pertaining to the investment of capital on any work; likewise in the

case of gems and commodities of superior or inferior value, the rate

of their price, the rate of their barter, the counterweights

(*pratimána*) used in weighing them, their number, their weight,

and their cubical measure; the history of customs, professions, and

transactions of countries, villages, families, and corporations; the

gains in the form of gifts to the king's courtiers, their title to possess

and enjoy lands, remission of taxes allowed to them, and payment

of provisions and salaries to them; the gains to the wives and sons

of the king in gems, lands, prerogatives, and provisions made to

remedy evil portents; the treaties with, issues of ultimatum to, and

payments of tribute from or to, friendly or inimical kings,— all

these shall be regularly entered in prescribed registers.

From these books the superintendent shall furnish the

accounts as to the forms of work in hand, of works accomplished,

of part of works in hand, of receipts, of expenditure, of net balance,

and of tasks to be undertaken in each of the several departments.

To supervise works of high, middling and low description,

superintendents with corresponding qualifications shall be

employed.

The king will have to suffer in the end if he curtails the fixed

amount of expenditure on profitable works.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

83

(When a man engaged by Government for any work absents

himself), his sureties who conjointly received (wages?) from the

government, or his sons, brothers, wives, daughters or servants

living upon his work shall bear the loss caused to the Government.

The work of 354 days and nights is a year. Such a work shall

be paid for more or less in proportion to its quantity at the end of

the month, *Ashádha* (about the middle of July). (The work during)

the intercalary month shall be (separately) calculated.

A government officer, not caring to know the information

gathered by espionage and neglecting to supervise the despatch of

work in his own department as regulated, may occasion loss of

revenue to the government owing to his ignorance, or owing to his

idleness when he is too weak to endure the trouble of activity, or

due to inadvertence in perceiving sound and other objects of sense,

or by being timid when he is afraid of clamour, unrighteousness,

and untoward results, or owing to selfish desire when he is

favourably disposed towards those who are desirous to achieve

their own selfish ends, or by cruelty due to anger, or by lack of

dignity when he is surrounded by a host of learned and needy

sycophants, or by making use of false balance, false measures, and

false calculation owing to greediness.

The school of Manu hold that a fine equal to the loss of

revenue and multiplied by the serial number of the circumstances

of the guilt just narrated in order shall be imposed upon him.

The school of *Parásara* hold that the fine in all the cases shall

be eight times the amount lost.

The school of *Brihaspathi* say that it shall

be ten times the amount.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

84

The school of *Usanas* say that it shall be

twenty times the amount.

But Kautilya says that it shall be proportional to the guilt.

Accounts shall be submitted in the month of *Ashádha*.

When they (the accountants of different districts) present

themselves with sealed books, commodities and net revenue, they

shall all be kept apart in one place so that they cannot carry on

conversation with each other. Having heard from them the totals of

receipts, expenditure, and net revenue, the net amount shall be

received.

By how much the superintendent of a department augments

the net total of its revenue either by increasing any one of the items

of its receipts or by decreasing anyone of the items of expenditure,

he shall be rewarded eight times that amount. But when it is

reversed (*i.e.*, when the net total is decreased), the award shall also

be reversed (*i.e*., he shall be made to pay eight times the decrease).

Those accountants who do not present themselves in time or

do not produce their account books along with the net revenue shall

be fined ten times the amount due from them.

When a superintendent of accounts (*káranika*) does not at

once proceed to receive and check the accounts when the clerks

(*kármika*) are ready, he shall be punished with the first

amercement. In the reverse case (*i.e*., when the clerks are not

ready), the clerks shall be punished with double the first

amercement.

All the ministers (*mahámáras*) shall together narrate the

whole of the actual accounts pertaining to each department.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

85

Whoever of these (ministers or clerks ?) is of undivided

counsel or keeps himself aloof, or utters falsehood shall be

punished with the highest amercement.

When an accountant has not prepared the table of daily

accounts (*akritáhorúpaharam*), he may be given a month more (for

its preparation). After the lapse of one month he shall be fined at

the rate of 200 *panas* for each month (during which he delays the

accounts).

If an accountant has to write only a small portion of the

accounts pertaining to net revenue, he may be allowed five nights

to prepare it.

Then the table of daily accounts submitted by him along with

the net revenue shall be checked with reference to the regulated

forms of righteous transactions and precedents and by applying

such arithmetical processes as addition, subtraction, inference and

by espionage. It shall also be verified with reference to (such

divisions of time as) days, five nights, *pakshás*, months,

four-months, and the year.

The receipt shall be verified with reference to the place and

time pertaining to them, the form of their collection (*i.e*., capital,

share), the amount of the present and past produce, the person who

has paid it, the person who caused its payment, the officer who

fixed the amount payable, and the officer who received it. The

expenditure shall be verified with reference to the cause of the

profit from any source in the place and time pertaining to each

item, the amount payable, the amount paid, the person who ordered

the collection, the person who remitted the same, the person who

delivered it, and the person who finally received it.

Likewise the net revenue shall be verified with reference to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

86

the place, time, and source pertaining to it, its standard of fineness

and quantity, and the persons who are employed to guard the

deposits and magazines (of grains, etc.).

When an officer (*káranika*) does not facilitate or prevents the

execution of the king's order, or renders the receipts and

expenditure otherwise than prescribed, he shall be punished with

the first amercement.

Any clerk who violates or deviates from the prescribed form

of writing accounts, enters what is unknown to him, or makes

double or treble entries (*punaruktam*) shall be fined 12 *panas*.

He who scrapes off the net total shall be doubly punished.

He who eats it up shall be fined eight times.

He who causes loss of revenue shall not only pay a fine equal

to five times the amount lost (*panchabandha*), but also make good

the loss. In case of uttering a lie, the punishment levied for theft

shall be imposed. (When an entry lost or omitted) is made later or is

made to appear as forgotten, but added later on recollection, the

punishment shall be double the above.

The king shall forgive an offence when it is trifling, have

satisfaction even when the revenue is scanty, and honour with

rewards (*pragraha*) such of his superintendents as are of immense

benefit to him.

[Thus ends Chapter VII, "The Business of Keeping up the

Accounts in the Officeof Accountants," in Book II, "The Duties of

Government Superintendents" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End

of twenty-eighth chapter from the beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

87

## CHAPTER VIII. DETECTION OF WHAT IS EMBEZZLED BY GOVERNMENT SERVANTS OUT OF STATE REVENUE.

ALL undertakings depend upon finance. Hence foremost

attention shall be paid to the treasury.

Public prosperity (*prachárasamriddhih*), rewards for good

conduct (*charitránugrahah*), capture of thieves, dispensing with

(the service of too many) government servants, abundance of

harvest, prosperity of commerce, absence of troubles and

calamities (*upasargapramokshah*), diminution of remission of

taxes, and income in gold (*hiranyópáyanam*) are all conducive to

financial prosperity.

Obstruction (*pratibandha*), loan (*prayóga*), trading

(*vyavahára*), fabrication of accounts (*avastára*), causing the loss of

revenue (*parihápana*), self-enjoyment (*upabhóga*), barter

(*parivartana*), and defalcation (*apahára*) are the causes that tend to

deplete the treasury.

Failure to start an undertaking or to realise its results, or to

credit its profits (to the treasury) is known as obstruction. Herein a

fine of ten times the amount in question shall be imposed.

Lending the money of the treasury on

periodical interest is a loan.

Carrying on trade by making use of

government money is trading.

These two acts shall be punished with a fine of twice the

profit earned.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

88

Whoever makes as unripe the ripe time or as ripe the unripe

time (of revenue collection) is guilty of fabrication. Herein a fine of

ten times the amount (*panchabandha*) shall be imposed.

Whoever lessens a fixed amount of income or enhances the

expenditure is guilty of causing the loss of revenue. Herein a fine

of four times the loss shall be imposed.

Whoever enjoys himself or causes others to enjoy whatever

belongs to the king is guilty of self-enjoyment. Herein

death-sentence shall be passed for enjoying gems, middlemost

amercement for enjoying valuable articles, and restoration of the

articles together with a fine equal to their value shall be the

punishment for enjoying articles of inferior value.

The act of exchanging government articles for (similar)

articles of others is barter. This offence is explained by

self-enjoyment.

Whoever does not take into the treasury the fixed amount of

revenue collected, or does not spend what is ordered to be spent, or

misrepresents the net revenue collected is guilty of defalcation of

government money. Herein a fine of twelve times the amount shall

be imposed.

There are about forty ways of embezzlement: what is realised

earlier is entered later on; what is realised later is entered earlier;

what ought to be realised is not realised; what is hard to realise is

shown as realised; what is collected is shown as not collected; what

has not been collected is shown as collected; what is collected in

part is entered as collected in full; what is collected in full is

entered as collected in part; what is collected is of one sort, while

what is entered is of another sort; what is realised from one source

is shown as realised from another; what is payable is not paid; what

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

89

is not payable is paid; not paid in time; paid untimely; small gifts

made large gifts; large gifts made small gifts; what is gifted is of

one sort while what is entered is of another; the real donee is one

while the person entered (in the register) as donee is another; what

has been taken into (the treasury) is removed while what has not

been credited to it is shown as credited; raw materials that are not

paid for are entered, while those that are paid for are not entered; an

aggregate is scattered in pieces; scattered items are converted into

an aggregate; commodities of greater value are bartered for those

of small value; what is of smaller value is bartered for one of

greater value; price of commodities enhanced; price of

commodities lowered; number of nights increased; number of

nights decreased; the year not in harmony with its months; the

month not in harmony with its days; inconsistency in the

transactions carried on with personal supervision

(*samágamavishánah*); misrepresentation of the source of income;

inconsistency in giving charities; incongruity in representing the

work turned out; inconsistency in dealing with fixed items;

misrepresentation of test marks or the standard of fineness (of gold

and silver); misrepresentation of prices of commodities; making

use of false weight and measures; deception in counting articles;

and making use of false cubic measures such as *bhájan*— these are

the several ways of embezzlement.

Under the above circumstances, the persons concerned such

as the treasurer (*nidháyaka*), the prescriber (*nibandhaka*), the

receiver (*pratigráhaka*), the payer (*dáyaka*), the person who

caused the payment (dápaka), the ministerial servants of the officer

(*mantri-vaiyávrityakara*) shall each be separately examined. If any

one of these tells a lie, he shall receive the same punishment as the

chief-officer, (*yukta*) who committed the offence.

A proclamation in public (*prachára*) shall be made to the

effect "whoever has suffered at the hands of this offender may

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

90

make their grievances known to the king."

Those who respond to the call shall receive such

compensation as is equal to the loss they have sustained.

When there are a number of offences in which a single

officer is involved, and when his being guilty of *parókta* in any one

of those charges has been established, he shall be answerable for all

those offences. Otherwise (*i.e.,* when it is not established), he shall

be tried for each of the charges.

When a government servant has been proved to be guilty of

having misappropriated part of a large sum in question, he shall be

answerable for the whole.

Any informant (*súchaka*) who supplies information about

embezzlement just under perpetration shall, if he succeeds in

proving it, get as reward one-sixth of the amount in question; if he

happens to be a government servant (*bhritaka*), he shall get for the

same act one-twelfth of the amount.

If an informant succeeds in proving only a part of a big

embezzlement, he shall, nevertheless, get the prescribed share of

the part of the embezzled amount proved.

An informant who fails to prove (his assertion) shall be liable

to monetary or corporal punishment, and shall never be acquitted.

When the charge is proved, the informant may impute the

tale-bearing to someone else or clear himself in any other way from

the blame. Any informant who withdraws his assertion prevailed

upon by the insinuations of the accused shall be condemned to

death.

[Thus ends Chapter VIII, "Detection of what is Embezzled by

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

91

Government Servants out of State Revenue," in Book II, " The

Duties of Government Superintendents” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of twenty-ninth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IX. EXAMINATION OF THE CONDUCT OF GOVERNMENT SERVANTS.

THOSE who are possessed of ministerial qualifications shall,

in accordance with their individual capacity, be appointed as

superintendents of government departments. While engaged in

work, they shall be daily examined; for men are naturally

fickle-minded and like horses at work exhibit constant change in

their temper. Hence the agency and tools which they make use of,

the place and time of the work they are engaged in, as well as the

precise form of the work, the outlay, and the results shall always be

ascertained.

Without dissension and without any concert among

themselves, they shall carry on their work as ordered.

When in concert, they eat up (the revenue).

When in disunion, they mar the work.

Without bringing to the knowledge of their master (*bhartri*,

the king), they shall undertake nothing except remedial measures

against imminent dangers.

A fine of twice the amount of their daily pay and of the

expenditure (incurred by them) shall be fixed for any inadvertence

on their part.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

92

Whoever of the superintendents makes as much as, or more

than, the amount of fixed revenue shall be honoured with

promotion and rewards.

(My) teacher holds that that officer who spends too much and

brings in little revenue eats it up; while he who proves the revenue

(*i.e*., brings in more than he spends) as well as the officer who

brings inasmuch as he spends does not eat up the revenue.

But Kautilya holds that cases of embezzlement or no

embezzlement can be ascertained through spies alone.

Whoever lessens the revenue eats the king's wealth. If owing

to inadvertence he causes diminution in revenue, he shall be

compelled to make good the loss.

Whoever doubles the revenue eats into the vitality of the

country. If he brings in double the amount to the king, he shall, if

the offence is small, be warned not to repeat the same; but if the

offence be grave he should proportionally be punished.

Whoever spends the revenue (without bringing in any profit)

eats up the labour of workmen. Such an officer shall be punished in

proportion to the value of the work done, the number of days taken,

the amount of capital spent, and the amount of daily wages paid.

Hence the chief officer of each department (*adhikarana*) shall

thoroughly scrutinise the real amount of the work done, the

receipts realised from, and the expenditure incurred in that

departmental work both in detail and in the aggregate.

He shall also check (*pratishedhayet*) prodigal, spend-thrift

and niggardly persons.

Whoever unjustly eats up the property left by his father and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

93

grandfather is a prodigal person (*múlahara*).

Whoever eats all that he earns is a spendthrift (*tádátvika*).

Whoever hordes money, entailing hardship both on himself

and his servants is niggardly.

Whoever of these three kinds of persons has the support of a

strong party shall not be disturbed; but he who has no such support

shall be caught hold of (*paryádátavyah*).

Whoever is niggardly in spite of his immense property,

hordes, deposits, or sends out—hordes in his own house, deposits

with citizens or country people or sends out to foreign

countries;—a spy shall find out the advisers, friends, servants,

relations, partisans, as well as the income and expenditure of such a

niggardly person. Whoever in a foreign country carries out the

work of such a niggardly person shall be prevailed upon to give out

the secret. When the secret is known, the niggardly person shall be

murdered apparently under the orders of (his) avowed enemy.

Hence the superintendents of all the departments shall carry

on their respective works in company with accountants, writers,

coin-examiners, the treasurers, and military officers

(*uttarádhyaksha*).

Those who attend upon military officers and are noted for

their honesty and good conduct shall be spies to watch the conduct

of accountants and other clerks.

Each department shall be officered by several temporary

heads.

Just as it is impossible not to taste the honey or the poison that

finds itself at the tip of the tongue, so it is impossible for a

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

94

government servant not to eat up, at least, a bit of the king's

revenue. Just as fish moving under water cannot possibly be found

out either as drinking or not drinking water, so government

servants employed in the government work cannot be found out

(while) taking money (for themselves).

It is possible to mark the movements of birds flying high up in

the sky; but not so is it possible to ascertain the movement of

government servants of hidden purpose.

Government servants shall not only be confiscated of their

ill-earned hordes, but also be transferred from one work to another,

so that they cannot either misappropriate Government money or

vomit what they have eaten up.

Those who increase the king's revenue instead of eating it up

and are loyally devoted to him shall be made permanent in service.

[Thus ends Chapter IX, "Examination of the Conduct of

Government Servants" in Book II, "The Duties of Government

Superintendents" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of thirtieth

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER X. THE PROCEDURE OF FORMING ROYAL WRITS.

(TEACHERS) say that (the word) *sásana*, command, (is

applicable only to) royal writs (*sásana*).

Writs are of great importance to kings inasmuch as treaties

and ultimate leading to war depend upon writs.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

95

Hence one who is possessed of ministerial qualifications,

acquainted with all kinds of customs, smart in composition, good

in legible writing, and sharp in reading shall be appointed as a

writer (*lékhaka*).

Such a writer, having attentively listened to the king's order

and having well thought out the matter under consideration, shall

reduce the order to writing.

As to a writ addressed to a lord (*ísvara*), it shall contain a

polite mention of his country, his possessions, his family and his

name, and as to that addressed to a common man (*anisvara*), it

shall make a polite mention of his country and name.

Having paid sufficient attention to the caste, family, social

rank, age, learning (*sruta*), occupation, property, character (*síla*),

blood-relationship (*yaunánubandha*) of the addressee, as well as to

the place and time (of writing), the writer shall form a writ befitting

the position of the person addressed.

Arrangement of subject-matter (*arthakrama*), relevancy

(*sambandha*), completeness, sweetness, dignity, and lucidity are

the necessary qualities of a writ.

The act of mentioning facts in the order of their importance is

arrangement.

When subsequent facts are not contradictory to facts just or

previously mentioned, and so on till the completion of the letter, it

is termed relevancy.

Avoidance of redundancy or deficiency in words or letters;

impressive description of subject matter by citing reasons,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

96

examples, and illustrations; and the use of appropriate and suitably

strong words (*asrántapada*) is completeness.

The description in exquisite style of a good purport with a

pleasing effect is sweetness.

The use of words other than colloquial (*agrámya*) is dignity.

The use of well-known words is lucidity.

The alphabetical letters beginning with *Akára* are sixty-three.

The combination of letters is a word (*pada*). The word is of

four kinds—nouns, verbs, prefixes of verbs, and particles (*nipáta*).

A noun is that which signifies an essence (*satva*).

A verb is that which has no definite gender and signifies an

action.

'*Pra*' and other words are the prefixes of verbs.

'*Cha*' and other indeclinable words are particles.

A group of words conveying a complete sense is a sentence

(*vákya*).

Combination of words (*varga*) consisting of not more than

three words and not less than one word shall be so formed as to

harmonise with the meaning of immediately following words.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

97

The word, „*iti*,‟ is used to indicate the completion of a writ;

and also to indicate an oral message as in the phrase

„*váchikamasyeti*,‟ an oral message along with this (writ).

Calumniation (*nindá*), commendation, inquiry, narration

request, refusal, censure, prohibition, command, conciliation,

promise of help, threat, and persuasion are the thirteen purposes for

which writs are issued.

Calumniation (*nindá*) consists in speaking ill of one's family,

body and acts.

Commendation (*prasamsá*) consists in praising one's family,

person, and acts.

To inquire 'how is this?' is inquiry.

To point out the way as 'thus,' is narration (*ákhyána*).

To entreat as '*give*,' is request.

To say that 'I do not give,' is refusal.

To say that 'it is not worthy of thee,' is censure (*upálambhah*).

To say as 'do not do so,' is prohibition (*pratishedha*).

To say that 'this should be done,' is command (*chódaná*).

To say 'what I am, thou art that;

whichever article is mine is thine also, is

conciliation (*sántvam*). To hold out help

in trouble is promise of help

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

98

(*abhyavapattih*). Pointing out the evil

consequences that may occur in future is

threat (*abhibartsanam*). Persuasion is of

three kinds: that made for the purpose of

money, that made in case of one's failure

to fulfill a promise, and that made on

occasion of any trouble. Also writs of

information, of command, and of gift;

likewise writs of remission, of licence, of

guidance, of reply, and of general

proclamation are other varieties.

Thus says (the messenger); so says (the king); if there is any

truth in this (statement of the messenger), then the thing (agreed to)

should at once be surrendered; (the messenger) has informed the

king of all the deeds of the enemy. (*Parakára*);—this is the writ of

information which is held to be of various forms.

Wherever and especially regarding Government servants the

king's order either for punishment or for rewards is issued, it is

called writ of command (*ájnálékha*).

Where the bestowal of honour for deserving merit is

contemplated either as help to alleviate affliction (*ádhi*) or as gift

(*paridána*), there are issued writs of gift (*upagrahalekha*).

Whatever favour (*anugraha*) to special castes, cities, villages,

or countries of various description is announced in obedience to the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

99

king's order, it is called writ of remission (*pariháralékha*) by those

who know it.

Likewise licence or permission (*nisrishti*) shall be enjoined

either in word or deed; accordingly it is styled verbal order or writ

of licence.

Various kinds of providential visitations or well ascertained

evils of human make are believed to be the cause for issuing writs

of guidance (*pravrittilékha*) to attempt remedies against them.

When having read a letter and discussed as to the form of

reply thereto, a reply in accordance with the king's order is made, it

is called a writ of reply (*pratilékha*).

When the king directs his viceroys (*isvara*) and other officers

to protect and give material help to travellers either on roads or in

the interior of the country, it is termed writ of general proclamation

(*sarvatraga lekha*)

Negotiation, bribery, causing dissension, and open attack are

forms of stratagem (*upáya*).

Negotiation is of five kinds:—

Praising the qualities (of an enemy), narrating the mutual

relationship, pointing out mutual benefit, showing vast future

prospects, and identity of interests.

When the family, person, occupation, conduct, learning,

properties, etc. (of an enemy) are commended with due attention to

their worth, it is termed praising the qualities (*gunasankírthana*).

When the fact of having agnates, blood-relations, teachers

(*maukha*), priestly heirarchy (*srauva*), family, and friends in

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

100

common is pointed out, it is known as narration of mutual

relationship (*sambandhópakhyána*).

When both parties, the party of a king and that of his enemy

are shown to be helpful to each other, it is known as pointing out

mutual benefit (*parasparópakárasamdarsanam*).

Inducement such as 'this being done thus, such result will

accrue to both of us,' is showing vast future prospects

(*Ayátipradarsanam*).

To say 'what I am, that thou art; thou mayest utilize in thy

works whatever is mine,' is identity of interests

(*átmópanidhánam*).

Offering money is bribery (*upapradána*).

Causing fears and suspicion as well as threatening is known

as sowing dissension.

Killing, harassing, and plundering is attack (*danda*).

Clumsiness, contradiction, repetition, bad grammar, and

misarrangement are the faults of a writ.

Black and ugly leaf, (*kálapatrakamacháru*) and uneven and

uncoloured (*virága*) writing cause clumsiness (*akánti*).

Subsequent portion disagreeing with previous portion of a

letter, causes contradiction (*vyágháta*).

Stating for a second time what has already been said above is

repetition.

Wrong use of words in gender, number, time and case is bad

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

101

grammar (*apasabda*).

Division of paragraphs (*varga*) in unsuitable places, omission

of necessary division of paragraphs, and violation of any other

necessary qualities of a writ constitute misarrangement

(*samplava*).

Having followed all sciences and having fully observed forms

of writing in vogue, these rules of writing royal writs have been

laid down by Kautilya in the interest of kings.

[Thus ends Chapter X, "The Procedure of Forming Royal Writs,"

in Book II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents," of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilva. End of thirty-first chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XI. EXAMINATION OF GEMS THAT ARE TO BE ENTERED INTO THE TREASURY.

THE Superintendent of the treasury shall, in the presence of

qualified persons, admit into the treasury whatever he ought to,

gems (*ratna*) and articles of superior or inferior value.

*Támraparnika*, that which is produced in the *támraparni*;

*Pándyakavátaka*, that which is obtained in *Pándyakavata*; *Pásikya*,

that which is produced in the *Pása*; *Kauleya*, that which is

produced in the *kúla*; *Chaurneya*, that which is produced in the

*Chúrna*; *Mahéndra*, that which is obtained near the mountain of

*Mahéndra*; *Kárdamika*, that which is produced in the *Kárdama*;

*Srautasíya*, that which is produced in the *Srótasi*; *Hrádíya*, that

which is produced in (a deep pool of water known as) *Hrada*; and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

102

*Haimavata*, that which is obtained in the vicinity of the Himalayas

are the several varieties of pearls.

Oyster-shells, conch-shells, and other miscellaneous things

are the wombs of pearls.

That which is like *masúra* (*ervum hirsutam*), that which

consists of three joints (*triputaka*), that which is like a tortoise

(*kúrmaka*), that which is semi-circular, that which consists of

several coatings, that which is double (*yámaka*), that which is

scratched, that which is of rough surface, that which is possessed of

spots (*siktakam*), that which is like the water-pot used by an

ascetic, that which is of dark-brown or blue colour, and that which

is badly perforated are inauspicious.

That which is big, circular, without bottom (*nistalam*),

brilliant, white, heavy, soft to the touch, and properly perforated is

the best.

*Sirshaka*, *upasirshaka*, *prakándaka*, *avaghátaka*, and

*taralapratibandha* are several varieties of pearl necklaces.

One thousand and eight strings of pearls form the necklace,

*Indrachchhanda*.

Half of the above is *Vijayachchhanda*.

Sixty-four strings make up *Ardhahára*.

Fifty-four strings make up *Rasmikalápa*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

103

Thirty-two strings make up *Guchchha*.

Twenty-seven strings make up *Nakshatramála*.

Twenty-four strings make up *Ardhaguchchha*.

Twenty strings make up *Mánavaka*.

Half of the above is *Ardhamánavaka*.

The same necklaces with a gem at the centre are called by the

same names with the words '*Mánavaka*' suffixed to their respective

names.

When all the strings making up a necklace are of *sirshaka*

pattern, it is called pure necklace (*suddhahára*); likewise with

strings of other pattern. That which contains a gem in the centre is

(also) called *Ardhamánavaka*.

That which contains three slab-like gems (*triphalaka*) or five

slab-like gems (*panchaphalaka*) in the centre is termed

*Phalakahára*.

An only string of pearls is called pure *Ekávali*; the same with a

gem in the centre is called *Yashti*; the same variegated with gold

globules is termed *Ratnávali*.

A string made of pearls and gold globules alternately put is

called *Apavartaka*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

104

Strings of pearls with a gold wire between two strings is

called *Sopánaka*.

The same with a gem in the centre is called *Manisópánaka*.

The above will explain the formation of head-strings,

bracelets, anklets, waist-bands, and other varieties.

*Kauta*, that which is obtained in the *Kúta*; *Mauleyaka*, that

which is found in the *Múleya*; and *Párasamudraka*, that which is

found beyond the ocean are several varieties of gems.

That which possesses such pleasant colour as that of the red

lotus flower, or that of the flower of *Párijáta* (*Erithrina Indica*), or

that of the rising sun is the *Saugandhika* gem.

That which is of the colour of blue lotus flower, or of *sirísha*

(*Acacia Sirisa*), or of water, or of fresh bamboo, or of the colour of

the feathers of a parrot is the *Vaidúrya* gem *Pushyarága*,

*Gómútraka*, and *Gómédika* are other varieties of the same.

That which is characterised with blue lines, that which is of

the colour of the flower of *Kaláya* (a kind of *phraseolus*), or which

is intensely blue, which possesses the colour of *Jambu* fruit (rose

apple), or which is as blue as the clouds is the *Indraníla* gem;

*Nandaka* (pleasing gem), *Sravanmadhya* (that which appears to

pour water from its centre), *Sítavrishti* (that which appears to pour

cold shower), and *Súryakánta* (sunstone) are other forms of gems.

Gems are hexagonal, quadrangular, or circular possessed of

dazzling glow, pure, smooth, heavy, brilliant, transparent

(*antargataprabha*) and illuminating; such are the qualities of gems.

Faint colour, sandy layer, spots, holes, bad perforation, and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

105

scratches are the defects of gems.

*Vimalaka* (pure), *sasyaka* (plant-like), *Anjanamúlaka*

(deep-dark), *Pittaka* (like the bile of a cow) *Sulabhaka* (easily

procurable), *Lohitaka* (red), *Amritámsuka* (of white rays),

*Jyótírasaka* (glowing), *Maileyaka*, *Ahichchhatraka* , (procured in

the country of *Ahichchhatra*), *Kúrpa*, *Pútikúrpa*, and

*Sugandhikúrpa*, *Kshírapaka*, *Suktichúrnaka* (like the powder of an

oystershell), *Silápraválaka* (like coral), *Pulaka*, *Súkrapulaka* are

varieties of inferior gems.

The rest are metalic beads (*káchamani*).

*Sabháráshtraka*, that which is found in the country of

*Sabháráshtra*; *Madhyamaráshtraka*, that which is found in the

Central Province; *Kásmaka*, that which is found in the country of

*Kásmaka*; *Sríkatanaka*, that which is found in the vicinity of the

mountain, *Vedótkata*; *Manimantaka*, that which is found near the

mountain *Maniman* or *Manimanta*; and *Indravánaká* are

diamonds.

Mines, streams, and other miscellaneous places are their

sources.

The colour of a diamond may be like that of a cat's eye, that of

the flower of *Sirísha* (*Acacia Sirísa*), the urine of a cow, the bile of

a cow, like alum (*sphatika*), the flower of *Málati*, or like that of any

of the gems (described above).

That which is big, heavy, hard (*prahárasaham*, tolerant of

hitting), regular (*samakóna*), capable of scratching on the surface

of vessels (*bhájanalékhi*), refractive of light (*kubrámi*), and

brilliant is the best.

That which is devoid of angles, uneven (*nirasríkam*), and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

106

bent on one side (*pársvápavrittam*) is inauspicious.

*Alakandaka*, and *Vaivarnaka* are the two varieties of coral

which is possessed of ruby-like colour, which is very hard, and

which is free from the contamination of other substances inside.

*Sátana* is red and smells like the earth; *Gósirshaka* is dark red

and smells like fish; *Harichandana* is of the colour of the feathers

of a parrot and smells like tamarind or mango fruit; likewise

*Tárnasa*; *Grámeruka* is red or dark red and smells like the urine of

a goat; *Daivasabheya* is red and smells like a lotus flower; likewise

*Aupaka* (*Jápaka*); *Jongaka* and *Taurupa* are red or dark red and

soft; *Maleyaka* is reddish white; *Kuchandana* is as black as *Agaru*

(resin of the aloe) or red or dark red and very rough;

*Kála-parvataka* is of pleasant appearance; *Kosákaraparvataka*

(that which is the product of that mountain which is of the shape of

a bud) is black or variegated black; *Sítódakíya* is black and soft,

and smells like a lotus-flower; *Nágaparvataka* (that which is the

product of Naga mountain) is rough and is possessed of the colour

of *Saivala* (*Vallisneria*); and *Sákala* is brown.

Light, soft, moist (*asyána*, not dry), as greasy as ghee, of

pleasant smell, adhesive to the skin, of mild smell, retentive of

colour and smell, tolerant of heat, absorptive of heat, and

comfortable to the skin--these are the characteristics of sandal

(*chandana*).

(As to) *Agaru* (*Agallochum*, resin of aloe):—

*Jongaka* is black or variegated black and is possessed of

variegated spots; *Dongaka* is black; and *Párasamudraka* is of

variegated colour and smells like cascus or like *Navamálika*

(*jasminum*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

107

(*Agaru* is) heavy, soft, greasy, smells far and long, burns

slowly, gives out continuous smoke while burning, is of uniform

smell, absorbs heat, and is so adhesive to the skin as not to be

removable by rubbing;—these are the characteristics of *Agaru*.

(As to) *Tailaparnika*:—

*Asókagrámika*, the product of *Asókagráma*, is of the colour of

meat and smells like a lotus flower; *Jongaka* is reddish yellow and

smells like a blue lotus flower or like the urine of a cow;

*Grameruka* is greasy and smells like a cow's urine;

*Sauvarnakudyaka*, product of the country of *Suvarnakudya*, is

reddish yellow and smells like *Mátulunga* (the fruit of citron tree or

sweet lime); *Púrnadvipaka*, the product of the island, *Púrnadviipa*,

smells like a lotus flower or like butter; *Bhadrasríya* and

*Páralauhityaka* are of the colour of nutmeg; *Antarvatya* is of the

colour of cascus,---the last two smell like *Kushtha* (*Costus*

*Speciosus*); *Kaleyaka* which is a product of *Svarna*-*bhúmi*,

gold-producing land, is yellow and greasy; and *Auttaraparvataka*

(a product of, the north mountain) is reddish yellow.

The above (fragrant substances) are commodities of superior

value (*Sára*).

The smell of the *Tailaparnika* substances is lasting, no matter

whether they are made into a paste or boiled or burnt; also it is

neither changed nor affected even when mixed with other

substances; and these substances resemble sandal and *Agallochum*

in their qualities.

*Kántanávaka*, *Praiyaka*, and *Auttara*-*parvataka* are the

varieties of skins.

*Kántanávaka* is of the colour of the neck of the peacock;

*Praiyaka* is variegated with blue, yellow, and white spots; these

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

108

two are eight *angulas* (inches) long.

Also *Bisí* and *Mahábisí* are the products of *Dvádasagráma*,

twelve villages.

That which is of indistinct colour, hairy, and variegated (with

spots) is (called) *Bisí*.

That which is rough and almost white is *Mahábisí* (great

*Bisí*); These two are twelve angulas long.

*Syámika*, *Kálika*, *Kadali*, *Chandrottara*, and *Sákulá* are

(other kinds of skins) procured from *Aroha* (*Arohaja*).

*Syámika* is brown and contains variegated spots; *Kálika* is

brown or of the colour of a pigeon; these two are eight angulas

long. *Kadali* is rough and two feet long; when *Kadali* bears

variegated moonlike spots, it is called *Chandrottarakadali* and is

one-third of its length; *Sákulá* is variegated with large round spots

similar to those that manifest themselves in a kind of leprosy

(*kushtha*), or is furnished with tendrils and spotted like a deer's

skin.

*Sámúra*, *Chínasi*, and *Sámúli* are (skins procured from

*Báhlava*, (*Bahlaveya*).

*Sámúra* is thirty-six angulas long and black; *Chínasi* is

reddish black or blackish white; *Sámúli* is of the colour of wheat.

*Sátina*, *Nalatúla*, and *Vrittapuchchha* are the skins of aquatic

animals (*Audra*).

*Sátina* is black; *Nalatúla* is of the colour of the fibre of *Nala*, a

kind of grass; and *Vrittapuchchha* (that which possesses a round

tail) is brown.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

109

The above are the varieties of skins.

Of skins, that which is soft, smooth and hairy is the best.

Blankets made of sheep's wool may be white, purely red, or as

red as a lotus flower. They may be made of worsted threads by

sewing (*khachita*); or may be woven of woollen threads of various

colour (*vánachitra*); or may be made of different pieces

(*khandasanghátya*); or may be woven of uniform woollen threads

(*tantuvichchhinna*).

Woollen blankets are (of ten kinds):—*Kambala*,

*Kauchapaka*, *Kulamitika*, *Saumitika*, *Turagastarana*, *Varnaka*,

*Talichchhaka*, *Váravána*, *Paristoma*, and *Samantabhadraka*.

Of these, that which is slippery (*pichchhila*) as a wet surface,

possessed of fine hair, and soft, is the best.

That (blanket) which is made up of eight pieces and black in

colour is called *Bhingisi* used as rain-proof ; likewise is *Apasáraka*;

both are the products of Nepal.

*Samputika*, *Chaturasrika*, *Lambara*, *Katavánaka*,

*Praváraka*, and *Sattalika* are (blankets made of) the wool of wild

animals.

That which is manufactured in the country, *Vanga* (*vangaka*)

is a white and soft fabric (*dukúla*); that of *Pándya* manufacture

(*Paundraka*) is black and as soft as the surface of a gem; and that

which is the product of the country, *Suvarnakudya*, is as red as the

sun, as soft as the surface of the gem, woven while the threads are

very wet, and of uniform (*chaturasra*) or mixed texture

(*vyámisravána*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

110

Single, half, double, treble and quadruple garments are

varieties of the same.

The above will explain other kinds of fabrics such as *Kásika*,

*Benarese* products, and *Kshauma* which is manufactured in

*Pándya* (*Paundraka*).

*Mágadhika* (product of the *Magadha* country), *Paundraka*,

and *Sauvarnakudyaka* are fibrous garments.

*Nágavriksha* (a species of a tree), *Likucha* (*Artocarpus*

*Lakucha*), and *Vakula* (*Mimusops Elengi*), and *Vata* (*Ficus Indica*)

are the sources (of their fibres).

That of *Nágavriksha* is yellow (*pita*); that of *Likucha* is of the

colour of wheat; that of *Vakula* is white; and the rest is of the

colour of butter.

Of these, that which is produced in the country of

*Suvarnakudya* is the best.

The above will explain the fabrics known as *kauseya*,

silk-cloth, and *chinapatta*, fabrics of China manufacture.

Of cotton fabrics, those of *Madhura*, of *Aparánta*, western

parts, of *Kálinga*, of *Kási*, of *Vanga*, of *Vatsa*, and of *Mahisha* are

the best.

As to other kinds of gems (which are not treated of here), the

superintendent shall ascertain their size, their value, species, form,

utility, their treatment, the repair of old ones, any adulteration that

is not easily detected, their wear and tear due to lapse of time and

place, as well as remedies against those which are inauspicious

(*himsra*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

111

[Thus ends Chapter XI, "Examination of Gems that are to be

entered into the Treasury," in Book II, "The Duties of Government

Superintendents" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

thirty-second chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XII. CONDUCTING MINING OPERATIONS AND MANUFACTURE.

POSSESSED of the knowledge of the science dealing with

copper and other minerals (*Sulbádhátusástra*), experienced in the

art of distillation and condensation of mercury (*rasapáka*) and of

testing gems, aided by experts in mineralogy and equipped with

mining labourers and necessary instruments, the superintendent of

mines shall examine mines which, on account of their containing

mineral excrement (*kitta*), crucibles, charcoal, and ashes, may

appear to have been once exploited or which may be newly

discovered on plains or mountain-slopes possessing mineral ores,

the richness of which can be ascertained by weight, depth of

colour, piercing smell, and taste.

Liquids which ooze out from pits, eaves, slopes, or deep

excavations of well-known mountains; which have the colour of

the fruit of rose-apple (*jambu*), of mango, and of *fanpalm*; which

are as yellow as ripe turmeric, sulphurate of arsenic (*haritála*),

honeycomb, and vermilion; which are as resplendent as the petals

of a lotus, or the feathers of a parrot or a peacock; which are

adjacent to (any mass of) water or shrubs of similar colour; and

which are greasy (*chikkana*), transparent (*visada*), and very heavy

are ores of gold (*kánchanika*). Likewise liquids which, when

dropped on water, spread like oil to which dirt and filth adhere, and

which amalgamate themselves more than cent per cent (*satádupari*

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

112

*veddhárah*) with copper or silver.

Of similar appearance as the above (*tatpratirúpakam*), but of

piercing smell and taste is Bitumen.

Those ores which are obtained from plains or slopes of

mountains; which are either yellow or as red as copper or reddish

yellow; which are disjoined and marked with blue lines; which

have the colour of black beans (*masha*, *Phraseolus Radiatus*),

green beans (*mudga*, *Phraseolus Mungo*), and sesamum; which are

marked with spots like a drop of curd and resplendent as turmeric,

yellow myrobalan, petals of a lotus, acquatic plant, the liver or the

spleen; which possess a sandy layer within them and are marked

with figures of a circle or a *svastika*; which contain globular

masses (*sagulika*); and which, when roasted do not split, but emit

much foam and smoke are the ores of gold (*suvarnadhátavah*), and

are used to form amalgams with copper or silver (*pratívápárthasté*

*stámrarúpyavedharáh*).

Those ores which have the colour of a conch-shell, camphor,

alum, butter, a pigeon, turtle-dove, *Vimalaka* (a kind of precious

stone), or the neck of a peacock; which are as resplendent as opal

(*sasyaka*), agate (*gomédaka*), cane-sugar (*guda*), and granulated

sugar (*matsyandika*) which has the colour of the flower of *kovidára*

(*Bauhinia Variegata*), of lotus, of *patali* (*Bignonia Suaveolens*), of

*kalaya* (a kind of *phraseolus*), of *kshauma* (flax), and of *atasi*

(*Dinuin Usitatissimum*); which may be in combination with lead or

iron (*anjana*); which smell like raw meat, are disjoined gray or

blackish white, and are marked with lines or spots; and which,

when roasted, do not split, but emit much foam and smoke are

silver ores.

The heavier the ores, the greater will be the quantity of metal

in them (*satvavriddhih*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

113

The impurities of ores, whether superficial or inseparably

combined with them can be got rid of and the metal melted when

the ores are (chemically) treated with Tikshna urine (*mútra*) and

alkalies (*kshára*), and are mixed or smeared over with the mixture

of (the powder of) *Rajavriksha* (*Clitoria Ternatea*), *Vata* (*Ficus*

*Indica*), and *Pelu* (*Carnea Arborea*), together with cow's bile and

the urine and dung of a buffalo, an ass and an elephant.

(Metals) are rendered soft when they are treated with (the

powder of) *kandali* (mushroom), and *vajrakanda*, (Antiquorum)

together with the ashes of barley, black beans, *palása* (*Butea*

*Frondosa*), and *pelu* (*Carnea Arborea*), or with the milk of both

the cow and the sheep. Whatever metal is split into a hundred

thousand parts is rendered soft when it is thrice soaked in the

mixture made up of honey (*madhu*), *madhuka* (*Bassia Latifolia*),

sheep's milk, sesamum oil, clarified butter, jaggery, *kinva*

(ferment) and mushroom.

Permanent softness (*mridustambhana*) is also attained when

the metal is treated with the powder of cow's teeth and horn.

Those ores which are obtained from plains or slopes of

mountains; and which are heavy, greasy, soft, tawny, green, dark,

bluish-yellow (*harita*), pale-red, or red are ores of copper.

Those ores which have the colour of *kákamechaka* (*Solanum*

*Indica*), pigeon, or cow‟s bile, and which are marked with white

lines and smell like raw meat are the ores of lead.

Those ores which are as variegated in colour as saline soil or

which have the colour of a burnt lump of earth are the ores of tin.

Those ores which are of orange colour (*kurumba*), or pale-red

(*pándurohita*), or of the colour of the flower of *sinduvára* (*Vitex*

*Trifolia*) are the ores of *tíkshna*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

114

Those ores which are of the colour of the leaf of *kánda*

(*Artemisia Indica*) or of the leaf of birch are the ores of *vaikrintaka*.

Pure, smooth, efflugent, sounding (when struck), very hard

(*satatívrah*), and of little colour (*tanurága*) are precious stones.

The yield of mines may be put to such uses as are in vogue.

Commerce in commodities manufactured from mineral

products shall be centralized and punishment for manufacturers,

sellers, and purchasers of such commodities outside the prescribed

locality shall also be laid down.

A mine-labourer who steals mineral products except precious

stones shall be punished with a fine of eight times their value.

Any person who steals mineral products or carries on mining

operations without license shall be bound (with chains) and caused

to work (as a prisoner).

Mines which yield such minerals as are made use of in

preparing vessels (*bhánda*) as well as those mines which require

large outlay to work out may be leased out for a fixed number of

the shares of the output or for a fixed rent (*bhágena prakrayena va*)

Such mines as can be worked out without much outlay shall be

directly exploited (by Government agency).

The superintendent of metals (*lóhádhyakshah*) shall carry on

the manufacture of copper, lead, tin, *vaikrintaka* (mercury [?]),

*árakúta* (brass), *vritta*(?); *kamsa* (bronze or bell-metal), *tála*

(sulphurate of arsenic), and *lodhra* (?), and also of commodities

(*bhánda*) from them.

The superintendent of mint (*lakshnádhyakshah*), shall carry

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

115

on the manufacture of silver coins (*rúpyarúpa*) made up of four

parts of copper and one-sixteenth part (*másha*) of any one of the

metals, *tikshna*, *trapu*, *sisa*, and *anjana*. There shall be a *pana*, half

a *pana*, a quarter and one-eighth.

Copper coins (*támrarúpa*) made up of four parts of an alloy

(*pádajívam*), shall be a *máshaka*, half a *máshaka*, *kákani* and half a

*kákani*.

The examiner of coins (*rúpadarsaka*) shall regulate currency

both as a medium of exchange (*vyávahárikim*) and as legal tender

admissible into the treasury (*kosapravesyám*): The premia levied

on coins paid into the treasury shall be) 8 per cent, known as

*rúpika*, 5 per cent known as *vyáji*, one-eighth *pana* per cent as

*páríkshika* (testing charge), besides (cha) a fine of 25 *pana* to be

imposed on offenders other than the manufacturer, the seller, the

purchaser and the examiner.

The superintendent of ocean-mines (*khanyadhyakshah*) shall

attend to the collection of conch-shells, diamonds, precious stones,

pearls, corals, and salt (*kshára*) and also regulate the commerce in

the above commodities.

Soon after crystalisation of salt is over, the superintendent of

salt shall in time collect both the money-rent (*prakraya*) and the

quantity of the shares of salt due to the government; and by the sale

of salt (thus collected as shares) he shall realise not only its value

(*múlyam*), but also the premium of five per cent (*vyájím*), both in

cash (*rúpa*).

Imported salt (*ágantulavanam*) shall pay one-sixth portion

(*shadbhága*) to the king. The sale of this portion (*bhágavibhága*)

shall fetch the premia of five per cent (*vyáji*), of eight per cent

(*rúpika*) in cash (*rúpa*). The purchasers shall pay not only the toll

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

116

(*sulka*), but also the compensation (*vaidharana*) equivalent to the

loss entailed on the king's commerce. In default of the above

payment, he shall be compelled to pay a fine of 600 *panas*.

Adulteration of salt shall be punished with the highest

amercement; likewise persons other than hermits (*vánaprastha*)

manufacturing salt without license.

Men learned in the Vedas, persons engaged in penance, as

well as labourers may take with them salt for food; salt and alkalies

for purposes other than this shall be subject to the payment of toll.

Thus; besides collecting from mines the ten kinds of revenue,

such as (1) value of the out-put (*múlya*), (2) the share of the out-put

(*vibhága*), (3) the premium of five per cent (*vyáji*), (4) the testing

charge of coins (*parigha*), (5) fine previously announced (*atyaya*),

(6) toll (*sulka*), (7) compensation for loss entailed on the king's

commerce (*vaidharana*), (8) fines to be determined in proportion

to the gravity of crimes (*danda*), (9), coinage (*rúpa*), (10) the

premium of eight per cent (*rúpika*), the government shall keep as a

state monopoly both mining and commerce (in minerals).

Thus taxes (*mukhasangraha*) on all commodities intended

for sale shall be prescribed once for all.

[Thus ends Chapter XII, "Conducting Mining Operations and

Manufacture" in Book II, "The Duties of Government

Superintendents" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

thirty-third chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIII. SUPERINTENDENT OF GOLD IN THE GOLDSMITH'S OFFICE.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

117

IN order to manufacture gold and silver jewellry, each being

kept apart, the superintendent of gold shall have a goldsmiths

office (*akshasála*) consisting of four rooms and one door.

In the centre of the high road a trained, skilful goldsmith of

high birth and of reliable character shall be appointed to hold his

shop.

*Jámbúnada*, that which is the product of the river, *Jambu*;

*Sátakumbha*, that which is extracted from the mountain of

*Satakumba*; *Hátaka*, that which is extracted from the mines known

as *Hátaka*; *Vainava*, that which is the product of the mountain,

*Vénu*; and *Sringasúktija*, that which is extracted from *sringasúkti*

(?) are the varieties of gold.

(Gold may be obtained) either pure or amalgamated with

mercury or silver or alloyed with other impurities as mine gold

(*ákaródgata*).

That which is of the colour of the petals of a lotus, ductile,

glossy, incapable of making any continuous sound (*anádi*), and

glittering is the best; that which is reddish yellow (*raktapíta*) is of

middle quality; and that which is red is of low quality.

Impure gold is of whitish colour. It shall be fused with lead of

four times the quantity of the impurity. When gold is rendered

brittle owing to its contamination with lead, it shall be heated with

dry cowdung (*sushkapatala*). When it splits into pieces owing to

hardness, it shall be drenched (after heating) into oil mixed with

cowdung (*tailagomaye*).

Mine gold which is brittle owing to its contamination with

lead shall be heated wound round with cloth (*pákapatráni kritvá*);

and hammered on a wooden anvil. Or it may be drenched in the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

118

mixture made of mushroom and *vajrakhanda* (*Antiquorum*).

*Tutthodgata*, what which is extracted from the mountain,

*Tuttha*; *gaudika*, that which is the product of the country known as

*Gauda*; *kámbuka*, that which is extracted from the mountain,

*Kambu*; and *chákraválika*, that which is extracted from the

mountain *Chakravála* are the varieties of silver.

Silver which is white, glossy, and ductile is the best; and that

which is of the reverse quality is bad.

Impure silver shall be heated with lead of one-fourth the

quantity of the impurity.

That which becomes full of globules, white, glowing, and of

the colour of curd is pure.

When the streak of pure gold (made on touch-stone) is of the

colour of turmeric, it is termed suvarna. When from one to sixteen

*kákanis* of gold in a *suvarna* (of sixteen *máshakas*) are replaced by

from one to sixteen *kákanis* of copper, so that the copper is

inseparably alloyed with the whole mass of the remaining quantity

of the gold, the sixteen varieties (carats) of the standard of the

purity of gold (*shodasavarnakáh*) will be obtained.

Having first made a streak with suvarna on a touchstone, then

(by the side of the streak) a streak with a piece of the gold (to be

compared with it) shall be made.

Whenever a uniform streak made on the even surface of a

touch-stone can be wiped off or swept away or when the streak is

due to the sprinkling of any glittering powder (*gairika*) by the nail

on touch-stone, then an attempt for deception can be inferred.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

119

If, with the edge of the palm dipped in a solution, of vermilion

(*játihinguláka*) or of sulphate of iron (*pushpakásísa*) in cow's

urine, gold (suvarna) is touched, it becomes white.

A touch-stone with soft and shining splendour is the best. The

touch-stone of the Kálinga country with the colour of green beans

is also the best. A touch-stone of even or uniform colour is good in

sale or purchase (of gold). That which possesses the colour of an

elephant, tinged with green colour and capable of reflecting light

(*pratirági*) is good in selling gold. That which is hard, durable, and

of uneven colour and not reflecting light, is good for purchasers

(*krayahitah*). That which is grey, greasy, of uniform colour, soft,

and glossy is the best.

That (gold) which, when heated, keeps the same colour (*tápo*

*bahirantascha samah*), is as glittering as tender sprouts, or of the

colour of the flower of *kárandaka* (?) is the best.

That which is black or blue (in gold) is the impurity

(*apráptaka*).

We shall deal with the balance and weights under the

"Superintendent of Weights and Measures" (Chap. XIX, Book II).

In accordance with the instructions given thereunder silver and

gold (*rúpyasuvarnam*) may be given in exchange.

No person who is not an employee shall enter the

gold-smiths‟ office. Any person who so enters shall be beheaded

(*uchchhedyah*).

Any workman who enters the office with gold or silver shall

have to forfeit the same.

Goldsmiths who are engaged to prepare various kinds of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

120

ornaments such as *kánchana* (pure gold), *prishita* (hollow

ornaments), *tvashtri* (setting gems in gold) and *tapaníya*; as well as

blowers and sweepers shall enter into or exit from the office after

their person and dress are thoroughly examined. All of their

instruments together with their unfinished work shall be left where

they have been at work. That amount of gold which they have

received and the ornamental work which they were doing shall be

put in the centre of the office. (Finished articles) shall be examined

both morning and evening and be locked up with the seal of both

the manufacturer and the superintendent (*kárayatri*, the owner

getting the articles prepared).

*Kshepana*, *guna*, and *kshudra* ate three kinds of ornamental

work.

Setting jewels (*kácha*, glass bead) in gold is termed

*kshepana*.

Thread-making or string making is called *guna*.

Solid work (*ghana*), hollow work (*sushira*), and the

manufacture of globules furnished with a rounded orifice is what is

termed *kshudra*, low or ordinary work.

For setting jewels in gold, five parts of *káñchana* (pure gold)

and ten parts of gold alloyed with four parts of copper or silver

shall be the required quantity (*mána*). Here the pure gold shall be

preserved from the impure gold.

For setting jewels in hollow ornaments (*prishitakácha*

*karmanah*), three parts of gold to hold the jewel and four parts for

the bottom (shall be the required quantity).

For the work of *tvashtri*, copper and gold shall be mixed in

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

121

equal quantities.

For silver article either solid or hollow, silver may be mixed

with half of the amount of gold; or by making use of the powder or

solution of vermilion, gold equal to one-fourth the amount of silver

of the ornament may be painted (*vásayet*) on it.

Pure and glittering gold is *tapaníya*. This combined with an

equal quantity of lead and heated with rock-salt (*saindhav'ika*) to

melting point under dry cowdung becomes the basis of gold alloys

of blue, red, white, yellow (*harita*), parrot and pidgeon colours.

The colouring ingredient of gold is one *kákaní* of *tíkshna*

which is of the colour of the neck of a peacock, tinged with white,

and which is dazzling and full of copper (*pitapúrnitam*).

Pure or impure silver (*tára*) may be heated four times with

*asthituttha* (copper sulphate mixed with powdered bone), again

four times with an equal quantity of lead, again four times with dry

copper sulphate (*sushkatuttha*) again three times in skull (*kapála*),

and lastly twice in cowdung. Thus the silver acted upon seventeen

times by *tuttha* (*shodasatutthátikrántam*) and lastly heated to white

light with rock salt may be made to alloy with *suvarna* to the extent

of from one *kákani* to two *Máshas*. Then the *suvarna* attains white

colour and is called *sveta-tára*.

When three parts of *tapaníya* (pure gold) are melted with

thirty-two parts of *svetatára*, the compound becomes reddish white

(*svetalohitakam*). When three parts of *tapaníya* are combined with

thirty-two parts of copper, the compound becomes yellow (*píta*,

red!). Also when three parts of the colouring ingredient

(*rágatribhága*, *i.e.*, *tíkshna* referred to above) are heated with

*tapaníya*, the compound becomes yellowish red (*píta*).

When two parts of *sveta-tár*a and one part of *tapaníya* are heated,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

122

the whole mass becomes as green as *mudga* (*Phraseolus Mungo*).

When *tapaníya* is drenched in a solution of half the quantity of

black iron (*káláyasa*), it becomes black.

When *tapaníya* is twice drenched in (the above) solution

mixed with mercury (*rasa*), it acquires the colour of the feathers of

a parrot.

Before these varieties of gold are put to use, their test streak

shall be taken on touchstone. The process of assaying *tíkshna* and

copper shall be well understood. Hence the various counterweights

(*avaneyimána*) used in weighing diamonds, rubies, pearls, corals,

and coins, (*rúpa*), as well as the proportional amount of gold and

silver necessary for various kinds of ornaments can be well

understood.

Uniform in colour, equal in the colour of test streak to the

standard gold, devoid of hollow bulbs, ductile (*sthira*), very

smooth, free from alloys, pleasing when worn as an ornament, not

dazzling though glittering, sweet in its uniformity of mass, and

pleasing the mind and eyes,---these are the qualities of *tapaníya*,

pure gold.

[Thus ends Chapter XIII, "The Superintendent of Gold in the

Goldsmiths' Office," in Book II, "The Duties of Government

Superintendents" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

thirty-fourth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIV. THE DUTIES OF THE STATE GOLDSMITH IN THE HIGH ROAD.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

123

THE State Goldsmith shall employ artisans to manufacture

gold and silver coins (*rúpyasuvarna*) from the bullion of citizens

and country people.

The artisans employed in the office shall do their work as

ordered and in time. When under the excuse that time and nature of

the work has not been prescribed, they spoil the work, they shall

not only forfeit their wages, but also pay a fine of twice the amount

of their wages. When they postpone work, they shall forfeit

one-fourth the amount of their wages and pay a fine of twice the

amount of the forfeited wages.

(The goldsmith of the mint) shall return (to the owners coins

or ornaments) of the same weight, and of the same quality (*varna*)

as that of the bullion (*nikshepa*) which they received (at the mint).

With the exception of those (coins) which have been worn out or

which have undergone diminution (*kshínaparisírna*), they shall

receive the same coins (back into the mint) even after the lapse of a

number of years.

The state goldsmith shall gather from the artisans employed

in the mint information concerning pure gold, metallic mass

(*pudgala*), coins (*lakshana*), and rate of exchange (*prayóga*).

In getting a *suvarna* coin (of 16 *máshas*) manufactured from

gold or from silver, one *kákani* (one-fourth *másha*) weight of the

metal more shall be given to the mint towards the loss in

manufacture.

The colouring ingredient (*rágaprakshépa*) shall be two

*kákanis* of *tíkshna* (copper sulphate ?) one-sixth of which will be

lost during the manufacture.

When the quality (*varna*) of a coin less than the standard of a

*másha* is lowered, the artisans (concerned) shall be punished with

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

124

the first amercement. When its weight is less than the standard

weight, they shall be punished with the middlemost amercement.

Deception in balance or weights shall be punished with the highest

amercement. Deception in the exchange of manufactured coins

(*kritabhándopadhau*) shall also be punished with the highest

amercement.

Whoever causes (gold or silver articles) to be manufactured in

any place other than the mint or without being noticed by the state

goldsmith shall be fined 12 *panás*, while the artisan who does that

work shall, if found out, be punished with twice the above fine. If

he is not found out, measures such as are described in Book IV

shall be taken to detect him. When thus detected, he shall be fined

200 *panás* or shall have his fingers cut off.

Weighing balance and counterweights shall be purchased

from the superintendent in charge of them. Otherwise a fine of 12

*panás* shall be imposed.

Compact work (*ghana*), compact and hollow work

(*ghanasushira*), soldering (*samyúhya*), amalgamation (*avalepya*),

enclosing (*samghátya*), and gilding (*vásitakam*) are the various

kinds of artisan work (*kárukasma*).

False balances (*tulávishama*), removal (*apasárana*), dropping

(*visrávana*), folding (*petaka*), and confounding (*pinka*) are the

several means employed by goldsmiths to deceive the public.

False balance are—that of bending arms (*sannámini*); that of

high helm or pivot (*utkarnika*); that of broken head

(*bhinnamastaka*); that of hollow neck (*upakanthi*); that of bad

strings (*kusikya*); that of bad cups or pans (*sakatukakshya*); that

which is crooked or shaking (*párivellya*); and that which is

combined with a magnet (*ayaskánta*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

125

When, by what is called *Triputaka* which consists of two parts

of silver and one part of copper, an equal portion of pure alluvial

gold is replaced, that deceitful act is termed copper-removal

(*triputaká*-*vasáritam*); when, by copper, an equal portion of gold is

replaced, that act is termed copper-removal (*sulbávasáritam*);

when by *vellakaan* equal portion of gold is replaced, it is termed

*vellaka*-removal; and when pure alluvial gold is replaced by that

gold half of which is mixed with copper, it is termed gold removal

(*hemávasáritam*).

A crucible with a base metallic piece hidden in it; metallic

excrement; pincers; a pair of tongs; metallic pieces (*jongani*); and

borax (*sauvarchikálavanam*),—these are the several things which

are made use of by goldsmiths in stealing gold.

When, intentionally causing the crucible (containing the

bullion) to burst, a few sandlike particles of the metal are picked up

along with other particles of a base metal previously put therein,

and the whole is wrought into a mass for the intended coin or

ornament), this act is termed dropping (*visravana*); or when

examining the folded or inlaid leaves of an ornament

(*áchitakapatrapariksháyám*) deception is perpetrated by

substituting silver for gold, or when particles of a base metal are

substituted for those of gold, it is termed dropping (*visrávana*)

likewise.

Folding (*petaka*) either firm (*gádha*) or loose

(*abhyuddhárya*) is practiced in soldering, in preparing amalgams,

and in enclosing (a piece of base metal with two pieces of a

superior metal).

When a lead piece (*sísarúpa*--lead coin) is firmly covered

over with gold leaf by means of wax (*ashtaka*), that act is termed

*gádhapetaka*, firm folding; and when the same is loosely folded, it

is termed loose folding.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

126

In amalgams, a single or double layer (of a superior metal) is

made to cover a piece (of base metal). Copper or silver may also be

placed between two leaves (of a superior metal). A copper piece

(*sulbarúpya*) may be covered over with gold leaf, the surface and

the edges being smoothened; similarly a piece of any base metal

may be covered over with double leaf of copper or silver, the

surface and the edges being smoothened.

The two forms of folding may be detected by heating, by

testing on touch-stone (*nikasha*) or by observing absence of sound

when it is rubbed (*nissabdollekhana*).

(They) find out loose folding in the acid juice of *badarámla*

(*Flacourtia Cataphracta* or jujube fruit) or in salt water;—so much

for folding (*petaka*).

In a compact and hollow piece (*ghana-sushire rúpe*), small

particles of gold-like mud (*suvarnamrinválukáh*) or bit of

vermilion (*hingulakalkah*) are so heated as to make them firmly

adhere to the piece inside. Even in a compact piece (*dridhavástuke*

*rúpe*), the waxlike mud of *Gándhára* mixed with the particles of

goldlike sand is so heated as to adhere to the piece. These two kinds

of impurities are got rid of by hammering the pieces when red hot.

In an ornament or a coin (*sapari-bhánde vá rúpe*) salt mixed

with hard sand (*katusarkará*) is so heated in flame as to make it

firmly adhere to (the ornament or coin). This (salt and sand) can be

got rid of by boiling (*kváthana*).

In some pieces, mica may be firmly fixed inside by wax and

covered over with a double leaf (of gold or silver). When such a

piece with mica or glass inside is suspended in water (*udake*) one

of its sides dips more than the other; or when pierced by a pin, the

pin goes very easily in the layers of mica in the interior

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

127

(*patalántareshu*).

Spurious stones and counterfeit gold and silver may be

substituted for real ones in compact and hollow pieces

(*ghanasushira*). They are detected by hammering the pieces when

red hot---so much for confounding (*pinka*).

Hence (the state goldsmith) shall have a thorough knowledge

of the species, characteristics, colour, weight, and formation

(*pudgala-lakshana*) of diamonds, precious stones (*mani*), pearls,

corals and coins (*rúpa*).

There are four ways of deception perpetrated when examining

new pieces or repairing old ones: they are hammering, cutting,

scratching and rubbing.

When, under the excuse of detecting the deception known as

folding (*petaka*) in hollow pieces or in threads or in cups (made of

gold or silver), the articles in question are hammered, that act is

termed hammering.

When a lead piece (covered over with gold or silver leaf) is

substituted for a real one and its interior is cut off, it is termed

cutting (avachchhedanam).

When compact pieces are scratched by *tíkshna* (copper

sulphate ?), that act is termed scratching (*ullekhana*).

When, by a piece of cloth painted with the powder of

sulphuret of arsenic (*haritála*), red arsenic (*manassila*), or

vermilion or with the powder of *kuruvinda* (black salt ?), gold or

silver articles are rubbed, that act is termed rubbing.

By these acts, gold and silver articles (*bhándáni*) undergo

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

128

diminution; but no other kind of injury is done to them.

In all those pieces which are hammered, cut, scratched, or

rubbed the loss can be inferred by comparing them with intact

pieces of similar description. In amalgamated pieces (*avalepya*)

which are cut off, the loss can be ascertained by cutting off an equal

portion of a similar piece. Those pieces the appearance of which

has changed shall be often heated and drenched in water.

(The state goldsmith) shall infer deception (*kácham vidyát*)

when [the artisan preparing articles pays undue attention to]

throwing away, counter-weight, fire, anvil (*gandika*), working

instruments (*bhandika*), the seat (*adhikarani*), the assaying

balance, folds of dress (*chellachollakam*), his head, his thigh, flies,

eagerness to look at his own body, the water-pot, and the firepot.

Regarding silver, bad smell like that of rotten meat, hardness

due to any alloy (*mala*), projection (*prastína*), and bad colour may

be considered as indicating adulteration.

Thus articles (of gold and silver) new or old, or of bad or

unusual colour are to be examined and adequate fines as described

above shall be imposed.

[Thus ends Chapter XIV, “The Duties of the State Goldsmith in the

High Road” in Book II, “The Duties of Government

Superintendents” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of thirty-fifth

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XV. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF STOREHOUSE.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

129

THE superintendent of storehouse (*Koshthágára*) shall

supervise the accounts of agricultural produce (*síta*); taxes coming

under *Ráshtra*, country-parts; commerce (*krayima*); barter

(*parivartna*); begging for grains (*prámityaka*); grains borrowed

with promise to repay (*ápamityaka*); manufacture of rice, oils, etc.

(*simhanika*); accidental revenue (*anyajáta*); statements to check

expenditure (*vyayapratyaya*); and recovery of past arrears

(*upasthánam*).

Whatever in the shape of agricultural produce is brought in by

the superintendent of agriculture, (of crown-lands) is termed *sítá*.

The taxes that are fixed (*pindakara*), taxes that are paid in the

form of one-sixth of produce (*shadbhága*), provision paid (by the

people) for the army (*senábhakta*), taxes that are levied for

religious purposes (*bali*), taxes or subsidies that are paid by vassal

kings and others (*kara*), taxes that are specially collected on the

occasion of the birth of a prince (*utsanga*), taxes that are collected

when there is some margin left for such collection (*pársva*),

compensation levied in the shape of grains for any damage done by

cattle to crops (*párihínaka*), presentation made to the king,

(*aupáyanika*), and taxes that are levied on lands below tanks, lakes,

etc., built by the king (*Kaushtheyaka*),--all these come under the

head „*Ráshtra*.‟

Sale proceeds of grains, grains purchased and the collection

of interest in kind or grain debts (*prayogapratyádána*) are termed

commerce.

Profitable exchange of grains for grains is termed barter

(*parivarthana*).

Grains collected by begging is termed *prámityaka*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

130

Grains borrowed with promise to repay the same is termed

*ápamityaka*.

Pounding (rice, etc.), dividing (pulses, etc.), frying (corns and

beans), manufacture of beverages (*suktakarma*), manufacture of

flour by employing those persons who live upon such works,

extracting oil by employing shepherds and oil-makers, and

manufacture of sugar from the juice of sugar-cane are termed

*simhanika*.

Whatever is lost and forgotten (by others) and the like form

accidental revenue (*anyajáta*).

Investment, the relic of a wrecked undertaking, and savings

from an estimated outlay are the means to check expenditure

(*vyayapratyaya*).

That amount or quantity of compensation which is claimed

for making use of a different balance or for any error in taking a

handful is termed *vyáji*.

Collection of arrears is termed „*upasthána*,‟ „recovery of

past arrears.‟

Of grains, oils, sugar, and salt, all that concerns grains will be

treated of in connection with the duties of the „Superintendent of

Agriculture.‟

Clarified butter, oil, serum of flesh, and pith or sap (of plants,

etc.)., are termed oils (*sneha*).

Decoction (*phánita*), jaggory, granulated sugar, and

sugar-candy are termed *kshára*.

*Saindhava*, that which is the product of the country of *Sindhu*;

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

131

*Sámudra*, that which is produced from seawater; *Bida*;

*Yavakshara*, *nitre*, *Sauvarchala*, that which is the product of the

country of *suvarchala*; and *udbhedaja*, that which is extracted from

saline soil are termed *lavana*, salt.

The honey of the bee as well as the juice extracted from

grapes are called *madhu*.

Mixture made by combining any one of the substances, such

as the juice of sugarcane, jaggory, honey,. the, juice of grapes, the

essence of the fruits of *jambu* (*Euginia Jambolana*) and of *jaka*

tree—with the essence of *meshasringa* (a kind of plant) and long

pepper, with or without the addition of the essence of *chirbhita* (a

kind of gourd), cucumber, sugar-cane, mango-fruit and the fruit of

*myrobalam*, the mixture being prepared so as to last for a month, or

six months, or a year, constitute the group of astringents

(*sukta-varga*).

The fruits of those trees which bear acid fruits, those of

*karamarda* (*Carissa Carandas*), those of *vidalámalka*

(*myrobalam*), those of *matulanga* (citron tree), those of kola (small

jujuba), those of *badara* (*Flacourtia Cataphracta*), those of

*sauvíra* (big jujuba), and those of *parushaka* (*Grewia Asiatica*) and

the like come under the group of acid fruits.

Curds, acid prepared from grains and the like are acids in

liquid form.

Long pepper, black pepper, ginger, cumin seed, *kiratatikta*

(*Agathotes Chirayta*), white mustard, coriander, *choraka* (a plant),

*damanaka* (*Artemisia Indica*), *maruvaka* (*Vangueria Spinosa*),

*sigru* (*Hyperanthera Moringa*), and the like together with their

roots (*kánda*) come under the group of pungent substances

(*tiktavarga*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

132

Dried fish, bulbous roots (*kándamúla*), fruits and vegetables

form the group of edibles (*sakavarga*).

Of the store, thus, collected, half shall be kept in reserve to

ward off the calamities of the people and only the other half shall

be used. Old collection shall be replaced by new supply.

The superintendent shall also personally supervise the

increase or diminution sustained in grains when they are pounded

(*kshunna*), or frayed (*ghrishta*), or reduced to flour (*pishta*), or

fried (*bhrashta*), or dried after soaking in water.

The essential part (*sára*, *i.e.*, that which is fit for food) of

*kodrava* (*Paspalam Scrobiculatum*) and of *vrihi* (rice) is one-half;

that of *sáli* (a kind of rice) is (half) less by one-eighth part; that of

*varaka* (*Phraseolus Trilobus*) is (half) less by one-third part; that of

*priyangu* (panic seed or millet) is one-half ; that of *chamasi*

(barley), of *mudga* (*Phraseolus Mungo*) and of *masha* (*Phraseolus*

*Radiatus*) is (half) less by one-eighth part; that of *saibya* (*simbi*) is

one-half; that of *masúra* (*Ervum Hirsutum*) is (half) less by

one-third part (than the raw material or grains from which it is

prepared).

Raw flour and *kulmasha* (boiled and forced rice) will be as

much as one and a half of the original quantity of the grains.

Barley gruel as well as its flour baked will be twice the

original quantity.

*Kodrava* (*Paspalam Scrobiculatum*), *varaka* (*Phraseolus*

*Trilobus*), *udáraka* (*Panicum*), and *priyangu* (millet) will increase

three times the original quantity when cooked. *Vríhi* (rice) will

increase four times when cooked. *Sáli* (a kind of rice) will increase

five times when cooked.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

133

Grains will increase twice the original quantity when

moistened; and two and a half times when soaked to sprouting

condition.

Grains fried will increase by one-fifth the original quantity;

leguminous seeds (*kaláya*), when fried, will increase twice the

original; likewise rice when fried.

Oil extracted from *atasi* (linseed) will be one-sixth (of the

quantity of the seed); that extracted from the seeds, *nimba*

(*Azadirachta Indica*), *kusámra* (?), and *Kapittha* (*Feronia*

*Elephantum*) will be one-fifth; and that extracted from *tila*

(seasumum), *kusumba* (a sort of kidney bean), *madhúka* (*Bassia*

*Latifolia*), and *ingudi* (*Terminalia Catappa*) will be one-fourth.

Five *palas* of *kárpása* (cotton) and of *kshauma* (flax) will

yield one *pala* of threads.

Rice prepared in such a way that five *dróna* of *sáli* yield ten

*ádhakas* of rice will be fit to be the food of young elephants; eleven

*ádhakas* from five *drónas* for elephants of bad temper (*vyála*); ten

*ádhakas* from the same quantity for elephants trained for riding;

nine *ádhakas* from the same quantity for elephants used in war;

eight *ádhakas* from the same for infantry; eleven *ádhakas* from the

same for chiefs of the army; six *ádhakas* from the same for queens

and princes and five *ádhakas* from the same quantity for kings.

One *prastha* of rice, pure and unsplit, one-fourth *prastha* of

*súpa*, and clarified butter or oil equal to one-fourth part of (*súpa*)

will suffice to form one meal of an Arya.

One-sixth *prastha* of *súpa* for a man; and half the above

quantity of oil will form one meal for low castes (*avara*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

134

The same rations less by one-fourth the above quantities will

form one meal for a woman; and half the above rations for

children.

For dressing twenty *palas* of flesh, half a *kutumba* of oil, one

*pala* of salt, one *pala* of sugar (*kshára*), two *dharanas* of pungent

substances (*katuka*, spices), and half a *prastha* of curd (will be

necessary).

For dressing greater quantities of flesh, the same ingredients

can be proportionally increased.

For cooking *sákas* (dried fish and vegetables), the above

substances are to be added one and a half times as much.

For dressing dried fish, the above ingredients are to be added

twice as much.

Measures of rations for elephants and horses will be described

in connection with the "Duties of Their Respective

Superintendents."

For bullocks, one *drona* of *masha* (*Phraseolus Radiatus*) or

one *drona* of barley cooked with other things, as prescribed for

horses, is the requisite quantity of food, besides the special and

additional provision of one *tula* of oilcakes (*ghánapinyaka*) or ten

*ádhakas* of bran (*kanakuttana-kundaka*).

Twice the above quantity for buffaloes and camels.

Half a *drona* for asses, red spotted deer and deer with white

stripes.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

135

One *ádhaka* for an antelope and big red deer.

Half an *ádhaka* or one *ádhaka* of grain together with bran for

a goat, a ram and a

boar.

One *prastha* of cooked rice for dogs.

Half a *prastha* for a *hamsa* (goose), a *krauncha* (heron) and a

peacock.

From the above, the quantity of rations enough for one meal

for other beasts, cattle, birds, and rogue elephants (*vyála*) may be

inferred.

Charcoal and chaff may be given over for iron smelting and

lime-kiln (*bhittilepya*).

Bran and flour (*kánika*) may be given to slaves, labourers, and

cooks. The surplus of the above may be given to those who prepare

cooked rice, and rice-cakes.

The weighing balance, weights, measures, mill-stone

(*rochani*), pestle, mortar, wooden contrivances for pounding rice,

etc., (*kuttakayantra*), contrivances for splitting seeds into pieces

(*rochakayantra*), winnowing fans, sieves (*chálani*) grain-baskets

(*kandoli*), boxes, and brooms are the necessary instruments.

Sweepers; preservers; those who weigh things (*dharaka*);

those who measure grains, etc.; those who supervise the work of

measuring grains (*mápaka*); those who supervise the supply of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

136

commodities to the store-house (*dápaka*); those who supply

commodities (*dáyaka*); those who are employed to receive

compensation for any real or supposed error in measuring grains,

etc. (*sálákáipratigráhaka*); slaves; and labourers;—all these are

called *vishti*.

Grains are heaped up on the floor; jaggory (*kshára*) is bound

round in grass-rope (*múta*); oils are kept in earthenware or wooden

vessels; and salt is heaped up on the surface of the ground.

[Thus ends Chapter XV, “The Superintendent of Storehouse,” in

Book II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the thirty-sixth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVI. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF COMMERCE.

THE Superintendent of Commerce shall ascertain demand or

absence of demand for, and rise or fall in the price of, various kinds

of merchandise which may be the products either of land or of

water and which may have been brought in either by land or by

water path. He shall also ascertain the time suitable for their

distribution, centralisation, purchase, and sale.

That merchandise which is widely distributed shall be

centralised and its price enhanced. When the enhanced rate

becomes popular, another rate shall be declared.

That merchandise of the king which is of local manufacture

shall be centralised; imported merchandise shall be distributed in

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

137

several markets for sale. Both kinds of merchandise shall be

favourably sold to the people.

He shall avoid such large profits as will harm the people.

There shall be no restriction to the time of sale of those

commodities for which there is frequent demand; nor shall they be

subject to the evils of centralisation (*sankuladosha*).

Or pedlars may sell the merchandise of the king at a fixed

price in many markets and pay necessary compensation

(*vaidharana*) proportional to the loss entailed upon it

(*chhedánurúpam*).

The amount of *vyáji* due on commodities sold by cubical

measure is one-sixteenth of the quantity (*shodasabhágo*

*mánavyáji*); that on commodities sold by weighing balance is

one-twentieth of the quantity; and that on commodities sold in

numbers is one-eleventh of the whole.

The superintendent shall show favour to those who import

foreign merchandise: mariners (*návika*) and merchants who import

foreign merchandise shall be favoured with remission of the

trade-taxes, so that they may derive some profit (*áyatikshamam*

*pariháram dadyát*).

Foreigners importing merchandise shall be exempted from

being sued for debts unless they are (local) associations and

partners

(*anabhiyogaschárthesshvágantúnámanyatassabhyopakári bhyah*).

Those who sell the merchandise of the king shall invariably

put their sale proceeds in a wooden box kept in a fixed place and

provided with a single aperture on the top.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

138

During the eighth part of the day, they shall submit to the

superintendent the sale report, saying "this much has been sold and

this much remains;" they shall also hand over the weights and

measures. Such are the rules applicable to local traffic.

As regards the sale of the king's merchandise in foreign

countries:---

Having ascertained the value of local produce as compared

with that of foreign produce that can be obtained in barter, the

superintendent will find out (by calculation) whether there is any

margin left for profit after meeting the payments (to the foreign

king) such as the toll (*sulka*), road-cess (*vartaní*), conveyance-cess

(*átiváhika*), tax payable at military stations (*gulmadeya*),

ferry-charges (*taradeya*), subsistence to the merchant and his

followers (*bhakta*), and the portion of merchandise payable to the

foreign king (*bhága*).

If no profit can be realised by selling the local produce in

foreign countries, he has to consider whether any local produce can

be profitably bartered for any foreign produce. Then he may send

one quarter of his valuable merchandise through safe roads to

different markets on land. In view of large profits, he (the deputed

merchant) may make friendship with the forest-guards,

boundary-guards, and officers in charge of cities and of

country-parts (of the foreign king). He shall take care to secure his

treasure (*sára*) and life from danger. If he cannot reach the

intended market, he may sell the merchandise (at any market) free

from all dues (*sarvadeyavisuddham*).

Or he may take his merchandise to other countries through

rivers (*nadípatha*).

He shall also gather information as to conveyance-charges

(*yánabhágaka*), subsistence on the way (*pathyadana*), value of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

139

foreign merchandise that can be obtained in barter for local

merchandise, occasions of pilgrimages (*yátrakála*), means that can

be employed to ward off dangers (of the journey), and the history

of commercial towns (*panyapattanacháritra*).

Having gathered information as to the transaction in

commercial towns along the banks of rivers, he shall transport his

merchandise to profitable markets and avoid unprofitable ones.

[Thus ends Chapter XVI, “The Superintendent of Commerce” in

Book II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of thirty-seventh chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF FOREST PRODUCE.

THE Superintendent of Forest Produce shall collect timber

and other products of forests by employing those who guard

productive forests. He shall not only start productive works in

forests, but also fix adequate fines and compensations to be levied

from those who cause any damage to productive forests except in

calamities.

The following are forest products.

*Sáka* (teak), *tinisa* (Dalbergia Ougeinensis), *dhanvana* (?),

*arjuna* (Terminalia Arjuna), *madhúka* (Bassia Latifolia), *tilaka*

(Barleria Cristata), *tála* (palmyra), *simsúpa* (Dalbergia Sissu),

*arimeda* (Fetid Mimosa), *rájádana* (Mimosops Kauki), *sirisha*

(Mimosa Sirísha), *khadira* (Mimosa Catechu), *sarala* (Pinus

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

140

Longifolia), *tálasarja* (*sal* tree or Shorea Robesta), *asvakarna*

(Vatica Robesta), *somavalka* (a kind of white *khadíra*), *kasámra*

(?), *priyaka* (yellow *sal* tree), *dhava* (Mimosa Hexandra), etc., are

the trees of strong timber (*sáradáruvarga*).

*Utaja*, *Chimiya*, *Chava*, *Vénu*, *Vamsa*, *Sátina*, *Kantaka*, and

*Bhállúka*, etc., form the group of bamboo.

*Vetra* (cane), *sokavalli*, *vási* (Justicia Ganderussa ?),

*syámalatá* (Ichnocarpus), *nágalata* (betel), etc., form the group of

creepers.

*Málati* (Jasminum Grandiflorum), *dúrvá* (panic grass), *arka*

(Calotropis Gigantea), *sana* (hemp), *gavedhuka* (Coix Barbata),

*atasí* (Linum Usitatis simum), etc., form the group of fibrous plants

(*valkavarga*).

*Munja* (Saccharum Munja), *balbaja* (Eleusine Indica), etc.,

are plants which yield rope-making material (*rajjubhánda*).

*Táli* (Corypha Taliera), *tála* (palmyra or Borassus

Flabelliformis), and *bhúrja* (birch) yield leaves (*patram*).

*Kimsuka* (Butea Frondosa), *kusumbha* (Carthamus

Tinctorius), and *kumkuma* (Crocus Sativus) yield flowers.

Bulbous roots and fruits are the group of medicines.

*Kálakúta*, *Vatsanábha*, *Háláhala*, *Meshasringa*, *Mustá*,

(Cyperus Rotundus), *kushtha*, *mahávisha*, *vellitaka*, *gaurárdra*,

*bálaka*, *márkata*, *haimavata*, *kálingaka*, *daradaka*, *kolasáraka*,

*ushtraka*, etc., are poisons.

Likewise snakes and worms kept in pots are the group of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

141

poisons.

Skins are those of *godha* (alligator), *seraka* (?), *dvípi*

(leopard), *simsumára* (porpoise), *simha* (lion), *vyághra* (tiger),

*hasti*, (elephant.), *mahisha* (buffalo), *chamara* (bos grunniens),

*gomriga* (bos gavaeus), and *gavaya* (the *gayal*).

Bones, bile (*pittha*), *snáyu* (?), teeth, horn, hoofs, and tails of

the above animals as well as of other beasts, cattle, birds and

snakes (*vyála*).

*Káláyasa* (iron), *támra* (copper), *vritta* (?), *kámsya* (bronze),

*sísa* (lead), *trapu* (tin),

*vaikrintaka* (mercury ?), and *árakuata* (brass), are metals.

Utensils (*bhanda*), are those made of cane, bark (*vidala*), and

clay (*mrittiká*).

Charcoal, bran, and ashes are other things.

Menageries of beasts, cattle, and birds.

Collection of firewood and fodder.

The superintendent of forest produce shall carry on either

inside or outside (the

capital city) the manufacture of all kinds of articles which are

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

142

necessary for life or for the

defence of forts. [Thus ends Chapter XVII, “The Superintendent of

Forest Produce” in Book II, “The Duties of Government

Superintendents” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of chapter

thirty-eighth from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVIII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF THE ARMOURY.

THE Superintendent of the Armoury shall employ

experienced workmen of tried ability to manufacture in a given

time and for fixed wages wheels, weapons, mail armour, and other

accessory instruments for use in battles, in the construction or

defence of forts, or in destroying the cities or strongholds of

enemies.

All these weapons and instruments shall be kept in places

suitably prepared for them. They shall not only be frequently

dusted and transferred from one place to another, but also be

exposed to the sun. Such weapons as are likely to be affected by

heat and vapour (*úshmopasneha*) and to be eaten by worms shall be

kept in safe localities. They shall also be examined now and then

with reference to the class to which they belong, their forms, their

characteristics, their size, their source, their value, and their total

quantity.

*Sarvatobhadra*, *jamadagnya*, *bahumukha*, *visvásagháti*,

*samgháti*, *yánaka*, *parjanyaka*, *ardhabáhu*, and *úrdhvabáhu* are

immoveable machines (*sthirayantrám*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

143

*Pánchálika*, *devadanda*, *súkarika*, *musala*, *yashti*,

*hastiváraka*, *tálavrinta*, *mudgara*, *gada*, *spriktala*, *kuddála*,

*ásphátima*, *audhghátima*, *sataghni*, *trisúla*, and *chakra* are

moveable machines.

*Sakti*, *prása*, *kunta*, *hátaka*, *bhindivála*, *súla*, *tomara*,

*varáhakarna*, *kanaya*, *karpana*, *trásika*, and the like are weapons

with edges like a ploughshare (*halamukháni*).

Bows made of *tála* (palmyra), of *chápa* (a kind of bamboo),

of *dáru* (a kind of wood), and *sringa* (bone or horn) are

respectively called *kármuka*, *kodanda*, *druna*, and *dhanus*.

Bow-strings are made of *múrva* (Sansviera Roxburghiana),

*arka* (Catotropis Gigantea), *sána* (hemp), *gavedhu* (Coix Barbata),

*venu* (bamboo bark), and *snáyu* (sinew).

*Venu*, *sara*, *saláka*, *dandásana*, and *nárácha* are different

kinds of arrows. The edges of arrows shall be so made of iron, bone

or wood as to cut, rend or pierce.

*Nistrimsa*, *mandalágra*, and *asiyashti* are swords. The

handles of swords are made of the horn of rhinoceros, buffalo, of

the tusk of elephants, of wood, or of the root of bamboo.

*Parasu*, *kuthára*, *pattasa*, *khanitra*, *kuddála*, *chakra*, and

*kándachchhedana* are razor-like weapons.

*Yantrapáshána*, *goshpanapáshána*, *mushtipáshána*, *rochaní*

(mill-stone), and stones are other weapons (*áyudháni*).

*Lohajáliká*, *patta*, *kavacha*, and *sútraka* are varieties of

armour made of iron or of skins with hoofs and horns of porpoise,

rhinoceros, bison, elephant or cow.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

144

Likewise *sirastrána* (cover for the head), *kanthatrána* (cover

for the neck) *kúrpása* (cover for the trunk), *kanchuka* (a coat

extending as far as the knee joints), *váravána* (a coat extending as

far as the heels), *patta*, (a coat without cover for the arms), and

*nágodariká* (gloves) are varieties of armour.

*Veti*, *charma*, *hastikarna*, *tálamúla*, *dharmanika*, *kaváta*,

*kitika*, *apratihata*, and *valáhakánta* are instruments used in

self-defence (*ávaranáni*).

Ornaments for elephants, chariots, and horses as well as

goads and hooks to lead them in battle-fields constitute accessory

things (*upakaranáni*).

(Besides the above) such other delusive and destructive

contrivances (as are treated of in Book XIV) together with any

other new inventions of expert workmen (shall also be kept in

stock.)

The Superintendent of Armoury shall precisely ascertain the

demand and supply of weapons, their application, their wear and

tear, as well as their decay and loss.

[Thus ends Chapter XVIII, “The Superintendent of the Armoury”

in Book II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of thirty-ninth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIX. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

145

THE Superintendent of Weights and Measures shall have the same

manufactured.

10 seeds of *másha* (*Phraseolus Radiatus*) or

5 ,, *gunja* (*Cabrus Precatorius*) = 1 *suvarna*-*másha*. 16

*máshas* = 1 *suvarna* or *karsha*. 4 *karshas* = 1 *pala*. 88 white

mustard seeds = 1 silver-*másha*. 16 silver *mashas* or 20 *saibya*

seeds = 1 *dharana*. 20 grains of rice = 1 *dharana* of a diamond.

*Ardha*-*másha* (half a *másha*), one *másha*, two *máshas*, four

*máshas*, eight *máshas*, one *suvarna*, two *suvarnas*, four *suvarnas*,

eight *suvarnas*, ten *suvarnas*, twenty *suvarnas*, thirty *suvarnas*,

forty *suvarnas* and one hundred *suvarnas* are different units of

weights.

Similar series of weights shall also be made in *dharanas*.

Weights (*pratimánáni*) shall be made of iron or of stones

available in the countries of Magadha and Mekala; or of such

things as will neither contract when wetted, nor expand under the

influence of heat.

Beginning with a lever of six *angulas* in length and of one

*pala* in the weight of its metallic mass, there shall be made ten

(different) balances with levers successively increasing by one

*pala* in the weight of their metallic masses, and by eight *angulas* in

their length. A scale-pan shall be attached to each of them on one or

both sides.

A balance called *samavrittá*, with its lever 72-angulas long

and weighing 53 *palas* in its metallic mass shall also be made. A

scalepan of 5 *palas* in the weight of its metallic mass being

attached to its edge, the horizontal position of the lever

(*samakarana*) when weighing a *karsha* shall be marked (on that

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

146

part of the lever where, held by a thread, it stands horizontal). To

the left of that mark, symbols such as 1 *pala*, 12, 15 and 20 *palas*

shall be marked. After that, each place of tens up to 100 shall be

marked. In the place of *Akshas*, the sign of *Nándi* shall be marked.

Likewise a balance called *parimání* of twice as much metallic

mass as that of *samavrittá* and of 96 *angulas* in length shall be

made. On its lever, marks such as 20, 50 and 100 above its initial

weight of 100 shall be carved.

20 *tulas* == 1 *bhára*.

10 *dharanas* == 1 *pala*.

100 such *palas* == 1 *áyamání* (measure of royal Public balance (*vyávaháriká*), servants' balance (*bhájiní*), and harem (*antahpurabhájiní*) successively decrease by five

*palas* (compared with *áyamáni*). A *pala* in

each of the above successively falls short of

the same in *áyamáni* by half a *dharana*. The

metallic mass of the levers of each of the

above successively decreases in weight by

two ordinary *palas* and in length by six

*angulas*. Excepting flesh, metals, salt, and

precious stones, an excess of five *palas*

(*prayáma*) of all other commodities (shall

be given to the king ) when they are

weighed in the two first-named balances. A

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

147

wooden balance with a lever 8 hands long,

with measuring marks and

counterpoise weights shall be erected on a pedestal like that of a

peacock. Twenty-five *palas* of firewood will cook one

*prastha* of rice. This is the unit (for the calculation) of any

greater or less quantity (of firewood). Thus weighing balance

and weights are commented upon. Then,

1 *drona* which is an *áyamána*, a measure of royal

200 *palas* in the grains of

*másha*

income.

187½ ,, 1

public *drona*.

175 ,, 1 *bhájaníya*, servants' measure 162½ ,, 1

*antahpurabhájaníya*, harem measure.

*Adhaka*, *prastha*, and *kudumba*, are each ¼ of the one previously

mentioned.

16 *dronas* == 1 *várí*. 20 ,, == 1

*kumbha*. 10 *kumbhas* == 1 *vaha*.

Cubic measures shall be so made of dry and strong wood that

when filled with grains, the conically heaped-up portion of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

148

grains standing on the mouth of the measure is equal to ¼th of the

quantity of the grains (so measured); or the measures may also be

so made that a quantity equal to the heaped-up portion can be

contained within (the measure).

But liquids shall always be measured level to the mouth of

the measure.

With regard to wine, flowers, fruits, bran, charcoal and

slaked lime, twice the quantity of the heaped-up portion (*i.e*., ¼th

of the measure) shall be given in excess.

1¼ *panas* is the

price of

a *drona*.

¾ *pana* ,, an *ádhaka*.

6 *máshas* ,, a *prastha*.

1 *másha* ,, a *kudumba*.

The price of similar liquid-measures is double the above.

20 *panas* is the

a set of counter-weights.

price of 6⅔ *panas* ,, of a *tulá* (balance).

The Superintendent shall charge 4 *máshas* for stamping

weights or measures. A fine of 27¼ *panas* shall be imposed for

using unstamped weights or measures.

Traders shall every day pay one *kákaní* to the Superintendent

towards the charge of stamping the weights and measures.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

149

Those who trade in clarified butter, shall give, (to purchasers)

1/32 part more as *taptavyáji* (*i.e*., compensation for decrease in the

quantity of *ghi* owing to its liquid condition). Those who trade in

oil shall give 1/64 part more as *taptavyáji*.

(While selling liquids, traders) shall give 1/50 part more as

*mánasráva* (*i.e*., compensation for diminution in the quantity

owing to its overflow or adhesion to the measuring can).

Half, one-fourth, and one-eighth parts of the measure,

*kumbha*, shall also be manufactured.

84 *kudumbas* of clarified butter are held

to be equal to

a *wáraka* of the same;

64 *kudumbas* of clarified butter are held make one *wáraka* of oil

(*taila*);and¼ of a *wáraka* to be equal to is called *ghatika*, either of

*ghi* or of oil.

[Thus ends Chapter XIX, "Balance, Weights and Measures" in

Book II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents" of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the fortieth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XX. MEASUREMENT OF SPACE AND TIME.

THE Superintendent of lineal measure shall possess the knowledge of measuring space and time.

atoms (*paramánavah*) are

1 particle thrown off by the wheel of a chariot.

equal to 8 particles are equal to 1 *likshá*.

8 *likshás* are equal to the middle of a *yúka* (louse) or a *yúka* of medium size.

8 *yúkas* are equal to 1 *yava* (barley) of middle size.

1 *angula* (¾ of an English inch) or the middlemost joint 8 *yavas* are equal to of the middle finger of

a man of medium size may be taken to be equal to an *angula*.

4 *angulas* are equal to 1 *dhanurgraha*.

8 *angulas* are equal to 1*dhanurmushti*.

12 *angulas* are equal to 1 *vitasti*, or 1 *chháyápaurusha*.

14 *angulas* are equal to 1 *sama*, *sala*, *pariraya*, or *pada*.

2 *vitastis* are equal to 1 *aratni* or 1 *prájápatya hasta*

2 *vitastis plus* 1 *dhanurgraha* are1 *hasta* used in measuring balances and cubic measures, equal to and pasture lands.

2 *vitastis plus* 1 *dhanurmusti* 1 *kishku* or 1 *kamsa*.

1 *kishku* according to sawyers and blacksmiths and used

42 *angulas* are equal to in measuring the grounds for the encampment of the army, for forts and palaces.

54 *angulas* are equal to 1 *hasta* used in measuring timber forests.

84 *angulas* are equal to 1 *vyáma*, used in measuring ropes and the depth of

digging, in terms of a man's height.

4 *aratnis* are equal to 1 *danda*, 1 *dhanus*, 1 *nálika* and 1*paurusha*.

108 *angulas* are equal to 1 *garhapatya dhanus* (*i.e*., a measure used by carpenters

called *grihapati*). This measure is used in measuring roads and fort-walls.

The same (108 *angulas*) are 1 *paurusha*, a measure used in building sacrificial altars. equal to 6 *kamsas* or 192 *angulas* are1 *danda*, used in measuring such lands as are gifted to equal to *Bráhmans*.

10 *dandas* are equal to 1 *rajju*.

2 *rajjus* are equal to 1 *paridesa* (square measure).

3 *rajjus* are equal to 1 *nivartana* (square measure).

The same (3 *rajjus*) *plus* 2 *dandas* on one side only are 1 *báhu* (arm). equal to

1000 *dhanus* are equal to 1 *goruta* (sound of a cow).

4 *gorutas* are equal to 1 *yojana*.

Thus are the lineal and square measures dealt with.

Then with regard to the measures of time:---

(The divisions of time are) a *truti*, *lava*, *nimesha*, *káshthá*,

*kalá*, *náliká*, *muhúrta*, forenoon, afternoon, day, night, *paksha*,

month, *ritu* (season), *ayana* (solstice); *samvatsara* (year), and *yuga*.

2 *trutis* are equal to 1 *lava*.

2 *lavas* are equal to 1 *nimesha*.

5 *nimeshas* are equal to 1 *káshthá*.

30 *káshthás* are equal to 1 *kalá*.

1 *náliká*, or the time during which one *ádhaka* of water passes

40 *kalás* are equal to out of a pot through an aperture of the same diameter as that of a

wire of 4 *angulas* in length and made of 4 *máshas* of gold.

2 *nálikas* are equal to 1 *muhúrta*. 15 *muhúrtas* are equal 1 day or 1 night.

to

Such a day and night happen in the months of *Chaitra* and

*Asvayuja*. Then after the period of six months it increases or

diminishes by three *muhúrtas*.

When the length of shadow is eight *paurushas* (96 *angulas*), it

is 1/18th part of the day.

When it is 6 *paurushas* (72 *angulas*), it is 1/14th part of the

day; when 4 *paurushas*, 1/8th part; when 2 *paurushas*, 1/6th part;

when 1 *paurusha*, ¼th part; when it is 8 *angulas*, 3/10th part

(*trayodasabhágah*); when 4 *angulas*, 3/8th part; and when no

shadow is cast, it is to be considered midday.

Likewise when the day declines, the same process in reverse

order shall be observed.

It is in the month of *Ashádha* that no shadow is cast in

midday. After *Ashádha*, during the six months from *Srávana*

upwards, the length of shadow successively increases by two

*angulas* and during the next six months from *Mágha* upwards, it

successively decreases by two *angulas*.

Fifteen days and nights together make up one *paksha*. That

*paksha* during which the moon waxes is white (*sukla*) and that

*paksha* during which the moon wanes is *bahula*.

Two *pakshas* make one month (*mása*). Thirty days and nights

together make one work-a-month (*prakarmamásah*). The same (30

days and nights) with an additional half a day makes one solar

month (*saura*).

The same (30) less by half a day makes one lunar month

(*chandramása*). Twenty-seven (days and nights) make a

sidereal month (*nakshatramása*). Once in thirty-two months

there comes one *malamása* profane month, *i.e*., an extra

month added to lunar year to harmonise it with

the solar. Once in thirty-five months there

comes a *malamása* for *Asvaváhas*.

Once in forty months there comes a *malamása* for *hastiváhas*.

Two months make one *ritu* (season). *Srávana* and

*proshthapada* make the rainy season (*varshá*). *Asvayuja* and

*Kárthíka* make the autumn (*sarad*). *Márgasírsha* and

*Phausha* make the winter (*hemanta*). *Mágha* and *Phalguna*

make the dewy season (*sisira*). *Chaitra* and *Vaisákha* make

the spring (*vasanta*). *Jyeshthámúlíya* and *Ashádha* make the

summer (*grishma*). Seasons from *sisira* and upwards are the

summer-solstice (*uttaráyana*), and (those)

from *varshá* and upwards are the winter solstice

(*dakshináyana*). Two solstices (*ayanas*) make one year

(*samvatsara*). Five years make one *yuga*. The sun

carries off (*harati*) 1/60th of a whole day every day and

thus makes one complete day in every two months

(*ritau*). Likewise the moon (falls behind by 1/60th of a

whole day every day and falls behind one day in every two

months). Thus in the middle of every third year, they (the sun and

the moon) make one *adhimása*, additional month, first in the

summer season and second at the end of five years.

[Thus ends Chapter XX, “Measurement of Space and Time” in

Book II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the forty-first chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXI. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF TOLLS.

THE Superintendent of Tolls shall erect near the large gate of

the city both the tollhouse and its flag facing either the north or the

south. When merchants with their merchandise arrive at the

toll-gate, four or five collectors shall take down who the merchants

are, whence they come, what amount of merchandise they have

brought and where for the first time the sealmark

(*abhijnánamudrá*) has been made (on the merchandise).

Those whose merchandise has not been stamped with

sealmark shall pay twice the amount of toll. For counterfeit seal

they shall pay eight times the toll. If the sealmark is effaced or torn,

(the merchants in question) shall be compelled to stand in

*ghatikásthána*. When one kind of seal is used for another or when

one kind of merchandise has been otherwise named (*námakrite*),

the merchants shall pay a fine of 1¼ *panás* for each load

(*sapádapanikam vahanam dápayet*).

The merchandise being placed near the flag of the toll-house,

the merchants shall declare its quantity and price, cry out thrice

"who will purchase this quantity of merchandise for this amount of

price," and hand over the same to those who demand it (for that

price). When purchasers happen to bid for it, the enhanced amount

of the price together with the toll on the merchandise shall be paid

into the king's treasury. When under the fear of having to pay a

heavy toll, the quantity or the price of merchandise is lowered, the

excess shall be taken by the king or the merchants shall be made to

pay eight times the toll. The same punishment shall be imposed

when the price of the merchandise packed in bags is lowered by

showing an inferior sort as its sample or when valuable

merchandise is covered over with a layer of an inferior one.

When under the fear of bidders (enhancing the price), the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

156

price of any merchandise is increased beyond its proper value, the

king shall receive the enhanced amount or twice the amount of toll

on it. The same punishment or eight times the amount of toll shall

be imposed on the Superintendent of tolls if he conceals

(merchandise).

Hence commodities shall be sold only after they are precisely

weighed, measured, or numbered.

With regard to inferior commodities as well as those which

are to be let off free of toll, the amount of toll due shall be

determined after careful consideration.

Those merchants who pass beyond the flag of the toll-house

without paying the toll shall be fined eight times the amount of the

toll due from them.

Those who pass by to and from (the city) shall ascertain

(whether or not toll has been paid on any merchandise going along

the road.)

Commodities intended for marriages, or taken by a bride from

her parents' house to her husband's (*anváyanam*), or intended for

presentation, or taken for the purpose of sacrificial performance,

confinement of women, worship of gods, ceremony of tonsure,

investiture of sacred thread, gift of cows (*godána*, made before

marriage), any religious rite, consecration ceremony (*dikshá*), and

other special ceremonials shall be let off free of toll.

Those who utter a lie shall be punished as thieves.

Those who smuggle a part of merchandise on which toll has

not been paid with that on which toll has been paid as well as those

who, with a view to smuggle with one pass a second portion of

merchandise, put it along with the stamped merchandise after

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

157

breaking open the bag shall forfeit the smuggled quantity and pay

as much fine as is equal to the quantity so smuggled.

He who, falsely swearing by cowdung, smuggles

merchandise, shall be punished with the highest amercement.

When a person imports such forbidden articles as weapons

(*sastra*), mail armour, metals, chariots, precious stones, grains and

cattle, he shall not only be punished as laid down elsewhere, but

also be made to forfeit his merchandise. When any of such

commodities has been brought in for sale, they shall be sold, free of

toll far outside (the fort).

The officer in charge of boundaries (*antapála*) shall receive a

*pana*-and-a-quarter as roadcess (*vartani*) on each load of

merchandise (*panyavahanasya*).

He shall levy a *pana* on a single-hoofed animal, half a *pana*

on each head of cattle, and a quarter on a minor quadruped.

He shall also receive a *másha* on a head-load of

merchandise.

He shall also make good whatever has been lost by merchants

(in the part of the country under his charge).

After carefully examining foreign commodities as to their

superior or inferior quality and stamping them with his seal, he

shall send the same to the superintendent of tolls.

Or he may send to the king a spy in the guise of a trader with

information as to the quantity and quality of the merchandise.

(Having received this information,) the king shall in turn send it to

the superintendent of tolls in view of exhibiting the king's

omniscient power. The superintendent shall tell the merchants (in

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

158

question) that such and such a merchant has brought such and such

amount of superior or inferior merchandise, which none can

possibly hide, and that that information is due to the omniscient

power of the king.

For hiding inferior commodities, eight times the amount of

toll shall be imposed; and for hiding or concealing superior

commodities, they shall be wholly confiscated.

Whatever causes harm or is useless to the country shall be

shut out; and whatever is of immense good as well as seeds not

easily available shall be let in free of toll.

[Thus ends Chapter XXI, “The Superintendent of Tolls” in Book

II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the forty-second chapter from the

beginning.)

## CHAPTER XXII. REGULATION OF TOLL-DUES.

MERCHANDISE, external (*báhyam*, *i.e.*, arriving from

country parts), internal (*ábhyantaram*, *i.e.*, manufactured inside

forts), or foreign (*átithyani*, *i.e*., imported from foreign countries)

shall all be liable to the payment of toll alike when exported

(*nishkrámya*) and imported (*pravésyam*).

Imported commodities shall pay 1/5th of their value as toll.

Of flower, fruit, vegetables (*sáka*), roots (*múla*), bulbous

roots (*kanda*), *pallikya* (?), seeds, dried fish, and dried meat, the

superintendent shall receive 1/6th as toll.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

159

As regards conch-shells, diamonds, precious stones, pearls,

corals, and necklaces, experts acquainted with the time, cost, and

finish of the production of such articles shall fix the amount of toll.

Of fibrous garments (*kshauma*), cotton cloths (*dukúla*), silk

(*krimitána*), mail armour (*kankata*), sulphuret of arsenic (*haritála*),

red arsenic (*manassilá*), vermilion (*hingulaka*), metals (*lóha*), and

colouring ingredients (*varnadhátu*); of sandal, brown sandal

(*agaru*), pungents (*katuka*), ferments (*kinva*), dress (*ávarana*), and

the like; of wine, ivory, skins, raw materials used in making fibrous

or cotton garments, carpets, curtains (*právarana*), and products

yielded by worms (*krimijáta*); and of wool and other products

yielded by goats and sheep, he shall receive 1/10th or 1/15th as toll.

Of cloths (*vastra*), quadrupeds, bipeds, threads, cotton,

scents, medicines, wood, bamboo, fibres (*valkala*), skins, and

clay-pots; of grains, oils, sugar (*kshára*), salt, liquor (*madya*)

cooked rice and the like, he shall receive 1/20th or 1/25th as toll.

Gate-dues (*dvárádeya*) shall be 1/5th of toll dues; this tax

may be remitted if circumstances necessitate such favour.

Commodities shall never be sold where they are grown or

manufactured.

When minerals and other commodities are purchased from

mines, a fine of 600 *panás* shall be imposed.

When flower or fruits are purchased from flower or fruit

gardens, a fine of 54 *panas* shall be imposed.

When vegetables, roots, bulbous roots are purchased from

vegetable gardens, a fine 51¾ *panas* shall be imposed.

When any kind of grass or grain is purchased from field, a

fine of 53 *panas* shall be imposed.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

160

(Permanent) fines of 1 *pana* and 1½ *panas* shall be levied on

agricultural produce (*sítátyayah*).

Hence in accordance with the customs of countries or of

communities, the rate of toll shall be fixed on commodities, either

old or new; and fines shall be fixed in proportion to the gravity of

offences.

[Thus ends Chapter XXII, "Regulation of Toll-dues," in Book II,

"The Duties of Government Superintendents" of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the forty-third chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXIII. SUPERINTENDENT OF WEAVING.

THE Superintendent of Weaving shall employ qualified

persons to manufacture threads (*sútra*), coats (*varma*), cloths

(*vastra*), and ropes.

Widows, cripple women, girls, mendicant or ascetic women

(*pravrajitá*), women compelled to work in default of paying fines

(*dandápratikáriní*), mothers of prostitutes, old women-servants of

the king, and prostitutes (*devadási*) who have ceased to attend

temples on service shall be employed to cut wool, fibre, cotton,

panicle (*túla*), hemp, and flax.

Wages shall be fixed according as the threads spun are fine,

coarse (*sthúla*, *i.e*., big) or of middle quality and in proportion to a

greater or less quantity manufactured, and in consideration of the

quantity of thread spun, those (who turn out a greater quantity)

shall be presented with oil and dried cakes of *myrobalan* fruits

(*tailámalakódvartanaih*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

161

They may also be made to work on holidays (*tithishu*) by

payment of special rewards (*prativápadánamánaih*).

Wages shall be cut short, if making allowance for the quality

of raw material, the quantity of the threads spun out is found to fall

short.

Weaving may also be done by those artisans who are

qualified to turn out a given amount of work in a given time and for

a fixed amount of wages.

The superintendent shall closely associate with the workmen.

Those who manufacture fibrous cloths, raiments, silk-cloths,

woollen cloths, and cotton fabrics shall be rewarded by

presentations such as scents, garlands of flowers, or any other

prizes of encouragement.

Various kinds of garments, blankets, and curtains

shall be manufactured.

Those who are acquainted with the work shall

manufacture mail armour.

Those women who do not stir out of their houses

(*anishkásinyah*), those whose husbands are gone abroad, and those

who are cripple or girls may, when obliged to work for subsistence,

be provided with work (spinning out threads) in due courtesy

through the medium of maid-servants (of the weaving

establishment.)

Those women who can present themselves at the weaving

house shall at dawn be enabled to exchange their spinnings for

wages (*bhándavetanavinimayam*). Only so much light as is enough

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

162

to examine the threads shall be kept. If the superintendent looks at

the face of such women or talks about any other work, he shall be

punished with the first amercement. Delay in paying the wages

shall be punished with the middlemost amercement. Likewise

when wages are paid for work that is not completed.

She who, having received wages, does not turn out the work

shall have her thumb cut off.

Those who misappropriate, steal, or run away with, (the raw

material supplied to them) shall be similarly punished.

Weavers, when guilty, shall be fined out of their wages in

proportion to their offences.

The superintendent shall closely associate with those who

manufacture ropes and mail armour and shall carry on the

manufacture of straps (*varatra*) and other commodities.

He shall carry on the manufacture of ropes from threads and

fibres and of straps from cane and bamboo bark, with which beasts

for draught are trained or tethered.

[Thus ends Chapter XXIII, "The Superintendent of Weaving" in

Book II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the forty-fourth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXIV. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF AGRICULTURE.

POSSESSED of the knowledge of the science of agriculture

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

163

dealing with the plantation of bushes and trees

(*krishitantragulmavrikshsháyurvedajñah*), or assisted by those

who are trained in such sciences, the superintendent of agriculture

shall in time collect the seeds of all kinds of grains, flowers, fruits,

vegetables, bulbous roots, roots, *pállikya* (?), fibre-producing

plants, and cotton.

He shall employ slaves, labourers, and prisoners

(*dandapratikartri*) to sow the seeds on crown-lands which have

been often and satisfactorily ploughed.

The work of the above men shall not suffer on account of any

want in ploughs (*karshanayantra*) and other necessary instruments

or of bullocks. Nor shall there be any delay in procuring to them the

assistence of blacksmiths, carpenters, borers (*medaka*),

ropemakers, as well as those who catch snakes, and similar

persons.

Any loss due to the above persons shall be punished with a

fine equal to the loss.

The quantity of rain that falls in the country of *jángala* is 16

*dronas*; half as much more in moist countries (*anúpánám*); as to

the countries which are fit for agriculture (*désavápánam*);--13½

*dronas* in the country of *asmakas*; 23 *dronas* in *avantí*; and an

immense quantity in western countries (*aparántánám*), the borders

of the Himalayas, and the countries where water channels are made

use of in agriculture (*kulyávápánám*).

When one-third of the requisite quantity of rain falls both

during the commencement and closing months of the rainy season

and two-thirds in the middle, then the rainfall is (considered) very

even (*sushumárúpam*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

164

A forecast of such rainfall can be made by observing the

position, motion, and pregnancy (*garbhádána*) of the Jupiter

(*Brihaspati*), the rise and set and motion of the Venus, and the

natural or unnatural aspect of the sun.

From the sun, the sprouting of the seeds can be inferred; from

(the position of) the Jupiter, the formation of grains (*stambakarita*)

can be inferred; and from the movements of the Venus, rainfall can

be inferred.

Three are the clouds that continuously rain for seven days;

eighty are they that pour minute drops; and sixty are they that

appear with the sunshine--this is termed rainfall. Where rain, free

from wind and unmingled with sunshine, falls so as to render three

turns of ploughing possible, there the reaping of good harvest is

certain.

Hence, *i.e*., according as the rainfall is more or less, the

superintendent shall sow the seeds which require either more or

less water.

*Sáli* (a kind of rice), *vríhi* (rice), *kodrava* (Paspalum

Scrobiculatum), *tila* (sesamum), *priyangu* (panic seeds), *dáraka*

(?), and *varaka* (Phraseolus Trilobus) are to be sown at the

commencement (*púrvávápah*) of the rainy season.

*Mudga* (Phraseolus Mungo), *másha* (Phraseolus Radiatus),

and *saibya* (?) are to be sown in the middle of the season.

*Kusumbha* (safflower), *masúra* (Ervum Hirsutum), *kuluttha*

(Dolichos Uniflorus), *yava* (barley), *godhúma* (wheat), *kaláya*

(leguminus seeds), *atasi* (linseed), and *sarshapa* (mustard) are to

be sown last.

Or seeds may be sown according to the changes of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

165

season.

Fields that are left unsown (*vápátiriktam*, *i.e*., owing to the

inadequacy of hands) may be brought under cultivation by

employing those who cultivate for half the share in the produce

(*ardhasítiká*); or those who live by their own physical exertion

(*svavíryopajívinah*) may cultivate such fields for ¼th or 1/5th of

the produce grown; or they may pay (to the king) as much as they

can without entailing any hardship upon themselves (*anavasitam*

*bhágam*), with the exception of their own private lands that are

difficult to cultivate.

Those who cultivate irrigating by manual labour

(*hastaprávartimam*) shall pay 1/5th of the produce as water-rate

(*udakabhágam*); by carrying water on shoulders

(*skandhaprávartimam*) ¼th of the produce; by water-lifts

(*srotoyantraprávartimam*), ⅓rd of the produce; and by raising

water from rivers, lakes, tanks, and wells

(*nadisarastatákakúpodghátam*),⅓rd or ¼th of the produce.

The superintendent shall grow wet crops (*kedára*),

winter-crops (*haimana*), or summer crops (*graishmika*) according

to the supply of workmen and water.

Rice-crops and the like are the best (*jyáshtha*, *i.e*., to grow);

vegetables (*shanda*) are of intermediate nature; and sugarcane

crops (*ikshu*) are the worst (*pratyavarah*, *i.e*., very difficult to

grow), for they are subject to various evils and require much care

and expenditure to reap.

Lands that are beaten by foam (*phenághátah*, *i.e*., banks of

rivers, etc.) are suitable for growing *vallíphala* (pumpkin, gourd

and the like); lands that are frequently overflown by water

(*paríváhánta*) for long pepper, grapes (*mridvíká*), and sugarcane;

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

166

the vicinity of wells for vegetables and roots; low grounds

(*hariníparyantáh*) for green crops; and marginal furrows between

any two rows of crops are suitable for the plantation of fragrant

plants, medicinal herbs, cascus roots (*usínara*), *híra* (?), *beraka* (?),

and *pindáluka* (lac) and the like.

Such medicinal herbs as grow in marshy grounds are to be

grown not only in grounds suitable for them, but also in pots

(sthályam).

The seeds of grains are to be exposed to mist and heat

(*tushárapáyanamushnam cha*) for seven nights; the seeds of *kosi*

are treated similarly for three nights; the seeds of sugarcane and the

like (*kándabíjánam*) are plastered at the cut end with the mixture of

honey, clarified butter, the fat of hogs, and cowdung; the seeds of

bulbous roots (*kanda*) with honey and clarified butter; cotton seeds

(*asthibíja*) with cow-dung; and water pits at the root of trees are to

be burnt and manured with the bones and dung of cows on proper

occasions.

The sprouts of seeds, when grown, are to be manured with a

fresh haul of minute fishes and irrigated with the milk of *snuhi*

(Euphorbia Antiquorum).

Where there is the smoke caused by burning the essence of

cotton seeds and the slough of a snake, there snakes will not stay.

Always while sowing seeds, a handful of seeds bathed in

water with a piece of gold shall be sown first and the following

mantra recited:--

“Prajápatye Kasyapáya déváya Sadá Sítá medhyatám déví bíjéshu

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

167

dhanéshu cha. Chandaváta hé."

“Salutation to God *Prajápati Kasyapa*. Agriculture may

always flourish and the Goddess (may reside) in seeds and wealth.

*Channdavata he*."

Provisions shall be supplied to watchmen, slaves and

labourers in proportion to the amount of work done by them.

They shall be paid a *pana*-and-a-quarter per *mensem*. Artisans

shall be provided with wages and provision in proportion to the

amount of work done by them.

Those that are learned in the Vedas and those that are engaged

in making penance may take from the fields ripe flowers and fruits

for the purpose of worshipping their gods, and rice and barley for

the purpose of performing ágrayana, a sacrificial performance at

the commencement of harvest season, also those who live by

gleaning grains in fields may gather grains where grains had been

accumulated and removed from.

Grains and other crops shall be collected as often as they are

harvested. No wise man shall leave anything in the fields, nor even

chaff. Crops, when reaped, shall be heaped up in high piles or in the

form of turrets. The piles of crops shall not be kept close, nor shall

their tops be small or low. The threshing floors of different fields

shall be situated close to each other. Workmen in the fields shall

always have water but no fire.

[Thus ends Chapter XXIV, “The Superintendent of Agriculture” in

Book II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the forty-fifth chapter from the

beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

168

## CHAPTER XXV. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF LIQUOR.

BY employing such men as are acquainted with the

manufacture of liquor and ferments (*kinva*), the Superintendent of

Liquor shall carry on liquor-traffic not only in forts and country

parts, but also in camps.

In accordance with the requirements of demand and supply

(*krayavikrayavasena*) he may either centralize or decentralize the

sale of liquor.

A fine of 600 *panas* shall be imposed on all offenders other

than those who are manufacturers, purchasers, or sellers in

liquor-traffic.

Liquor shall not be taken out of villages, nor shall liquor

shops be close to each other.

Lest workmen spoil the work in hand, and *Aryas* violate their

decency and virtuous character, and lest firebrands commit

indiscreet acts, liquor shall be sold to persons of well known

character in such small quantities as one-fourth or half-a-*kudumba*,

one *kudumba*, half-a-*prastha*, or one *prastha*. Those who are well

known and of pure character may take liquor out of shop.

Or all may be compelled to drink liquor within the shops and

not allowed to stir out at once in view of detecting articles such as

sealed deposits, unsealed deposits, commodities given for repair,

stolen articles, and the like which the customer's may have

acquired by foul means. When they are found to possess gold and

other articles not their own, the superintendent shall contrive to

cause them to be arrested outside the shop. Likewise those who are

too extravagant or spend beyond their income shall be arrested.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

169

No fresh liquor other than bad liquor shall be sold below its

price. Bad liquor may be sold elsewhere or given to slaves or

workmen in lieu of wages; or it may form the drink of beasts for

draught or the subsistence of hogs.

Liquor shops shall contain many rooms provided with beds

and seats kept apart. The drinking room shall contain scents,

garlands of flowers, water, and other comfortable things suitable to

the varying seasons.

Spies stationed in the shops shall ascertain whether the

expenditure incurred by customers in the shop is ordinary or

extraordinary and also whether there are any strangers. They shall

also ascertain the value of the dress, ornaments, and gold of the

customers lying there under intoxication.

When customers under intoxication lose any of their things,

the merchants of the shop shall not only make good the loss, but

also pay an equivalent fine.

Merchants seated in half-closed rooms shall observe the

appearance of local and foreign customers who, in real or false

guise of *Aryas* lie down in intoxication along with their beautiful

mistresses.

Of various kinds of liquor such as *medaka*, *prasanna*, *ásava*,

*arista*, *maireya*, and *madhu*:--

*Medaka* is manufactured with one *drona* of water, half, an

*ádaka* of rice, and three *prastha* of *kinva* (ferment).

Twelve *ádhakas* of flour (*pishta*), five *prasthas* of *kinva*

(ferment), with the addition of spices (*játisambhára*) together with

the bark and fruits of *putraká* (a species of tree) constitute

*prasanná*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

170

One-hundred *palas* of *kapittha* (Feronia Elephantum) 500

*palas* of *phánita* (sugar), and one *prastha* of honey (*madhu*) form

*ásava*.

With an increase of one-quarter of the above ingredients, a

superior kind of *ásava* is manufactured; and when the same

ingredients are lessened to the extent of one-quarter each, it

becomes of an inferior quality.

The preparation of various kinds of *arishta* for various

diseases are to be learnt from physicians.

A sour gruel or decoction of the bark of *meshasringi* (a kind

of poison) mixed with *jaggery* (*guda*) and with the powder of long

pepper and black pepper or with the powder of *triphala* (1

Terminalia Chebula, 2 Terminalia Bellerica, and 3 Phyllanthus

Emblica) forms *Maireya*.

To all kinds of liquor mixed with *jaggery*, the powder of

*triphala* is always added.

The juice of grapes is termed *madhu*. Its own native place

(*svadesa*) is the commentary on such of its various forms as

*kápisáyana* and *hárahúraka*.

One *drona* of either boiled or unboiled paste of *másha*

(Phraseolus Radiatus), three parts more of rice, and one *karsha* of

*morata* (Alangium Hexapetalum) and the like form *kinva*

(ferment).

In the manufacture of *medaka* and *prasanna*, five *karshas* of

the powder of (each of *páthá* (Clypea Hermandifolio), *lodhra*

(Symplocos Racemosa), *tejovati* (Piper Chaba), *eláváluka*

(Solanum Melongena) honey, the juice of grapes (*madhurasa*),

*priyangu* (panic seeds), *dáruharidra* (a species of turmeric) black

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

171

pepper and long pepper are added as *sambhára*, requisite spices.

The decoction of *madhúka* (Bassia Latifolia) mixed with

granulated sugar (*katasarkará*), when added to *prasanna*, gives it a

pleasing colour.

The requisite quantity of spices to be added to *ásava* is one

*karshá* of the powder of each of *chocha* (bark of cinnamon),

*chitraka* (Plumbago Zeylanica), *vilanga*, and *gajapippalí*

(Scindapsus Officinalis), and two *karshas* of the powder of each of

*kramuka* (betel nut), *madhúka* (Bassia Latifolia), *mustá* (Cyprus

Rotundus), and *lodhra* (Symlocos Racemosa).

The addition of one-tenth of the above ingredients (*i.e*.,

*chocha*, *kramuka*, etc.), is (termed) *bíjabandha*.

The same ingredients as are added to *prasanná* are also added

to white liquor (*svetasurá*).

The liquor that is manufactured from mango fruits

(*sahakárasurá*) may contain a greater proportion of mango essence

(*rasottara*), or of spices (*bíjottara*). It is called *mahásura* when it

contains *sambhára* (spices as described above).

When a handful (*antarnakho mushtih*, *i.e*., so much as can be

held in the hand, the fingers being so bent that the nails cannot be

seen) of the powder of granulated sugar dissolved in the decoction

of *moratá* (Alangium Hexapetalum), *palása* (Butea Frondosa),

*dattúra* (Dattura Fastuosa), *karanja* (Robinia Mitis), *meshasringa*

(a kind of poison) and the bark of milky trees (*kshiravriksha*)

mixed with one-half of the paste formed by combining the powders

of *lodhra* (Symplocos Racemosa), *chitraka* (Plumbago Zeylanica),

*vilanga*, *páthá* (clypea Hermandifolia), *mustá* (cyprus Rotundus),

*kaláya* (leguminous seeds), *dáruharidra* (Amonum

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

172

Xanthorrhizon), *indívara* (blue lotus), *satapushpa* (Anethum

Sowa), *apámárga* (Achyranthes Aspera) *saptaparna* (Echites

Scholaris), and *nimba* (Nimba Melia) is added to (even) a *kumbha*

of liquor payable by the king, it renders it very pleasant. Five *palas*

of *phánita* (sugar) are added to the above in order to increase its

flavour.

On special occasions (*krityeshu*), people (*kutumbinah*, *i.e*.,

families) shall be allowed to manufacture white liquor (*svetasura*),

*arishta* for use in diseases, and other kinds of liquor.

On the occasions of festivals, fairs (*samája*), and pilgrimage,

right of manufacture of liquor for four days (*chaturahassaurikah*)

shall be allowed.

The Superintendent shall collect the daily fines

(*daivasikamatyayam*, *i.e*., license fees) from those who on these

occasions are permitted to manufacture liquor.

Women and children shall collect „*sura*,‟ and „*kinva*,‟

„ferment.‟

Those who deal with liquor other than that of the king shall

pay five percent as toll.

With regard to *sura*, *medaka*, *arishta*, wine, *phalámla* (acid

drinks prepared from fruits), and *ámlasídhu* (spirit distilled from

molasses):--

Having ascertained the day's sale of the above kinds of liquor,

the difference of royal and public measures (*mánavyáji*), and the

excessive amount of sale proceeds realised thereby, the

Superintendent shall fix the amount of compensation (*vaidharana*)

due to the king (from local or foreign merchants for entailing loss

on the king's liquor traffic) and shall always adopt the best course.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

173

[Thus ends Chapter XXV, "The Superintendent of Liquor" in Book

II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents," of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the forty-sixth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXVI. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF SLAUGHTER-HOUSE.

WHEN a person entraps, kills, or molests deer, bison, birds,

and fish which are declared to be under State protection or which

live in forests under State-protection (*abhayáranya*), he shall be

punished with the highest amercement.

Householders trespassing in forest preserves shall be

punished with the middlemost amercement.

When a person entraps, kills, or molests either fish or birds

that do not prey upon other animals, he shall be fined 26¾ *panas*;

and when he does the same to deer and other beasts, he shall be

fined twice as much.

Of beasts of prey that have been captured, the

Superintendent shall take one-sixth; of fish and birds (of similar

nature), he shall take one-tenth or more than one-tenth; and of deer

and other beasts (*mrigapasu*), one-tenth or more than one-tenth as

toll.

One-sixth of live animals such as birds and beasts shall be let

off in forests under State-protection.

Elephants, horses or animals having the form of a man, bull or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

174

an ass living in oceans as well as fish in tanks, lakes, channels and

rivers; and such game-birds as *krauncha* (a kind of heron),

*utkrosaka* (osprey), *dátyúha* (a sort of cuckoo), *hamsa* (flamingo),

*chakraváka* (a brahmany duck), *jivanjívaka* (a kind of pheasant),

*bhringarája* (*Lanius Malabaricus*), *chakora* (partridge),

*mattakokila* (cuckoo), peacock, parrot, and maina (*madanasárika*)

as well as other auspicious animals, whether birds or beasts, shall

be protected from all kinds of molestations.

Those who violate the above rule shall be punished with the first

amercement.

(Butchers) shall sell fresh and boneless flesh of beasts

(*mrigapasu*) just killed.

If they sell bony flesh, they shall give an equivalent

compensation (*pratipákam*).

If there is any diminution in weight owing to the use of a false

balance, they shall give eight times the diminution.

Cattle such as a calf, a bull, or a milch cow

shall not be slaughtered.

He who slaughters or tortures them to death

shall be fined 50 *panas*.

The flesh of animals which have been killed outside the

slaughter-house (*parisúnam*), headless, legless and boneless flesh,

rotten flesh, and the flesh of animals which have suddenly died

shall not be sold. Otherwise a fine of 12 *panas* shall be imposed.

Cattle, wild beasts, elephants (*vyala*), and fish living in

forests under State protection shall, if they become of vicious

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

175

nature, be entrapped and killed outside the forest preserve.

[Thus ends Chapter XXVI, "The Superintendent of

Slaughter-house" in Book II, "The Duties of Government

Superintendents" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

forty-seventh chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXVII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF PROSTITUTES.

THE Superintendent of Prostitutes shall employ (at the king's

court) on a salary of 1,000 *panas* (per annum) a prostitute (*ganiká*),

whether born or not born of a prostitute's family, and noted for her

beauty, youth, and accomplishments.

A rival prostitute (*pratiganiká*) on half the above salary

(kutumbárdhéna) shall also be appointed.

Whenever such a prostitute goes abroad or dies, her daughter

or sister shall act for her and receive her property and salary. Or her

mother may substitute another prostitute. In the absence of any of

these, the king himself shall take the property.

With a view to add to the splendour of prostitutes holding the

royal umbrella, golden pitcher, and fan, and attending upon the

king seated on his royal litter, throne, or chariot, prostitutes shall be

classified as of first, middle and highest rank according to their

beauty and splendid jewellery; likewise their salary shall be fixed

by thousands.

She who has lost her beauty shall be appointed as a nurse

(*mátriká*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

176

A prostitute shall pay 24,000 *panas* as ransom to regain her

liberty; and a prostitute's son 12,000 *panas*.

From the age of eight years, a prostitute shall hold musical

performance before the king.

Those prostitutes, female slaves, and old women who are

incapable of rendering any service in the form of enjoyment

(*bhagnabhogáh*) shall work in the storehouse or kitchen of the

king.

A prostitute who, putting herself under the protection of a

private person, ceases to attend the king's court shall pay a

*pana*-and-a-quarter per *mensem* (to the Government).

The superintendent shall determine the earnings, inheritance,

income (*áya*), expenditure, and future earnings (*áyati*) of every

prostitute.

He shall also check their extravagant expenditure.

When a prostitute puts her jewellery in the hands of any

person but her mother, she shall be fined 4¼ *panas*.

If she sells or mortgages her property (*svapateyam*), she

shall be fined 50¼ *panas*.

A prostitute shall be fined 24 *panas* for defamation; twice as

much for causing hurt; and 50¼ *panas* as well as 1½ *panas* for

cutting off the ear (of any person).

When a man has connection with a prostitute against her will

or with a prostitute girl (*kumári*), he shall be punished with the

highest amercement. But when he has connection with a willing

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

177

prostitute, (under age), he shall be punished with the first

amercement.

When a man keeps under confinement, or abducts, a

prostitute against her will, or disfigures her by causing hurt, he

shall be fined 1,000 *panas* or more rising up to twice the amount of

her ransom (*nishkraya*) according to the circumstances of the crime

and the position and the status of the prostitute (*sthánaviseshena*).

When a man causes hurt to a prostitute appointed at the court

(*praptádhikáram*), he shall be fined thrice the amount of her

ransom.

When a man causes hurt to a prostitute's mother, to her young

daughter, or to a *rúpadási*, he shall be punished with the highest

amercement.

In all cases of offences, punishment for offences committed

for the first time shall be the first amercement; twice as much for

offences committed for a second time; thrice as much for the third

time; and for offences committed for the fourth time, the king may

impose any punishment he likes.

When a prostitute does not yield her person to any one under

the orders of the king, she shall receive 1000 lashes with a whip or

pay a fine of 5,000 *panas*.

When having received the requisite amount of fees, a

prostitute dislikes to yield her person, she shall be fined twice the

amount of the fees.

When, in her own house, a prostitute deprives her paramour

of his enjoyment, she shall be fined eight times the amount of the

fees unless the paramour happens to be unassociable on account of

disease and personal defects.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

178

When a prostitute murders her paramour, she shall be burnt

alive or thrown into water.

When a paramour steals the jewellery or money of, or

deceives to pay the fees due to, a prostitute, he shall be fined eight

times that amount.

Every prostitute shall supply information to the

superintendent as to the amount of her daily fees (*bhoga*), her

future income (*áyati*), and the paramour (under her influence).

The same rules shall apply to an actor, dancer, singer, player

on musical instruments, a buffoon (*vágjivana*), a mimic player

(*kusílava*), rope-dancer (*plavaka*), a juggler (*saubhika*), a

wandering bard or herald (*chárana*), pimps, and unchaste women.

When persons of the above description come from foreign

countries to hold their performances, they shall pay 5 *panas* as

license fee (*prekshávetana*).

Every prostitute (*rúpájivá*) shall pay every month twice the

amount of a day's earning (*bhogadvigunam*) to the Government.

Those who teach prostitutes, female slaves, and actresses, arts

such as singing, playing on musical instruments, reading, dancing,

acting, writing, painting, playing on the instruments like *vina*, pipe,

and drum, reading the thoughts of others, manufacture of scents

and garlands, shampooing, and the art of attracting and captivating

the mind of others shall be endowed with maintenance from the

State.

They (the teachers) shall train the sons of prostitutes to be

chief actors (*rangopajívi*) on the stage.

The wives of actors and others of similar profession who have

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

179

been taught various languages and the use of signals (*sanja*) shall,

along with their relatives, be made use of in detecting the wicked

and murdering or deluding foreign spies.

[Thus ends Chapter XXVII, "The Superintendent of Prostitutes" in

Book II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents," of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the forty-eighth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXVIII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF SHIPS.

THE Superintendent of Ships shall examine the accounts

relating to navigation not only on oceans and mouths of rivers, but

also on lakes natural or artificial, and rivers in the vicinity of

*stháníya* and other fortified cities.

Villages on seashores or on the banks of rivers and lakes

shall pay a fixed amount of tax (*kliptam*).

Fishermen shall give 1/6th of their haul as fees for fishing

license (*naukáhátakam*).

Merchants shall pay the customary toll levied in port-towns.

Passengers arriving on board the king's ship shall pay the

requisite amount of sailing fees (*yátrávetanam*).

Those (who make use of the king‟s boats in) fishing out

conch-shells and pearls shall pay the requisite amount of hire

(*Naukáhátakam*), or they may make use of their own boats.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

180

The duties of the superintendent of mines will explain those

of the superintendent of conch-shells and pearls.

The superintendent of ships shall strictly observe the customs

prevalent in commercial towns as well as the orders of the

superintendent of towns (*pattana*, port town).

Whenever a weatherbeaten ship arrives at a port-town, he

shall show fatherly kindness to it.

Vessels carrying on merchandise spoiled by water may either

be exempted from toll or may have their toll reduced to half and let

to sail when the time for setting sail approaches.

Ships that touch at harbours on their way may be requested

the payment of toll.

Pirate ships (*himsríká*), vessels which are bound for the

country of an enemy, as well as those which have violated the

customs and rules in force in port towns shall be destroyed.

In those large rivers which cannot be forded even during the

winter and summer seasons, there shall be launched large boats

(*mahánávah*) provided with a captain (*sásaka*), a steersman

(*niyámaka*), and servants to hold the sickle and the ropes and to

pour out water.

Small boats shall be launched in those small rivers which

overflow during the rainy season.

Fording or crossing the rivers (without permission) shall be

prohibited lest traitors may cross them (and escape).

When a person fords or crosses a river outside the proper

place and in unusual times, he shall be punished with the first

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

181

amercement.

When a man fords or crosses a river at the usual place and

time without permission, he shall be fined 26¾ *panas*.

Fishermen, carriers of firewood, grass, flowers, and fruits,

gardeners, vegetable-dealers, and herdsmen, persons pursuing

suspected criminals, messengers following other messengers going

in advance, servants engaged to carry things, provisions, and

orders to the army, those who use their own ferries, as well as those

who supply villages of marshy districts with seeds, necessaries of

life, commodities and other accessary things shall be exempted (to

cross rivers at any time and place).

Bráhmans, ascetics (*pravrajita*), children, the aged, the

afflicted, royal messengers, and pregnant women shall be provided

by the superintendent with free passes to cross rivers.

Foreign merchants who have often been visiting the country

as well as those who are well known to local merchants shall be

allowed to land in port-towns.

Any person who is abducting the wife or daughter of another,

one who is carrying off the wealth of another, a suspected person,

one who seems to be of perturbed appearance, one who has no

baggage, one who attempts to conceal, or evade the cognisance of

the valuable load in one's hand, one who has just put on a different

garb, one who has removed or renounced one's usual garb, one who

has just turned out an ascetic, one who pretends to be suffering

from disease, one who seems to be alarmed, one who is stealthily

carrying valuable things, or going on a secret mission, or carrying

weapons or explosives (*agniyoga*), one who holds poison in one's

hand, and one who has come from a long distance without a pass

shall all be arrested.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

182

A minor quadruped as well as a man carrying some load shall

pay one *másha*.

A head-load, a load carried on shoulders (*káyabhárah*), a

cow, and a horse shall each pay 2 *máshas*.

A camel and a buffalo shall each pay 4 *máshas*.

A small cart (*laghuyána*)5 *máshas*; and a cart (of medium

size) drawn by bulls (*golingam*) shall pay 6 *máshas* and a big cart

(*sakata*) 7 *máshas*.

A head-load of merchandise ¼ *másha*; this explains other

kinds of loads. In big rivers, ferry-fees are double the above.

Villages near marshy places shall give (to the ferry-men) the

prescribed amount of food-stuff and wages.

In boundaries, ferry-men shall receive the toll, carriage-cess,

and road-cess. They shall also confiscate the property of the person

travelling without a pass. The Superintendent of Boats shall make

good the loss caused by the loss of the boat due to the heavy load,

sailing in improper time or place, want of ferry-men, or lack of

repair. Boats should be launched between the months of *Ashádha*,

the first seven days being omitted, and *Kártika*; the evidence of a

ferryman should be given and the daily income should be remitted.

[Thus ends Chapter XXVIII, “The Superintendent of Ships” in

Book II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the forty-ninth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXIX. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF COWS.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

183

THE Superintendent of cows shall supervise (1) herds

maintained for wages (*vétanópagráhikam*), (2) herds surrendered

for a fixed amount of dairy produce (*karapratikara*), (3) useless

and abandoned herds (*bhagnotsrishtakam*), (4) herds maintained

for a share in dairy produce (*bhágánupravishtam*), (5) classes of

herds (*vrajaparyagram*), (6) cattle that strayed (*nashtam*), (7)

cattle that are irrecoverably lost (*vinashtam*), and (8) the amassed

quantity of milk and clarified butter.

(1) When a cowherd, a buffalo-herdsman, a milker, a churner, and

a hunter (*lubdhaka*) fed by wages graze milch cows (*dhenu*) in

hundreds (*satam satam*)--for if they graze the herds for the profit of

milk and *ghi*, they will starve the calves to death,--that system of

rearing the cattle is termed „herds maintained for wages.‟

(2) When a single person rears a hundred heads (*rúpasatam*) made

up of equal numbers of each of aged cows, milch cows, pregnant

cows, heifers, and calves (*vatsatari*) and gives (to the owner) 8

*várakas* of clarified butter per annum, as well as the branded skin

(of dead cows if any), that system is called „herds surrendered for a

fixed amount of dairy produce.‟

(3) When those who rear a hundred heads made up of equal

numbers of each of afflicted cattle, crippled cattle, cattle that

cannot be milked by any one but the accustomed person, cattle that

are not easily milked, and cattle that kill their own calves give in

return (to the owner) a share in dairy produce, it is termed „useless

and abandoned herd.‟

(4) When under the fear of cattle-lifting enemies

(*parachakrátavibhayát*), cattle are kept under the care of the

superintendent, giving him 1/10th of the dairy produce for his

protection, it is termed "herds maintained for a share in dairy

produce."

(5) When the superintendent classifies cattle as calves, steers,

tameable ones, draught oxen, bulls that are to be trained to yoke,

bulls kept for crossing cows, cattle that are fit only for the supply of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

184

flesh, buffaloes and draught buffaloes; female calves, female steer,

heifer, pregnant cows, milch cattle, barren cattle---either cows or

buffaloes; calves that are a month or two old as well as those which

are still younger; and when, as he ought to, he brands them all

inclusive of their calves of one or two months old along with those

stray cattle which have remained unclaimed in the herds for a

month or two; and when he registers the branded marks, natural

marks, colour and the distance from one horn to another of each of

the cattle, that system is known as „class of herds.‟

(6) When an animal is carried off by thieves or finds itself into the

herds of others or strays unknown, it is called „lost.‟

(7) When an animal is entangled in a quagmire or precipice or dies

of disease or of old age, or drowned in water: or when it is killed by

the fall of a tree or of river bank, or is beaten to death with a staff or

stone, or is struck by lightening (*ísána*), or is devoured by a tiger or

bitten by a cobra, or is carried off by a crocodile, or is involved in

the midst of a forest fire, it is termed as “irrecoverably lost.”

Cowherds shall endeavour to keep them away from such

dangers.

Whoever hurts or causes another to hurt, or steals or causes

another to steal a cow, should be slain.

When a person substitutes an animal (*rúpa*) bearing the royal

brand mark for a private one, he shall be punished with the first

amercement.

When a person recovers a local cattle from thieves, he shall

receive the promised reward (*panitam rúpam*); and when a man

rescues a foreign cattle (from thieves), he shall receive half its

value.

Cowherds shall apply remedies to calves or aged cows or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

185

cows suffering from diseases.

They shall graze the herds in forests which are severally

allotted as pasture grounds for various seasons and from which

thieves, tigers and other molesting beasts are driven away by

hunters aided by their hounds.

With a view to scare out snakes and tigers and as a definite

means of knowing the whereabouts of herds, sounding bells shall

be attached to (the neck of) timid cattle.

Cowherds shall allow their cattle to enter into such rivers or

lakes as are of equal depth all round, broad, and free from mire and

crocodiles, and shall protect them from dangers under such

circumstances.

Whenever an animal is caught hold of by a thief, a tiger, a

snake, or a crocodile, or when it is too infirm owing to age or

disease, they shall make a report of it; otherwise they shall be

compelled to make good the loss.

When an animal dies a natural death, they shall surrender the

skin with the brand mark, if it is a cow or a buffalo; the skin

together with the ear (*karnalakshanam*) if it is a goat or sheep; the

tail with the skin containing the brand mark, if it is an ass or a

camel; the skin, if it is a young one; besides the above, (they shall

also restore) the fat (*vasti*), bile, marrow (*snáyu*), teeth, hoofs,

horns, and bones.

They (the cowherds) may sell either fresh flesh or dried flesh.

They shall give buttermilk as drink to dogs and hogs, and

reserve a little (buttermilk) in a bronze vessel to prepare their own

dish: they may also make use of coagulated milk or cheese (*kíláta*)

to render their oilcakes relishing (*ghánapinyáka*-*kledartha*).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

186

He who sells his cow (from among the herds) shall pay (to the

king) ¼th *rúpa* (value of the cow).

During the rainy, autumnal, and the first part of winter

(*hemanta*) seasons, they shall milk the cattle both the times

(morning and evening); and during the latter part of winter and the

whole of the spring and summer seasons, they shall milk only once

(*i.e*., only in the morning). The cowherd who milks a cow a second

time during these seasons shall have his thumb cut off.

If he allows the time of milking to lapse, he shall forfeit the

profit thereof (*i.e.*, the milk).

The same rule shall hold good in case of negligence of the

opportune moment for putting a string through the nose of a bull

and other animals, and for taming or training them to the yoke.

One *drona* of a cow's milk will, when churned, yield one

*prastha* of butter; the same quantity of a buffalo's milk will yield

1/7th *prastha* more; and the same quantity of milk of goats and

sheep will produce ½ *prastha* more.

In all kinds of milk, the exact quantity of butter shall be

ascertained by churning; for increase in the supply of milk and

butter depends on the nature of the soil and the quantity and quality

of fodder and water.

When a person causes a bull attached to a herd to fight with

another bull, he shall be punished with the first amercement; when

a bull is injured (under such circumstances), he shall be punished

with the highest amercement.

Cattle shall be grouped in herds of ten each of similar colour,

while they are being grazed.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

187

According to the protective strength of the cowherds the

capacity of the cattle to go far and wide to graze, cowherds shall

take their cattle either far or near.

Once in six months, sheep and other animals shall be shorn

of their wool.

The same rules shall apply to herds of horses, asses, camels,

and hogs.

For bulls which are provided with nose-rings, and which

equal horses in speed and in carrying loads, half a *bhára* of

meadow grass (*yavasa*), twice the above quantity of ordinary grass

(*trina*), one *tulá* (100 *palas*) of oil cakes, 10 *ádhakas* of bran, 5

*palas* of salt (*mukhalavanam*), one *kudumba* of oil for rubbing over

the nose (*nasya*), 1 *prastha* of drink (*pána*), one *tulá* of flesh, 1

*ádhaka* of *curis*, 1 *drona* of barley or of cooked *másha* (Phraseolus

Radiatus), 1 *drona* of milk; or half an *ádhaka* of *surá* (liquor), 1

*prastha* of oil or *ghi* (*sneha*) 10 *palas* of sugar or jaggery, 1 *pala* of

the fruit of *sringibera* (ginger) may be substituted for milk

(*pratipána*).

The same commodities less by one quarter each will form the

diet for mules, cows, and asses; twice the quantity of the above

things for buffaloes and camels.

Draught oxen and cows, supplying milk (*payah*), shall be

provided with subsistence in proportion to the duration of time the

oxen are kept at work, and the quantity of milk which the cows

supply.

All cattle shall be supplied with

abundance of fodder and water.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

188

Thus the manner of rearing herds of

cattle has been dealt with.

A herd of 100 heads of asses and mules shall contain 5 male

animals; that of goats and sheep ten; and a herd of ten heads of

either cows or buffaloes shall contain four male animals.

[Thus ends Chapter XXIX, "The Superintendent of Cows” in Book

II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the fiftieth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXX. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF HORSES.

THE Superintendent of Horses shall register the breed, age,

colour, marks, group or classes, and the native place of horses, and

classify as (1) those that are kept in sale-house for sale

(*panyágárikam*), (2) those that are recently purchased

(*krayopágatam*), (3) those that have been captured in wars

(*áhavalabdham*), (4) those that are of local breed (*ájátam*), (5)

those that are sent thither for help (*sáháyyakágatam*), (6) those that

are mortgaged (*panasthitam*), and (7) those that are temporarily

kept in stables (*yávatkálikam*).

He shall make a report (to the king) of such animals as are

inauspicious, crippled, or diseased.

Every horseman shall know how to make an economic use of

whatever he has received from the king's treasury and storehouse.

The superintendent shall have a stable constructed as spacious

as required by the number of horses to be kept therein twice as

broad as the length of a horse, with four doors facing the four

quarters, with its central floor suited for the rolling of horses, with

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

189

projected front provided with wooden seats at the entrance, and

containing monkeys, peacocks, red spotted deer (*prishata*),

mangoose, partridges (*chakora*), parrots, and maina birds (*sárika*);

the room for every horse shall be four times as broad or long as the

length of a horse, with its central floor paved with smoothened

wooden planks, with separate compartments for fodder

(*khádanakoshthakam*), with passages for the removal of urine and

dung, and with a door facing either the north or the east. The

distinction of quarters (*digvibhága*) may be made as a matter of

fact or relatively to the situation of the building.

Steeds, stallions and colts shall be separately kept.

A steed that has just given birth to a colt shall be provided for

the first three days with a drink of 1 *prastha* of clarified butter;

afterwards it shall be fed with a *prastha* of flour (*saktu*) and made

to drink oil mixed with medicine for ten nights; after that time, it

shall have cooked grains, meadow grass, and other things suited to

the season of the day.

A colt, ten days old, shall be given a *kudumba* of flour mixed

with ¼th *kudumba* of clarified butter, and 1 *prastha* of milk till it

becomes six months old; then the above rations shall be increased

half as much during each succeeding month, with the addition of 1

*prastha* of barley till it becomes three years old, then one *drona* of

barley till it grows four years old; at the age of four or five, it

attains its full development and becomes serviceable.

The face (*mukha*) of the best horse measures 32 *angulas*; its

length is 5 times its face; its shank is 20 *angulas*; and its height is 4

times its shank.

Horses of medium and lower sizes fall short of the above

measurement by two and three *angulas* respectively.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

190

The circumference (*parínáha*) of the best horse measures 100

*angulas*, and horses of medium and lower sizes fall short of the

above measurement by five parts (*panchabhágávaram*).

For the best horse (the diet shall be) 2 *dronas* of any one of the

grains, rice (*sáli*, *vríhi*,) barley, panic seeds (*priyangu*) soaked or

cooked, cooked *mudga* (Phraseolus Munga) or *másha* (Phraseolus

Radiatus); one *prastha* of oil, 5 *palas* of salt, 50 *palas* of flesh, 1

*ádhaka* of broth (rasa) or 2 *ádhakas* of curd, 5 *palas* of sugar

(*kshára*), to make their diet relishing, 1 *prastha* of *súrá*, liquor, or 2

*prasthas* of milk.

The same quantity of drink shall be specially given to those

horses which are tired of long journey or of carrying loads.

One *prastha* of oil for giving enema (*anuvásana*), 1 *kudumba*

of oil for rubbing over the nose, 1,000 *palas* of meadow grass,

twice as much of ordinary grass (*trina*); and hay-stalk or grass shall

be spread over an area of 6 *aratnis*.

The same quantity of rations less by one-quarter for horses of

medium and lower size.

A draught horse or stallion of medium size shall be given the

same quantity as the best horse; and similar horses of lower size

shall receive the same quantity as a horse of medium size.

Steeds and *párasamas* shall have one quarter less of rations.

Half of the rations given to steeds shall be given to colts.

Thus is the distribution of ration dealt with.

Those who cook the food of horses, grooms, and veterinary

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

191

surgeons shall have a share in the rations (*pratisvádabhajah*).

Stallions which are incapacitated owing to old age, disease or

hardships of war, and, being therefore rendered unfit for use in war

live only to consume food shall in the interests of citizens and

country people be allowed to cross steeds.

The breed of *Kámbhoja*, *Sindhu*, *Aratta*, and *Vanáyu*

countries are the best; those of *Báhlíka*, *Pápeya*, *Sauvira*, and

*Taitala*, are of middle quality; and the rest ordinary (*avaráh*).

These three sorts may be trained either for war or for riding

according as they are furious (*tíkshna*), mild (*bhadra*), or stupid or

slow (*manda*).

The regular training of a horse is its preparation for war

(*sánnáhyam karma*).

Circular movement (*valgana*), slow movement (*níchairgata*),

jumping (*langhana*), gallop (*dhorana*), and response to signals

(*nároshtra*) are the several forms of riding (*aupaváhya*).

*Aupavenuka*, *vardhmánaka*, *yamaka*, *álídhapluta*, *vrithatta*

and *trivacháli* are the varieties of circular movement (*valgana*).

The same kind of movements with the head and ear kept erect

are called slow movements.

These are performed in sixteen ways:---

*Prakírnaka*, *prakírnottara*, *nishanna*, *pársvánuvritta*,

*úrmimárga*, *sarabhakrídita*, *sarabhapluta*, *tritála*, *báhyánuvritta*,

*panchapáni*, *simháyata*, *svádhúta*, *klishta*, *slághita*, *brimhita*,

*pushpábhikírna*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

192

Jumping like a monkey (*kapipluta*), jumping like a frog

(*bhekapluta*), sudden jump (*ekapluta*), jumping with one leg

(*ekapádapluta*), leaping like a cuckoo (*kokilasamchári*), dashing

with its breast almost touching the ground (*urasya*), and leaping

like a crane (*bakasamchari*) are the several forms of jumping.

Flying like a vulture (*kánka*), dashing like a water-duck

(*várikánaka*), running like a peacock (*máyúra*) halt the speed of a

peacock (*ardhmáyúra*), dashing like a mangoose (*nákula*), half the

speed of a mangoose (*ardha*-*nákula*), running like a hog (*váráha*)

and half the speed of a hog (*ardha*-*váráha*) are the several forms of

gallop.

Movement following a signal is termed *nároshtra*.

Six, nine, and twelve *yojanas* (a day) are the distances (to be

traversed) by carriage-horses.

Five, eight, and ten *yojanas* are the distances (to be traversed)

by riding horses (*prishthaváhya*).

Trotting according to its strength (*vikrama*), trotting with

good breathing (*bhadrásvása*), and pacing with a load on its back

are the three kinds of trot.

Trotting according to strength (*vikrama*), trot combined with

circular movement (*valgita*), ordinary trot (*upakantha*),

middlemost speed (*upajava*), and ordinary speed are also the

several kinds of trot (*dhárá*).

Qualified teachers shall give instructions as to the

manufacture of proper ropes with which to tether the horses.

Charioteers shall see to the manufacture of necessary war

accoutrements of horses.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

193

Veterinary surgeons shall apply requisite remedies against

undue growth or diminution in the body of horses and also change

the diet of horses according to changes in seasons.

Those who move the horses (*sútragráhaka*), those whose

business is to tether them in stables, those who supply

meadow-grass, those who cook the grains for the horses, those who

keep watch in the stables, those who groom them and those who

apply remedies against poison shall satisfactorily discharge their

specified duties and shall, in default of it, forfeit their daily wages.

Those who take out for the purpose of riding such horses as

are kept inside (the stables) either for the purpose of waving lights

(*nirájana*) or for medical treatment shall be fined 12 *panas*.

When, owing to defects in medicine or carelessness in the

treatment, the disease (from which a horse is suffering) becomes

intense, a fine of twice the cost of the treatment shall be imposed;

and when, owing to defects in medicine, or not administering it, the

result becomes quite the reverse, a fine equal to the value of the

animal (*patramúlya*) shall be imposed.

The same rule shall apply to the treatment of cows, buffaloes,

goats, and sheep.

Horses shall be washed, bedaubed with sandal powder, and

garlanded twice a day. On new moon days sacrifice to *Bhútas*, and

on full moon days the chanting of auspicious hymns shall be

performed. Not only on the ninth day of the month of *Asvayuja*, but

also both at the commencement and close of journeys (*yátra*) as

well as in the time of disease shall a priest wave lights invoking

blessings on the horses.

[Thus ends Chapter XXX, "The Superintendent of Horses" in Book

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

194

II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents," of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the fifty-first chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXXI. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF ELEPHANTS.

THE Superintendent of elephants shall take proper steps to

protect elephant-forests and supervise the operations with regard to

the standing or lying in stables of elephants, male, female, or

young, when they are tired after training, and examine the

proportional quantity of rations and grass, the extent of training

given to them, their accoutrements and ornaments, as well as the

work of elephant-doctors, of trainers of elephants in warlike feats,

and of grooms, such as drivers, binders and others.

There shall be constructed an elephant stable twice as broad

and twice as high as the length (*áyáma*) of an elephant, with

separate apartments for female elephants, with projected entrance

(*sapragrívám*), with posts called *kumári*, and with its door facing

either the east or the north.

The space in front of the smooth posts (to which elephants are

tied) shall form a square, one side of which is equal to the length of

an elephant and shall be paved with smooth wooden planks and

provided with holes for the removal of urine and dung.

The space where an elephant lies down shall be as broad as

the length of an elephant and provided with a flat form raised to

half the height of an elephant for leaning on.

Elephants serviceable in war or for riding shall be kept inside

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

195

the fort; and those that are still being tamed or are of bad temper

shall be kept outside.

The first and the seventh of the eight divisions of the day are

the two bathing times of elephants; the time subsequent to those

two periods is for their food; forenoon is the time for their exercise;

afternoon is the time for drink; two (out of eight) parts of the night

are the time for sleep; one-third of the night is spent in taking

wakeful rest.

The summer is the season to capture elephants.

That which is 20 years old shall be captured.

Young elephants (*bikka*), infatuated elephants (*mugdha*),

elephants without tusks, diseased elephants, elephants which

suckle their young ones (*dhenuká*), and female elephants (*hastiní*)

shall not be captured.

(That which is) seven *aratnis* in height, nine *aratnis* in length,

ten *aratnis* in circumference and is (as can be inferred from such

measurement), 40 years old, is the best.

That which is 30 years old is of middle class; and that which

is 25 years old is of the lowest class.

The diet (for the last two classes) shall be lessened by

one-quarter according to the class.

The rations for an elephant (of seven *aratnis* in height) shall

be 1 *drona* of rice, ½ *ádhaka* of oil, 3 *prasthas* of *ghi*, 10 *palas* of

salt, 50 *palas* of flesh, 1 *ádhaka* of broth (*rasa*) or twice the

quantity (*i.e*., 2 *ádhakas*) of curd; in order to render the dish

tasteful, 10 *palas* of sugar (*kshára*), 1 *ádhaka* of liquor, or twice the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

196

quantity of milk (*payah*);1 *prastha* of oil for smearing over the

body, 1/8 *prastha* (of the same) for the head and for keeping a light

in the stables; 2 *bháras* of meadow grass, 2¼ *bháras* of ordinary

grass (*sashpa*), and 2½ *bháras* of dry grass and any quantity of

stalks of various pulses (*kadankara*).

An elephant in rut (*atyarála*) and of 8 *aratnis* in height shall

have equal rations with that of 7 *aratnis* in height.

The rest of 6 or 5 *aratnis* in height shall be provided with

rations proportional to their size.

A young elephant (*bikka*) captured for the mere purpose of

sporting with it shall be fed with milk and meadow grass.

That which is blood-red (*samjátalóhita*), that which is

fleshed, that which has its sides evenly grown (*samaliptapakshá*),

that which has its girths full or equal (*samakakshyá*), that whose

flesh is evenly spread, that which is of even surface on its back

(*samatalpatala*) and that which is of uneven surface (*játadróniká*)

are the several kinds of physical splendour of elephants.

Suitably to the seasons as well as to their physical spendour,

elephants of sharp or slow sense (*bhadra* and *mandra*) as well as

elephants possessed of the characteristics of other beasts shall be

trained and taught suitable work.

[Thus ends Chapter XXXI, “The Superintendent of Elephants” in

Book II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the fifty-second chapter from the

beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

197

## CHAPTER XXXII. TRAINING OF ELEPHANTS.

ELEPHANTS are classified into four kinds in accordance

with the training they are given: that which is tameable (*damya*),

that which is trained for war (*sánnáhya*), that which is trained for

riding (*aupaváhya*), and rogue elephants (*vyála*).

Those which are tameable fall under five groups: that which

suffers a man to sit on its withers (*skandhagata*), that which allows

itself to be tethered to a post (*stambhagata*), that which can be

taken to water (*várigata*), that which lies in pits (*apapátagata*), and

that which is attached to its herd (*yúthagata*).

All these elephants shall be treated with as much care as a

young elephant (*bikka*).

Military training is of seven kinds: Drill (*upasthána*), turning

(*samvartana*), advancing (*samyána*), trampling down and killing

(*vadhávadha*), fighting with other elephants (*hastiyuddha*),

assailing forts and cities (*nágaráyanam*), and warfare.

Binding the elephants with girths (*kakshyákarma*), putting

on collars (*graiveyakakarma*), and making them work in company

with their herds (*yúthakarma*) are the first steps (*upa-vichara*) of

the above training.

Elephants trained for riding fall under seven groups: that

which suffers a man to mount over it when in company with

another elephant (*kunjaropaváhya*), that which suffers riding when

led by a warlike elephant (*sánnáhyopaváhya*), that which is taught

trotting (*dhorana*), that which is taught various kinds of

movements (*ádhánagatika*), that which can be made to move by

using a staff (*yashtyupaváhya*), that which can be made to move by

using an iron hook (*totropaváhya*), that which can be made to

move without whips (*suddhopaváhya*), and that which is of help in

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

198

hunting.

Autumnal work (*sáradakarma*), mean or rough work

(*hínakarma*), and training to respond to signals are the first steps

for the above training.

Rogue elephants can be trained only in one way. The only

means to keep them under control is punishment. It has a

suspicious aversion to work, is obstinate, of perverse nature,

unsteady, willful, or of infatuated temper under the influence of

rut.

Rogue elephants whose training proves a failure may be

purely roguish (*suddha*), clever in roguery (*suvrata*), perverse

(*vishama*), or possessed of all kinds of vice.

The form of fetters and other necessary means to keep them

under control shall be ascertained from the doctor of elephants.

Tetherposts (*álána*), collars, girths, bridles, legchains, frontal

fetters are the several kinds of binding instruments.

A hook, a bamboo staff, and machines (*yantra*) are

instruments.

Necklaces such as *vaijavantí* and *kshurapramála*, and litter

and housings are the ornaments of elephants.

Mail-armour (*varma*), clubs (*totra*), arrow-bags, and

machines are war-accoutrements.

Elephant doctors, trainers, expert riders, as well as those who

groom them, those who prepare their food, those who procure grass

for them, those who tether them to posts, those who sweep elephant

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

199

stables, and those who keep watch in the stables at night, are some

of the persons that have to attend to the needs of elephants.

Elephant doctors, watchmen, sweepers, cooks and others

shall receive (from the storehouse,) 1 *prastha* of cooked rice, a

handful of oil, land 2 *palas* of sugar and of salt. Excepting the

doctors, others shall also receive 10 *palas* of flesh.

Elephant doctors shall apply necessary medicines to

elephants which, while making a journey, happen to suffer from

disease, overwork, rut, or old age.

Accumulation of dirt in stables, failure to supply grass,

causing an elephant to lie down on hard and unprepared ground,

striking on vital parts of its body, permission to a stranger to ride

over it, untimely riding, leading it to water through impassable

places, and allowing it to enter into thick forests are offences

punishable with fines. Such fines shall be deducted from the

rations and wages due to the offenders.

During the period of *Cháturmásya* (the months of July,

August, September and October) and at the time when two seasons

meet, waving of lights shall be performed thrice. Also on

new-moon and full-moon days, commanders shall perform

sacrifices to *Bhútas* for the safety of elephants.

Leaving as much as is equal to twice the circumference of the

tusk near its root, the rest of the tusks shall be cut off once in 2½

years in the case of elephants born in countries irrigated by rivers

(*nadija*), and once in 5 years in the case of mountain elephants.

[Thus ends Chapter XXXII, “The Training of Elephants” in Book

II, “The Duties of Government Superintendents” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the fifty-third chapter from the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

200

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXXIII. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF CHARIOTS; THE SUPERINTENDENT OF INFANTRY AND THE DUTY OF THE COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF.

THE functions of the Superintendent of horses will explain

those of the Superintendent of chariots.

The Superintendent of chariots shall attend to the construction

of chariots.

The best chariot shall measure 10 *purushas* in height *(,i.e.,*

120 *angulas*), and 12 *purushas* in width. After this model, 7 more

chariots with width decreasing by one *purusha* successively down

to a chariot of 6 *purushas* in width shall be constructed. He shall

also construct chariots of gods (*devaratha*), festal chariots

(*pushyaratha*), battle chariots (*sángrámika*), travelling chariots

(*páriyánika*), chariots used in assailing an enemy's strong-holds

(*parapurabhiyánika*), and training chariots.

He shall also examine the efficiency in the training of troops

in shooting arrows, in hurling clubs and cudgels, in wearing mail

armour, in equipment, in charioteering, in fighting seated on a

chariot, and in controlling chariot horses.

He shall also attend to the accounts of provision and wages

paid to those who are either permanently or temporarily employed

(to prepare chariots and other things). Also he shall take steps to

maintain the employed contented and happy by adequate reward

(*yogyarakshanushthánam*), and ascertain the distance of roads.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

201

The same rules shall apply to the superintendent of infantry.

The latter shall know the exact strength or weakness of

hereditary troops (*maula*), hired troops (*bhrita*), the corporate body

of troops (*sreni*), as well as that of the army of friendly or

unfriendly kings and of wild tribes.

He shall be thoroughly familiar with the nature of fighting in

low grounds, of open battle, of fraudulent attack, of fighting under

the cover of entrenchment (*khanakayuddha*), or from heights

(*ákásayuddha*), and of fighting during the day and night, besides

the drill necessary for such warfare.

He shall also know the fitness or unfitness of troops on

emergent occasions.

With an eye to the position which the entire army

(*chaturangabala*) trained in the skillful handling of all kinds of

weapons and in leading elephants, horses, and chariots have

occupied and to the emergent call for which they ought to be ready,

the commander-in-chief shall be so capable as to order either

advance or retreat (*áyogamayógam cha*).

He shall also know what kind of ground is more advantageous

to his own army, what time is more favourable, what the strength of

the enemy is, how to sow dissension in an enemy's army of united

mind, how to collect his own scattered forces, how to scatter the

compact body of an enemy's army, how to assail a fortress, and

when to make a general advance.

Being ever mindful of the discipline which his army has to

maintain not merely in camping and marching, but in the thick of

battle, he shall designate the regiments (*vyúha*) by the names of

trumpets, boards, banners, or flags.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

202

[Thus ends Chapter XXXIII, "The Superintendent of Chariots, the

Superintendent of Infantry, and the Duties of the

Commander-in-Chief " in Book II, "The Duties of Government

Superintendents" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

fifty-fourth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXXIV. THE SUPERINTENDENT OF PASSPORTS.

THE Superintendent of Passports shall issue passes at the rate

of a *masha* per pass. Whoever is provided with a pass shall be at

liberty to enter into, or go out of, the country. Whoever, being a

native of the country enters into or goes out of the country without

a pass shall be fined 12 *panas*. He shall be punished with the first

amercement for producing a false pass. A foreigner guilty of the

same offence shall be punished with the highest amercement.

The superintendent of pasture lands shall examine passes.

Pasture grounds shall be opened between any two dangerous

places.

Valleys shall be cleared from the fear of thieves, elephants,

and other beasts.

In barren tracts of the country, there shall be constructed not

only tanks, buildings for shelter, and wells, but also flower gardens

and fruit gardens.

Hunters with their hounds shall reconnoitre forests. At the

approach of thieves or enemies, they shall so hide themselves by

ascending trees or mountains as to escape from the thieves, and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

203

blow conch-shells or beat drums. As to the movements of enemies

or wild tribes, they may send information by flying the pigeons of

royal household with passes (*mudrá*) or causing fire and smoke at

successive distances.

It shall be his duty to protect timber and elephant forests, to

keep roads in good repair, to arrest thieves, to secure the safety of

mercantile traffic, to protect cows, and to conduct the transaction

of the people.

[Thus ends Chapter XXXIV, "The Superintendent of Passports,

and the Superintendent of Pasture Lands," in Book II, "The Duties

of Government Superintendents," of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.

End of the fifty-fifth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXXV. THE DUTY OF REVENUE-COLLECTORS; SPIES IN THE GUISE OF HOUSEHOLDERS, MERCHANTS AND ASCETICS.

HAVING divided the kingdom (*janapada*) into four districts,

and having also subdivided the villages (*gráma*) as of first, middle

and lowest rank, he shall bring them under one or another of the

following heads:---Villages that are exempted from taxation

(*pariháraka*); those that supply soldiers (*áyudhíya*); those that pay

their taxes in the form of grains, cattle, gold (*hiranya*), or raw

material (*kupya*); and those that supply free labour (*vishti*), and

dairy produce in lieu of taxes (*karapratikara*).

It is the duty of *Gopa*, village accountant, to attend to the

accounts of five or ten villages as ordered by the

Collector-General.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

204

By setting up boundaries to villages, by numbering plots of

grounds as cultivated, uncultivated, plains, wet lands, gardens,

vegetable gardens, fences (*váta*), forests, altars, temples of gods,

irrigation works, cremation grounds, feeding houses (*sattra*),

places where water is freely supplied to travellers (*prapá*), places

of pilgrimage, pasture grounds and roads, and thereby fixing the

boundaries of various villages, of fields, of forests, and of roads, he

shall register gifts, sales, charities, and remission of taxes

regarding fields.

Also having numbered the houses as taxpaying or

non-taxpaying, he shall not only register the total number of the

inhabitants of all the four castes in each village, but also keep an

account of the exact number of cultivators, cow-herds, merchants,

artizans, labourers, slaves, and biped and quadruped animals,

fixing at the same time the amount of gold, free labour, toll, and

fines that can be collected from it (each house).

He shall also keep an account of the number of young and old

men that reside in each house, their history (*charitra*), occupation

(*ájíva*), income (*áya*), and expenditure (*vyaya*).

Likewise *Sthánika*, district officer, shall attend to the

accounts of one quarter of the kingdom.

In those places which are under the jurisdiction of *Gopa* and

*Sthánika*, commissioners (*prodeshtárah*) specially deputed by the

Collector-general shall not only inspect the work done and the

means employed by the village and district officers, but also collect

the special religious tax known as *bali* (*balipragraham kuryuh*).

Spies under the disguise of householders (*grihapatika*,

cultivators) who shall be deputed by the collector-general for

espionage shall ascertain the validity of the accounts (of the village

and district officers) regarding the fields, houses and families of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

205

each village---the area and output of produce regarding fields, right

of ownership and remission of taxes with regard to houses, and the

caste and profession regarding families.

They shall also ascertain the total number of men and beasts

(*janghágra*) as well as the amount of income and expenditure of

each family.

They shall also find out the causes of emigration and

immigration of persons of migratory habit, the arrival and

departure of men and women of condemnable (*anarthya*)

character, as well as the movements of (foreign) spies.

Likewise spies under the guise of merchants shall ascertain

the quantity and price of the royal merchandise such as minerals, or

products of gardens, forests, and fields or manufactured articles.

As regards foreign merchandise of superior or inferior quality

arriving thither by land or by water, they shall ascertain the amount

of toll, road-cess, conveyance-cess, military cess, ferry-fare, and

one-sixth portion (paid or payable by the merchants), the charges

incurred by them for their own subsistence, and for the

accommodation of their merchandise in warehouse (*panyágára*).

Similarly spies under the guise of ascetics shall, as ordered by

the Collector-general, gather information as to the proceedings,

honest or dishonest, of cultivators, cow-herds, merchants, and

heads of Government departments.

In places where altars are situated or where four roads meet,

in ancient ruins, in the vicinity of tanks, rivers, bathing places, in

places of pilgrimage and hermitage, and in desert tracts,

mountains, and thick grown forests, spies under the guise of old

and notorious thieves with their student bands shall ascertain the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

206

causes of arrival and departure, and halt of thieves, enemies, and

persons of undue bravery.

The Collector-general shall thus energetically attend to the

affairs of the kingdom. Also his subordinates constituting his

various establishments of espionage shall along with their

colleagues and followers attend to their duties likewise.

[Thus ends Chapter XXXV, "The Duty of revenue collectors; spies

under the guise of house-holders, merchants, and ascetics," in

Book II, "The Duties of Government Superintendents" of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the fifty-sixth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XXXVI. THE DUTY OF A CITY SUPERINTENDENT.

LIKE the Collector-general, the Officer in charge of the

Capital City (*Nágaraka*) shall look to the affairs of the capital.

A *Gopa* shall keep the accounts of ten households, twenty

households, or forty households. He shall not only know the caste,

*gotra*, the name, and occupation of both men and women in those

households, but also ascertain their income and expenditure.

Likewise, the officer known as *Sthánika* shall attend to the

accounts of the four quarters of the capital.

Managers of charitable institutions shall send information (to

*Gopa* or *Sthánika*) as to any heretics (*Páshanda*) and travellers

arriving to reside therein. They shall allow ascetics and men

learned in the Vedas to reside in such places only when those

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

207

persons are known to be of reliable character.

Artisans and other handicraftsmen may, on their own

responsibility, allow others of their own profession to reside where

they carry on their own work (*i.e*., in their own houses).

Similarly merchants may on their own responsibility allow

other merchants to reside where they themselves carry on their

mercantile work (*i.e*., their own houses or shops).

They (the merchants) shall make a report of those who sell

any merchandise in forbidden place or time, as well as of those

who are in possession of any merchandise other than their own.

Vintners, sellers of cooked flesh and cooked rice as well as

prostitutes may allow any other person to reside with them only

when that person is well-known to them.

They (vintners, etc.) shall make a report of spendthrifts and

fool-hardy persons who engage themselves in risky undertakings.

Any physician who undertakes to treat in secret a patient

suffering from ulcer or excess of unwholesome food or drink, as

well as the master of the house (wherein such treatment is

attempted) shall be innocent only when they (the physician and the

master of the house) make a report of the same to either *Gopa* or

*Sthánika*; otherwise both of them shall be equally guilty with the

sufferer.

Masters of houses shall make a report of strangers arriving at,

or departing from their houses; otherwise they shall be guilty of the

offence (theft, etc.) committed during that night. Even during safe

nights (*i.e.,* nights when no theft, etc., seems to have been

committed), they shall be fined 3 *panas* (for not making such a

report).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

208

Wayfarers going along a high road or by a foot path shall

catch hold of any person whom they find to be suffering from a

wound or ulcer, or possessed of destructive instruments, or tired of

carrying a heavy load, or timidly avoiding the presence of others,

or indulging in too much sleep, or fatigued from a long journey, or

who appears to be a stranger to the place in localities such as inside

or outside the capital, temples of gods, places of pilgrimage, or

burial grounds.

(Spies) shall also make a search for suspicious persons in the

interior of deserted houses, in the workshops or houses of vintners

and sellers of cooked rice and flesh, in gambling houses, and in the

abode of heretics.

Kindling of fire shall be prohibited during the two

middlemost parts of day-time divided into four equal parts during

the summer. A fine of 1/8th of a *pana* shall be imposed for kindling

fire at such a time.

Masters of houses may carry on cooking operations outside

their houses.

(If a house-owner is not found to have ready with him) five

water-pots (*pancha ghatínám*), a *kumbha*, a *dróna*, a ladder, an

axe, a winnowing basket, a hook (such as is used to drive an

elephant), pincers, (*kachagráhini*), and a leather bag (*driti*), he

shall be fined ¼th of a *pana*.

They shall also remove thatched roofs. Those who work by

fire (blacksmiths) shall all together live in a single locality.

Each houseowner shall ever be present (at night) at the door

of his own house.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

209

Vessels filled with water shall be kept in thousands in a row

without confusion not only in big streets and at places where four

roads meet but also in front of the royal buildings

(*rajaprigraheshu*).

Any house-owner who does not run to give his help in

extinguishing the fire of whatever is burning shall be fined 12

*panas*; and a renter (*avakrayi*, *i.e*., one who has occupied a house

for rent) not running to extinguish fire shall be fined 6 *panas*.

Whoever carelessly sets fire (to a house) shall be fined 54

*panas*; but he who intentionally sets fire (to a house) shall be

thrown into fire.

Whoever throws dirt in the street shall be punished with a fine

of 1/8th of a *pana*; whoever causes mire or water to collect in the

street shall be fined ¼th of a *pana*; whoever commits the above

offences in the king's road (*rájamárga*) shall be punished with

double the above fines.

Whoever excretes faeces in places of pilgrimage, reservoirs

of water, temples, and royal buildings shall be punished with fines

rising from one *pana* and upwards in the order of the offences; but

when such excretions are due to the use of medicine or to disease

no punishment shall be imposed.

Whoever throws inside the city the carcass of animals such as

a cat, dog, mangoose, and a snake shall be fined 3 *panas*; of

animals such as an ass, a camel, a mule, and cattle shall be fined 6

*panas*; and human corpse shall be punished with a fine of 50 *panas*.

When a dead body is taken out of a city through a gate other

than the usual or prescribed one or through a path other than the

prescribed path, the first amercement shall be imposed; and those

who guard the gates (through which the dead body is taken out)

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

210

shall be fined 200 *panas*.

When a dead body is interred or cremated beyond the burial

or cremation grounds, a fine of 12 *panas* shall be imposed.

The interval between six *nálikas* (2 2/5 hours) after the fall of

night and six *nálikas* before the dawn shall be the period when a

trumpet shall be sounded prohibiting the movement of the people.

The trumpet having been sounded, whoever moves in the

vicinity of royal buildings during the first or the last *yáma* (3 hours

?) of the period shall be punished with a fine of one *pana* and a

quarter; and during the middlemost *yámas*, with double the above

fine; and whoever moves outside (the royal buildings or the fort)

shall be punished with four times the above fine.

Whoever is arrested in suspicious places or as the perpetrator

of a criminal act shall be examined.

Whoever moves in the vicinity of royal buildings or ascends

the defensive fortifications of the capital shall be punished with the

middlemost amercement.

Those who go out at night in order to attend to the work of

midwifery or medical treatment, or to carry off a dead body to the

cremation or burial grounds, or those who go out with a lamp in

hand at night, as well as those who go out to visit the officer in

charge of the city, or to find out the cause of a trumpet sound

(*turyapreksha*), or to extinguish the outbreak of fire or under the

authority of a pass shall not be arrested.

During the nights of free movement (*chárarátrishu*) those

who move out under disguise, those who stir out though forbidden

(*pravarjitah*), as well as those who move with clubs and other

weapons in hand shall be punished in proportion to the gravity of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

211

their guilt.

Those watchmen who stop whomever they ought not to stop,

or do not stop whomever they ought to stop shall be punished with

twice the amount of fine levied for untimely movement.

When a watchman has carnal connection with a slave woman,

he shall be punished with the first amercement; with a free woman

middlemost amercement; with a woman arrested for untimely

movement, the highest amercement; and a woman of high birth

(*kulastrí*), he shall be put to death.

When the officer in charge of the city (*nágaraka*) does not

make a report (to the king) of whatever nocturnal nuisance of

animate or inanimate nature (*chetanâchetana*) has occurred, or

when he shows carelessness (in the discharge of his duty), he shall

be punished in proportion to the gravity of his crime.

He shall make a daily inspection of reservoirs of water, of

roads, of the hidden passage for going out of the city, of forts,

fortwalls, and other defensive works. He shall also keep in his safe

custody of whatever things he comes across as lost, forgotten or

left behind by others.

On the days to which the birth star of the king is assigned, as

well as on full moon days, such prisoners as are young, old,

diseased, or helpless (*anátha*) shall be let out from the jail

(*bandhanâgâra*); or those who are of charitable disposition or who

have made any agreement with the prisoners may liberate them by

paying an adequate ransom.

Once in a day or once in five nights, jails may be emptied of

prisoners in consideration of the work they have done, or of

whipping inflicted upon them, or of an adequate ransom paid by

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

212

them in gold.

Whenever a new country is conquered, when an heir apparent

is installed on the throne, or when a prince is born to the king,

prisoners are usually set free.

[Thus ends Chapter XXXVI, “The Duty of a City Superintendent”

in Book II, “The Duties of government Superintendents,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the fifty-seventh chapter from the

beginning. With this ends the Second Book “The Duties of

Government Superintendents” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 51-185.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

213

# Book III, "Concerning Law"

## CHAPTER I. DETERMINATION OF FORMS OF AGREEMENT; DETERMINATION OF LEGAL DISPUTES.

IN the cities of Sangrahana, Dronamukha, and Stháníya, and

at places where districts meet, three members acquainted with

Sacred Law (*dharmasthas*) and three ministers of the king

(*amátyas*) shall carry on the administration of Justice.

*(Valid and Invalid Transactions.)*

They shall hold as void agreements (*vyavahára*) entered into

in seclusion, inside the houses, in the dead of night, in forests, in

secret, or with fraud.

The proposer and the accessory shall be punished with the

first amercement [A fine ranging from 48 to 96 *panas* is called first

amercement; from 200 to 500 *panas*, the middlemost; and from

500 to 1,000 *panas* the highest amercement. See Chap. XVII, Book

III]; the witnesses (*srotri* = voluntary hearers) shall each be

punished with half of the above fine; and accepters shall suffer the

loss they may have sustained.

But agreements entered into within the hearing of others, as

well as those not otherwise condemnable shall be valid.

Those agreements which relate to the division of inheritance,

sealed or unsealed deposits, or marriage; or those in which are

concerned women who are either afflicted with disease or who do

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

214

not stir out; as well as those entered into by persons who are not

known to be of unsound mind shall be valid though they might be

entered into inside houses.

Transactions relating to robbery, duel, marriage, or the

execution of the king's order, as well as agreements entered into by

persons who usually do their business during the first part of the

night shall be valid though they might be done at night.

With regard to those persons who live most part of their life in

forests, whether as merchants, cowherds, hermits, hunters, or spies,

their agreements though entered into in forests shall be valid.

If fraudulent agreements, only such shall be valid as are

entered into by spies.

Agreements entered into by members of any association

among themselves shall be valid though entered into in private.

Such agreements (*i.e.,* those entered into in seclusion, etc.)

except as detailed above shall be void.

So also agreements entered into by dependent or unauthorised

persons, such as a father's mother, a son, a father having a son, an

outcast brother, the youngest brother of a family of undivided

interests, a wife having her husband or son, a slave, a hired

labourer, any person who is too young or too old to carry on

business, a convict (*abhisasta*), a cripple, or an afflicted person,

shall not be valid. But it would be otherwise if he were authorised.

Even agreements entered into by an authorised person shall

be void if he was at the time (of making the agreements) under

provocation, anxiety, or intoxication, or if he was a lunatic or a

haunted person.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

215

In all these cases, the proposer, his accessory, and witnesses

shall each be punished as specified above.

But such agreements as are entered into in person by any one

with others of his own community in suitable place and time are

valid provided the circumstances, the nature, the description, and

the qualities of the case are credible.

Such agreements with the exception of orders

(*Adesa*=probably a bill of exchange) and hypothecations may be

binding though entered into by a third person. Thus the

determination of the forms of agreement.

*(The Trial.)*

The year, the season, the month, the fortnight (*paksha*), the

date, the nature and place of the deed, the amount of the debt as

well as the country, the residence, the caste, the *gotra*, the name

and occupation of both the plaintiff and the defendant both of

whom must be fit to sue and defend (*kritasamarthávasthayoh*),

having been registered first, the statements of the parties shall be

taken down in such order as is required by the case. These

statements shall then be thoroughly scrutinised.

*(The offence of Parokta.)*

Leaving out the question at issue, either of the parties takes

resort to another; his previous statement is not consistent with his

subsequent one; he insists on the necessity of considering the

opinion of a third person, though it is not worthy of any such

consideration; having commenced to answer the question at issue,

he breaks off at once, even though he is ordered to continue; he

introduces questions other than those specified by himself; he

withdraws his own statement; he does not accept what his own

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

216

witnesses have deposed to; and he holds secret conversation with

his witnesses where he ought not to do so.

These constitute the offence of *Parokta*.

*(Punishment for Parokta.)*

Fine for *parokta* is five times the amount (*paroktadandah*

*panchabandah*).

Fine for self assertion (*svayamvádi* = asserting without

evidence) is ten times the amount (*dasabandha*.)

*(Payments for Witnesses.)*

Fees for witnesses (*purushabhritih*) shall cover 1/8th of the

amount (*astánga*). Provision proportional to the amount sued for

may also be made for the expenses incurred by witnesses in their

journey. The defeated party shall pay these two kinds of costs.

*(Countersuits.)*

In cases other than duel, robbery, as well as disputes among

merchants or trade-guilds, the defendant shall file no countercase

against the plaintiff. Nor can there be a countercase for the

defendant.

*(Adjournments.)*

The plaintiff shall („rejoin‟) reply soon after the defendant

has answered the questions at issue. Else he shall be guilty of

*parokta*, for the plaintiff knows the determining factors of the case.

But the defendant does not do so. The defendant may be allowed

three or seven nights to prepare his defence. If he is not ready with

his defence within that time, he shall be punished with a fine

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

217

ranging from 3 to 12 *panas*. If he does not answer even after three

fortnights, he shall be fined for *parokta*, and the plaintiff shall

recover out of the defendant's property the amount of the case. But

if the plaintiff sues for a mere return of gratitude (*pratyupakarana*),

then no (decree shall be passed).

The same punishment shall be meted out to such of the

defendants as fail in their defence.

If the plaintiff fails to prove his case, he shall (also) be guilty

of *parokta*. If he fails to substantiate his case against a dead or

diseased defendant, he shall pay a fine and perform the (funeral)

ceremonies of the defendant, as determined by the witnesses. If he

proves his case, he may be permitted to take possession of the

property hypothecated to him.

But if he is not a *Bráhman*, he may, on his failure to prove his

case, be caused to perform such ceremonials as drive out demons

(*rakshoghna rakshitakam*.)

\* In virtue of his power to uphold the observance of the

respective duties of the four castes and of the four divisions of

religious life, and in virtue of his power to guard

against the violation of the *Dharmas*, the king is the

fountain of justice (*dharmapravartaka*.)

\* Sacred law (*Dharma*), evidence (*Vyavahára*), history (*Charitra*),

and edicts of kings (*Rájasásana*) are the four legs of Law. Of these

four in order, the later is superior to the one previously named.

\* *Dharma* is eternal truth holding its sway over the world;

*Vyavahára*, evidence, is in witnesses; *Charitra*, history, is to be

found in the tradition (*sangraha*), of the people; and the order of

kings is what is called *sásana*.

\* As the duty of a king consists in protecting his subjects with

justice, its observance leads him to heaven. He who does not

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

218

protect his people or upsets the social order wields his royal sceptre

(*danda*) in vain.

\* It is power and power (*danda*) alone which, only when exercised

by the king with impartiality and in proportion to guilt either over

his son or his enemy, maintains both this world and the next.

\* The king who administers justice in accordance with sacred law

(*Dharma*), evidence (*vyavahára*), history (*samsthá*) and edicts of

kings (*Nyáya*) which is the fourth will be able to conquer the whole

world bounded by the four quarters (*Chaturantám mahí*m).

\* Whenever there is disagreement between history and sacred law

or between evidence and sacred law, then the matter shall be settled

in accordance with sacred law.

\* But whenever sacred law (*sástra*) is conflict with rational law

(*Dharmanyáya*=kings' law), then reason shall be held

authoritative; for there the original text (on which the sacred law

has been based) is not available.

\* Self-assertion (*svayamváda*) on the part of either of the parties

has often been found faulty. Examination (*anuyoga*), honesty

(*árjava*), evidence (*hetu*) and asseveration by oath

(*sapatha*)---these alone can enable a man to win his cause.

\* Whenever by means of the deposition of witnesses, the

statements of either of the parties are found contradictory, and

whenever the cause of either of the parties is found through the

king's spies to be false, then the decree shall be passed against that

party.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “Determination of forms of Agreement;

Determination of Legal Disputes” in Book III, “Concerning Law,”

of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the fifty-eighth chapter from

the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. CONCERNING MARRIAGE. THE DUTY OF MARRIAGE, THE PROPERTY OF A WOMAN, AND COMPENSATIONS FOR REMARRIAGE.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

219

MARRIAGE precedes the other calls of life (*vyavahára*.) The

giving in marriage of a maiden well-adorned is called

*Bráhma*-marriage. The joint-performance of sacred duties (by a

man and a woman) is known as *prájápatya* marriage.

(The giving in marriage of a maiden) for a couple of cows is

called *Arsha*. (The giving in marriage of a maiden) to an officiating

priest in a sacrifice is called *Daiva*. The voluntary union of a

maiden with her lover is called *Gándharva*. Giving a maiden after

receiving plenty of wealth (*súlka*) is termed *Asura*. The abduction

of a maiden is called *Rákshasa*. The abduction of a maiden while

she is asleep and in intoxication is called *Paisácha* marraige.

Of these, the first four are ancestral customs of old and are

valid on their being approved of by the father. The rest are to be

sanctioned by both the father and the mother; for it is they that

receive the money (*súlka*) paid by the bridegroom for their

daughter. In case of the absence by death of either the father or the

mother, the survivor will receive the *súlka*. If both of them are

dead, the maiden herself shall receive it. Any kind of marriage is

approvable, provided it pleases all those (that are concerned in it.)

*(Property of Women.)*

Means of subsistence (*vritti*) or jewellery (*ábadhya*)

constitutes what is called the property of a woman. Means of

subsistence valued at above two thousand shall be endowed (on her

name). There is no limit to jewellery. It is no guilt for the wife to

make use of this property in maintaining her son, her

daughter-in-law or herself whenever her absent husband has made

no provision for her maintenance. In calamities, disease and

famine, in warding off dangers and in charitable acts, the husband,

too, may make use of this property. Neither shall there be any

complaint against the enjoyment of this property by mutual

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

220

consent by a couple who have brought forth a twin. Nor shall there

be any complaint if this property has been enjoyed for three years

by those who are wedded in accordance with the customs of the

first four kinds of marriage. But the enjoyment of this property in

the cases of *Gándharva* and *Asura* marriages shall be liable to be

restored together with interest on it. In the case of such marriages

as are called *Rákshasa* and *Paisacha*, the use of this property shall

be dealt with as theft. Thus the duty of marriage is dealt with.

On the death of her husband a woman, desirous to lead a pious

life, shall at once receive not only her endowment and jewellery

(*sthápyábharanam*), but also the balance of *súlka* due to her. If

both of these two things are not actually in her possession, though

nominally given to her, she shall at once receive both of them

together with interest (on their value.) If she is desirous of a second

marriage (*kutumbakáma*), she shall be given on the occasion of her

remarriage (*nivesakále*) whatever either her father-in-law or her

husband or both had given to her. The time at which women can

remarry shall be explained in connection with the subject of long

sojourn of husbands.

If a widow marries any man other than of her father-in-law's

selection (*svasuraprátilo-myenanivishtá*), she shall forfeit

whatever had been given to her by her father-in-law and her

husband.

The kinsmen (*gnátis*) of a woman shall return to her whatever

property of her own she had placed in their custody. Whoever

justly takes a woman under his protection shall equally protect her

property. No woman shall succeed in her attempt to establish her

title to the property of her husband.

If she lives a pious life, she may enjoy it (*dharmakámá*

*bhunjíta*). No woman with a son or sons shall be at liberty to make

free use of her own property (*strídhana*); for that property of hers

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

221

her sons shall receive.

If a woman attempts to take possession of her own property

under the plea of maintaining her sons, she shall be made to endow

it in their name. If a woman has many male children, then she shall

conserve her own property in the same condition as she had

received from her husband. Even that property which has been

given her with full powers of enjoyment and disposal she shall

endow in the name of her sons.

A barren widow who is faithful to the bed of her dead

husband may, under the protection of her teacher, enjoy her

property as long as she lives: for it is to ward off calamities that

women are endowed with property. On her death, her property

shall pass into the hands of her kinsmen (*dáyáda*). If the husband is

alive and the wife is dead, then her sons and daughters shall divide

her property among themselves. If there are no sons, her daughters

shall have it. In their absence her husband shall take that amount of

money (*súlka*) which he had given her, and her relatives shall

retake whatever in the shape of gift or dowry they had presented

her. Thus the determination of the property of a woman is dealt

with.

*(Re-marriage of Males.)*

If a woman either brings forth no (live) children, or has no

male issue, or is barren, her husband shall wait for eight years,

(before marrying another). If she bears only a dead child, he has to

wait for ten years. If she brings forth only females, he has to wait

for twelve years. Then if he is desirous to have sons, he may marry

another. In case of violating this rule, he shall be made to pay her

not only *sulka*, her property (*strídhana*) and an adequate monetary

compensation (*ádhivedanikamartham*), but also a fine of 24 *panas*

to the Government. Having given the necessary amount of *sulka*

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

222

and property (*strídhana*) even to those women who have not

received such things on the occasion of their marriage with him,

and also having given his wives the proportionate compensation

and an adequate subsistence (*vritti*), he may marry any number of

women; for women are created for the sake of sons. If many or all

of them are at the same time in menses, he shall lie with that

woman among them, whom he married earlier or who has a living

son. In case of his concealing the fact of her being in menses or

neglecting to lie with any of them after her menses, he shall pay a

fine of 96 *panas*. Of women who either have sons or are pious or

barren, or bring forth only a dead child or are beyond the age of

menstruation, none shall be associated with against her liking. If a

man has no inclination, he may not lie with his wife who is either

afflicted with leprosy or is a lunatic. But if a woman is desirous of

having sons, she may lie with men suffering from such disease.

\* If a husband either is of bad character or is long gone abroad

or has become a traitor to his king or is likely to endanger the life of

his wife or has fallen from his caste or has lost virility, he may be

abandoned by his wife.

[Thus ends Chapter II, “The Duty of Marriage, the Property of a

Woman, and Compensation for Remarriage,” in Book III,

“Concerning Law,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

fifty-ninth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. THE DUTY OF A WIFE; MAINTENANCE OF A WOMAN; CRUELTY TO WOMEN; ENMITY BETWEEN HUSBAND AND WIFE; A WIFE's TRANSGRESSION; HER KINDNESS TO ANOTHER; AND FORBIDDEN TRANSACTIONS.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

223

WOMEN, when twelve years old, attain their majority

(*práptavyavahára*) and men when sixteen years old. If after

attaining their majority, they prove disobedient to lawful authority

(*asusrúsháyám*), women shall be fined 15 panas and men, twice the

amount.

*(Maintenance of a woman.)*

A woman who has a right to claim maintenance for an

unlimited period of time shall be given as much food and clothing

(*grásacchádana*) as is necessary for her or more than is necessary

in proportion to the income of the maintainer

(*yatha-purushaparivápam vá*). If the period (for which such things

are to be given to her) is limited, then a certain amount of money

fixed in proportion to the income of the maintainer shall be given to

her; so also if she has not been given her *sulka*, property, and

compensation (due to her for allowing her husband to remarry). If

after parting with her husband, she places herself under the

protection of any one belonging to her father-in-law‟s family

(*svasrakula*), or if she begins to live independently, then her

husband shall not be sued for (for her maintenance). Thus the

determination of maintenance is dealt with.

*(Cruelty to women.)*

Women of refractive nature shall be taught manners by using

such general expressions as „Thou, half naked; thou, fully naked;

thou, cripple; thou, fatherless; thou, motherless, (*nagne vinagne*

*nyange pitrke matrke vinagne ityanirdesena vinayagrahanam*). Or

three beats either with a bamboo-bark or with a rope or with the

palm of the hand may be given on her hips. Violation of the above

rules shall be liable to half the punishment levied for defamation

and criminal hurt. The same kind of punishment shall be meted out

to a woman who, moved with jealousy or hatred, shows cruelty to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

224

her husband. Punishments for engaging in sports at the door of, or

outside her husband's house shall be as dealt with elsewhere. Thus

cruelty to women is dealt with.

*(Enmity between husband and wife.)*

A woman, who hates her husband, who has passed the period

of seven turns of her menses, and who loves another shall

immediately return to her husband both the endowment and

jewellery she has received from him, and allow him to lie down

with another woman. A man, hating his wife, shall allow her to

take shelter in the house of a mendicant woman, or of her lawful

guardians or of her kinsmen. If a man falsely accuses his wife of

adultery with one of her or his kinsmen or with a spy--an

accusation which can only be proved by eyewitnesses

(*drishtilinge*)--or falsely accuses her of her intention to deprive him

of her company, he shall pay a fine of 12 *panas*. A woman, hating

her husband, can not dissolve her marriage with him against his

will. Nor can a man dissolve his marriage with his wife against her

will. But from mutual enmity, divorce may be obtained

(*parasparam dveshánmokshah*). If a man, apprehending danger

from his wife desires divorce (*mokshamichhet*), he shall return to

her whatever she was given (on the occasion of her marriage). If a

woman, under the apprehension of danger from her husband,

desires divorce, she shall forfeit her claim to her property;

marriages contracted in accordance with the customs of the first

four kinds of marriages cannot be dissolved.

*(Transgression.)*

If a woman engages herself in amorous sports, or drinking in

the face of an order to the contrary, she shall be fined 3 *panas*. She

shall pay a fine of 6 *panas* for going out at day time to sports or to

see a woman or spectacles. She shall pay a fine of 12 *panas* if she

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

225

goes out to see another man or for sports. For the same offences

committed at night, the fines shall be doubled. If a woman abducts

another woman while the latter is asleep or under intoxication

(*suptamatta-pravrajane*), or if she drags her husband as far as the

door of the house, she shall be fined 12 *panas*. If a woman leaves

her house at night, she shall pay double the above fine. If a man and

a woman make signs to each other with a view to sensual

enjoyment, or carry on secret conversation (for the same purpose),

the woman shall pay a fine of 24 *panas*, and the man, double the

amount. A woman, holding out her hair, the tie of her dress round

her loins, her teeth or her nails, shall pay the first amercement, and

a man, doing the same, twice the first amercement.

For holding conversation in suspicious places, whips may be

substituted for fines. In the centre of the village, an outcaste person

(*chandála*) may whip such women five times on each of the sides

of their body. She may get rid of being whipped by paying a *pana*

for each whip (*panikam vá praharam mokshayet*). Thus

transgression is dealt with.

*(Forbidden transactions.)*

With regard to a man and a woman who, though forbidden to

carry on any mutual transaction, help each other, the woman shall

be fined 12, 24 and 54 *panas* respectively according as the help

consists of (i) small things, of (ii) heavy things and (iii) of gold or

gold-coin (*hiranyasuvarnayoh*); and the man, at double the above

rates. With regard to similar transaction between a man and a

woman who cannot mix with each other (*agamvayoh*), half of the

above punishment shall be levied. Similar punishment shall be

meted out for any forbidden transaction with any men. Thus

forbidden transactions are dealt with.

\* Treason, transgression and wandering at will shall deprive a

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

226

woman of her claim not only to (i) *strídhana*, some form of

subsistence of above 2,000 *panas* and jewellery,

(ii) and *áhita*, compensation she may have obtained for allowing

her husband to marry another woman, but also (iii) to *sulka*, money

which her parents may have received from her husband.

[Thus ends Chapter III, “The Duty of a Wife; Maintenance of a

Woman; Enmity between Husband and Wife; a Wife's

Transgression; and Forbidden Transactions” in the section

“Concerning Marriage,” in Book III, “Concerning Law” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the sixtieth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. VAGRANCY, ELOPEMENT AND SHORT AND LONG SOJOURNMENTS.

IF under any other excuse than danger, a woman gets out of

her husband's house, she shall be fined 6 *panas*. If she gets out

against the order (of her husband) to the contrary, she shall be fined

12 *panas*. If she goes beyond her neighbouring house

(*prativesagrihatigatáyah*), she shall be fined 6 panas. If she allows

into her house her neighbour, takes into her house the alms of any

mendicant, or the merchandise of any merchant, she shall be fined

12 *panas*. If she deals as above though expressly forbidden, she

shall be punished with the first amercement. If she goes out beyond

the surrounding houses (*parigrihátigatáyam*), she shall be fined 24

*panas*. If under any other excuse than danger, she takes into her

house the wife of another man, she shall be fined 100 *panas*. But

she will not be guilty if the entrance is effected without her

knowledge or against her orders to the contrary.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

227

My teacher says:--With a view to avoid danger, it is no

offence for women to go to any male person who is a kinsman of

her husband, or is a rich and prosperous gentleman (*sukhávastha*),

or is the head-man of the village or is one of her guardians

(*anvádhikula*), or who belongs to the family of a mendicant

woman, or to any one of her own kinsmen.

But Kautilya questions :--How is it possible for good women

(*sádhvíjana*) to know at least this fact that the family of her own

kinsmen consisting of a number of males is good? It is no offence

for women to go to the houses of kinsmen under the circumstances

of death, disease, calamities, and confinement of women. Whoever

prevents her going under such circumstances, shall be fined 12

*panas*. If a woman conceals herself under such circumstances, she

shall forfeit her endowment. If her kinsmen conceal her (with a

view to exempt her from giving her aid under such circumstances),

they shall lose the balance of *sulka*, money due to them from her

husband for giving her in marriage. Thus vagrancy is dealt with.

*(Elopement or Criminal Rendezvous.)*

If leaving her husband's house, a woman goes to another

village, she shall not only pay a fine of 12 *panas*, but also forfeit

her endowment and jewels (*sthápyábharanalopascha*). If under

any other excuse than receiving her subsistence or pilgrimage

(*bharmádánatirthagamanábhyámanyatra*), a woman goes to any

other place even in company with an associable man, she shall not

only pay a fine of 24 *panas*, but also lose all kinds of social

privileges (*sarvadharmalopascha*). But the man who allows such a

woman to accompany him in his journey shall be punished with the

first amercement. If both of them (man, and woman) have similar

ideals in life (*tulyasreyasoh*) and are of sinful life (*pápiyasoh*),

each of them shall be punished with the middle-most amercement.

If he whom a woman accompanies in her journey is her near

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

228

relative, he shall not be punished. If a relative allows a woman to

accompany him, though he is forbidden, he shall be punished with

half the above fine (middlemost amercement). If on a road, or in

the middle of a forest, or in any other concealed places a woman

falls into the company of any other man, or if, with a view to

enjoyment, she accompanies a suspicious or forbidden man, she

shall be guilty of elopement (*sangrahanam vidyát*). It is no offence

for women to fall into the company of actors, players, singers,

fishermen, hunters, herdsmen, vintners, or persons of any other

kind who usually travel with their women. If a man takes a woman

with him on his journey, though forbidden to do so, or if a woman

accompanies a man though she is forbidden to do so, half of the

above fines shall be meted out to them. Thus elopement is dealt

with.

*(Re-marriage of women.)*

Wives who belong to *Súdra*, *Vaisya*, *Kshatriya* or *Bráhman*

caste, and who have not given birth to children should wait as long

as a year for their husbands who have gone abroad for a short time;

but if they are such as have given birth to children, they should wait

for their absent husbands for more than a year. If they are provided

with maintenance, they should wait for twice the period of time just

mentioned. If they are not so provided with, their well-to-do *gnátis*

should maintain them either for four or eight years. Then the *gnátis*

should leave them to marry after taking what had been presented to

them on the occasion of their marriages. If the husband is a

*Bráhman*, studying abroad, his wife who has no issue should wait

for him for ten years; but if she has given birth to children, she

should wait for twelve years. If the husband is of *Kshatriya* caste,

his wife should wait for him till her death; but even if she bears

children to a *savarna* husband, (*i.e*., a second husband belonging to

the same *gotra* as that of the former husband) with a view to avoid

the extinction of her race, she shall not be liable to contempt

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

229

thereof (*savarnatascha prajátá ná pavádam labheta*). If the wife of

an absent husband lacks maintenance and is deserted by well-to-do

*gnátis*, she may remarry one whom she likes and who is in a

position to maintain her and relieve her misery.

A young wife (*kumárí*) who is wedded in accordance with the

customs of the first four kinds of marriage (*dharmaviváhát*), and

whose husband has gone abroad and is heard of shall wait for him

for the period of seven menses (*saptatirthányákánksheta*),

provided she has not publicly announced his name; but she shall

wait for him a year in case of her having announced the name of her

absent husband who is heard of. In the case of a husband who is

gone abroad but who is not heard of, his wife shall wait for the

period of five menses, but if the absent husband is not heard of, his

wife shall wait for him for the period of ten menses. In the case of a

husband who is gone abroad and is not heard of, his wife shall, if

she has received only a part of *sulka* from him, wait for him for the

period of three menses; but if he is heard of, she shall wait for him

for the period of seven menses. A young wife who has received the

whole amount of *sulka* shall wait for the period of five menses for

her absent husband who is not heard of; but if he is heard of, she

shall wait for him for the period of ten menses. Then with the

permission of judges (*dharma*-*sthairvisrishtá*), she may marry one

whom she likes; for neglect of intercourse with wife after her

monthly ablution is, in the opinion of Kautilya, a violation of one's

duty (*tirthoparodho hi dharmavadha iti Kautilyah*).

In the case of husbands who have long gone abroad

(*dirgrhapravásinah*), who have become ascetics, or who have been

dead, their wives, having no issue, shall wait for them for the

period of seven menses; but if they have given birth to children,

they shall wait for a year. Then (each of these women) may marry

the brother of her husband. If there are a number of brothers to her

lost husband, she shall marry such a one of them as is next in age to

her former husband, or as is virtuous and is capable of protecting

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

230

her, or one who is the youngest and unmarried. If there are no

brothers to her lost husband, she may marry one who belongs to the

same *gotra* as her husband's or relative. But if there are many such

persons as can be selected in marriage, she shall choose one who is

a nearer relation of her lost husband.

\* If a woman violates the above rule by remarrying one who

is not a kinsman (*dáyáda*) of her husband, then the woman and the

man who remarry each other, those that have given her in

remarriage and those who have given their consent to it shall all be

liable to the punishment for elopement.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, “Vagrancy; Elopement; and Short and

Long Sojournments,” in the section “Concerning Marriage” in

Book III, “Concerning Law” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

the Section “Concerning Marriage”. End of the sixty-first chapter

from the beginning.]

**CHAPTER V. DIVISION OF INHERITANCE.**

SONS whose fathers and mothers or ancestors are alive

cannot be independent (*anísvarah*). After their time, division of

ancestral property among descendants from the same ancestor shall

take place, calculating per *sterpes* (according to fathers).

Self-acquired property of any of the sons with the exception

of that kind of property which is earned by means of parental

property is not divisible. Sons or grandsons till the fourth

generation from the first parent shall also have prescribed shares

(*amsabhájah*) in that property which is acquired by means of their

undivided ancestral property; for the line (*pindah*) as far as the

fourth generation is uninterrupted (*avichchhinnah*). But those

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

231

whose line or genealogy from the first ancestor is interrupted

(*vichchhinnapindáh*, *i.e.*, those who are subsequent to the fourth

generation), shall have equal divisions. Those who have been

living together shall redivide their property whether they had

already divided their ancestral property before or they had received

no such property at all. Of sons, he who brings the ancestral

property to a prosperous condition shall also have a share of the

profit.

If a man has no male issue, his own brothers, or persons who

have been living with him, (*saha jívino vá*), shall take possession

of his movable property (*dravyam*); and his daughters, (born of

marriages other than the first four), shall have his immovable

property (*riktham*). If one has sons, they shall have the property; if

one has (only) daughters born of such marriage as is contracted in

accordance with the customs of any of the first four kinds of

marriage, they shall have the property; if there are neither sons nor

such daughters, the dead man's father, if living, shall have it; if he,

too, is not alive, the dead man's brothers and the sons of his

brothers shall have it; if there are many fatherless brothers, all of

them shall divide it; and each of the many sons of such brothers

shall have one share due to his father (*piturekamamsam*); if the

brothers (*sodarya*) are the sons of many fathers, they shall divide it

calculating from their fathers.

Among a dead man's father, brother, and brother's sons, the

succeeding ones shall depend on the preceding ones if living (for

their shares); likewise the youngest or the eldest claiming his own

share.

A father, distributing his property while he is alive, shall

make no distinction in dividing it among his sons. Nor shall a

father deprive without sufficient reason any of the sons of his

share. Father being dead, the elder sons shall show favour to the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

232

younger ones, if the latter are not of bad character.

*(Time of dividing inheritance.)*

Division of inheritance shall be made when all the inheritors

have attained their majority. If it is made before, the minors shall

have their shares, free of all debts.

These shares of the minors shall be placed in the safe custody

of the relatives of their mothers, or of aged gentlemen of the

village, till they attain their majority. The same rule shall hold good

in the case of those who have gone abroad. Unmarried brothers

shall also be paid as much marriage cost as is equal to that incurred

in the marriages of married brothers

(*sannivishtasamamasannivishtebhyonaivesanikam dadyuh*).

Daughters, too, (unmarried) shall be paid adequate dowry

(*prádánikam*), payable to them on the occasion of their marriages.

Both assets and liabilities shall be equally divided.

My teacher says that poor people (*nishkinchanáh*) shall

equally distribute among themselves even the mud-vessels

(*udapátram*).

In the opinion of Kautilya, it is unnecessary to say so

(*chhalam*); for as a rule, division is to be made of all that is in

existence, but of nothing that is not in existence. Having declared

before witnesses the amount of property common to all (*sámánya*)

as well as the property constituting additional shares (*amsa*) of the

brothers (in priority of their birth), division of inheritance shall be

carried on. Whatever is badly and unequally divided or is involved

in deception, concealment or secret acquisition, shall be redivided.

Property for which no claimant is found (*ádáyádakam*) shall

go to the king, except the property of a woman, of a dead man for

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

233

whom no funeral rites have been performed, or of a niggardly man

with the exception of that of a *Bráhman* learned in the Vedas. That

(the property of the learned) shall be made over to those who are

well-versed in the three Vedas.

Persons fallen from caste, persons born of outcaste men, and

eunuchs shall have no share; likewise idiots, lunatics, the blind and

lepers. If the idiots, etc., have wives with property, their issues who

are not equally idiots, etc., shall share inheritance. All these

persons excepting those that are fallen from caste (*patitavarjah*)

shall be entitled to only food and clothing.

\* If these persons have been married (before they became

fallen, etc.) and if their line is likely to become extinct, their

relatives may beget sons for them and give proportional shares of

inheritance to those sons.

[Thus ends Chapter V, “Procedure of Portioning Inheritance” in

the section of “Division of Inheritance” in Book III, “Concerning

law” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the sixty-second

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER VI. SPECIAL SHARES IN INHERITANCE.

GOATS shall be the special shares of the eldest of sons, born

of the same mother, among, *Bráhmans*; horses among *Kshatriyas*;

cows among *Vaisyas*; and sheep among *Súdras*. The blind of the

same animals shall be the special shares to the middle-most sons;

species of variegated colour of the same animals shall be the

special shares to the youngest of sons. In the absence of quadruped,

the eldest shall take an additional share of the whole property

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

234

excepting precious stones; for by this act alone, he will be bound in

his duty to his ancestors.

The above method is in accordance with the rules observed

among the followers of *Usanas*.

The father being dead, his carriage and jewellery shall be the

special share to the eldest; his bed, seat, and bronze plate in which

he used to take his meals (*bhuktakámsyam*), to the middle-most;.

and black grains, iron, domestic utensils, cows and cart to the

youngest. The rest of the property, or the above things, too, may be

equally divided among themselves. Sisters shall have no claim to

inheritance; they shall have the bronze plate and jewellery of their

mother after her death. An impotent eldest son shall have only

1/3rd of the special share usually given to the eldest; if the eldest

son follows a condemnable occupation or if he has given up the

observance of religious duties, he shall have only ¼ of the special

share; if he is unrestrained in his actions he shall have nothing.

The same rule shall hold good with the middlemost and

youngest sons; of these two, one who is endowed with manliness

(*mánushopetah*), shall have half the special share usually given to

the eldest.

With regard to sons of many wives:--

Of sons of two wives of whom only one woman has gone

through all the necessary religious ceremonials, or both of whom

have not, as maidens, observed necessary religious rites, or one of

whom has brought forth twins, it is by birth that *primogenitureship*

is decided.

Shares in inheritance for such sons as *Súta*, *Mágadha*, *Vrátya*

and *Rathakára* shall depend on the abundance of paternal property;

the rest, *i.e*., sons other than *Súta*, etc., of inferior birth, shall be

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

235

dependent on the eldest for their subsistence. Dependent sons shall

have equal divisions.

Of sons begotten by a *Bráhman* in the four castes, the son of a

*Bráhman* woman shall take four shares; the son of a *Kshatriya*

woman three shares; the son of a *Vaisya* woman two shares, and

the son of a *Súdra* woman one share.

The same rule shall hold good in the case of *Kshatriya* and

*Vaisya* fathers begetting sons in three or two castes in order.

An *Anantara* son of a *Bráhman*, *i.e*. a son begotten by a

*Bráhman* on a woman of next lower caste, shall, if endowed with

manly or superior qualities (*mánushopetah*), take an equal share

(with other sons of inferior qualities); similarly *Anantara* sons of

*Kshatriya* or *Vaisya* fathers shall if endowed with manly or

superior qualities, take half or equal shares (with others). An only

son to two mothers of different castes shall take possession of the

whole property and maintain the relatives of his father. A

*Palrasava* son begotten by a *Bráhman* on a *Súdra* woman, shall

take 1/3rd share; a *sapinda*, (an agnate) or a *kulya* (the nearest

cognate), of the *Bráhman* shall take the remaining two shares,

being thereby obliged to offer funeral libation; in the absence of

agnates or cognates, the deceased father's teacher or student shall

take the two shares.

\* Or on the wife of such a *Bráhman* shall a *sagotra*, relative

bearing the same family name, or a (*mátribandha*) relative of his

mother, beget a natural son (*kshetraja*), and this son may take that

wealth.

[Thus ends Chapter VI, "Special Shares of Inheritance" in the

section of "Division of inheritance” in Book III, “Concerning law”

of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the sixty-third chapter from

the beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

236

## CHAPTER VII. DISTINCTION BETWEEN SONS.

MY preceptor says that the seed sown in the field of another

shall belong to the owner of that field. Others hold that the mother

being only the receptacle for the seed (*mátá bhastrá*), the child

must belong to him from whose seed it is born. Kautilya says that it

must belong to both the living parents.

The son begotten by a man on his wife who has gone through

all the required ceremonials is called aurasa, natural son; equal to

him is the son of an appointed daughter (*putrikáputra*); the son

begotten on a wife by another man, appointed for the purpose, and

of the same *gotra* as that of the husband; or of a different *gotra*, is

called *kshetraja*; on the death of the begetter, the *kshetraja* son will

be the son to both the fathers, follow the *gotras* of both, offer

funeral libations to both, and take possession of the immovable

property (*ríktha*) of both of them; of the same status as the

*kshetraja* is he who is secretly begotten in the house of relatives

and is called *gúdhaja*, secretly born; the son cast off by his natural

parents is called *apaviddha* and will belong to that man who

performs necessary religious ceremonials to him; the son born of a

maiden (before wedlock) is called *kánína*; the son born of a woman

married while carrying is called *sahodha*; the son of a remarried

woman (*punarbhátáyáh*.) is called *paunarbhava*. A natural son can

claim relationship both with his father and his father's relatives; but

a son born to another man can have relationship only with his

adopter. Of the same status as the latter is he who is given in

adoption with water by both the father and mother and is called

*datta*. The son who, either of his own accord or following the

intention of his relatives, offers himself to be the son of another, is

called *upagata*. He who is appointed as a son is called *kritaka*; and

he who is purchased is called *kríta*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

237

On the birth of a natural son, *savarna* sons shall have 1/3rd of

inheritance while *savarna* sons shall have only food and clothing.

Sons begotten by *Bráhmans* or *Kshatriyas* on women of next

lower caste (*anantaráputráh*) are called *savarnas*; but on women

of castes lower by two grades are called *asavarnas*. (Of such

*asavarna* sons), the son begotten by a *Bráhman* on a *Vaisya*

woman is called *Ambashtha*; on a *Súdra* woman is called *Nisháda*

or *Párasava*. The son begotten by a *Kshatriya* on a *Súdra* woman is

known as *Ugra*; the son begotten by a *Vaisya* on a *Súdra* woman is

no other than a *Súdra*. Sons begotten by men of impure life of any

of the four castes on women of lower castes next to their own are

called *Vrátyas*.

The above kinds of sons are called *anuloma*, sons begotten by men

of higher on women of lower castes.

Sons begotten by a *Súdra* on women of higher castes are

*Ayogava*, *Kshatta*, and *Chandála*; by a *Vaisya*, *Mágadha*, and

*Vaidehaka*; and by a *Kshatriya*, *Súta*. But men of the, names, *Súta*

and *Mágadha*, celebrated in the *Puránas*, are quite different and of

greater merit than either *Bráhmans* or *Kshatriyas*. The above kinds

of sons are *pratiloma*, sons begotten by men of lower on women of

higher castes, and originate on account of kings violating all

*dharmas*.

The son begotten by an *Ugra* on a *Nisháda* woman is called

*kukkuta* and the same is called *Pulkasa*, if begotten in the inverse

order. The son begotten by an *Ambhashtha* on a *Vaidehaka* woman

is named *Vaina*; the same in the reverse order is called *Kusílava*.

An *Ugra* begets on a *Kshatta* woman as *vapáka*. These and other

sons are of mixed castes (*Antarálas*).

A *Vainya* becomes a *Rathakára*, chariot-maker, by

profession. Members of this caste shall marry among themselves.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

238

Both in customs and avocations they shall follow their ancestors.

They may either become *Súdras* or embrace any other lower castes

excepting *Chandálas*.

The king who guides his subjects in accordance with the

above rules will attain to heaven; otherwise he will fall into the

hell.

Offsprings of mixed castes (*Antarálas*) shall have equal

divisions of inheritance.

\* Partition of inheritance shall be made in accordance with

the customs prevalent in the country, caste, guild (*sangha*), or the

village of the inheritors.

[Thus ends Chapter VII "Distinction between Sons" in the section

of “Division of Inheritance” in Book III, “Concerning law” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of “Division of Inheritance”. End of

the sixty-fourth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER VIII. BUILDINGS.

DISPUTES concerning *Vástu* are dependent for settlement on

the evidences to be furnished by people living in the

neighbourhood.

Houses, fields, gardens, building of any kind (*setubandhah*),

lakes and tanks are each called *Vástu*.

The fastening of the roof of a house to the transverse beam by

means of iron bolts is called *setu* (*karna-kílaya-sabandho’*

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

239

*nugriham setuh*). In conformity to the stability of the *setu*, houses

shall be constructed. Not encroaching upon what belongs to others,

new houses may be constructed.

Foundation (*pade bandhah*) shall be 2 *aratnis* by 3 *padas*.

Except in the case of temporary structures for the confinement of

women for ten days, all permanent houses shall be provided with a

dunghill (*avaskara*), water course (*bhrama*), and a well

(*udapánum*). Violation of this rule shall be punished with the first

amercement.

The same rule shall hold good regarding the necessity of

constructing closets, pits and water courses on festive occasions.

From each house a water course of sufficient slope and 3

*padas* or 11 *aratnis* long shal1 be so constructed that water shall

either flow from it in a continuous line or fall from it (into the

drain).

Violation of this rule shall be punished with a fine of 54

*panas*.

Beginning with a *pada* or an *aratni*, an apartment measuring 3

*padas* by 4 *padas* shall be made for locating the fire for worship

(*agnishtham*), or a waterbutt, (*udanjaram*), or a corn-mill

(*rochaním*), or a mortar (*kuttinín*).

Violation of this rule shall be punished with a fine of 24

*panas*.

Between any two houses or between the extended portions of

any two houses, the intervening space shall be 4 *padas*, or 3 *padas*.

The roofs of adjoining houses may either be 4 *angulas* apart, or one

of them may cover the other. The front door (*anidváram*) shall

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

240

measure a *kishku*; there shall be no impediment inside the house for

opening one or the other of the folds of the door. The upper story

shall be provided with a small but high window. [If a

(neighbouring) house is obstructed by it, the window should be

closed.] The owners of houses may construct their houses in any

other way they collectively like, but they shall avoid whatever is

injurious. With a view to ward off the evil consequences of rain,

the top of the roof (*vánalatyaschordhvam*) shall be covered over

with a broad mat, not blowable by the wind. Neither shall the roof

be such as will easily bend or break. Violation of this rule shall be

punished with the first amercement. The same punishment shall be

meted out for causing annoyance by constructing doors or

windows facing those of others houses except when these houses

are separated by the king's road or the high road.

If a pit, steps, water-course, ladder, dung-hill, or, any other

parts of a house offer or cause annoyance to outsiders, or in any

way obstruct the enjoyment of others (*bhoganigrahe cha*), or cause

water to collect and thereby injure the wall of a neighbouring

house, the owner shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*. If the

annoyance is due to feces and urine, the fine shall be double the

above. The water-course or gutter shall offer free passage for

water; otherwise the fine shall be 12 *panas*.

The same fine (12 *panas*) shall be meted out not only to a

tenant who, though asked to evacuate, resides in the house, but also

to the owner who forces out a renter who has paid his rent (from his

house), unless the renter is involved in such acts as defamation,

theft, robbery, abduction, or enjoyment with a false title. He who

voluntarily evacuates a house shall pay the balance of the annual

rent.

If any one of a party does not take part in the construction of a

building which is intended for the common use of all the members

of that party or if any one obstructs another member of a party in

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

241

making use of any part of such a building, he shall be fined 12

*panas*. Similarly if any one mars another's enjoyment of such a

building, he shall be fined double the above.

\* With the exception of private rooms and parlours, (*angana*)

all other open parts of houses as well as apartments where fire is

ever kindled for worship or a mortar is situated shall be thrown

open for common use.

[Thus ends Chapter VIII, “House-building” in the section of

“Buildings” in Book III, “Concerning Law” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the sixty-fifth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IX. SALE OF BUILDINGS, BOUNDARY DISPUTES, DETERMINATION OF BOUNDARIES, AND MISCELLANEOUS HINDRANCES.

RICH persons among kinsmen or neighbours shall in

succession go for the purchase of land and other holdings.

Neighbours of good family, forty in number and different from the

purchasers above mentioned, shall congregate in front of the

building for sale and announce it as such. Accurate description of

the exact boundaries of fields, gardens, buildings of any kind, lakes

or tanks shall be declared before the elders of the village or of the

neighbourhood. If, on crying aloud thrice „Who will purchase this

at such and such a price‟? no opposition is offered, the purchaser

may proceed to purchase the holding in question. If at this time the

value of the property is increased by bidding even among persons

of the same community, the increased amount together with the toll

on the value shall be handed over into the king's treasury. The

bidder (*vikrayapratikroshtá*) shall pay the toll. Bidding for a

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

242

property in the absence of its owner shall be punished with a fine of

24 *panas*. If the owner does not come forward even on the

expiration of seven nights, the bidder may take possession of the

property. Sale of building, etc., (*vástu*) to other than the bidder

shall be punished with a fine of 200 *panas*; if the property is other

than buildings, etc., (*vástu*), the fine for the above offence shall be

24 *panas*. Thus the sale of buildings is dealt with.

*(Boundary disputes.)*

In all disputes regarding the boundary between any two

villages, neighbours or elders of five or ten villages (*panchagrámí*

*dasagrámí vá*) shall investigate the case on the evidence to be

furnished from natural or artificial boundary marks.

Elders among cultivators and herdsmen, or outsiders who

have had the experience of former possession in the place, or one

or many persons (not) personally acquainted with the boundary

marks under dispute shall first describe the boundary marks, and

then, wearing unusual dress (*viparítaveshah*), shall lead the people

(to the place). If the boundary marks just described are not found, a

fine of 1,000 *panas* shall be imposed (on the misleading or guilty

person). If, however, they arrive at the exact spot, the party who

have either encroached upon the boundary or have destroyed the

boundary marks shall be similarly punished.

The king shall beneficially distribute among others those

holdings which have no boundary-marks or which have ceased to

be enjoyed by any person.

*(Disputes about fields.)*

Disputes concerning fields shall be decided by the elders of

the neighbourbood or of the village. If they are divided in their

opinions, decision shall be sought for from a number of pure and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

243

respectable people, or, the disputants may equally divide the

disputed holding among themselves. If both of these methods fail,

the holding (*vástu*) under dispute shall be taken possession of by

the king. The same rule shall hold good in the case of a holding for

which no claimant is forthcoming; or it may beneficially be

distributed among the people. Occupation of a holding (*vástu*) by

force shall be punished as theft.

If a holding is taken possession of by another on some

reasonable grounds, he shall be made to pay to the owner some

rent, the amount of which is to be fixed after mature considerations

of what is necessary for the subsistence of the cultivator of the

holding by him.

Encroachment upon boundaries shall be punished with the

first amercement. Destruction of boundaries shall be punished with

a fine of 24 *panas*. The same rules shall hold good in disputes

concerning hermitage in forests, pasture lands, high roads,

cremation-grounds, temples, sacrificial places, and places of

pilgrimage. Thus the determination of boundaries is dealt with.

*(Miscellaneous hindrances.)*

All kinds of disputes shall depend for their settlement on the

evidence to be furnished by neighbours. Of pasture lands, fields

(*kedára*), flower gardens, a threshing-floor (*khala*), houses, and

stables of horses (*váhanakoshtha*), hindrance to any one coming

first in order shall be removed in preference to the one or more

coming later in the series. With the exception of people in forests

of *Bráhmans* and of *Soma*-plants, temples, and places of sacrifice

and pilgrimage, any person causing, while making use of a by-path

to go to tanks, rivers, or fields, damage to the seeds sown in the

fields of others, shall pay as much compensation to the sufferers as

is equivalent to the damage.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

244

If the owner of any one of the following, *viz*., wet-fields,

parks, or any kinds of buildings, causes damage to the rest owned

by others, the fine shall be double the value of the damage.

The water of a lower tank shall not submerge the field

irrigated by a higher tank.

The natural flow of water from a higher to a lower tank shall

not be stopped unless the lower tank has ceased to be useful for

three consecutive years. Violation of this rule shall be punished

with the first amercement. The same punishment shall be meted

out for emptying a tank of its water (*tatákavámanam cha*).

Buildings of any kind (*setubandha*), neglected for five consecutive

years shall be forfeited, except in calamities.

*(Remission of taxes.)*

In the case of construction of new works, such as tanks, lakes,

etc., taxes (on the lands below such tanks) shall be remitted for five

years (*panchavárshikah parihárah*). For repairing neglected or

ruined works of similar nature, taxes shall be remitted for four

years. For improving or extending water-works, taxes shall be

remitted for three years. In the case of acquiring such newly started

works by mortgage or purchase, taxes on the lands below such

works shall be remitted for two years. If uncultivated tracts are

acquired (for cultivation) by mortgage, purchase or in any other

way, remission of taxes shall be for two years. Out of crops grown

by irrigation by means of wind power or bullocks

(*vátapravartimanandinibandháyatana*) or below tanks, in fields,

parks, flower gardens, or in any other way, so much of the produce

as would not entail hardship on the cultivators may be given to the

Government. Persons who cultivate the lands below tanks, etc., of

others at a stipulated price (*prakraya*), or for annual rent

(*avakraya*), or for certain number of shares of the crops grown

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

245

(*bhága*) or persons who are permitted to enjoy such lands free of

rent of any kind, shall keep the tanks, etc., in good repair; otherwise

they shall be punished with a fine of double the loss.

\* Persons, letting out the water of tanks, etc., at any other

place than their sluice gate (*apáre*), shall pay a fine of 6 *panas*; and

persons who recklessly obstruct the flow of water from the

sluice-gate of tanks shall also pay the same fine.

[Thus ends Chapter IX, "Sale of buildings, boundary disputes,

determination of boundaries, and miscellaneous hindrances” in the

section of “Buildings” in Book III, “Concerning Law” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the sixty-sixth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER X. DESTRUCTION OF PASTURE-LANDS, FIELDS AND ROADS, AND NON-PERFORMANCE OF AGREEMENTS.

PERSONS who obstruct, or make any kind of mischief with

the flow of water intended for cultivation shall be punished with

the first amercement. Construction in the sites belonging to others,

of any buildings with a view to attract pilgrims thereto, of abodes

of worship (*chaitya*), or of temples of gods; as also the sale or

mortgage, or causing the sale or mortgage, of any long continued

charitable building (*púrvánuvrittam dharmasetum*) shall be

punished with the middlemost amercement. Those who are

witnesses to such transactions shall be punished with the highest

amercement excepting in the case of neglected or ruined buildings.

In the absence of claimants to dilapidated religious buildings,

villagers (*grámáh*), or charitable people (*punyasíláva*) may repair

them.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

246

*(Blocking the roads.)*

Forms of roads and paths have been dealt with in connection

with the construction of forts. (First Chapter, Book II).

Obstruction to roads for inferior beasts or men shall be

punished with a fine of 12 *panas*; to roads for superior beasts 24

*panas*; to roads for elephants or to those leading to fields, 54 *panas*;

to those leading to any buildings or forests (*setuvanapatham*), 600

*panas*; to those for burial grounds or villages, 200 *panas*; to those

for *dronamukha*, a fortress, 500 *panas*; and those leading to

*sthániya*, country parts, or pasture grounds, 1,000 *panas*. The same

fines shall be meted out in case of ploughing the several roads too

deep (*atikarshane chaishám*); and ¼th of the same fines for

ploughing merely on their surface.

If a cultivator or a neighbour makes encroachment upon a

field during the time of sowing seeds, he shall be fined 12 *panas*,

unless the encroachment is due to evils, calamities or intolerable

occurrences arising otherwise from the field (*anyatra*

*doshopanipatávishahyebhyah*).

*(Settling in villages.)*

Taxpayers shall sell or mortgage their fields to taxpayers

alone; *Bráhmans* shall sell or mortgage their *Brahmadaya* or gifted

lands only to those who are endowed with such lands; otherwise

they shall be punished with the first amercement. The same

punishment shall be meted out to a taxpayer who settles in a village

not inhabited by taxpayers. If a taxpayer takes the place of another

taxpayer, he shall enjoy all the holdings but the house of the latter.

Even the house may be given to the new settler. If a person

cultivates an inalienable land of another person who does not

cultivate it, such a person shall restore the same after five years

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

247

enjoyment on taking a certain amount of compensation equivalent

to the improvement he made on the lands. Persons who are not

taxpayers and who sojourn abroad shall retain the right of

ownership (*bhogam*) of their lands.

*(The Head-man of the village.)*

When the head-man of a village has to travel on account of

any business of the whole village, the villagers shall by turns

accompany him.

Those who cannot do this shall pay 1½ *panas* for every

*yojana*. If the headman of a village sends out of the village any

person except a thief, or an adulterer, he shall be punished with a

fine of 24 *panas*, and the villagers with the first amercement (for

doing the same).

Re-entrance into a village for a person previously sent out of

it (*nirastasya*), is explained by „settlement of persons in villages‟

(treated of above).

At a distance of 800 *angulas* around every village, an

enclosure with timber posts shall be constructed.

*(Trespassing cattle.)*

Pasture lands, plains, and forests may be availed of for

grazing cattle.

For camels or buffaloes allowed to stray after grazing in

pasture grounds, the fine shall be ¼th of a *pana*; for cows, horses,

or asses, 1/8th of a *pana*; for inferior quadrupeds 1/16th of a *pana*;

and for cattle found lying thereon after grazing, fines shall be

double the above; for cattle ever found to live in the vicinity of

pasture grounds, the fines shall be four times the above.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

248

Bulls, let out in the name of the village deity

(*grámadevavrishah*), cows which have not passed ten days inside

the enclosure after calving, or bulls or bullocks kept for crossing

cows shall not be punished. If crops are eaten away by animals, the

owner or owners of them shall, if proved guilty, be made to pay

twice as much as the loss. Persons driving their cattle through a

field without intimating the owner shall be fined 12 *panas*. Any

person who allows his cattle to stray shall be fined 24 *panas*;

cowherds doing the same with the cattle under their care shall be

fined half the above. The same punishment shall be meted out for

letting cattle graze in flower gardens. For breaking the fence of

fields, the punishment shall be double the above. If cattle are

allowed to stray and eat the grains stored in houses, a threshing

floor, or a court yard, the owners of the cattle shall pay adequate

compensation. If beasts maintained in reserve-forests are found

grazing in a field, they shall be brought to the notice of the forest

officers and the beasts shall be driven out without being hurt or

killed. Stray cattle shall be driven out by the use of ropes or whips.

Persons hurting them in any way shall be liable to the punishment

for assault or violence. Persons who invite (cattle to graze in the

fields of others) or who are caught while committing such offences

shall by all means be put down. Thus the destruction of pasture

lands, fields, and roads is dealt with.

*(Non-performance of agreement.)*

The fine levied on a cultivator who arriving at a village for

work, does not work shall be taken by the village itself. He shall

refund not only double the amount of the wages he received

promising to work, but also double the value of food and drink with

which he has been provided. If the work is one of sacrificial

performance (*prahavaneshu*), then also he shall pay double the

amount of the wages. Any person who does not cooperate in the

work of preparation for a public show, shall, together with his

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

249

family, forfeit his right to enjoy the show (*prekshá*). If a man who

has not cooperated in preparing for a public play or spectacle is

found hearing or witnessing it under hiding, or if any one refuses to

give his aid in a work beneficial to all, he shall be compelled to pay

double the value of the aid due from him. The order of any person

attempting to do a work beneficial to all shall be obeyed.

Disobedience in such a case shall be punished with a fine of 12

*panas*. If others unitedly beat or hurt such a person so ordering,

each of them shall pay double the amount of the fine usually levied

for such offence. If among the above offenders one is a *Bráhman* or

a person superior to a *Bráhman*, he shall first be punished. If a

*Bráhman* does not take part in the combined performance of any

sacrifice of his village, he shall not be violated, but may be

persuaded to pay a share.

The above rules shall also apply to non-performance of

agreements among countries (*desa*), castes, families, and

assemblies.

\* Those who, with their united efforts construct on roads

buildings of any kind (*setubandha*) beneficial to the whole country

and who not only adorn their villages, but also keep watch on them

shall be shown favourable concessions by the king.

[Thus ends Chapter X "Destruction of pasture lands, fields, and

roads," in the section of "Buildings" in Book III, “Concerning

Law” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya; end of “Buildings”; and of

non-performance of agreements.' End of the sixty-seventh chapter

from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XI. RECOVERY OF DEBTS.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

250

AN interest of a *pana* and a quarter per month per cent is just.

Five *panas* per month per cent is commercial interest

(*vyávaháriki*). Ten *panas* per month per cent prevails among

forests. Twenty *panas* per month per cent prevails among

sea-traders (*sámudránám*). Persons exceeding, or causing to

exceed the above rate of interest shall be punished with the first

amercement; and hearers of such transactions shall each pay half of

the above fine.

The nature of the transactions between creditors and debtors,

on which the welfare of the kingdom depends, shall always be

scrutinised. Interest in grains in seasons of good harvest shall not

exceed more than half when valued in money. Interest on stocks

(*prakshepa*) shall be one-half of the profit and be regularly paid as

each year expires. If it is allowed to accumulate owing either to the

intention or to the absence abroad (of the receiver or payer), the

amount payable shall be equal to twice the share or principal

(*múlyadvigunah*). A person claiming interest when it is not due, or

representing as principal the total amount of his original principal

and the interest thereon shall pay a fine of four times the amount

under dispute (*bandhachaturgunah*).

A creditor who sues for four times the amount lent by him

shall pay a fine of four times the unjust amount.

Of this fine, the creditor shall pay ¾ths and the debtor ¼th.

Interest on debts due from persons who are engaged in sacrifices

taking a long time (*dírghasatra*), or who are suffering from

disease, or who are detained in the houses of their teachers (for

learning), or who are either minors or too poor, shall not

accumulate.

A creditor refusing to receive the payment of his debt shall

pay a fine of 12 *panas*. If the refusal is due to some (reasonable)

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

251

cause, then the amount free from interest (for subsequent time)

shall be kept in the safe custody of others. Debts neglected for ten

years, except in the case of minors, aged persons, diseased persons,

persons involved in calamities, or persons who are sojourning

abroad or have fled the country and except in the case of

disturbances in the kingdom (*rájyavibhrama*), shall not be received

back.

Sons of a deceased debtor shall pay the principal with interest

(*kusí dam*). (In the absence of sons), kinsmen claiming the share of

the dead man or sureties, such as joint partners of the debt,

(*sahagráhinah pratibhuvo vá*) shall pay the same. No other kind of

surety is valid (*na prátibhávyamanyat*); a minor, as surety, is

inefficient (*bálaprátibhavyam asáram* = surety of a minor is not

strong).

A debt, the payment of which is not limited by time or place

or both (*asamkhyátadesakálam*), shall be paid by the sons,

grandsons or any other heirs of the dead debtor. Any debt, the

payment of which is not limited by time or place or both and for

which life, marriage, or land is pledged, shall be borne by sons or

grandsons.

*(Regarding many debts against one.)*

Excepting the case of a debtor going abroad, no debtor shall

simultaneously be sued for more than one debt by one or two

creditors. Even in the case of a debtor going abroad, he shall pay

his debts in the order in which he borrowed them or shall first pay

his debts due to the king or a learned *Bráhman*.

Debts contracted from each other by either a husband or wife,

either a son or a father, or by any one among brothers of undivided

interests shall be irrecoverable.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

252

Cultivators or government servants shall not be caught hold

of for debts while they are engaged in their duties (or at work).

A wife, though she has (not) heard of the debt (*pratisrávaní*),

shall not be caught hold of for the debt contracted by her husband,

excepting in the case of herdsmen and joint cultivators

(*gopálakárdhasítikebhyah*). But a husband may be caught for the

debt contracted by his wife. If it is admitted that a man fled the

country without providing for the debt contracted by his wife, the

highest amercement shall be meted out; if not admitted, witnesses

shall be depended upon.

*(Witnesses.)*

It is obligatory to produce three witnesses who are reliable,

honest and respected. At least two witnesses acceptable to the

parties are necessary; never one witness in the case of debts.

Wife's brothers, copartners, prisoners (*ábaddha*), creditors,

debtors, enemies, maintained persons, or persons once punished by

the Government shall not be taken as witnesses. Likewise persons

legally unfit to carry on transactions, the king, persons learned in

the Vedas, persons depending for their maintenance on villages

(*grámabhritaka*), lepers, persons suffering from bodily erruptions,

outcast persons, persons of mean avocation, the blind, the deaf, the

dumb, egotistic persons, females, or government servants shall not

be taken as witnesses excepting in the case of transactions in one's

own community. In dispute concerning assault, theft, or abduction,

persons other than wife's brothers, enemies, and co-partners, can be

witnesses. In secret dealings, a single woman or a single man who

has stealthily heard or seen them can be a witness, with the

exception of the king or an ascetic. On the side of prosecution

masters against servants, priests or teachers against their disciples,

and parents against their sons can be witnesses

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

253

(*nigrahanasákshyam kuryuh*); Persons other than these may also

be witnesses in criminal cases. If the above persons (masters and

servants, etc.) sue each other (*parasparábhiyoge*), they shall be

punished with the highest amercement. Creditors guilty of *parokta*

shall pay a fine of 10 times the amount (*dasabandha*) but if

incapable to pay so much, they shall at least pay five times the

amount sued for (*panchabandham*); thus the section on witnesses

is dealt with.

*(Taking oaths.)*

Witness shall be taken before *Bráhmans*, vessels of water

and fire. A *Bráhman* witness shall be told „Tell the truth‟; a

*Kshatriya* or a *Vaisya* witness shall be told thus:--„If thou utterest

falsehood, thou, do not attain the fruit of thy sacrificial and

charitable deeds; but having broken the array of thy enemies in

war, thou, do go a beggar with a skull in thy hand.‟

A *Súdra* witness thus:--„Whatever thy merits are, in thy

former birth or after thy death, shall they go to the king and

whatever sins the king may have committed, shall they go to thee,

if thou utterest falsehood; fines also shall be levied on thee, for

facts as they have been heard or seen will certainly be subsequently

revealed.‟

If in the course of seven nights, witnesses are found to have

unanimously made a false consert among themselves, a fine of 12

*panas* shall be levied. If they are thus found in the course of three

fortnights, they shall pay the amount sued for (*abhiyogam dadyuh*).

If witnesses differ, judgment may be given in accordance with

the statements of a majority of pure and respectable witnesses; or

the mean of their statements may be followed; or the amount under

dispute may be taken by the king. If witnesses give testimony for a

less amount, the plaintiff shall pay a fine proportional to the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

254

increased amount; if they attest to a greater amount, the excess

shall go to the king. In cases where the plaintiff proves himself

stupid, or where bad hearing (on the part of witnesses at the time of

the transaction) or bad writing is the cause of difficulty, or where

the debtor is dead, the evidence of witnesses alone shall be

depended on (*sákshipratyayameva syát*).

"Only," say the followers of *Usanas*, "in those cases where

witnesses prove themselves to have been stupid or senseless and

where the investigation of the place, time or nature of the

transaction is of no avail, the three amercements shall be levied."

"False witnesses," say the followers of Manu, "shall be fined

ten times the amount which, no matter whether it is true or false,

they cause to be lost."

"If," say the followers of *Brihaspati*, "owing to their having

been stupid, they render a case suspicious, they shall be tortured to

death."

"No" says Kautilya:--It is the truth that witnesses have to hear

(when they are called to attest to any transaction); if they have not

minded it, they shall be fined 24 *panas*; if they have attested to a

false case (without scrutinising), they shall be fined half of the

above fine.

\* Parties shall themselves produce witnesses who are not far

removed either by time or place; witnesses who are very far

removed either by time or place; witnesses who are very far, or

who will not, stir out, shall be made to present themselves by the

order of the judges.

[Thus ends Chapter XI, “Recovery of debts” in Book III,

“Concerning Law” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

255

sixty-eighth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XII. CONCERNING DEPOSITS.

THE rules concerning debts shall also apply to deposits.

Whenever forts or country parts are destroyed by enemies or wild

tribes; whenever villages, merchants, or herds of cattle are

subjected to the inroads of invaders; whenever the kingdom itself is

destroyed; whenever extensive fires or floods bring about entire

destruction of villages, or partly destroy immovable properties,

movable properties having been rescued before; whenever the

spread of fire or rush of floods is so sudden that even movable

properties could not be removed; or whenever a ship laden with

commodities is either sunk or plundered (by pirates); deposits lost

in any of the above ways shall not be reclaimed. The depositary

who has made use of the deposit for his own comfort shall not only

pay a compensation (*bhogavetanam*) to be fixed after considering

the circumstances of the place and time but also a fine of 12 *panas*.

Not only shall any loss in the value of the deposit, due to its use, be

made good, but a fine of 24 *panas* also be paid. Deposits damaged

or lost in any way shall also be made good. When the depositary is

either dead or involved in calamities, the deposit shall not be sued

for. If the deposit is either mortgaged or sold or lost, the depositary

shall not only restore four times its value, but pay a fine of five

times the stipulated value (*pancbabandho dandah*). If the deposit is

exchanged for a similar one (by the depositary), or lost in any other

way, its value shall be paid.

*(Pledges.)*

The same rules shall hold good in the case of pledges

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

256

whenever they are lost, used up, sold, mortgaged, or

misappropriated.

A pledge, if productive, *i.e.* (a usufructory mortgage), shall

never be lost to the debtor (*nádhissopakárassídet*), nor shall any

interest on the debt be charged; but if unproductive (*i.e.,*

hypothecation), it may be lost, and interest on the debt shall

accumulate. The pledgee who does not re-convey the pledge when

the debtor is ready for it shall be fined 12 *panas*.

In the absence of the creditor or mediator

(*prayojahásannidhána*), the amount of the debt may be kept in the

custody of the elders of the village and the debtor may have the

pledged property redeemed; or with its value fixed at the time and

with no interest chargeable for the future, the pledge may be left

where it is. When there is any rise in the value of the pledge or

when it is apprehended that it may be depriciated or lost in the near

future, the pledgee may, with permission from the judges

(*dharmasthas*), or on the evidence furnished by the officer in

charge of pledges (*ádhipálapratyayo vá*), sell the pledge either in

the presence of the debtor or under the presidency of experts who

can see whether such apprehension is justified.

An immovable property, pledged and enjoyable with or

without labour (*prayásabhogyhah phalabhogyová*), shall not be

caused to deteriorate in value while yielding interest on the money

lent, and profit on the expenses incurred in maintaining it.

The pledgee who enjoys the pledge without permission shall

not only pay the net profit he derived from it, but also forfeit the

debt. The rules regarding deposits shall hold good in other matters

connected with pledges.

*(Property entrusted to another for delivery to a third person.)*

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

257

The same rules shall apply to orders (*ádesa*), and property

entrusted for delivery to a third person (*anvádhi*).

If, through a merchant, a messenger is entrusted with a

property for delivery to a third person (*anvádhihasta*) and such

messenger does not reach the destined place, or is robbed of the

property by thieves, the merchant shall not be responsible for it;

nor shall a kinsman of the messenger who dies on his way be

responsible for the property.

For the rest, the rules regarding deposits shall also hold good

here.

*(Borrowed or hired properties.)*

Properties either borrowed (*yáchitakam*) or hired

(*avakrítakam*) shall be returned as intact as they were when

received. If owing to distance in time or place, or owing to some

inherent defects of the properties or to some unforeseen accidents,

properties either borrowed or hired are lost or destroyed, they need

not be made good. The rules regarding deposits shall also apply

here.

*(Retail sale.)*

Retail dealers, selling the merchandise of others at prices

prevailing at particular localities and times shall hand over to the

wholesale dealers as much of the sale proceeds and profit as is

realised by them. The rules regarding pledges shall also apply here.

If owing to distance in time or place there occurs any fall in the

value of the merchandise, the retail dealers shall pay the value and

profit at that rate which obtained when they received the

merchandise.

Servants selling commodities at prices prescribed by their

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

258

masters shall realise no profit. They shall only return the actual sale

proceeds. If prices fall, they shall pay only as much of the sale

proceeds as is realised at the low rate.

But such merchants as belong to trade-guilds

(*samvyavaharikeshu*) or are trustworthy and are not condemned by

the king need not restore even the value of that merchandise which

is lost or destroyed owing to its inherent defects or to some

unforeseen accidents. But of such merchandise as is distanced by

time or place, they shall restore as much value and profit as

remains after making allowance for the wear and tear of the

merchandise.

For the rest the rules regarding deposits shall apply here. It explains

retail sale.

*(Sealed deposits.)*

The rules laid down concerning unsealed deposits (*upanidhis*)

shall apply to sealed deposits also. A man handing over a sealed

deposit to other than the real depositor shall be punished. In the

case of a depositary's denial of having received a deposit, the

antecedent circumstances (*púrvápadánam*) of the deposit and (the

character and social position of) the depositor are the only

evidences. Artisans (*káravah*) are naturally of impure character. It

is not an approved custom with them to deposit for some reliable

reason.

When a depositary denies having received a sealed deposit

which was not, however, deposited for any reasonable cause, the

depositor may obtain secret permission (from the judges) to

produce such witnesses as he might have stationed under a wall

(*gúdhabhitti*) while depositing.

In the midst of a forest or in the middle of a voyage an old or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

259

afflicted merchant might with confidence put in the custody of a

depositary some valuable article with certain secret mark, and go

on his way. On his sending this information to his son or brother,

the latter may ask for the sealed deposit. If the depositary does not

quietly return it, he shall not only forfeit his credit, but be liable to

the punishment for theft besides being made to restore the deposit.

A reliable man, bent on leaving this world and becoming an

ascetic, may place a certain sealed deposit with some secret mark

in the custody of a man, and, returning after a number of years, ask

for it. If the depositary dishonestly denies it, he shall not only be

made to restore it, but be liable to the punishment for theft.

A childish man with a sealed deposit with some secret mark

may, while going through a street at night, feel frightened at his

being captured by the police for untimely walking, and, placing the

deposit in the custody of a man, go on his way. But subsequently

put into the jail, he may ask for it. If the depositary dishonestly

denies, he shall not only be made to restore it, but be liable to the

punishment for theft.

By recognising the sealed deposit in the custody of a man, any

one of the depositor's family may probably ask not only for the

deposit, but also for information as to the whereabouts of the

depositor. If the custodian denies either, he shall be treated as

before.

In all these cases, it is of first importance to inquire how the

property under dispute came in one's possession, what are the

circumstances connected with the various transactions concerning

the property and what is the status of the plantiff in society as to

wealth (*arthasámarthyam*).

The above rules shall also apply to all kinds of transaction

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

260

between any two persons (*mithassamaváyah*).

\* Hence before witnesses and with no secrecy whatever,

shall all kinds of agreements be entered into; either with one's own

or different people, shall the circumstances of the time and place be

minutely considered first.

[Thus ends Chapter XII “Concerning Deposits” in Book III,

“Concernig Law” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

sixty-ninth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIII. RULES REGARDING SLAVES AND LABOURERS.

THE selling or mortgaging by kinsmen of the life of a *Súdra*

who is not a born slave, and has not attained majority, but is an

Arya in birth shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*; of a *Vaisya*,

24 *panas*; of a Kshatriya, 36 *panas*; and of a *Bráhman*, 48 *panas*. If

persons other than kinsmen do the same, they shall be liable to the

three amercements and capital punishment respectively:

purchasers and abettors shall likewise be punished. It is no crime

for *Mlechchhas* to sell or mortgage the life of their own offspring.

But never shall an Arya be subjected to slavery.

But if in order to tide over family troubles, to find money for

fines or court decrees, or to recover the (confiscated) household

implements, the life of an Arya is mortgaged, they (his kinsmen)

shall as soon as possible redeem him (from bondage); and more so

if he is a youth or an adult capable of giving help.

Any person who has once voluntarily enslaved himself shall,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

261

if guilty of an offence (*nishpatitah*), be a slave for life. Similarly,

any person whose life has been twice mortgaged by others shall, if

guilty of an offence, be a slave for life. Both of these two sorts of

men shall, if they are once found desirous to run away to foreign

countries, be slaves for life.

Deceiving a slave of his money or depriving him of the

privileges he can exercise as an Arya (*Aryabhava*), shall be

punished with half the fine (levied for enslaving the life of an

Arya).

A man who happens to have taken in mortgage the life of a

convict, or of a dead or an afflicted man shall be entitled to receive

back (from the mortgager) the value he paid for the slave.

Employing a slave to carry the dead or to sweep ordure, urine,

or the leavings of food; keeping a slave naked; or hurting or

abusing him; or violating (the chastity of) a female slave shall

cause the forfeiture of the value paid for him or her. Violation (of

the chastity) of nurses, female cooks, or female servants of the

class of joint cultivators or of any other description shall at once

earn their liberty for them. Violence towards an attendant of high

birth shall entitle him to run away. When a master has connection

with a nurse or pledged female slave against her will, he shall be

punished with the first amercement; a stranger doing the same shall

be punished with the middlemost amercement. When a man

commits or helps another to commit rape with a girl or a female

slave pledged to him, he shall not only forfeit the purchase value,

but also pay a certain amount of money (*sulka*) to her and a fine of

twice the amount (of *sulka* to the Government).

The offspring of a man who has sold off himself as a slave

shall be an *Arya*. A slave shall be entitled to enjoy not only

whatever he has earned without prejudice to his master‟s work, but

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

262

also the inheritance he has received from his father.

On paying the value (for which one is enslaved), a slave shall

regain his *Aryahood*. The same rule shall apply either to born or

pledged slaves.

The ransom necessary for a slave to regain his freedom is

equal to what he has been sold for. Any person who has been

enslaved for fines or court decrees (*dandapranítah*) shall earn the

amount by work. An *Arya*, made captive in war shall for his

freedom pay a certain amount proportional to the dangerous work

done at the time of his capture, or half the amount.

If a slave who is less than eight years old and has no relatives,

no matter whether he is born a slave in his master's house, or fell to

his master's share of inheritance, or has been purchased or obtained

by his master in any other way, is employed in mean avocations

against his will or is sold or mortgaged in a foreign land; or if a

pregnant female slave is sold or pledged without any provision for

her confinement, his or her master shall be punished with the first

amercement. The purchaser and abettors shall likewise be

punished.

Failure to set a slave at liberty on the receipt of a required

amount of ransom shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*;

putting a slave under confinement for no reason

(*samrodhaschákaranát*) shall likewise be punished.

The property of a slave shall pass into the hands of his

kinsmen; in the absence of any kinsmen, his master shall take it.

When a child is begotten on a female slave by her master,

both the child and its mother shall at once be recognised as free. If

for the sake of subsistence, the mother has to remain in her

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

263

bondage, her brother and sister shall be liberated.

Selling or mortgaging the life of a male or a female slave once

liberated shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas* with the

exception of those who enslave themselves. Thus the rules

regarding slaves.

*(Power of Masters over their hired servants.)*

Neighbours shall know the nature of agreement between a

master and his servant. The servant shall get the promised wages.

As to wages not previously settled the amount shall be fixed in

proportion to the work done and the time spent in doing it

(*karmakálánurúpam* = at the rate prevailing at the time.) Wages

being previously unsettled, a cultivator shall obtain 1/10th of the

crops grown, a herdsman 1/10th of the butter clarified, a trader

1/10th of the sale proceeds. Wages previously settled shall be paid

and received as agreed upon.

Artisans, musicians, physicians, buffoons, cooks, and other

workmen, serving of their own accord, shall obtain as much wages

as similar persons employed elsewhere usually get or as much as

experts (*kusaláh*) shall fix.

Disputes regarding wages shall be decided on the strength of

evidences furnished by witnesses. In the absence of witnesses, the

master who has provided his servant with work shall be examined.

Failure to pay wages shall be punished with a fine of ten times the

amount of wages (*dasabandhah*), or 6 *panas*; misappropriation of

wages shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas* or of five times the

amount of the wages (*panchabandho vá*).

Any person who, while he is being carried away by floods, or

is caught in a fire, or is in danger from elephants or tigers, is

rescued on his promise to offer to his rescuer not only the whole of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

264

his property, but also his sons, wife, and himself as slaves, shall

pay only as much as will be fixed by experts. This rule shall apply

to all cases where help of any kind is rendered to the afflicted.

\* A public woman shall surrender her person as agreed upon;

but insistence on the observance of any agreement which is

ill-considered and improper shall not succeed.

[Thus ends Chapter XIII, “Rules regarding slaves” in the section of

“Rules regarding slaves” and the "Right of Masters” in the section

of “Rules regarding Labourers” in Book III, “Concerning Law” of

the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the seventieth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIV. RULES REGARDING LABOURERS; AND CO-OPERATIVE UNDERTAKING.

A servant neglecting or unreasonably putting off work for

which he has received wages shall be fined 12 *panas* and be

caught-hold of till the work is done. He who is incapable to turn out

work, or is engaged to do a mean job, or is suffering from disease,

or is involved in calamities shall be shown some concession or

allowed to get the work done by a substitute. The loss incurred by

his master or employer owing to such delay shall be made good by

extra work.

An employer may be at liberty to get the work done by

(another) provided there is no such adverse condition that the

former shall not employ another servant to execute the work, nor

shall the latter go elsewhere for work.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

265

An employer not taking work from his labourer or an

employee not doing his employers work shall be fined 12 *panas*.

An employee who has received wages to do a certain work which is

however, not brought to termination shall not, of his own accord,

go elsewhere for work.

My preceptor holds that not taking work on the part of an

employer from his employee when the latter is ready, shall be

regarded as work done by the labourer.

But *Kautilya* objects to it; for wages are to be paid for work

done, but not for work that is not done. If an employer, having

caused his labourer to do a part of work, will not cause him to do

the rest for which the latter may certainly be ready, then also the

unfinished portion of the work has to be regarded as finished. But

owing to consideration of changes that have occurred in time and

place or owing to bad workmanship of the labourer, the employer

may not be pleased with what has already been turned out by the

labourer. Also the workman may, if unrestrained, do more than

agreed upon and thereby cause loss to the employer.

The same rules shall apply to guilds of workmen

(*sanghabhritáh*.)

Guilds of workmen shall have a grace of seven nights over

and above the period agreed upon for fulfilling their engagement.

Beyond that time they shall find substitutes and get the work

completed. Without taking permission from their employer, they

shall neither leave out anything undone nor carry away anything

with them from the place of work. They shall be fined 24 *panas* for

taking away anything and 12 *panas* for leaving out anything

undone. Thus the Rules regarding labourers.

Guilds of workmen (*sanghabhritáh*, workmen employed by

Companies) as well as those who carry on any cooperative work

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

266

(*sambhúya samutthátarah*) shall divide their earnings (*vetanam* =

wages) either equally or as agreed upon among themselves.

Cultivators or merchants shall, either at the end or in the

middle of their cultivation or manufacture, pay to their labourers as

much of the latter's share as is proportional to the work done. If the

labourers, giving up work in the middle, supply substitutes, they

shall be paid their wages in full.

But when commodities are being manufactured, wages shall

be paid out according to the amount of work turned out; for such

payment does not affect the favourable or unfavourable results on

the way (*i.e.,* in the sale of merchandise by peddlars).

A healthy person who deserts his company after work has

been begun shall be fined 12 *panas*; for none shall, of his own

accord, leave his company. Any person who is found to have

neglected his share of work by stealth shall be shown mercy

(*abhayam*) for the first time and given a proportional quantity of

work anew with promise of proportional share of earnings as well.

In case of negligence for a second time or of going elsewhere, he

shall be thrown out of the Company (*pravásanam*). If he is guilty

of a glaring offence (*maháparádhe*), he shall be treated as the

condemned.

*(Co-operation in sacrificial acts.)*

Priests cooperating in a sacrifice shall divide their earnings

either equally or as agreed upon excepting what is especially due to

each or any of them. If a priest employed in such sacrifices as

*Agnishtoma*, etc., dies after the ceremony of consecration, (his

claimant) shall get 1/5th of the promised or prescribed present

(*dakshiná*); after the ceremony consecrating the purchase of Soma,

¼th of the present; after the ceremony called *Madhyamopasad*; or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

267

*Pravargyodvásana*, 1/3rd of the present; and after the ceremony

called Maya, ½ of the share. If in the sacrifice called *Sutya*, the

same thing happens after the ceremony called *Prátassavana*, ¾ths,

of the share shall be paid; after the ceremony called *Madhyandina*,

the present shall be paid in full; for by that time the payment of

presents shall be over. In every sacrifice except the one called

*Brihaspatisavana*, it is usual to pay presents. The same rule shall

apply to the presents payable in *Aharganas*, sacrifices so called.

The surviving priests carrying the balance of the present or

any other relatives of a dead priest shall perform the funeral

ceremony of the dead for ten days and nights.

If the sacrificer himself (he who has instituted the sacrifice)

dies, then the remaining priests shall complete the sacrifice and

carry away the presents. If a sacrificer sends out any priest before

completing the sacrifice, he shall be punished with the first

amercement. If a sacrificer sending out a priest happens to be a

person who has not kept the sacrificial fire, or to be a preceptor or

one who has already performed sacrifices, then the fines shall be

100, 1000, and 1000 *panas* respectively.

\* As it is certain that sacrificial merits fall in value when

performed in company with a drunkard, the husband of a *Súdra*

woman, a murderer of a *Bráhman*, or one who has violated the

chastify of the wife of his preceptor, a receiver of condemnable

gifts, or is a thief, or one whose performance of sacrificial acts is

condemnable, it is no offence to send out such a priest.

[Thus ends Chapter XIV, “Rules regarding labourers, and

Co-operative undertaking” in the section of “Rules regarding

slaves and labourers,” in Book III, “Concerning Law” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the seventy-first chapter from the

beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

268

## CHAPTER XV. RESCISSION OF PURCHASE AND SALE.

A merchant refusing to give his merchandise that he has sold

shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*, unless the merchandise is

naturally bad, or is dangerous, or is intolerable.

That which has inherent defects is termed naturally bad;

whatever is liable to be confiscated by the king, or is subject to

destruction by thieves, fire, or floods is termed as being dangerous;

and whatever is devoid of all good qualities, or is manufactured by

the deceased is called intolerable.

Time for rescission of a sale is one night for merchants; 3

nights for cultivators; 5 nights for herdsmen; and with regard to the

sale or barter of precious things and articles of mixed qualities

(*vivrittivikraye*), 7 nights.

Merchandise which is likely to perish sooner may, if there is

no loss to others, be shown the favour of early disposal by

prohibiting the sale elsewhere of similar merchandise which is not

likely to perish so soon. Violation of this rule shall be punished

with a fine of 24 *panas* or 1/10th of the value of the merchandise

sold against this rule.

A person who attempts to return an article purchased by him

shall if the article is other than what is naturally bad, or is

dangerous, or is intolerable, be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*.

The same rescission rules that apply to a seller shall apply to the

purchaser also.

*(Marriage Contracts)*

[As regards marriages among the three higher castes,

rejection of a bride before the rite of *pánigrahana*, clasping of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

269

hands, is valid; likewise among the *Súdras*, observing religious

rites. Even in the case of a couple that has gone through the rite of

*pánigrahana*,] rejection of a bride whose guilt of having lain with

another man has been afterwards detected is valid. But never so in

the case of brides and bridegrooms of pure character and high

family. Any person who has given a girl in marriage without

announcing her guilt of having lain with another shall not only be

punished with a fine of 96 *panas*, but also be made to return the

*sulka* and *strídhana*. Any person receiving a girl in marriage

without announcing the blemishes of the bridegroom shall not only

pay double the above fine, but also forfeit the *sulka* and *strídhana*

(he paid for the bride).

*(Sale of bipeds, etc.)*

Sale of bipeds and quadrupeds as strong, healthy, and clean

though they are either unclean or actually suffering from leprosy

and other diseases, shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*. The

time of rescission of sale is three fortnights for quadrupeds and one

year for men; for it is possible to know by that time their good or

bad condition.

\* An assembly convened for the purpose shall, in the matter

of rescending sales or gifts, decide in such a way that neither the

giver nor the receiver shall be injured thereby.

[Thus ends Chapter XV, “Rescission of purchase and sale” in Book

III, “Concerning Law” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

seventy-second chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVI. RESUMPTION OF GIFTS, SALE WITHOUT OWNERSHIP AND OWNERSHIP.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

270

RULES concerning recovery of debts shall also apply to

resumption of gifts. Invalid gifts shall be kept in the safe custody of

some persons. Any person who has given as gift not only his whole

property, his sons, and his wife, but also his own life shall bring the

same for the consideration of rescissors. Gifts or charitable

subscriptions to the wicked or for unworthy purposes, monetary

help to such persons as are malevolent or cruel, and promise of

sexual enjoyment to the unworthy shall be so settled by rescissors

that neither the giver nor the receiver shall be injured thereby.

Those who receive any kind of aid from timid persons,

threatening them with legal punishment, defamation, or loss of

money, shall be liable to the punishment for theft; and the persons

who yield such aids shall likewise be punished.

Co-operation in hurting a person, and showing a haughty

attitude towards the king shall be punished with the highest

amercement. No son, or heir claiming a dead man‟s property shall,

against his own will, pay the value of the bail borne by the dead

man (*prátibhávyadanda*), the balance of any dowry (*sulkasesha*),

or the stakes of gambling; nor shall he fulfill the promise of gifts

made by the dead man under the influence of liquor or love. Thus

resumption of gifts is dealt with.

*(Sale without ownership.)*

As regards sale without ownership:--On the detection of a lost

property in the possession of another person, the owner shall cause

the offender to be arrested through the judges of a court. If time or

place does not permit this action, the owner himself shall catch

hold of the offender and bring him before the judges. The judge

shall put the question; how the offender came by the property. If he

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

271

narrates how he got it, but cannot produce the person who sold it to

him, he shall be left off, and shall forfeit the property. But the

seller, if produced, shall not only pay the value of the property, but

also be liable to the punishment for theft.

If a person with a stolen property in his possession runs away

or hides himself till the property is wholly consumed, he shall not

only pay the value, but also be liable to the punishment for theft.

After proving his claim to a lost property (*svakaranam*

*kritva*), its owner shall be entitled to take possession of it. On his

failure to prove his title to it, he shall be fined 5 times the value of

the property, (*panchabandhadandah*), and the property shall be

taken by the king.

If the owner takes possession of a lost article without

obtaining permission from the court, he shall be punished with the

first amercement.

Stolen or lost articles shall, on being detected, be kept in the

toll-gate. If no claimant is forthcoming within three fortnights,

such articles shall be taken by the king.

He who proved his title to a lost or stolen biped shall pay 5

*panas* towards ransom (before taking possession of it). Likewise

the ransom for a single-hoofed animal shall be 4 *panas*; for a cow

or a buffalo, 2 *panas*, for minor quadrupeds ¼th of a *pana*; and for

articles such as precious stones, superior or inferior raw materials,

five per cent of their value.

Whatever of the property of his own subjects the king brings

back from the forests and countries of enemies, shall be handed

over to its owner. Whatever of the property of citizens robbed by

thieves the king cannot recover, shall be made good from his own

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

272

pocket. If the king is unable to recover such things, he shall either

allow any self-elected person (*svayamgráha*) to fetch them, or pay

an equivalent ransom to the sufferer. An adventurer may enjoy

whatever the king graciously gives him out of the booty he has

plundered from an enemy's country, excepting the life of an Arya

and the property belonging to gods, *Bráhmans* or ascetics. Thus

sale without ownership is dealt with.

*(Ownership.)*

As to the title of an owner to his property :--The owners who

have quitted their country where their property lies shall continue

to have their title to it. When the owners other than minors, the

aged, those that are afflicted with decease or calamities, those that

are sojourning abroad, or those that have deserted their country

during national disturbances, neglect for ten years their property

which is under the enjoyment of others, they shall forfeit their title

to it.

Buildings left for 20 years in the enjoyment of others shall not

be reclaimed. But the mere occupation of the buildings of others

during the absence of the king by kinsmen, priests, or heretics shall

not give them the right of possession. The same shall obtain with

regard to open deposits, pledges, treasure trove (*nidhi*), boundary,

or any property belonging to kings or priests (*srotriyas*).

Ascetics and heretics shall, without disturbing each other,

reside in a large area. A new comer shall, however, be provided

with the space occupied by an old resident. If not willing to do so,

the old occupier shall be sent out.

The property of hermits, (*vánaprastha*) ascetics (*yati*), or

bachelors learning the Vedas (*Brahmachári*) shall on their death be

taken by their preceptors, disciples, their brethren

(*dharmabhrátri*), or class-mates in succession.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

273

Whenever hermits, etc., have to pay any fines, they may, in

the name of the king, perform penance, oblation to gods,

fireworship, or the ritual called *Mahákachchhavardhana* for as

many nights as the number of *panas* of their fines. Those heretics

(*páshandáh*) who have neither gold nor gold-coin shall similarly

observe their fasts except in the case of defamation, theft, assault

and abduction of women. Under these circumstances, they shall be

compelled to undergo punishment.

\* The king shall, under penalty of fines, forbid the wilful or

improper proceedings of ascetics: for vice overwhelming

righteousness will in the long run destroy the ruler himself.

[Thus ends Chapter XVI, "Resumption of gifts, sale without

ownership, and ownership" in Book III, "Concerning Law" of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the seventy-third chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVII. ROBBERY.

SUDDEN and direct seizure (of person or property) is termed

*sáhasa*; fraudulent or indirect seizure (*niranvaye’pavyayanecha*) is

theft.

The school of Manu hold that the fine for the direct seizure of

precious stones and superior or inferior raw materials shall be

equal to their value. It is equal to twice the value of the articles

according to the followers of *Usanas*.

But Kautilya holds that it shall be proportional to the gravity

of the crime.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

274

In the case of such articles of small value as flowers, fruits,

vegetables, roots, turnips, cooked rice, skins, bamboo, and pots

(earthenware) the fine shall range from 12 to 24 papas; for articles

of great value such as iron (*káláyasa*), wood, roping materials, and

herds of minor quadrupeds, the fine shall range from 24 to 48

*panas*; and for such articles of still greater value as copper, brass,

bronze, glass, ivory and vessels, etc., it shall range from 48 to 96

*panas*. This fine is termed the first amercement.

For the seizure of such as big quadrupeds, men, fields,

houses, gold, gold-coins, fine fabrics, etc., the fine shall range from

200 to 500 *panas*, which is termed the middle-most amercement.

My preceptor holds that keeping or causing to keep by force

either men or women in prison, or releasing them by force from

imprisonment, shall be punished with fines ranging from 500 to

1,000 *panas*. This fine is termed the highest amercement.

He who causes another to commit *sáhasa* after the plans

prepared by himself shall be fined twice the value (of the person or

property seized). An abettor who employs a hireling to comit

*sáhasa* by promising „I shall pay thee as much gold as thou makest

use of,‟ shall be fined four times the value.

The school of *Brihaspati* are of opinion that if with the

promise „I will pay thee this amount of gold,‟ an abettor causes

another to commit *sáhasa*, the former shall be compelled to pay the

promised amount of gold and a fine. But Kautilya holds that if an

abettor extenuates his crime by pleading anger, intoxication or loss

of sense (*moham*), he shall be punished as described above.

\* In all kinds of fines below a hundred *panas*, the king shall

take in addition to the fine 8 per cent more as *rúpa* and in fines

above hundred, five per cent more; these two kinds of exaction, are

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

275

just inasmuch as the people are full of sins on the one hand, and

kings are naturally misguided on the other.

[Thus ends Chapter XVII, “Robbery” in Book III, “Concerning

Law” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the seventy-fourth

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVIII. DEFAMATION.

CALUMNY, contemptuous talk, or intimidation constitutes

defamation.

Among abusive expressions relating to the body, habits,

learning, occupation, or nationalities, that of calling a deformed

man by his right name such as „the blind‟, „the lame‟, etc. shall be

punished with a fine of 3 *panas*; and by false name 6 *panas*. If the

blind, the lame, etc., are insulted with such ironical expressions as

„a man of beautiful eyes‟, „a man of beautiful teeth‟, etc. the fine

shall be 12 *panas*. Likewise when a person is taunted for leprosy,

lunacy, impotency and the like. Abusive expressions in general, no

matter whether true, false, or reverse with reference to the abused,

shall be punished with fines ranging above 12 *panas*, in the case of

persons of equal rank.

If persons abused happen to be of superior rank, the amount

of the fines shall be doubled; if of lower rank, it shall be halved.

For calumniating the wives of others, the amount of the fines shall

be doubled.

If abuse is due to carelessness, intoxication, or loss of sense,

etc., the fines shall be halved.

As to the reality of leprosy and lunacy, physicians or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

276

neighbours shall be authorities.

As to the reality of impotency, women, the scum of urine, or

the low specific gravity of faeces in water (the sinking of faeces in

water) shall furnish the necessary evidence.

*(Speaking ill of habits.)*

If among *Bráhmans*, *Kshatriyas*, *Vaisyas*, *Súdras*, and

outcastes (*antávasáyins*), any one of a lower caste abuses the habits

of one of a higher caste, the fines imposed shall increase from 3

*panas* upwards (commencing from the lowest caste). If any one of

a higher caste abuses one of a lower caste, fines imposed shall

decrease from 2 *panas*.

Contemptuous expressions such as 'a bad *Bráhman*' shall

also be punished as above.

The same rules shall apply to calumnies regarding learning

(*sruta*), the profession of buffoons (*vágjívana*), artisans, or

musicians, and relating to nationalities such as *Prájjunaka*,

*Gándhára*, etc.

*(Intimidation.)*

If a person intimidates another by using such expressions as „I

shall render thee thus‟, the bravado shall be punished with half as

much fine as will be levied on him who actually does so.

If a person, being unable to carry his threat into effect, pleads

provocation, intoxication, or loss of sense as his excuse, he shall be

fined 12 *panas*.

If a person capable to do harm and under the influence of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

277

enmity intimidates another, he shall be compelled to give life-long

security for the well-being of the intimidated.

\* Defamation of one's own nation or village shall be

punished with the first amercement; that of one's own caste or

assembly with the middlemost; and that of gods or temples

(*chaitya*) with the highest amercement.

[Thus ends Chapter XVIII, "Defamtion" in Book III, "Concerning

Law" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the seventy-fifth

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIX. ASSAULT.

TOUCHING, striking, or hurting constitutes assault.

When a person touches with hand, mud, ashes or dust the

body of another person below the naval, he shall be punished with

a fine of 3 *panas*; with some but unclean things, with the leg, or

spittle, 6 panas; with saliva (*Chhardi*), urine, faeces, etc. 12 *panas*.

If the same offence is committed above the navel, the fines shall be

doubled; and on the head, quadrupled.

If the same offence is committed on persons of superior rank,

the fines shall be twice as much: and on persons of lower rank, half

of the above fines. If the same offence is committed on the women

of others, the fines shall be doubled.

If the offence is due to carelessness, intoxication, or loss of

sense, the fines shall be halved.

For catching hold of a man by his legs, clothes, hands or hair,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

278

fines ranging above 6 *panas* shall be imposed. Squeezing,

rounding with arms, thrusting, dragging, or sitting over the body of

another person shall be punished with the first amercement.

Running away after making a person fall, shall be punished

with half of the above fines.

That limb of a *Súdra* with which he strikes a *Bráhman* shall

be cut off.

*(Striking.)*

For striking compensation is to be paid and half of the fines

levied for touching. This rule shall also apply to *Chandalas* and

other profane persons (committing the same offence). Striking with

the hand. shall be punished with fines below 3 *panas*, with the leg

twice as much as the above fine; and striking with an instrument so

as to cause swellings shall be punished with the first amercement;

and striking so as to endanger life shall be punished with the

middle-most amercement.

*(Hurting.)*

Causing a bloodless wound with a stick, mud, a stone, an iron

bar, or a rope shall be punished with a fine of 24 *panas*. Causing

the blood to gush out excepting bad or diseased blood shall be

punished with double the fine.

Beating a person almost to death, though without causing

blood, breaking the hands, legs, or teeth, tearing off the ear or the

nose, or breaking open the flesh of a person except in ulcers or

boils shall be punished with the first amercement. Causing hurt in

the thigh or the neck, wounding the eye, or hurting so as to impede

eating, speaking, or any other bodily movements shall not only be

punished with the middlemost amercement, but also be made liable

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

279

to the payment (to the sufferer) of such compensation as is

necessary to cure him.

If time or place does not permit the immediate arrest of an

offender, he shall be dealt with as described in Book IV, treating of

the measures to suppress the wicked.

Each one of a confederacy of persons who have inflicted hurt

on another person shall be punished with double the usual fine.

My preceptor holds that quarrels or assaults of a remote date

shall not be complained of.

But Kautilya holds that there shall be no acquittal for an

offender.

My preceptor thinks that he who is the first to complain of a

quarrel wins inasmuch as it is pain that drives one to law.

But Kautilya objects to it; for whether a complaint is lodged

first or last, it is the evidence of witnesses that must be depended

upon. In the absence of witnesses, the nature of the hurt and other

circumstances connected with the quarrel in question shall be

evidences. Sentence of punishment shall be passed the very day

that a defendant accused of assault fails to answer the charge made

against him.

*(Robbery in quarrels.)*

A person stealing anything under the tumult of a quarrel shall

be fined 10 *panas*. Destruction of articles of small value shall be

punished with a fine equal to the value of the articles besides the

payment (to the sufferer) of an adequate compensation.

Destruction of big things with a compensation equal to the value of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

280

the articles and a fine equal to twice the value. In the case of

destruction of such things as clothes, gold, gold-coins, and vessels

or merchandise, the first amercement together with the value of the

articles shall be levied.

Causing damage to a wall of another man's house by

knocking shall be fined 3 *panas*; breaking open or demolishing the

same shall be fined 6 *panas*, besides the restoration of the wall.

Throwing harmful things inside the house of a man shall be

fined 12 *panas*; and throwing such things as endanger the lives of

the inmates shall be punished with the first amercement.

For causing pain with sticks, etc., to minor quadrupeds one or

two *panas* shall be levied; and for causing blood to the same, the

fine shall be doubled. In the case of large quadrupeds, not only

double the above fines, but also an adequate compensation

necessary to cure the beasts shall be levied.

For cutting off the tender sprouts of fruit-trees, flower-trees or

shady trees in the parks near a city, a fine of 6 *panas* shall be

imposed; for cutting off the minor branches of the same trees, 12

*panas*; and for cutting off the big branches, 24 *panas* shall be

levied. Cutting off the trunks of the same shall be punished with the

first amercement; and felling the same shall be punished with the

middle-most amercement.

In the case of plants which bear flowers, fruits, or provide

shade, half of the above fines shall be levied.

The same fines shall be levied in the case of trees that have

grown in places of pilgrimage, forests of hermits, or cremation or

burial grounds.

\* For similar offences committed in connection with the trees

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

281

which mark boundaries, or which are worshipped or observed

(*chaityeshválakshiteshucha*,) or trees which are grown in the king's

forests, double the above fines shall be levied.

[Thus ends Chapter XIX, “Assault” in Book III, “Concerning law”

of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the seventy-sixth chapter

from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XX. GAMBLING AND BETTING AND MISCELLANEOUS OFFENCES.

WITH a view to find out spies or thieves, the Superintendent

of gambling shall, under the penalty of a fine of 12 *panas* if played

elsewhere, centralise gambling.

My preceptor is of opinion that in complaints regarding

gambling, the winner shall be punished with the first amercement

and the vanquished with the middle-most amercement; for though

not skillful enough to win as ardently desired by him, the

vanquished fellow does not tolerate his defeat.

But Kautilya objects to it: for if the punishment for the

vanquished were to be doubled, none would complain to the king.

Yet gamblers are naturally false players.

The Superintendents of gambling shall, therefore, be honest

and supply dice at the rate of a *kákani* of hire per pair. Substitution

by tricks of hand of dice other than thus supplied shall be punished

with a fine of 12 *panas*. A false player shall not only be punished

with the first amercement and fines leviable for theft and deceipt,

but also be made to forfeit the stakes he has won.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

282

The Superintendent shall take not only 5 per cent of the stakes

won by every winner, and the hire payable for supplying dice and

other accessories of diceplay, but also the fee chargeable for

supplying water and accommodation, besides the charge for

license.

He can at the same time carry on the transactions of sale or

mortgage of things. If he does not forbid tricks of hand and other

deceitful practices, be shall be punished with twice the amount of

the fine (levied from the deceitful gamblers.)

The same rules shall apply to betting and challenging except

those in learning and art.

*(Miscellaneous offences.)*

As regards miscellaneous offences:--

When a person does not return in required place or time the

property he has borrowed or hired, or placed in his custody as a

deposit, sits under the shade for more than one and a quarter of an

hour (*ayáma*) as prescribed, evades under the excuse of being a

*Bráhman* the payment due while passing military stations or

crossing rivers, and bawls out or invites others to fight against his

neighbours, he shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*.

When a person does not hand over the property entrusted to

him for delivery to a third person, drags with his hand the wife of

his brother, has connection with a public woman kept by another,

sells merchandise that is under ill repute, breaks open the sealed

door of a house, or causes hurt to any of the forty-house-holders or

neighbours, a fine of 48 *panas* shall be imposed.

When a person misappropriates the revenue he collects as the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

283

agent of a household, violates by force the chastity of a widow of

independent living, when an outcast (*chandála*) person touches an

Arya woman, when a person does not run to render help to another

in danger, or runs without a cause, and when a person entertains, in

dinner dedicated to gods or ancestors Buddhists (*sákya*,) *Ajívakas*,

*Súdras* and exiled persons, (*pravrajita*) a fine of 100 *panas* shall be

imposed.

When an unauthorised person examines (an offender) on

oath, executes Government work though not a Government

servant, renders minor quadrupeds impotent, or causes abortion to

a female slave by medicine, he shall be punished with the first

amercement.

When between father and son, husband and wife brother and

sister, maternal uncle and nephew or teacher and student, one

abandons the other while neither of them is an apostate; and when a

person abandons in the centre of a village another person whom he

brought there for his own help, the first amercement shall be

levied.

When a person abandons his companion in the midst of a

forest, he shall be punished with the middle-most amercement.

When a person threatens and abandons his companion in the

midst of a forest, he shall be punished with the highest

amercement.

Whenever persons who have started together on some journey

abandon one another as above, half of the above fine shall be

levied.

When a person keeps or causes to keep another person in

illegal confinement, releases a prisoner from prison, keeps or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

284

causes another to keep a minor in confinement, he shall be

punished with a fine of 1000 *panas*.

The rates of fines shall vary in accordance with the rank of

persons concerned and the gravity of the crimes.

Such persons as a pilgrim, an ascetic engaged in penance, a

diseased person, any one suffering from hunger, thirst, or fatigue

from journey, a villager from country parts, any one that has

suffered much from punishment and a money-less pauper shall be

shown mercy.

Such transactions as pertain to gods, *Bráhmans*, ascetics,

women, minors, aged persons, diseased persons and helpless

creatures shall, though not be complained of, be settled by the

judges themselves; and in such transactions as the above, excuses

due to time, place, or possession shall not be pleaded.

Such persons as are noted for their learning, intelligence,

bravery, high birth, or magnificent works shall be honoured.

\* Judges shall thus settle disputes free from all kinds of

circumvention, with mind unchanged in all moods or

circumstances, pleasing and affable to all.

[Thus ends Chapter XX, “Gambling, Betting, and Miscellaneous”,

in Book III, “Concerning Law” of the Arthasástra of Kautilya. End

of the seventy-seventh chapter from the beginning. With this, ends

the third Book “Concerning Law” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamashastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 187-252.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

285

# Book IV, "The Removal of Thorns"

## CHAPTER I. PROTECTION OF ARTISANS.

THREE Commissioners (*pradeshtárah*) or three ministers

shall deal with measures to suppress disturbance to peace

(*kantakasodhanam kuryuh*).

Those who can be expected to relieve misery, who can give

instructions to artisans, who can be trusted with deposits, who can

plan artistic work after their own design, and who can be relied

upon by guilds of artisans, may receive the deposits of the guilds.

The guilds (*srení*) shall receive their deposits back in time of

distress.

Artisans shall, in accordance. with their agreement as to time,

place, and form of work, fulfill their engagements. Those who

postpone their engagements under the excuse that no agreement as

to time, place and form of work has been entered into shall, except

in troubles and calamities, not only forfeit ¼th of their wages, but

also be punished with a fine equal to twice the amount of their

wages. They shall also make good whatever is thus lost or

damaged. Those who carry on their work contrary to orders shall

not only forfeit their wages, but also pay a fine equal to twice the

amount of their wages.

*(Weavers.)*

Weavers shall increase the threads (supplied to them for

weaving cloths) in the proportion of 10 to 11 (*dasaikádasikam*).

They shall otherwise, not only pay either a fine equal to twice the

loss in threads or the value of the whole yarn, but also forfeit their

wages. In weaving linen or silk cloths (*kshaumakauseyánam*), the

increase shall be 1 to 1½. In weaving fibrous or woollen garments

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

286

or blankets (*patronakambáladukúlánám*), the increase shall be 1 to

2.

In case of loss in length, the value of the loss shall be

deducted from the wages and a fine equal to twice the loss shall be

imposed. Loss in weight (*tuláhíne*) shall be punished with a fine

equal to four times the loss. Substitution of other kind of yarn, shall

be punished with a fine equal to twice the value of the original.

The same rules shall apply to the weaving of broad cloths

(*dvipatavánam*).

The loss in weight in woollen threads due to threshing or

falling of hair is 5 *palas*.

(*Washermen*.)

Washermen shall wash clothes either on wooden planks or on

stones of smooth surface. Washing elsewhere shall not only be

punished with a fine of 6 *panas*, but also be subject for the payment

of a compensation equal to the damage.

Washermen wearing clothes other than such as are stamped

with the mark of a cudgel shall be fined three *panas*. For selling,

mortgaging, or letting out for hire the clothes of others, a fine of 12

*panas* shall be imposed.

In case of substitution of other clothes, they shall not only be

punished with a fine equal to twice the value of the clothes, but also

be made to restore the true ones.

For keeping for more than a night clothes which are to be

made as white as a jasmin flower, or which are to attain the natural

colour of their threads on washing on the surface of stones, or

which are to be made whiter merely by removing their dirt by

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

287

washing, proportional fines shall be imposed. For keeping for more

than 5 nights such clothes as are to be given thin colouring, for

more than six nights such as are to be made blue, for more than 7

nights such as are to be made either as white as flowers or as

beautiful and shiny as lac, saffron, or blood and such clothes as

require much skill and care in making brilliant, wages shall be

forfeited.

Trustworthy persons shall be judges in disputes regarding

colour and experts shall determine the necessary wages.

For washing the best garments, the wages shall be one *pana*;

for those of middle quality, half a *pana*; and for those of inferior

quality ¼th of a *pana*.

For rough washing on big stones, the wages shall be ⅛th of a

*pana*.

[In the first wash of red-coloured clothes, there is a loss of

¼th part (of the colour); in the second wash, 1/5th part. This

explains subsequent losses. The rules pertaining to washermen are

also applicable to weavers.

Goldsmiths who, without giving information (to the

government), purchase from unclean hands silver or golden articles

without changing the form of the articles shall be fined 12 *panas*; if

they do the same changing the form of the articles (*i.e.*, melting),

they shall be fined 24 *panas*; if they purchase the same from the

hands of a thief, they shall be fined 48 *panas*; if they purchase an

article for less than its value after melting it in secret, they shall be

liable to the punishment for theft; likewise for deception with

manufactured articles. When a goldsmith steals from a *suvarna*

gold equal to the weight of a *másha* (1/16th of a *suvarna*), he shall

be punished 200 *panas*; when he steals from a silver *dharana* silver

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

288

equal to the value of a *másha*, he shall be fined 12 *panas*. This

explains the proportional enhancement of punishments. When a

goldsmith removes the whole amount of the gold (*karsha*) from a

*suvarna* by *apasárana* method or by any other deceiptful

combination (yoga), he shall be punished with a fine of 500 *panas*.

In case of contaminating them (gold and silver) in any way, the

offence shall be regarded as loss of their intrinsic colour.

One *másha* shall be the fee for the manufacture of a silver

*dharana*; for the manufacture of a *suvarna*, ⅛th of the same; or fees

may be increased to twice the above according to the skill of the

manufacturer. This explains the proportional increase of fees.

Fees for the manufacture of articles from copper, brass,

*vaikrinataka*, and *árakúta* shall be five percent. In the manufacture

of articles from copper (?), 1/10th of the copper will be lost. For the

loss of a *pala* in weight, a fine of twice the loss shall be imposed.

This explains the proportional increase of punishments. In the

manufacture of articles from lead and tin, 1/20th of the mass will

be lost. One *kákani* shall be the fee for manufacturing an article of a

*pala* in weight of the above. In the manufacture of articles from

iron, 1/5th of the mass will be lost; two *kákanis* shall be the fee for

manufacturing an article of a *pala* in weight from iron. This

explains the proportional increase of fees.

When the examiner of coins declares an unacceptable current

coin to be worthy of being entered into the treasury or rejects an

acceptable current coin, he shall be fined 12 *panas*. When the

examiner of coins misappropriates a *másha* from a current coin of a

*pana*, the tax, (*Vyájí*) of five percent on the coin having been duly

paid, he shall be fined 12 *panas*. This explains the proportional

increase of fines. When a person causes a counterfeit coin to be

manufactured, or accepts it, or exchanges it, he shall be fined 1,000

*panas*; he who enters a counterfeit coin into the treasury shall be

put to death.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

289

*(Scavengers.)*

Of whatever precious things sweepers come across while

sweeping, one-third shall be taken by them and two-thirds by the

king. But precious stones shall be wholly surrendered to the king.

Seizure of precious stones shall be punished with the highest

amercement.

A discoverer of mines, precious stones, or treasure troves

shall, on supplying the information to the king, receive 1/6th of it

as his share; but if the discoverer happens to be a peon (*bhritaka*),

his share shall be only 1/12th of it.

Treasure troves valued beyond 100,000 shall wholly be taken

by the king. But if they are of less value, the discover shall receive

1/6th of it as his share.

Such treasure troves as a man of pure and honest life can

prove to be his ancestral property shall wholly be taken by the man

himself. Taking possession of a treasure trove without establishing

such claim shall be punished with a fine of 500 *panas*. Taking

possession of the same in secret shall be punished with a fine of

1,000 *panas*.

*(Medical Practice).*

Physicians undertaking medical treatment without intimating

(to the government) the dangerous nature of the disease shall, if the

patient dies, be punished with the first amercement. If the death of

a patient under treatment is due to carelessness in the treatment, the

physician shall be punished with the middle-most amercement.

Growth of disease due to negligence or indifference (*karmavadha*)

of a physician shall be regarded as assault or violence.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

290

*(Musicians).*

Bands of musicians (*kúsílavah*) shall, during the rainy season,

stay in a particular place. They shall strictly avoid giving too much

indulgence or causing too much loss (*atipátam*) to any one.

Violation of the above rule shall be punished with a fine of 12

*panas*. They may hold their performances to their liking in

accordance with the procedure of their country, caste, family,

profession, or copulation.

The same rules shall apply to dancers, dumb-players and

other mendicants.

For offences, mendicants shall receive as many lashes with an

iron rod as the number of *panas* imposed on them.

Wages for the works of other kinds of artisans shall be

similarly determined.

\* Thus traders, artisans, musicians, beggers, buffoons and

other idlers who are thieves in effect though not in name shall be

restrained from oppression on the country.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “Protection of artisans” in Book IV, “The

Removal of Thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

seventy-eighth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. PROTECTION OF MERCHANTS.

THE Superintendent of Commerce shall allow the sale or

mortgage of any old commodities (*purána bhándanám*) only when

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

291

the seller or mortgagor of such articles proves his ownership of the

same. With a view to prevent deception, he shall also supervise

weights and measures.

Difference of half a *pala* in such measures as are called

*parimání* and *drona* is no offence. But difference of a *pala* in them

shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*.

Fines for greater differences shall be proportionally

increased.

Difference of a *karsha* in the balance called *tulá* is no offence.

Difference of two *karshas* shall be punished with a fine of 6 *panas*.

Fines for greater differences shall be proportionally increased.

Difference of half a *karsha* in the measure called *ádhaka* is

no offence; but difference of a *karsha* shall be punished with a fine

of 3 *panas*.

For greater differences, fines shall be proportionally

increased.

Fines for differences in weight in other kinds of balances shall

be inferred on the basis of the above rule.

When a merchant purchases by a false balance a greater

quantity of a commodity and sells under the same nominal weight a

less quantity by the same or another false balance, he shall be

punished with double the above fines.

Deception on the part of a seller to the extent of ⅛th part of

the articles valued at a *pana* and sold by number shall be punished

with a fine of 96 *panas*.

The sale or mortgage of articles such as timber, iron, brilliant

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

292

stones, ropes, skins, earthenware, threads, fibrous garments, and

woollen clothes as superior though they are really inferior shall be

punished with a fine of 8 times the value of the articles thus sold.

When a trader sells or mortgages inferior as superior

commodities, articles of some other locality, as the produce of a

particular locality, adulterated things, or deceitful mixtures, or

when he dexterously substitutes other articles for those just sold

(*samutparivartimam*), he shall not only be punished with a fine of

54 *panas* but also be compelled to make good the loss.

By making the fine two *panas* for the loss of the value of a

*pana*, and 200 *panas* for that of 100, fines can be determined for

any of such false sales.

Those who conspire to lower the quality of the works of

artisans, to hinder their income, or to obstruct their sale or purchase

shall be fined thousand *panas*.

Merchants who conspire either to prevent the sale of

merchandise or to sell or purchase commodities at higher prices

shall be fined 1,000 *panas*.

Middlemen who cause to a merchant or a purchaser the loss of

⅛th of a *pana* by substituting with tricks of hand false weights or

measures or other kinds of inferior articles shall be punished with a

fine of 200 *panas*.

Fines for, greater losses shall be proportionally increased

commencing from 200 panas.

Adulteration of grains, oils, alkalis, salts, scents, and

medicinal articles with similar articles of no quality shall be

punished with a fine of 12 *panas*.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

293

It is the duty of the trader to calculate the daily earnings of

middlemen and to fix that amount on which they are authorised to

live; for whatever income falls between sellers and purchasers (*i.e.,*

brokerage) is different from profit.

Hence authorised persons alone shall collect grains and other

merchandise. Collection of such things without permission shall be

confiscated by the Superintendent of Commerce.

Hence shall merchants be favourably disposed towards the

people in selling grains and other commodities.

The Superintendent of Commerce shall fix a profit of five per

cent over and above the fixed price of local commodities, and ten

per cent on foreign produce. Merchants who enchance the price or

realise profit even to the extent of half a *pana* more than the above

in the sale or purchase of commodities shall be punished with a fine

of from five *panas* in case of realising 100 *panas* up to 200 *panas*.

Fines for greater enhancement shall be proportionally

increased.

In case of failure to sell collected merchandise wholesale at a

fixed rate, the rate shall be altered.

In case of obstruction to traffic, the Superintendent shall

show necessary concessions.

Whenever there is an excessive supply of merchandise, the

Superintendent shall centralise its sale and prohibit the sale of

similar merchandise elsewhere before the centralised supply is

disposed of.

Favourably disposed towards the people, shall merchants sell

this centralised supply for daily wages.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

294

The Superintendent shall, on consideration of the outlay, the

quantity manufactured, the amount of toll, the interest on outlay,

hire, and other kinds of accessory expenses, fix the price of such

merchandise with due regard to its having been manufactured long

ago or imported from a distant country (*desakálántaritánám*

*panyánám*.)

[Thus ends Chapter II, “Protection of merchants” in Book IV “The

Removal of Thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

seventy-ninth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. REMEDIES AGAINST NATIONAL CALAMITIES.

THERE are eight kinds of providential visitations: They are

fire, floods, pestilential diseases, famine, rats, tigers (*vyáláh*),

serpents, and demons. From these shall the king protect his

kingdom.

*(Fire.)*

During the summer, villages shall carry on cooking

operations outside. Or they shall provide themselves with the ten

remedial instruments (*dasamúlí*).

Precautionary measures against fire have been dealt with in

connection with the description not only of the duties of

superintendents of villages, but also of the king's, harem and

retinue.

Not only on ordinary days, but also on full-moon days shall

offerings, oblations, and prayers be made to fire.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

295

*(Floods.)*

Villagers living on the banks of rivers shall, during the rainy

reason, remove themselves to upcountries. They shall provide

themselves with wooden planks, bamboos, and boats. They shall,

by means of bottle-gourds, canoes, trunks of trees, or boats rescue

persons that are being carried off by floods. Persons neglecting

rescue with the exception of those who have no boats, etc., shall be

fined 12 *panas*. On new and full-moon days shall rivers be

worshipped. Experts in sacred magic and mysticism

(*máyáyogavidah*), and persons learned in the Vedas, shall perform,

incantations against rain.

During drought shall Indra (*sachínátha*), the Ganges,

mountains, and *Mahákachchha* be worshipped.

*(Pestilences.)*

Such remedial measures as will be treated of in the 14th book

shall be taken against pestilences. Physicians with their medicines,

and ascetics and prophets with their auspicious and purificatory

ceremonials shall also overcome pestilences. The same remedial

measures shall be taken against epidemics (*maraka* = killer).

Besides the above measures, oblations to gods, the ceremonial

called, *Mahá-kachchhavardhana*, milking the cows on cremation

or burial grounds, burning the trunk of a corpse, and spending

nights in devotion to gods shall also be observed.

With regard to cattle diseases (*pasuvyádhimarake*), not only

the ceremony of waving lights in cowsheds (*nirájanam*) shall be

half done, but also the worship of family-gods be carried out.

*(Famines.)*

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

296

During famine, the king shall show favour to his people by

providing them with seeds and provision (*bíjabhaktopagráham*).

He may either do such works as are usually resorted to in

calamities; he may show favour by distributing either his own

collection of provisions or the hoarded income of the rich among

the people; or seek for help from his friends among kings.

Or the policy of thinning the rich by exacting excessive

revenue (*karsanam*), or causing them to vomit their accumulated

wealth (*vamanam*) may be resorted to.

Or the king with his subjects may emigrate to another

kingdom with abundant harvest.

Or he may remove himself with his subjects to seashores or to

the banks of rivers or lakes. He may cause his subjects to grow

grains, vegetables, roots, and fruits wherever water is available. He

may, by hunting and fishing on a large scale, provide the people

with wild beasts, birds, elephants, tigers or fish.

*(Rats.)*

To ward off the danger from rats, cats and mongooses may be

let loose. Destruction of rats that have been caught shall be

punished with a fine of 12 *panas*. The same punishment shall be

meted out to those who, with the exception of wild tribes, do not

hold their dogs in check.

With a view to destroy rats, grains mixed with the milk of the

milk-hedge plants (*snuhi*: Euphorbia Antiquorum), or grains mixed

with such ingredients as are treated of in the 14th book may be left

on the ground. Asceties and prophets may perform auspicious

ceremonials. On new and full-moon days rats may be worshipped.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

297

Similar measures may also be taken against the danger from

locusts, birds and insects.

*(Snakes.)*

[When there is fear from snakes, experts in applying remedies

against snake poison shall resort to incantations and medicines; or

they may destroy snakes in a body; or those who are learned in the

*Atharvaveda* may perform auspicious rites. On new and full moon

days, (snakes) may be worshipped. This explains the measures to

be taken against the dangers from water-animals.

*(Tigers.)*

In order to destroy tigers, either the carcasses of cattle mixed

with the juice of *madana* plant, or the carcasses of calves filled

with the juice of *madana* and *kodrava* plants may be thrown in

suitable places.

Or hunters or keepers of hounds may catch tigers by

entrapping them in nets. Or persons under the protection of armour

may kill tigers with arms.

Negligence to rescue a person under the clutches of a tiger

shall be punished with a fine of 12 *panas*. Similar sum of money

shall be given as a reward to him who kills a tiger.

On new and full moon days mountains may be worshipped.

Similar measures may be taken against the inroad of beasts, birds,

or crocodiles.

*(Demons.)*

Persons acquainted with the rituals of the *Atharvaveda*, and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

298

experts in sacred magic and mysticism shall perform such

ceremonials as ward off the danger from demons.

On full-moon days the worship of *Chaityas* may be

performed by placing on a verandah offerings such as an umbrella,

the picture of an arm, a flag, and some goat's flesh.

In all kinds of dangers from demons, the incantation „we offer

thee cooked rice‟' shall be performed.

The king shall always protect the afflicted among his people

as a father his sons.

Such ascetics as are experts in magical arts, and being

endowed with supernatural powers, can ward off providential

visitations, shall, therefore, be honoured by the king and made to

live in his kingdom.

[Thus ends Chapter III, "Remedies against national Calamities" in

Book IV, “The Removal of Thorns,” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the eightieth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. SUPPRESSION OF THE WICKED LIVING BY FOUL MEANS.

MEASURES necessary for the protection of countries have

been briefly dealt with in connection with the description of the

duties of the Collector-general.

We are now going to treat of in detail such measures as can

remove the disturbing elements of peace.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

299

The Collector-general shall employ spies disguised as

persons endowed with supernatural power, persons engaged in

penance, ascetics, world trotters (*chakra-chara*), bards, buffoons,

mystics (*prachchhandaka*), astrologers, prophets foretelling the

future, persons capable of reading good or bad time, physicians,

lunatics, the dumb, the deaf, idiots, the blind, traders, painters,

carpenters, musicians, dancers, vintners, and manufacturers of

cakes, flesh and cooked rice, and send them abroad into the country

for espionage.

The spies shall ascertain the fair or foul dealings of villagers,

or of the Superintendents of villages and report the same.

If any person is found to be of foul life (*gúdhajívi*), a spy who

is acquainted with similar avocation shall be let loose upon him.

On acquiring friendship with the suspected person who may

be either a judge or a commissioner, the spy may request him that

the misfortune in which a friend of the spy is involved may be

warded off and that a certain amount of money may be accepted. If

the judge accedes to the request, he shall be proclaimed as the

receiver of bribes and banished. The same rule shall also apply to

commissioners.

A spy may tell the congregation of villages (*grámakútam*) or

its superintendent that a wealthy man of wicked character is

involved in some trouble and that this opportunity may be availed

of to squeeze money from him. If either the one or the other

complies with the spy, banishment shall be ordered under the

proclamation of „extortion.‟

Under the pretence of having been charged with criminal

offence, a spy may, with promise of large sums money, begin to

deal with false witnesses. If they agree with him, they shall be

proclaimed as false witnesses and banished.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

300

Manufacturers of counterfeit coins shall also be treated

similarly.

Whoever is believed to secure for others the love of women

by means of magical charms, drugs or ceremonials performed on

cremation grounds may be approached by a spy with the request

that the wife, daughter, or daughter-in-law of some one, whom the

spy pretends to love may be made to return the love and that a

certain amount of money may be accepted. If he consents to it, he

shall be proclaimed as one engaged in witchcraft

(*samvadanakáraka*) and banished.

Similar steps may be taken against persons engaged in such

witchcraft as is hurtful to others.

Whoever is suspected of administering poison (*rasa* =

mercury) to others by reason of his talking of it or selling or

purchasing mercury, or using it in preparing medicines, may be

approached with the tale that a certain enemy of the spy may be

killed and that a certain amount of money may be received as

reward. If he does so, he shall be proclaimed as a poisoner

(*rasada*), and banished.

Similar steps may be taken against those who deal with

medicines prepared from *madana* plant.

Whoever is suspected of manufacturing counterfeit coins in

that he often purchases various kinds of metals, alkalis, charcoal,

bellows, pincers, crucibles, stove, and hammers, has his hands and

cloths dirty with ashes and smoke, or possesses such other

accessory instruments as are necessary for this illegal manufacture,

may be requested by a spy to take the latter as an apprentice, and

being gradually betrayed by the spy, such person, on proclamation

of his guilt as the manufacturer of false coins, shall be banished.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

301

Similar steps may be taken against those who lower the

quality of gold by mixing it with an alloy, or deal with counterfeit

gold (*suvarna* = coin ?)

There are thirteen kinds of criminals who, secretly attempting

to live by foul means, destroy the peace of the country. They shall

either be banished or made to pay an adequate compensation

according as their guilt is light or serious.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, "Suppression of the wicked living by foul

means” in Book IV “The Removal Thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the eighty-first chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER V. DETECTION OF YOUTHS OF CRIMINAL TENDENCY BY ASCETIC SPIES.

ON availing themselves of the opening made by ordinary

spies sent in advance, special spies pretending to be endowed with

supernatural powers may, under the pretence of knowing such

incantations as cause rapid speed in running away, or render

persons invisible, or cause hard fastened doors to open, induce

highway robbers to robbery; and may under the pretence of

knowing such incantations as secure the love of women, entice

adulterers to take part in criminal actions planned for the purpose

of proving their criminal intentions.

On taking these enthusiasts thus induced to a village, where

persons under the guise of women and men are previously

stationed and which is different from the one intended to be

reached, the youths may be told that it is difficult to reach in time

the village aimed at and that the power of incantation may be seen

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

302

then and there alone.

Having opened the doors seemingly with the power of

incantation, the youths may be asked to get in. Having, in the midst

of wakeful watchmen under concert, rendered the youths invisible

with incantation, they may be asked to go into the interior. Having

caused the watchmen seemingly sleepy, the youths may, as

ordered, move the beds of the watchmen with no hesitation.

Persons under the guise of others, wives may, seemingly under the

influence of incantation, please the youths.

Soon after the youths have actually experienced the powers of

incantation, they may be taught the recitation and other accessory

procedure of that art. They may afterwards be asked to test the

power of their new learning in plundering such houses as contain

articles or money with marks of identification, and simultaneously

caught hold of in the very act. They may either be arrested while

selling, purchasing, or mortgaging articles with marks of

identification, or caught hold of while under intoxication brought

about by medicinal drinks (*yogasurámatta*).

From these youths thus arrested may be gathered information

regarding the past life of them and of their accomplices.

Spies under the disguise of old and notorious thieves may

similarly associate with robbers and, instituting similar measures,

cause the latter to be arrested.

The Collector-general shall exhibit these arrested robbers and

announce to the public that their arrest is due to the instructions

obtained from the king who has learnt the divine art of catching

robbers: „I shall similarly catch hold of other robbers again and

again, and you, people, ought to prevent any one of your own

kinsmen from his wicked deeds.‟

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

303

Whoever is known, through the information of spies, to have

been a robber of yoking ropes, whips and other (agricultural)

implements may be arrested and told that his arrest is due to the

omniscient power of the king. Spies under the disguise of old and

notorious robbers, herdsmen, hunters, or keepers of hounds may

mix themselves with criminal tribes living in forests, and conspire

with them to attack villages or caravanserais which, according to

previous plan, contain plenty of counterfeit gold and other articles.

During the tumult, they may be killed by armed men concealed for

the purpose. Or on their securing plenty of stolen treasure, the

robbers may either be made to eat such food as is mixed with the

intoxicating juice of *madana* plant, or caught hold of either while

sleeping with fatigue caused by incessant movements or while

under intoxication due to the drinking of medicinal beverage on the

occasions of religious festivals.

The Collector-general shall exhibit in public these and other

arrested criminals and proclaim the omniscient power of the king

among the people at large.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "Detection of youths of criminal tendency

by ascetic spies,” in Book IV, “The Removal Thorns” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the eighty-second chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER VI. SEIZURE OF CRIMINALS ON SUSPICION OR IN THE VERY ACT.

IN addition to the measures taken by spies under the guise of

prophets, such steps as are suggested by suspicious movements or

possession of stolen articles may also be taken.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

304

*(Suspicion.)*

Persons whose family subsist on slender means of

inheritance; who have little or no comfort; who frequently change

their residence, caste and the names, not only of themselves, but

also of their family (*gotra*); who conceal their own avocations and

calls; who have betaken themselves to such luxurious modes of life

as eating flesh and condiments, drinking liquor, wearing scents,

garlands, fine dress, and jewels; who have been squandering away

their money; who constantly move with profligate women,

gamblers, or vintners; who frequently leave their residence; whose

commercial transaction, journey, or destination is difficult to

understand; who travel alone in such solitary places as forests and

mountainous tracts; who hold secret meetings in lonely places near

to, or far from, their residence; who hurry on to get their fresh

wounds or boils cured; who always hide themselves in the interior

of their houses; who are excessively attached to women; who are

always inquisitive to gather information as to the women and

property of others; who associate themselves with men of

condemnable learning and work; who loiter in the dark behind

walls or under shades; who purchase rare or suspicious articles in

suspicious times or places; who are known for their inimical

dealings; whose caste and avocation are very low; who keep false

appearances or put on different caste signs; who change their

ancestral customs under false excuses; whose notoriety is already

marked; who, though in charge of villages, are terribly afraid of

appearing before the prime minister and conceal themselves or go

elsewhere; who pant in fear while sitting alone; who show undue

agitation or palpitation of heart; whose face is pale and dry while

the voice is indistinct and stammering; who always move in

company with armed men; or who keep threatening appearance;

these and other persons may be suspected to be either murderers or

robbers or offenders guilty of misappropriation of treasure-trove or

deposits or to be any other kind of knaves subsisting by foul means

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

305

secretly employed.

Thus the seizure of criminals on suspicion is dealt with.

*(Seizure of stolen articles.)*

AS regards the seizure of criminals in the very act:--

Information regarding such articles as are either lost or stolen

shall, if the articles are not found out, be supplied to those who

trade in similar articles. Traders who conceal the articles as to the

loss of which they have already received information shall be

condemned as abettors. If they are found not to be aware of the

loss, they may be acquitted on restoring the articles.

No person shall, without giving information to the

superintendent of commerce, mortgage or purchase for himself any

old or second-hand article.

On receiving information regarding the sale or mortgage of

old articles, the Superintendent shall ask the owner how he came

by it. He may reply: it has been inherited; it has been received from

a third person; it is purchased by himself; or it has been made to

order; or it is a secret pledge; he may definitely state that the time

and place when and where it came into being. Or he may adduce

evidence as to the price and commission (*kshanamúlyam*) for

which it was purchased. If his statement regarding the antecedent

circumstances of the article is found to be true, he shall be let off.

If the article in question is found to be the one lost by another

person whose deposition regarding the antecedent circumstances

of the article in no way differs from the previous story, the article

shall be considered to belong to that person who is found to have

long been enjoying it and whose life is very pure. For while even

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

306

quadrupeds and bipeds are found to bear such common evidences

of identification as colour, gait and form, can there be any

difficulty in identifying such articles as, in the form of raw

materials, jewels, or vessels, are the product of a single source,

definite materials, a particular manufacturer for a definite purpose?

The possessor of an article in question may plead that the

article is either borrowed or hired, a pledge or a sealed deposit, or

one obtained from a particular person for retail sale.

If he proves his allegation by producing the referee, he shall

be let off; or the referee may deny having had any concern in the

matter.

With regard to the reasons which a person, seized with an

article lost by another, assigns as to his having taken the article as a

gift from a third person, he shall corroborate them by producing as

witnesses not only those who gave and caused to give the article to

him, but also those who, being mediators, custodians, bearers, or

witnesses, arranged for the transfer of the article.

When a person is found possessed of an article which he

alleges to have been thrown out, lost, or forgotten by a third person,

he shall prove his innocence by adducing evidence as to the time,

place, and circumstances of finding the article. Otherwise he shall

restore the article, besides paying a fine equal to its value; or he

may be punished as a thief.

Thus the seizure of criminals in the very act is dealt with.

*(Circumstancial Evidence.)*

As regards the seizure of criminals on the clue of

circumstancial evidence:--

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

307

In cases of house breaking and theft the circumstances, such

as entrance and exit effected through other than doors; breaking the

door by means of special contrivances breaking the windows with

or without lattice work, or pulling off the roof in houses consisting

of upstairs, ascending and descending upstairs; breaking the wall;

tunnelling; such contrivances as are necessary to carry off the

treasure secretly hoarded, information about which can only be

gathered from internal sources; these and other accessory

circumstances of wear and tear cognisable in the interior shall tend

to indicate the concern of internal hands in the crime, and those of

reverse nature, external agencies. The blending of these two kinds

of circumstances shall indicate both internal and external agencies.

Regarding crimes suspected to be the work of internal

agencies: Any person of miserable appearance, present on the

occasion, associated with rogues or thieves, and possessed of such

instruments as are necessary for theft; a woman who is born of a

poor family, or has placed her affections elsewhere; servants of

similar condemnable character; any person addicted to too much

sleep or who is suffering from want of sleep; any person who

shows signs of fatigue, or whose face is pale and dry with voice

stammering and indistinct and who may be watching the

movements of others or bewailing too much; any person whose

body bears the signs of scaling heights; any person whose body

appears to have been scratched or wounded with dress torn off; any

one whose legs and hands bear the signs of rubbing and scratching;

any one whose hair and nails are either full of dirt or freshly

broken; any one who has just bathed and daubed his body with

sandal; any one who has smeared his body with oil and has just

washed his hands and legs; any one whose foot-prints can be

identified with those made near the house during ingress or egress;

any one whose broken fragments of garlands, sandal or dress can

be identified with those thrown out in or near the house during

entrance or exit; any person the smell of whose sweat or drink can

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

308

be ascertained from the fragments of his dress thrown out in or near

the house;-- these and other persons shall be examined.

A citizen or a person of adulterous habits may also be

suspected.

\* A commissioner (*pradeshtá*) with his retinue of *gopas* and

*sthánikas* shall take steps to find out external thieves; and the

officer in charge of a city (*nágaraka*) shall, under the

circumstances sketched above, try to detect internal thieves inside

fortified towns.

[Thus ends Chapter VI, “Seizure of criminals on suspicion or in the

very act,” in Book IV, “'The Removal of Thorns” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the eighty-third chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER VII. EXAMINATION OF SUDDEN DEATH.

IN cases of sudden death, the corpse shall be smeared over

with oil and examined.

Any person whose corpse is tainted with mucus and urine,

with organs inflated with wind, with hands and legs swollen, with

eyes open, and with neck marked with ligatures may be regarded as

having been killed by suffocation and suppression of breathing.

Any person with contracted arms and thighs may be

regarded as having been killed by hanging.

Any dead person with swollen hands, legs and belly, with

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

309

sunken eyes and inflated navel may be regarded as having been

killed by hanging.

Any dead person with stiffened rectum and eyes, with tongue

bitten between the teeth, and with belly swollen, may be

considered as having been killed by drowning.

Any dead person, wetted with blood and with limb, wounded

and broken, may be regarded as having been killed with sticks or

ropes.

Any dead person with fractures and broken limbs, may be

regarded as having been thrown down.

Any dead person with dark coloured hands, legs, teeth, and

nails, with loose skin, hairs fallen, flesh reduced, and with face

bedaubed with foam and saliva, may be regarded as having been

poisoned.

Any dead person of similar description with marks of a

bleeding bite, may be considered as baving been bitten by serpents

and other poisonous creatures.

Any dead person, with body spread and dress thrown out after

excessive vomitting and purging may be considered as having been

killed by the administration of the juice of the *madana* plant.

Death due to any one of the above causes is, sometimes

under the fear of punishment, made to appear as having been

brought about by voluntary hanging, by causing marks of ligature

round the neck.

In death due to poison, the undigested portion of meat may be

examined in milk. Or the same extracted from the belly and thrown

on fire may, if it makes „chitchita‟ sound and assumes the rainbow

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

310

colour, be declared as poisoned.

Or when the belly (*hridayam*) remains unburnt, although the

rest of the body is reduced to ashes, the dead man's servants may be

examined as to any violent and cruel treatments they may have

received at the hands of the dead. Similarly such of the dead man's

relatives as a person of miserable life, a woman with affections

placed elsewhere or a relative defending some woman that has

been deprived of her inheritance by the dead man may also be

examined.

The same kind of examination shall be conducted concerning

the hanging of the body of an already dead man.

Causes such as past evils or harm done to others by a dead

man, shall be inquired into regarding any death due to voluntary

hanging.

All kinds of sudden death, centre round one or the other of the

following causes:--

Offence to women or kinsmen, claiming inheritance,

professional competition, hatred against rivals, commerce, guilds

and any one of the legal disputes, is the cause of anger: anger is the

cause of death.

When, owing to false resemblance, one's own hirelings, or

thieves for money, or the enemies of a third person murder one, the

relatives of the deceased shall be inquired as follows:--

Who called the deceased; who was with him; who

accompanied him on his journey; and who took him to the scene of

death?

Those who happened to be at the locality of murder shall be

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

311

severally asked as follows:--

By whom the deceased was brought there; whether they (the

witnesses) saw any armed person lurking in the place and showing

signs of troubled appearance?

Any clue afforded by them shall be followed in further

enquiry.

\* After examining the personal property such as travelling

requisites, dress, jewels, or other things which the deceased had on

his body while murdered, such persons as supplied or had

something to do with those things shall be examined as to the

associates, residence, causes of journey, profession, and other calls

of the deceased.

\* If a man or woman under the infatuation of love, anger, or other

sinful passions commits or causes to commit suicide by means of

ropes, arms, or poison, he or she shall be dragged by means of a

rope along the public road by the hands of a *Chandála*.

\* For such murderers as the above, neither cremation rites nor any

obsequies usually performed by relatives shall be observed.

\* Any relative who performs funeral rites to such wretches, shall

either himself be deprived of his own funerals or be abandoned by

his kith and kin.

\* Whoever associates himself with such persons as perform

forbidden rites, shall with his other associates, if any, forfeit within

a year the privileges of conducting or superintending a sacrifice, of

teaching, and of giving or receiving gifts.

[Thus ends Chapter VII, “Examination of sudden death,” in Book

IV, “The Removal of Thorns” of the *Arthasásatra* of Kautilya. End

of the eighty-fourth chapter from the beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

312

## CHAPTER VIII. TRIAL AND TORTURE TO ELICIT CONFESSION.

WHETHER an accused is a stranger or a relative to a

complainant, his defence witness shall, in the presence of the

complainant, be asked as to the defendant's country, caste, family,

name, occupation, property, friends, and residence. The answers

obtained shall be compared with the defendant's own statements

regarding the same. Then the defendant shall be asked as to not

only the nature of the work he did during the day previous to the

theft, but also the place where he spent the night till he was caught

hold of. If his answers for these questions are attested to by reliable

referees or witnesses, he shall be acquitted. Otherwise he shall be

subjected torture (*anyatha karmapráptah*).

Three days after the commission of a crime, no suspected

person (*sankitakah*) shall be arrested inasmuch as there is no room

for questions unless there is strong evidence to bring home the

charge.

Persons who charge an innocent man with theft, or conceal a

thief shall themselves be liable to the punishment for theft.

When a person accused of theft proves in his defence the

complainant's enmity or hatred towards himself he shall be

acquitted.

Any person who keeps an innocent man in confinement

(*parivásayatah suddham*) shall be punished with the first

amercement.

Guilt against a suspected person shall be established by the

production of such evidences as the instruments made use of by the

accused, his accomplices or abettors, the stolen article, and any

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

313

middlemen involved in selling or purchasing the stolen article. The

validity of the above evidences shall also be tested with reference

to both the scene of the theft and the circumstances connected with

the possession and distribution of the stolen article.

When there are no such evidences and when the accused is

wailing much, he shall be regarded as innocent. For owing to one's

accidental presence on the scene of theft, or to one's accidental

resemblance to the real thief in respect to his appearance, his dress,

his weapons, or possession of articles similar to those stolen, or

owing to one's presence near the stolen articles as in the case of

*Mándavya* who under the fear of torture admitted himself to be the

thief, one, though innocent, is often seized as a thief. Hence the

production of conclusive evidences shall be insisted upon.

(*tasmátsamáptakaranam niyamayet* = hence punishment shall be

meted out only when the charge is quite established against the

accused?)

Ignoramuses, youngsters, the aged, the afflicted, persons

under intoxication, lunatics, persons suffering from hunger, thirst,

or fatigue from journey, persons who have just taken more than

enough of meal, persons who have confessed of their own accord

(*átmakásitam*), and persons who are very weak,--none of these

shall be subjected to torture.

Among the spies such as harlots, suppliers of water and other

drinks to travellers, story-tellers, hotel-keepers providing travellers

with boarding and lodging, any one who happens to be acquainted

with the work similar to that of the suspected may be let off to

watch his movements, as described in connection with

misappropriation of sealed deposits.

Those whose guilt is believed to be true shall be subjected to

torture (áptadosham karma kárayet). But not women who are

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

314

carrying or who have not passed a month after delivery.

Torture of women shall be half of the prescribed standard. Or

women with no exception may be subjected to the trial of

cross-examination (*vákyanuyogo vá*).

Those of *Bráhman* caste and learned in the Vedas as well as

asceties shall only be subjected to espionage.

Those who violate or cause to violate the above rules shall be

punished with the first amercement. The same punishment shall be

imposed in case of causing death to any one by torture.

There are in vogue four kinds of torture (karma):--

Six punishments (*shatdandáh*), seven kinds of whipping

(*kasa*), two kinds of suspension from above (*upari nibandhau*),

and water-tube (*udakanáliká cha*).

As to persons who have committed grave offences, the form

of torture will be nine kinds of blows with a cane:--12 beats on

each of the thighs; 28 beats with a stick of the tree (*naktamála*); 32

beats on each palm of the hands and on each sole of the feet; two on

the knuckles, the hands being joined so as to appear like a scorpion;

two kinds of suspensions, face downwards (*ullambane chale*);

burning one of the joints of a finger after the accused has been

made to drink rice gruel; heating his body for a day after be has

been made to drink oil; causing him to lie on coarse green grass for

a night in winter. These are the 18 kinds of torture.

The instruments of the accused such as ropes, clubs, arrows,

spades, knives, etc., shall be paraded on the back of an ass.

Each day a fresh kind of the torture may be employed.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

315

Regarding those criminals who rob in accordance with the

threat previously made by them, who have made use of the stolen

articles in part, who have been caught hold of in the very act or

with the stolen articles, who have attempted to seize the king's

treasury, or who have committed culpable crime, may, in

accordance with the order of the king, be subjected once or many

times to one all of the above kinds of torture.

Whatever may be the nature of the crime, no *Bráhman*

offender shall be tortured. The face of a Bráhman convict shall be

branded so as to leave a mark indicating his crime:--the sign of a

dog in theft, that of a headless body in murder; that of the female

part (*bhaga*) in rape with the wife of a teacher, and that of the flag

of vintners for drinking liquor.

After having thus branded to a wound and proclaimed his

crime in public, the king shall either banish a *Bráhman* offender or

send him to the mines for life.

[Thus ends Chapter VIII, "Trial and Torture to Elicit Confession”

in Book IV, “The Removal of Thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the eighty-fifth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IX. PROTECTION OF ALL KINDS OF GOVERNMENT DEPARTMENTS.

COMMISSIONERS appointed by the Collector-general

shall first check (the proceedings of) Superintendents and their

subordinates.

Those who seize valuable articles or precious stones from

either mines or any great manufactories shall be beheaded. Those

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

316

who seize ordinary articles or necessaries of life from

manufactories of articles of small value shall be punished with the

first amercement. Those who seize from manufactories or from the

king's granary articles of 1/16 to 1/4 a *pana* in value shall be fined

12 *panas*; articles of 1/4 to 1/2 a *pana* in value, 24 *panas*; articles

1/2 to 3/4 *pana* in value, 36 *panas*; and articles of 3/4 to 1 *pana* in

value, 48 *panas*.

Those who seize articles of 1 to 2 *panas* in value shall be

punished with the first amercement; articles of 2 to 4 *panas* in

value with the middlemost; and articles of 4 to 8 *panas* in value

with the highest amercement. Those who seize articles of 8 to 10

*panas* in value shall be condemned to death.

When any one seizes from courtyards, shops, or arsenals

commodities such as raw materials, manufactured articles, etc., of

half the above value, he shall also be punished as above. When any

person seizes articles of ¼th of the above value from Government

treasury, granaries, or offices of Superintendents, he shall be

punished with twice the above fines.

It has already been laid down in connection with the king's

harem that those who intimidate thieves (with a view to give them a

signal to run away) shall be tortured to death.

When any person other than a Government servant steals

during the day from fields, yards prepared for threshing out grains,

houses, or shops commodities such as raw materials, manufactured

articles, or necessaries of life, of 1/16th to 1/4th of a *pana* in value,

he shall be fined 3 *panas* or paraded through the streets, his body

being smeared over with cow-dung, and an earthen ware pan with

blazing light tied round his loins (*sarávamekhalayá*). When any

person steals articles of ¼ to ½ of a *pana* in value, he shall be fined

6 *panas*, or his head may be shaved, or he may be exiled

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

317

(*mundanam pravrajanam vá*). When a person steals articles of ½ to

1/3 of a *pana* in value, he shall be fined 9 *panas*, or he may be

paraded through streets, his body being bedaubed with cowdung or

ashes or with an earthenware pan with blazing light tied round his

waist. When a person steals articles of 1/3 to 1 *pana* in value, be

shall be fined 12 *panas*, or his head may be shaved, or he may be

banished. When a person steals commodities of 1 to 2 *panas* in

value, he shall be fined 24 *panas*, or his head may be shaved with a

piece of brick, or he may be exiled. When a person steals articles of

2 to 4 *panas* in value, he shall be punished with a fine of 36 *panas*;

articles of 4 to 5 *panas* in value, 48 *panas*; articles of 5 to 10 *panas*

in value, with the first amercement; articles of 10 to 20 *panas* in

value, with a fine of 200 *panas*; articles of 20 to 30 *panas* in value,

with a fine of 500 *panas*; articles of 30 to 40 *panas* in value, with a

fine of 1,000 *panas*; and articles of 40 to 50 *panas* in value, he shall

be condemned to death.

When a person seizes by force, whether during the early part

of the day or night, articles of half the above values, he shall be

punished with double the above fines.

When any person with weapons in hand seizes by force,

whether during the day or night, articles of ¼th of the above values,

he shall be punished with the same fines.

When a master of a household (*kutumbádhyaksha*,) a

superintendent, or an independent officer (*mukhyaswámi*) issues or

makes use of unauthorised orders or seals, he shall be punished

with the first, middlemost, or highest amercement, or he may be

condemned to death, or punished in any other way in proportion to

the gravity of his crime.

When a judge threatens, browbeats, sends out, or unjustly

silences any one of the disputants in his court, he shall first of all be

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

318

punished with the first amercement. If he defames or abuses any

one of them, the punishment shall be doubled. If he does not ask

what ought to be asked, or asks what ought not to be asked, or

leaves out what he himself has asked, or teaches, reminds, or

provides any one with previous statement, he shall be punished

with the middle-most amercement.

When a judge does not inquire into necessary circumstances,

inquires into unnecessary circumstances, (*desa*), makes

unnecessary delay in discharging his duty, postpones work with

spite, causes parties to leave the court by tiring them with delay,

evades or causes to evade statements that lead to the settlement of a

case, helps witnesses giving them clues, or resumes cases already

settled or disposed of, he shall be punished with the highest

amercement. If he repeats the offence, he shall both be punished

with double the above fine and dismissed.

When a clerk does not take down what has been deposed by

parties, but enters what has not been deposed, evades what has

been badly said (*duruktam*), or renders either diverse or ambiguous

in meaning such depositions as are satisfactorily given out, he shall

be punished either with the first amercement or in proportion to his

guilt.

When a judge or commissioner imposes an unjust fine in

gold, he shall be fined either double the amount of the fine, or eight

times that amount of imposition which is either more or less than

the prescribed limit.

When a judge or commissioner imposes an unjust corporeal

punishment, he shall himself be either condemned to the same

punishment or made to pay twice the amount of ransom leviable

for that kind of injustice.

When a judge falsifies whatever is a true amount or declares

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

319

as true whatever amount is false, he shall be fined eight times that

amount.

When an officer lets out or causes to let out offenders from

lock-up (*cháraka*), obstructs or causes to obstruct prisoners in such

of their daily avocations as sleeping, sitting, eating, or execreting,

he shall be punished with fines ranging from 3 *panas* and upwards.

When any person lets out or causes to let out debtors from

lock-up, he shall not only be punished with the middlemost

amercement, but also be compelled to pay the debt the offender has

to pay.

When a person lets out or causes to let out prisoners from jails

(*bandhanágára*), he shall be condemned to death and the whole of

his property confiscated.

When the superintendeat of jails puts any person in lock-up

without declaring the grounds of provocation

(*samkrudhakamanákhyáya*), he shall be fined 24 *panas*; when he

subjects any person to unjust torture, 48 *panas*; when he transfers a

prisoner to another place, or deprives a prisoner of food and water,

96 *panas*; when be troubles or receives bribes from a prisoner, he

shall be punished, with the middlemost amercement; when he beats

a prisoner to death, he shall be fined 1,000 *panas*. When a person

commits rape with a captive, slave, or hired woman in lock-up, he

shall be punished with the first amercement; when he commits rape

with the wife of a thief, or of any other man who is dead in an

epidemic (*dámara*), he shall be punished with the middlemost

amercement; and when he commits rape with an *Arya* woman in

lock-up, he shall be punished with the highest amercement.

When an offender kept in lock-up commits rape with an *Arya*

woman in the same lock-up, he shall be condemned to death in the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

320

very place.

When an officer commits rape with an *Arya* woman who has

been arrested for untimely movement at night

(*akshanagrihitáyám*), he shall also be hanged at the very spot;

when a similar offence is committed with a woman under slavery,

the offender shall be punished with the first amercement.

(An officer) who causes a prisoner to escape from a lock-up

without breaking it open, shall be punished with the middlemost

amercement. (An officer) who causes a prisoner to escape from a

lock-up after breaking it open, shall be condemned to death. When

he lets out a prisoner from the jail, he shall be put to death and his

property confiscated.

Thus shall the king, with adequate punishments, test first the

conduct of Government servants, and then shall, through those

officers of approved character, examine the conduct of his people

both in towns and villages.

[Thus ends Chapter IX, "Protection of all kinds of Government

Departments” in Book IV, “The Removal of Thorns” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the eighty-sixth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER X. FINES IN LIEU OF MUTILATION OF LIMBS.

WHEN Government servants (*arthachara*) commit for the

first time such offences as violation of sacred institutions

(*tírthágháta*), or pickpocketing (*granthibheda*), they shall have

their index finger cut off or shall pay a fine of 54 *panas*; when for a

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

321

second time they commit the same, they shall have their ( ...... ) cut

off or pay a fine of 100 *panas*; when for a third time, they shall

have their right hand cut off or pay a fine of 400 *panas*; and when

for a fourth time, they shall in any way be put to death.

When a person steals or destroys cocks, mangoose, cats, dogs

or pigs, of less than 54 *panas* in value, he shall have the edge of his

nose cut off or pay a fine of 54 *panas*. If these animals belong to

either *Chandalas* or wild tribes half of the above fine shall be

imposed.

When any person steals wild beasts, cattle, birds, elephants,

tigers, fish, or any other animals confined in traps, fences, or pits,

he shall not only pay a fine equal to the value of the stolen animals,

but also restore the animals.

For stealing beasts or raw materials from forests, a fine of 100

*panas* shall be imposed. For stealing or destroying dolls, beasts, or

birds from infirmaries, twice the above fine shall be levied.

When a person steals articles of small value, belonging to

artisans, musicians, or ascetics he shall pay a fine of 100 *panas*;

and when he steals big articles or any agricultural implements, he

shall pay double the above fine.

When any person enters into a fort without permission, or

carries off treasure through a hole or passage in the wall of the fort,

he shall either be beheaded or be made to pay a fine of 200 *panas*.

When a person steals a cart, a boat or minor quadruped, he

shall have one of his legs cut off or pay a fine of 300 *panas*.

When a gambler substitutes false dice to be hired for a *kákaní*

or any other accessory things of dice-play, or commits fraud by

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

322

tricks of hand, he shall have his hand cut off or pay a fine of 400

*panas*.

When any person abets a thief or an adulterer, he as well as

the woman who voluntarily yields herself for adultery shall have

their ears and nose cut off or pay each a fine of 500 *panas*, while

the thief or the adulterer shall pay double the above fine.

When any person steals a big animal, abducts a male or

female slave, or sells the articles belonging to a dead body

(*pretabhándam*), he shall have both of his legs cut off or pay a fine

of 600 *panas*.

When a man contemptuously rushes against the hands or legs

of any person of a higher caste, or of a teacher, or mounts the horse,

elephant, coach, etc., of the king, he shall have one of his legs and

one of his hands cut off or pay a fine of 700 *panas*.

When a *Súdra* calls himself a *Bráhman*, or when any person

steals the property of gods, conspires against the king, or destroys

both the eyes of another, he shall either have his eyes destroyed by

the application of poisonous ointment, or pay a fine of 800 *panas*.

When a person causes a thief or an adulterer to be let off or

adds or omits anything while writing down the king's order,

abducts a girl or a slave possessed of gold, carries off any deceitful

transaction, or sells rotten flesh, he shall either have his two legs

and one hand cut off or pay a fine of 900 *panas*.

Any person who sells human flesh shall be condemned to

death.

When a person steals images of gods or of animals, abducts

men, or takes possession of fields, houses, gold, gold-coins,

precious stones, or crops of others, he shall either be beheaded or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

323

compelled to pay the highest amercement.

\* Taking into consideration the (social position of) persons, the

nature of the offence, the cause, whether grave or slight (that led to

the perpetration of the offence), the antecedent and present

circumstances, the time, and the place;

\* and without failing to notice equitable distinctions among

offenders, whether belonging to royal family or to the common

people, shall the commissioner determine the propriety of

imposing the first, middlemost, or highest amercements.

[Thus ends Chapter X, "Fines in lieu of mutilation of limbs" in

Book IV, “The Removal of Thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.

End of the eighty-seventh chapter from the. beginning.]

## CHAPTER XI. DEATH WITH OR WITHOUT TORTURE.

WHEN a man murders another in a quarrel, he shall be

tortured to death. When a person wounded in a fight dies within

seven nights, he who caused the wound shall be put to

instantaneous death (*suddhavadhah*). If the wounded man dies

within a fortnight, the offender shall be punished with the highest

amercement. If the wounded man dies within a month, the offender

shall be compelled to pay not only a fine of 500 *panas*, but also an

adequate compensation (to the bereaved).

When a man hurts another with a weapon, he shall pay the

highest amercement; when he does so under intoxication, his hand

shall be cut off; and when he causes instantaneous death, be shall

be put to death.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

324

When a person causes abortion in pregnancy by striking, or

with medicine, or by annoyance, the highest, middlemost, and first

amercements shall be imposed respectively.

Those who cause violent death either to men or women, or

those who are in the habit of often going to meet prostitutes

(*abhisáraka*), those who inflict unjust punishment upon others,

those who spread false or contemptuous rumours, who assault or

obstruct travellers on their way, who commit house-breaking, or

who steal or cause hurt to royal elephants, horses, or carriages shall

be hanged.

Whoever burns or carries away the corpses of the above

offenders shall meet with similar punishment or pay the highest

amercement.

When a person supplies murderers or thieves with food, dress,

any requisites, fire, information, any plan, or assistance in any way,

he shall be punished with the highest amercement. When he does

so under ignorance, he shall be censured.

Sons or wives of murderers or of thieves shall, if they are

found not in concert, be acquitted; but they shall be seized if found

to have been in concert.

Any person who aims at the kingdom, who forces entrance

into the king's harem, who instigates wild tribes or enemies

(against the king), or who creates disaffection in forts, country

parts, or in the army shall be burnt alive from head to foot.

If a *Bráhman* does similar acts, he shall be drowned.

Any person who murders his father, mother, son, brother,

teacher, or an ascetic, shall be put to death by burning both his head

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

325

and skin; if he insults any of the above persons, his tongue shall be

cut off; if he bites any limb of these persons, be shall be deprived of

the corresponding limb.

When a man wantonly murders another, or steals a herd of

cattle, he shall be beheaded.

A herd of cattle shall be considered to consist of not more

than ten heads.

When a person breaks the dam of a tank full of water, he shall

be drowned in the very tank; of a tank without water, he shall be

punished with the highest amercement; and of a tank which is in

ruins owing to neglect, he shall be punished with the middle-most

amercement.

Any man who poisons another and any woman who murders

a man shall be drowned.

Any woman who murders her husband, preceptor, or

offspring, sets fire to another's property, poisons a man or cuts off

any of the bodily joints of another shall be torn off by bulls, no

matter whether or not she is big with a child, or has not passed a

month after giving birth to a child.

Any person who sets fire to pasture lands, fields, yards

prepared for threshing out grains, houses, forests, of timber or of

elephants shall be thrown into fire.

Any person who insults the king, betrays the king's council,

makes evil attempts (against the king), or disregards the sanctity of

the kitchens of *Bráhmans* shall have his tongue cut off.

When a man other than a soldier steals weapons or armour,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

326

he shall be shot down by arrows; if he is a soldier, he shall pay the

highest amercement.

He who castrates a man shall have his generative organ cut

off.

He who hurts the tongue or nose of another shall have his

fingers cut off.

\* Such painful punishments (*klesadanda*) as the above have

been laid down in the *Śástras* of great sages; but it has been

declared as just to put to simple death those offenders who have not

been cruel.

[Thus ends Chapter XI, "Death with or without torture" in Book

IV, "The Removal of Thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End

of the eighty-eighth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XII. SEXUAL INTERCOURSE WITH IMMATURE GIRLS.

HE who defiles a maiden of equal caste before she has

reached her maturity shall have his hand cut off or pay a fine of 400

*panas*; if the maiden dies in consequence, the offender shall be put

to death.

He who defiles a maiden who has attained maturity shall have

his middle finger cut off or pay a fine of 200 *panas*, besides giving

an adequate compensation to her father.

No man shall have sexual intercourse with any woman

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

327

against her will.

He who defiles a willing maiden shall pay a fine of 54 *panas*,

while the maiden herself shall pay a fine of half the amount.

When a man impersonates another man who has already paid

the nuptial fee to a woman (*parasulkopadháyám*), he shall have his

hand cut off or pay a fine of 400 *panas*, besides making good the

nuptial fee.

No man who has connection with a maiden that has passed

seven menses and has not yet succeeded in marrying her, though

she has been betrothed to him, shall either be guilty or pay any

compensation to her father; for her father has lost his authority over

her in consequence of having deprived her so long of the result of

her menses.

It is no offence for a man of equal caste and rank to have

connection with a maiden who has been unmarried three years after

her first menses. Nor is it an offence for a man, even of different

caste, to have connection with a maiden who has spent more than

three years after her first menses and has no jewellery on her

person; for taking possession of paternal property (under such

circumstances) shall be regarded as theft.

Any person who, while pretending to secure a bride to a

particular person, ultimately obtains her for a third person shall be

fined 200 *panas*.

No man shall have sexual intercourse with any woman

against her will.

If a person substitutes in marriage another maiden for the one

he has before shown, he shall, if the substitute is of the same rank,

be fined 100 *panas*, and 200 *panas* if she is of lower rank. The

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

328

substituted maiden shall be fined 54 *panas*, while the offender shall

also be compelled to return both the nuptial fee and the amount of

expenditure (incurred by the bridegroom).

When a man refuses to live in marriage a particular maiden as

agreed upon, he shall pay double the above fine.

When a man substitutes in marriage a maiden of different

blood or is found to have bestowed false praises (on her quality), he

shall not only pay a fine of 200 *panas* and return the nuptial fee, but

also make good the expenditure.

No man shall have sexual intercourse with any woman

against her will.

When a woman being desirous of intercourse, yields herself

to a man of the same caste and rank, she shall be fined 12 *panas*,

while any other woman who is an abettor in the case shall be fined

twice as much. Any woman who abets a man in having intercourse

with a maiden against her will shall not only pay a fine of 100

*panas*, but also please the maiden providing her with an adequate

nuptial fee.

A woman who, of her own accord, yields herself to a man

shall be a slave to the king.

For committing intercourse with a woman outside a village,

or for spreading false report regarding such things, double the

usual fines shall be imposed.

He who carries off a maiden by force shall be fined 200

*panas*; if the maiden thus carried off has golden ornaments on her

person, the highest amercement shall be imposed. If a number of

persons abduct a maiden, each of them shall be punished as above.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

329

When a man has connection with a harlot's daughter, he shall

not only pay a fine of 54 *panas*, but also give her mother sixteen

times her daily income.

When a man defiles the daughter of his own male or female

slave, he shall not only pay a fine of 24 *panas*, but also provide the

maiden with an adequate nuptial fee (*sulka*) and jewellery

(*ábaddhya*).

When a man has connection with a woman who has been held

in slavery on account of certain ransom due from her, he shall not

only pay a fine of 12 *panas*, but also provide the woman with dress

and maintenance.

Abettors in all the above cases shall each have the same

punishment as the principal offender.

A relative, or a servant of an absentee husband may take the

latter's wife of loose character under his own protection

(*samgrihníyat* = may marry her). Being under such protection, she

shall wait for the return of her husband. If her husband, on his

return, entertains no objection, both the protector and the woman

shall be acquitted. If he raises any objection, the woman shall have

her ears and nose cut off, while her keeper shall be put to death as

an adulterer.

When a man falsely accuses another of having committed

theft while in reality the latter is guilty of adultery, the complainant

shall be fined 500 *panas*.

He who lets off an adulterer by receiving gold shall pay a fine

of eight times the value of the gold (he received).

(Adultery may be proved by circumstances such as) hand to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

330

hand fight, abduction, any marks made on the body of the culprits,

opinion of experts on consideration of the circumstances, or the

statements of women involved in it.

When a man rescues a woman from enemies, forests, or

floods, or saves the life of a woman who has been abandoned in

forests, forsaken in famine, or thrown out as if dead, he may enjoy

her as agreed upon during the rescue.

A woman of high caste, with children and having no desire

for sexual enjoyment, may be let off after receiving an adequate

amount of ransom.

\* Those women who have been rescued from the hands of thieves,

from floods, in famine, or in national calamities, or who, having

been abandoned, missed, or thrown out as if dead in forests, have

been taken home may be enjoyed by the rescuer as agreed upon.

\* But no such women as have been cast out under royal edict, or by

their own kinsmen; nor such as belong to high caste, or do not like

to be rescued, nor even those who have children shall be rescued

either for ransom or for their person.

[Thus ends Chapter XII, “Sexual Intercourse with Immature

Girls,” in Book IV, “The Removal of Thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the eighty-ninth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIII. PUNISHMENT FOR VIOLATING JUSTICE.

HE who causes a *Bráhman* to partake of whatever food or

drink is prohibited shall be punished with the highest amercement.

He who causes a *Kshatriya* to do the same shall be punished with

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

331

the middlemost amercement; a *Vaisya*, with the first amercement;

and a *Súdra*, with a fine of 54 *panas*.

Those who voluntarily partake of whatever is condemned

either as food or drink shall be outcast.

He who forces his entrance into another's house during the

day shall be punished with the first amercement; and during the

night with the middlemost. Any person who with weapon in hand

enters into another's house either during the day or night shall be

punished with the highest amercement.

When beggars or peddlers and lunatics or mad persons

attempt to enter into a house by force, or when neighbours force

their entrance into a house in danger, they shall not be punished

provided no such entrance is specially prohibited.

He who mounts the roof of his own house after midnight shall

be punished with the first amercement; and of another's house, with

the middlemost amercement.

Those who break the fences of villages, gardens, or fields

shall also be punished with the middlemost amercement.

Having made the value, etc., of their merchandise known (to

the headman of the village), traders shall halt in some part of a

village. When any part of their merchandise which has not been

truly sent out of the village during the night has been stolen or lost,

the headman of the village shall make good the loss.

Whatever of their merchandise is stolen or lost in the

intervening places between any two villages shall the

superintendent of pasture lands make good. If there are no pasture

lands (in such places), the officer called *Chorarajjuka* shall make

good the loss. If the loss of merchandise occurs in such parts of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

332

country as are not provided even with such security (a

*Chorarajjuka*), the people in the boundaries of the place shall

contribute to make up the loss. If there are no people in the

boundaries, the people of five or ten villages of the neighbourhood

shall make up the loss.

Harm due to the construction of unstable houses, carts with no

support or with a beam or weapon hung above or with damaged

support or with no covering, and harm due to causing a cart to fall

in pits, or a tank, or from a dam, shall be treated as assault.

Cutting of trees, stealing the rope with which a tameable

animal is tied, employing untamed quadrupeds, throwing sticks,

mud, stones, rods, or arrows on chariots or elephants, raising or

waiving the arm against chariots or elephants, shall also be treated

as assault.

(The charioteer) who cries out (to a passer-by) „get out‟ shall

not be punished for collision (*samghattane*).

A man who is hurt to death by an elephant under provocation

(caused by himself) shall supply not only a *kumbha* of liquor (less

by a *drona*), garlands, and scents but also as much cloth as is

necessary to wash the tusks; for death caused by an elephant is as

meritorious as the sacred bath taken at the end of a horse-sacrifice.

Hence this offer (of liquor, etc.), is known as „washing the legs.‟

When an indifferent passer-by is killed by an elephant the

driver shall be punished with the highest amercement.

When the owner of a horned or tusked animal does not rescue

a man from being destroyed by his animal, he shall be punished

with the first amercement. If he heedlessly keeps quite from

rescuing though entreated, he shall be punished with twice the first

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

333

amercement.

When a person causes or allows horned or tusked animals to

destroy each other, he shall not only pay a fine equal to the value of

the destroyed animal or animals, but also make good the loss (to

the sufferer).

When a man rides over an animal which is left off in the name

of gods, or over a bull, an ox, or over a female calf, he shall be

fined 500 *panas*. He who drives away the above animals shall be

punished with the highest amercement.

When a person carries off such inferior quadrupeds as are

productive of wool or milk, or are useful for loading or riding, he

shall not only pay a fine equal to their value, but also restore them.

The same punishment shall be imposed in the case of driving

away inferior quadrupeds for purposes other than ceremonials

performed in honour of gods or ancestors.

When an animal which has its nose-string cut off or which is

not well tamed to yoke causes hurt; or when an animal, either

coming furiously against a man or receding backwards with the

cart to which it is tied, causes hurt or when an animal causes hurt in

confusion brought about by the thronging of people and other

animals; the owner of the animal shall not be punished;. but for

hurt caused to men under circumstances other than the above, fines

shall be imposed as laid down before, while the loss of any animal

life due to such causes shall be made good. If the driver of a cart or

carriage causing hurt is a minor, the master inside the cart or

carriage shall be punished. In the absence of the master, any person

who is seated inside, or the driver himself if he has attained his

majority shall be punished. Carts or carriages occupied by a minor

or with no person shall be taken possession of by the king.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

334

Whatever a man attempts to do to others by witch-craft shall

be (practically) applied to the doer himself. Witch-craft merely to

arouse love in an indifferent wife, in a maiden by her lover, or in a

wife by her husband is no offence. But when it is injurious to

others, the doer shall be punished with the middle most

amercement.

When a man performs witch-craft to win the sister of his own

father or mother, the wife of a maternal uncle or of a preceptor, his

own daughter-in-law, daughter, or sister, he shall have his limb cut

off and also put to death, ,while any woman who yields herself to

such an offender shall also, receive similar punishment. Any

woman who yields herself to a slave, a servant, or a hired labourer

shall be similarly punished.

A *Kshatriya* who commits adultery with an unguarded

*Bráhman* woman shall be punished with the highest amercement; a

*Vaisya* doing the same shall be deprived of the whole of his

property; and a *Súdra* shall be burnt alive wound round in mats.

Whoever commits adultery with the queen of the land shall be

burnt alive in a vessel (*kumbhílpákah*.)

A man who commits adultery with a woman of low caste shall

be banished with prescribed mark branded on his fore-head, or

shall be degraded to the same caste.

A *Súdra* or a *svapáka* who commits adultery with a woman of

low caste shall be put to death, while the woman shall have her ears

and nose cut off.

Adultery with a nun (*pravrajitá*) shall be punishable with a

fine of 24 *panas* while the nun who submits herself shall also pay a

similar fine.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

335

A man who forces his connection with a harlot shall be fined

12 *panas*.

When many persons perform witch-craft towards a single

woman, each of them shall be punished with a fine of 24 *panas*.

When a man has connection with a woman against the order

of nature (*a-yonau*), he shall be punished with the first

amercement.

A man having sexual intercourse with another man shall also

pay the first amercement.

\* When a senseless man has sexual intercourse with beasts, he shall

be fined 12 *panas*; when he comits the same act with idols

(representatives) of goddesses (*daivatapratimá*), he shall be fined

twice as much.

\* When the king punishes an innocent man, he shall throw into

water dedicating to god *Varuna* a fine equal to thirty times the

unjust imposition; and this amount shall afterwards be distributed

among the *Bráhmans*.

\* By this act, the king will be free from the sin of unjust imposition;

for king *Varuna* is the ruler of sinners among men.

[Thus ends Chapter XIII, “Punishment for violating justice” in

Book IV, “The Removal of Thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.

End of the ninetieth chapter from the beginning. With this ends the

fourth Book, “The removal of of thorns” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 253-296.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

336

# Book V, "The Conduct of Courtiers"

## CHAPTER I. CONCERNING THE AWARDS OF PUNISHMENTS.

MEASURES necessary to remove the thorns of public peace

both in fortified cities and country parts have been dealt with. We

shall now proceed to treat of measures to suppress treason against

the king and his kingdom.

With regard to those chiefs who, though living by service

under the king, are inimically disposed towards him, or have taken

the side of his enemy, a spy with secret mission or one in the guise

of an ascetic and devoted to the king's cause shall set to work as

described before; or a spy trained in the art of sowing the seeds of

dissension may set to work, as will be described in connection with

the „Invasion of an enemy's villages.‟

The king in the interests of righteousness may inflict

punishment in secret on those courtiers or confederacy of chiefs

who are dangerous to the safety of the kingdom and who cannot be

put down in open daylight.

A spy may instigate the brother of a seditious minister and

with necessary inducements, take him to the king for an interview.

The king, having conferred upon him the title to possess and enjoy

the property of his seditious brother, may cause him to attack his

brother; and when he murders his brother with a weapon or with

poison, he shall be put to death in the same spot under the plea that

he is a parricide.

The same measure will explain the proceedings to be taken

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

337

against a seditious *Pârasava* (one who is begotten by a *Bráhman*

on *Sûdra* wife), and a seditious son of a woman-servant.

Or instigated by a spy, the brother of a seditious minister may

put forward his claim for inheritance. While the claimant is lying at

night at the door of the house of the seditious minister or

elsewhere, a fiery spy (*tîshna*) may murder him and declare "Alas!

the claimant for inheritance is thus murdered (by his brother)."

Then taking the side of the injured party, the king may punish the

other (the seditious minister).

Spies in the presence of a seditious minister may threaten to

beat his brother claiming inheritance. Then "while the claimant is

lying at the door of, etc." .............. as before.

The same proceedings will explain the quarrel fraudulently

caused to crop up between any two seditious ministers, in whose

family a son or a father has had sexual intercourse with a

daughter-in-law, or a brother with the wife of another brother.

A spy may flatter to the vanity of a seditious minister's son, of

gentle manners and dignified conduct by telling him "Though thou

art the king's son, thou art kept here in fear of enemies." The king

may secretly honour this deluded person and tell him that

"apprehending danger from the minister, I have put off thy

installation, though thou hast attained the age of heir apparent."

Then the spy may instigate him to murder the minister. The task

being accomplished, he, too, may be put to death in the same spot

under the plea that he is a parricide.

A mendicant woman, having captivated the wife of a

seditious minister by administering such medicines as excite the

feelings of love, may through that wife contrive to poison the

minister.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

338

Failing these measures, the king may send a seditious

minister with an army of inefficient soldiers and fiery spies to put

down a rebellious wild tribe or a village, or to set up a new

superintendent of countries or of boundaries in a locality bordering

upon a wilderness, or to bring under control a highly-rebellious

city, or to fetch a caravan bringing in the tribute due to the king

from a neighbouring country. In an affray (that ensues in

consequence of the above mission) either by day or at night, the

fiery spies, or spies under the guise of robbers (*pratirodhaka*) may

murder the minister and declare that he was killed in the battle.

While marching against an enemy or being engaged in sports,

the king may send for his seditious ministers for an interview.

While leading the ministers to the king, fiery spies with concealed

weapons shall, in the middle enclosure of the king's pavilion, offer

themselves to be searched for admittance into the interior, and,

when caught, with their weapons by the door-keepers, declare

themselves to be the accomplices of the seditious ministers.

Having made this affair known to the public, the door-keepers shall

put the ministers to death, and in the place of the fiery spies, some

others are to be hanged.

While engaged in sports outside the city, the king may honour

his seditious ministers with accommodation close to his own. A

woman of bad character under the guise of the queen may be

caught in the apartment of these ministers and steps may be taken

against them as before.

A sauce-maker or a sweetmeat-maker may request of a

seditious minister some sauce and sweetmeat by flattering

him--"thou alone art worthy of such things." Having mixed those

two things and half a cup of water with poison, he may substitute

those things in the luncheon (of the king) outside the city. Having

made this event known to the public, the king may put them (the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

339

minister and the cook) to death under the plea that they are

poisoners.

If a seditious minister is addicted to witchcraft, a spy under

the guise of an accomplished wizard may make him believe that by

manifesting (in witchcraft) any one of the beautiful things,--a pot

containing an alligator, or a tortoise or crab--he can attain his

desired end. While, with this belief, he is engaged in the act of

witchcraft, a spy may murder him either by poisoning him or by

striking him with an iron bar, and declare that he brought his own

death by his proclivity to witchcraft.

A spy under the guise of a physician may make a seditious

minister believe that he is suffering from a fatal or incurable

disease and contrive to poison him while prescribing medicine and

diet to him.

Spies under the guise of sauce-makers and sweet

meat-makers may, when opportunity occurs, contrive to poison

him.

Such are the secret measures to get rid of seditious persons.

As to measures to get rid of seditious persons conspiring

against both the king and his kingdom:--

When a seditious person is to be got rid of, another seditious

person with an army of inefficient soldiers and fiery spies may be

sent with the mission: "Go out into this fort or country and raise an

army or some revenue; deprive a courtier of his gold; bring by

force the daughter of a courtier; build a fort; open a garden;

construct a road for traffic; set up a new village; exploit a mine;

form forest-preserves for timber or elephants; set up a district or a

boundary; and arrest and capture those who prevent your work or

do not give you help." Similarly the other party may be instructed

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

340

to curb the spirit of the above person. When a quarrel arises

between the two parties at work, fiery spies under cover may throw

their weapons and murder the seditious person; and others are to be

arrested and punished for the crime.

When with reference to boundaries, field-produce, and

boundaries of houses, or with reference to any damage done to

things, instruments, crops, and beasts of burden or on occasions of

witnessing spectacles and processions, any dispute, real or caused

by fiery spies, arises in seditious towns, villages, or families, fiery

spies may hurl weapons and say: "This is what is done to them who

quarrel with this man"; and for this offence others may be

punished.

When there arises a quarrel among seditious persons, fiery

spies may set fire to their fields, harvest-grounds, and houses, hurl

weapons on their relatives, friends and beasts of burden, and say

that they did so at the instigation of the seditious; and for this

offence others may be punished.

Spies may induce seditious persons in forts or in country parts

to be each other's guests at a dinner in which poisoners may

administer poison; and for this offence others may be punished.

A mendicant woman may delude a seditious chief of a district

into the belief that the wife, daughter, or daughter-in-law of

another seditious chief of another district loves the former. She

may take the jewellery which the deluded chief gives her (for

delivery to the wife, daughter, etc.), and, presenting it before the

other chief, narrate that this chief in the pride of his youth makes

love to the other's wife, daughter, or daughter-in-law. When at

night a duel arises between the two chiefs, etc., as before.

The prince or the commander of the army may confer some

benefit upon such inimical persons as have been cowed down by a

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

341

seditious army, and may declare his displeasure against them

afterwards. And then some other persons, who are equally cowed

down by another seditious army of the king, may be sent against

the former along with an army of inefficient soldiers and fiery

spies. Thus all the measures to get rid of seditious persons are of

the same type.

Whoever among the sons of the seditious persons thus put

down shows no perturbance of mind shall receive his father's

property. It is only thus that the whole of the country will loyally

follow the sons and grandsons of the king, and will be free from all

troubles caused by men.

\* Possessed of forbearance and apprehending no disturbance

either in the present or future, the king may award punishments in

secret both upon his own subjects and those who uphold the

enemy's cause.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “Concerning the Awards of Punishments” in

Book V. “The Conduct of Courtiers” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the ninety-first chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. REPLENISHMENT OF THE TREASURY.

THE king who finds himself in a great financial trouble and

needs money, may collect (revenue by demand). In such parts of

his country as depend solely upon rain for water and are rich in

grain, he may demand of his subjects one-third or one-fourth of

their grain according to their capacity. He shall never demand of

such of his subjects as live in tracts of middle or low quality; nor of

people who are of great help in the construction of fortifications,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

342

gardens, buildings, roads for traffic, colonisation of waste lands,

exploitation of mines, and formation of forest-preserves for timber

and, elephants; nor of people who live on the border of his

kingdom or who have not enough subsistence. He shall, on the

other hand, supply with grain and cattle those who colonise waste

lands. He may purchase for gold one-fourth of what remains, after

deducting as much of the grain as is required for seeds and

subsistence of his subjects. He shall avoid the property of forest

tribes, as well as of *Bráhmans* learned in the Vedas (*srotriya*). He

may purchase this, too, offering favourable price (to the owners).

Failing these measures, the servants of the collector-general may

prevail upon the peasantry to raise summer crops. Saying that

double the amount of fines will be levied from those who are guilty

(among peasants), they (the king's employees) shall sow seeds in

sowing seasons. When crops are ripe, they may beg a portion of

vegetable and other ripe produce except what is gleaned in the

form of vegetables and grains. They shall avoid the grains scattered

in harvest-fields, so that they may be utilised in making offerings to

gods and ancestors on occasions of worship, in feeding cows, or for

the subsistence of mendicants and village employees

(*grâlmabhritaka*)*.*

Whoever conceals his own grain shall pay a fine of eight

times the amount in each kind; and whoever steals the crops of

another person shall pay a fine of fifty times the amount, provided

the robber belongs to the same community (*svavarga*); but if he is a

foreigner, he shall be put to death. They (the king's employees)

may demand of cultivators one-fourth of their grain, and one-sixth

of forest produce (*vanya*) and of such commodities as cotton, wax,

fabrics, barks of trees, hemp, wool, silk, medicines, sandal,

flowers, fruits, vegetables, firewood, bamboos, flesh, and dried

flesh. They may also take one-half of all ivory and skins of

animals, and punish with the first amercement those who trade in

any article without obtaining a license from the king. So much for

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

343

demands on cultivators.

Merchants dealing in gold, silver, diamonds, precious stones,

pearls, coral, horses, and elephants shall pay 50 *karas.* Those that

trade in cotton threads, clothes, copper, brass, bronze, sandal,

medicines, and liquor shall pay 40 *karas.* Those that trade in grains,

liquids, metals (*loha*), and deal with carts shall pay 30 *karas.* Those

that carry on their trade in glass (*kâcha*); and also artisans of fine

workmanship shall pay 20 *karas*. Articles of inferior workmanship,

as well as those who keep prostitutes, shall pay 10 *karas.* Those

that trade in firewood, bamboos, stones, earthen-pots, cooked rice,

and vegetables shall pay 5 *karas.* Dramatists and prostitutes shall

pay half of their wages. The entire property of goldsmiths shall be

taken possession of; and no offence of theirs shall be forgiven; for

they carry on their fraudulent trade while pretending at the same

time to be honest and innocent. So much about demands on

merchants.

Persons rearing cocks and pigs shall surrender to the

Government half of their stock of animals. Those that rear inferior

animals shall give one-sixth. Those that keep cows, buffaloes,

mules, asses, and camels shall give one-tenth (of their live-stock).

Those who maintain prostitutes (*bandhakiposhaka*)*,* shall, with the

help of women noted for their beauty and youth in the service of

the king, collect revenue. So much about demands on herdsmen.

Such demands shall be made only once and never twice.

When such demands are not made, the collector general shall seek

subscriptions from citizens and country people alike under false

pretences of carrying this or that kind of business. Persons taken in

concert shall publicly pay handsome donations and with this

example, the king may demand of others among his subjects. Spies

posing as citizens shall revile those who pay less. Wealthy persons

may be requested to give as much of their gold as they can. Those

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

344

who, of their own accord or with the intention of doing good, offer

their wealth to the king shall be honoured with a rank in the court,

an umbrella, or a turban or some ornaments in return for their gold.

Spies, under the guise of sorcerers, shall, under the pretence

of ensuring safety, carry away the money, not only of the society of

heretics and of temples, but also of a dead man and of a man whose

house is burnt, provided that it is not enjoyable by *Bráhmans*.

The Superintendent of Religious Institutions may collect in

one place the various kinds of property of the gods of fortified

cities and country parts and carry away the property (to the king's

treasury).

Or having on some night set up a god or an altar, or having

opened a sacred place of ascetics or having pointed out an evil

omen, the king may collect subsistence under the pretence of

holding processions and congregations (to avert calamities).

Or else he shall proclaim the arrival of gods, by pointing out

to the people any of the sacred trees in the king's garden which has

produced untimely flowers and fruits.

Or by causing a false panic owing to the arrival of an evil

spirit on a tree in the city, wherein a man is hidden making all sorts

of devilish noises, the king's spies, under the guise of ascetics, may

collect money (with a view to propitiate the evil spirit and send it

back).

Or spies may call upon spectators to see a serpent with

numberless heads in a well connected with a subterranean passage

and collect fees from them for the sight. Or they may place in a

borehole made in the body of an image of a serpent, or in a hole in

the corner of a temple, or in the hollow of an ant-hill, a cobra,

which is, by diet, rendered unconscious, and call upon credulous

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

345

spectators to see it (on payment of a certain amount of fee). As to

persons who are not by nature credulous, spies may sprinkle over

or give a drink of, such sacred water as is mixed with anasthetic

ingredients and attribute their insensibility to the curse of gods. Or

by causing an outcast person (*âbhityáktá*) to be bitten by a cobra,

spies may collect revenue under the pretext of undertaking

remedial measures against ominous phenomena.

Or one of the king's spies in the garb of a merchant, may

become a partner of a rich merchant and carry on trade in concert

with him. As soon as a considerable amount of money has been

gathered as sale-proceeds, deposits and loans, he may cause

himself to be robbed of the amount.

This will explain what the examiner of coins and the

state-goldsmith may also do.

Or else a spy, in the garb of a rich merchant, or a real rich

merchant famous for his vast commerce, may borrow or take on

pledge vast quantities of gold, silver, and other commodities, or

borrow from corporations bar gold, or coined gold for various

kinds of merchandise to be procured from abroad. After having

done this he may allow himself to be robbed of it the same night.

Prostitute spies under the garb of chaste women, may cause

themselves to be enamoured of persons who are seditious. No

sooner are the seditious persons seen within the abode of the

female spies than they shall be seized and their property

confiscated to the Government. Or whenever a quarrel arises

between any two seditious parties of the same family, poisoners,

previously engaged for the purpose, may administer poison to one

party; and the other party may be accused of the offence and

deprived of their. property.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

346

An outcast, under the guise of a high-born man, may claim

from a seditious person a large amount of money professed to have

been placed in the latter's custody by the claimant, or a large debt

outstanding against the seditious person, or a share of parental

property. (An outcast) may pretend to be the slave of a seditious

person; and he may represent the wife, daughter, or

daughter-in-law of the seditious person as a slave-woman or as his

own wife; and when the outcast is lying at the door of the seditious

person's house at night or is living elsewhere, a fiery spy may

murder him and declare:--"The claimant (of his own property or

wife) has been thus killed." And for this offence others (*i.e.*, the

seditious person and his followers) shall be deprived of their

property.

Or a spy, under the garb of an ascetic, may offer inducements

to a seditious person to acquire more wealth by taking in aid the art

of witchcraft, and say:--"I am proficient in such witchcraft as

brings inexhaustible wealth, or entitles a man to get admission into

the king's palace, or can win the love of any woman, or can put an

end to the life of one's enemy, or can lengthen the duration of one's

life, or can give a son to any one, if desired." If the seditious person

shows his desire to carry on the process of witchcraft securing

wealth, the spy may make rich offerings, consisting of flesh, wine,

and scent to the deity near an altar in a burial-ground wherein a

dead body of a man or of a child with a little quantity of money has

been previously hidden. After the performance of worship is over,

the hidden treasure may be dug out and the seditious person, may

be told that as the offerings fell short, the treasure is

proportionately small; that the richest of offerings should be made

to acquire vast amount of treasure, and that he may purchase with

the newly-acquired wealth rich offerings. Then he may be caught

in the very act of purchasing commodities for offering.

A female spy, under the garb of a bereaved mother, may (in

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

347

connection with the above case) raise an alarm, crying that her

child was murdered (for the purposes of witchcraft).

When a seditious person is engaged in sorcery at night or in a

sacrificial performance in a forest, or in sports in a park, fiery spies

may murder him and carry away the corpse as that of an outcast.

Or a spy, under the garb of a servant of a seditious person,

may mix counterfeit coins with the wages (he has received from his

master), and pave the way for his arrest.

Or a spy, under the garb of a goldsmith, may undertake to do

some work in the house of a seditious person, and gather in his

employer's house such instruments as are necessary to manufacture

counterfeit coins.

A spy, under the garb of a physician, may declare a healthy

person of seditious character to be unhealthy (and administer

poison). Or a spy, attending as a servant upon a seditious person

may not only call for an explanation from another fraudulent spy as

to how certain articles necessary for the installation of a king and

also the letters of an enemy came into the possession of his master,

but also volunteer an explanation himself.

Measures such as the above shall be taken only against the

seditious and the wicked and never against others.

\* Just as fruits are gathered from a garden as often as they

become ripe, so revenue shall be collected as often as it becomes

ripe. Collection of revenue or of fruits, when unripe, shall never be

carried on, lest their source may be injured, causing immense

trouble.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "Replenishment of the Treasury" in Book

V, "The Conduct of Courtiers" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

348

of the ninety-second chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. CONCERNING SUBSISTENCE TO GOVERNMENT SERVANTS.

IN accordance with the requirements of his forts and country

parts, the king should fix under one-fourth of the total revenue the

charges of maintaining his servants. He should look to the bodily

comforts of his servants by providing such emoluments as can

infuse in them the spirit of enthusiasm to work. He should not

violate the course of righteousness and wealth.

The sacrificial priest (*ritvig*), the teacher, the minister, the

priest (*purohita*), the commander of the army, the heir-apparent

prince, the mother of the king, and the queen shall (each receive)

48,000 (*panas* per annum). With this amount of subsistence, they

will scarcely yield themselves to temptation and hardly be

discontented.

The door-keeper, the superintendent of the harem

(*antarvamsika*) the commander (*prasástri*), the collector-general,

and the chamberlain, 24,000. With this amount they become

serviceable.

The prince (*kumára*), the nurse of the prince, the chief

constable (*náyaka*), the officer in charge of the town (*paura*) the

superintendent of law or commerce (*vyávahárika*), the

superintendent of manufactories (*karmántika*), members of the

council of ministers, the superintendents of country parts and of

boundaries, 12,000. With this they will be loyal and powerful

supporters of the king's cause.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

349

The chiefs of military corporations, the chiefs of elephants, of

horses, of chariots and of infantry and commissioners

(*pradeshtárah*), 8,000. With this amount they can have a good

following in their own communities.

The Superintendents of infantry, of cavalry, of chariots and of

elephants, the guards of timber and elephant forests, 4,000.

The chariot-driver, the physician of the army, the trainer of

horses, the carpenter, (*vardhaki*), and those who rear animals

(*yoniposhaka*), 2,000.

The foreteller, the reader of omens, the astrologer, the reader

of *Puránas*, the storyteller, the bard (*mágadha*), the retinue of the

priest, and all superintendents of departments, 1,000.

Trained soldiers, the staff of accountants and writers, 500.

Musicians (*kusílava*), 250. Of these, the trumpet-blowers

(*túryakara*) shall get twice as much wages as others. Artisans and

carpenters, 120.

Servants in charge of quadrupeds and bipeds, workmen doing

miscellaneous work, attendants upon the royal person,

body-guards, and the procurer of free labourers shall receive a

salary of 60 *panas*.

The honourable play-mate of the king (*áryayukta*), the

elephant-driver, the sorcerer (*manavaka*), miners of mountains

(*sailakhanaka*), all kinds of attendants, teachers, and learned men

shall have honorarium ranging from 500 to 1,000 (panas)

according to their merit.

A messenger of middle quality shall receive 10 *panas* for

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

350

each *yojana* he travels; and twice as much when he travels from 10

to 100 *yojanas.*

Whoever represents the king in the *rájasúya* and other

sacrifices shall get three times as much as is paid to others who are

equal to him in learning; and the charioteer of the king (in the

sacrifices), 1,000.

Spies such as the fradulent (*kápatika*), the indifferent

(*udásthita*)*,* the house-holder, the merchant, and the ascetic 1,000.

The village-servant (*grámabhritaka*), fiery spies, poisoners

and mendicant women, 500 *(panas).*

Servants leading the spies, 250 or in proportion to the work

done by them.

Superintendents of a hundred or a thousand coinmunities

(*varga*) shall regulate the subsistence, wages, profits, appointinent,

and transference (*vikshepa*)*,* of the men under them.

There shall be no transference of officers employed to guard

the royal buildings, forts, and country parts. The chief officers

employed to superintend the above places shall be many and shall

permanently hold the same office.

The sons and wives of those who die while on duty shall get

subsistence and wages. Infants, aged persons, or deceased persons

related to the deceased servants shall also be shown favour. On

occasions of funerals, sickness, or child-birth, the king shall give

presentations to his servants concerned therein.

When wanting in money, the king may give forest produce,

cattle, or fields along with a small amount of money. If he is

desirous to colonise waste lands, he shall make payments in money

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

351

alone; and if he is desirous of regulating the affairs of all villages

equally, then he shall give no village to any (of his servants).

Thus the king shall not only maintain his servants, but also

increase their subsistence and wages in consideration of their

learning and work.

Substituting one *ádhaka* for the *salar* of 60 *panas* payment in

gold may be commuted for that in kind.

Footmen, horses, chariots, and elephants shall be given

necessary training in the art of war at sunrise, on all days but those

of conjunction (of planets). on these occasions of training, the king

shall ever be present and witness their exercise.

Weapons and armour shall be entered into the armoury only

after they are marked with the king's seal.

Persons with weapons shall not be allowed to move anywhere

unless they are permitted by a passport.

When weapons are either lost or spoilt, the superintendent

shall pay double their value; an account of the weapons that are

destroyed shall be kept up.

Boundary-guards shall take away the weapons and armour

possessed by caravans unless the latter are provided with a passport

to travel with weapons.

When starting on a military tour, the king shall put his army in

action. On such occasions, spies, under the garb of merchants, shall

supply to military stations all kinds of merchandise for double the

quantity of the same to be repaid in future. Thus not only is there

afforded an opportunity for the sale of the king's merchandise, but

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

352

also is there a way opened for a good return for the wages paid.

Thus, when both the receipts and expenditure are properly

cared for, the king will never find himself in financial or military

difficulties.

Such are the alternatives with regard to subsistence and

wages.

\* Spies, prostitutes, artisans, singers, and aged military

officers shall vigilantly examine the pure or impure conduct of

military men.

[Thus ends Chapter III, "Concerning Subsistence to Government

Servants" in Book V, “The Conduct of Courtiers” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the ninety-third chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. THE CONDUCT OF A COURTIER.

WHOEVER possesses enough experience of the world and its

affairs may, through the influence of an interested friend, seek the

favour of a king who is endowed with amiable qualities and is

possessed of all the elements of sovereignty. He may court the

favour of any king provided he thinks:--Just as I am in need of a

patron, so is this king possessed of a taste for good advice and is of

amiable character. He may even court the favour of such a king as

is poor and destitute of the elements of sovereignty, but never, of

such a one as is of a depraved character: whoever, as a king, is

destitute of good temper and amiable character cannot, by reason

of his habitual hatred of the science of polity and an inborn

proclivity to evil ways, maintain his sovereignty, though he is

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

353

possessed of immense sovereign power.

Having obtained admittance to an amiable king, he shall give

the king instructions in sciences. Absence of contradiction from the

king will render his position secure. When his opinion is sought

about present or future schemes needing much thought and

consideration, he may boldly and sensibly, and with no fear of

contradiction from the assembly of ministers, pronounce his

opinion so as to be in harmony with the principles of righteousness

and economy. When required, he may answer questions on points

of righteousness and economy (and tell the king):

"Following the rule that there should be no delay in putting

down by force even a strong confederacy of wicked people, you

should apply force against the wicked, if they have a strong

support; do not despise my advice, character and secrets; and by

means of gestures, I shall prevent you from inflicting punishments

on any one, when you are going to do so either willfully or under

provocation."

With such agreements with the king, he (a courtier) may enter

on the duty assigned to him. He shall sit by the side of, and close to,

the king and far from the seat of another courtier. He shall avoid

speaking slyly against the opinion of any member of the assembly;

he shall never make incredible or false statements; nor loud

laughter with no cause for jest, and loud noise and spittle. He shall

also avoid talking to another in secret, mutual conversation with

another in the assembly (of ministers), appearing in royal dress in

the public, haughtiness, buffoonery, open request for gems and

promotions, seeing with one eye, biting the lips, brow-beating,

interrupting the king while speaking, enmity with a strong party,

association with women, pimps, messengers of foreign kings,

enemies, inimical parties, dismissed officers, and wicked people,

stubborn adherence to a single purpose, and contact with any

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

354

confederacy of men.

\* Without losing the opportune moments, he should speak of the

king's interest; of his own interest when in company with persons

friendly to him; and of others interests in a suitable time and place,

and in conformity to the principles of righteousness and economy.

\* When asked, he should tell the king what is both good and

pleasing, but not what is bad, though pleasing; if the king is pleased

to listen, he may secretly tell what, though unpleasant, is good.

\* He may even keep silence, but. should never describe what is

hateful; by abstaining from talking of what the king hates, even

undesirable persons have become powerful when, seeing that the

king likes only pleasant things without caring for their evil

consequences, they have followed his will.

\* While laughing in jest, he should avoid loud laughter; he shall

avoid evil aspersions against others, nor ascribe evil to others; he

shall forgive evil done to himself and have as much forbearance as

the earth.

\* Self-protection shall be the first and constant thought of a wise

man; for the life of a man under the service of a king is aptly

compared to life in fire; whereas fire burns a part or the whole of

the body, if at all, the king has the power either to destroy or to

advance the whole family, consisting of sons and wives, of his

servants.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, “The Conduct of a Courtier” in Book V,

“The Conduct of Courtiers” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

the ninety-fourth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER V. TIME-SERVING.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

355

WHEN employed as a minister, he (the courtier) shall show

the net revenue that remains after all kinds of expenditure are met

with. He shall also give the exact particulars--as this is thus--of

whatever work is external, internal, secret, open, costly, or

negligible. He shall follow the king in his pursuits after hunting,

gambling, drinking, and sexual pleasures. Ever attending upon the

king, he shall, by flattery, endeavour to arrest his fall into evil

habits and save him from the intrigues, plots. and deceptions of

enemies. He shall also endeavour to read the mind and appearance

of the king.

By way of collecting his wandering thoughts into a resolve,

the king exhibits in his appearance and movements his inclination,

anger, pleasure, sorrow, determination, fear, and change in the

pairs of opposite feelings.

"By cognising wisdom in others, he is pleased; he attends to

the speech of others; he gives a seat; allows himself to be seen in

private; does not suspect in places of suspicion; takes delight in

conversation; spontaneously looks to things without being

reminded; tolerates what is said agreeably to reason; orders with

smiling face; touches with the hand; does not laugh at what is

commendable; commends the qualities of another behind him;

remembers (the courtier) while taking luncheon; engages himself

in sports accompanied by (the courtier); consults (the courtier)

when in trouble; honours the followers of the courtier; reveals the

secret; honours the courtier more and more; gives him wealth; and

averts his troubles;--these are the signs of the king's satisfaction

(with the courtier)."

The reverse of the above indicates his (the king's) displeasure.

Still, we shall describe them in plain terms:--

Angry appearance when the courtier is in sight; evading or

refusal to hear his speech; no inclination to give him a seat or to see

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

356

him; change in syllables and accents while talking to him; seeing

with one eye; brow-beating; biting the lips; rise of sweat; hard

breathing and smiling with no palpable cause; talking to himself;

sudden bending or raising of the body; touching the body or the

seat of another; molestation to another; contempt of learning, caste,

and country (of the courtier); condemnation of a colleague of equal

defects; condemnation of a man of opposite defects; condemnation

of his opponent; failure to acknowledge his good deeds;

enumeration of his bad deeds; attention to whoever enters into the

chamber; too much gift; uttering falsehood; change in the conduct

and attitude of visitors to the king; nay, the courtier shall also note

the change in the life of animals other than men.

*Kátyáyana* holds that this (king) showers his favours

broad-cast.

*Kaninka Bháradvája* says that *Krauncha* (a bird) has moved

from right to left.

*Dírgha Chárayana* says that this (king) is (like) a grass.

*Ghotamukha* says that (he is like) a wet cloth.

*Kinjalka* says that (he is like) an elephant pouring over water.

*Pisuna* is of opinion that one should declare him to be a

chariot-horse.

The son of *Pisuna* says that mortification ensues when his

opponent is courted.

When wealth and honour are discontinued, such a king may

be abandoned; or by recognising the character of the king as well as

his own defects, he may rectify himself ; or he may seek the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

357

protection of one of the best friends of the king.

\* Living with the king's friend, the courtier has to endeavour

to remove, through the medium of his own friends, the defects of

his master, and then come back to his original place, no matter

whether the king is alive or dead.

[Thus ends Chapter V “Time-serving” in Book V, “The Conduct of

Courtiers” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the ninety-fifth

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER VI. CONSOLIDATION OF THE KINGDOM AND ABSOLUTE SOVEREIGNTY.

THE minister shall thus avert the calamities in which the king

is involved; long before the apprehended death of the king, he

shall, in concert with his friends and followers allow visitors to the

king once in a month or two (and avoid their visits on other

occasions) under the plea that the king is engaged in performing

such rites as are calculated to avert national calamities, or are

destructive of enemies, or capable of prolonging life or of

procuring a son.

On appropriate occasions, he may show a pseudo-king not

only to the people, but also to messengers coming from friends or

enemies; and this (false) king shall make the minister his

mouth-piece in conversing with them as deserved. And through the

medium of the gate-keeper and the officer in charge of the harem,

the minister shall (pretend to) receive the orders of the king.

Displeasure or mercy to wrong-doers shall be shown only

indirectly.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

358

Both the treasury and the army shall be kept under the

command of two reliable and confidential persons and in a single

locality, either within the fort or at the boundary of the kingdom.

Cognates, princes, and other chiefs of the royal family may be

employed in works such as the capture of a chief who, employed as

a commander of a fort or the tracts of wilderness, has turned

inimical along with a strong band of supporters; or they may be

sent on an expedition full of difficulties, or to visit the family of the

king's friend.

Whoever, among the neighbouring kings, seems to threaten

with an invasion may be invited for some festival, marriage,

capture of elephants, purchase of horses, or of merchandise, or for

taking possession of some lands ceded to him, and captured; or

such an enemy may be kept at bay by an ally till an agreement of

not condemnable nature is made with him; or he may be made to

incur the displeasure of wild tribes or of his enemies; or whoever

among his nearest relatives is kept under guard may be promised a

portion of his territory and set against him.

Or with the help of nobles and princes of the king's family, the

minister may have the heir-apparent installed and show him to the

public.

Or having, as pointed out in the chapter concerning the

awards of punishments, removed the thorns of the kingdom, he

may conduct the administration.

Or if a chief among the neighbouring kings seems to give

trouble, the minister may invite him, saying "come here and I shall

make thee king," and then put him to death; or he may be kept at

bay by taking such measures as can ward off dangers.

Or having gradually placed the burden of administration on

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

359

the shoulders of the heir-apparent, the minister may announce the

death of the king to the public.

In case of the king's demise in an enemy's land, the minister,

having brought about an agreement between the enemy and a

friend pretending to be an enemy of the dead king, may withdraw

himself; or having installed in the king's fort any one of the

neighbouring kings, he may withdraw himself; or having installed

the heir-apparent, he may set the army against the enemy; and

when attacked by the enemy, he may take, as detailed elsewhere,

such measures as can ward off dangers.

"Thus," says Kautilya, "the minister shall invest himself with

the powers of sovereignty."

"Not so," says *Bháradvája*, "the king lying on his death-bed,

the minister may set up the princes and other chiefs of the royal

family against one another or against other chiefs. Whoever attacks

the kingdom may be put to death under the plea of disturbance and

annoyance to the people; or having secretly punished the chief

rebels of the royal family and brought them under his control, the

minister shall himself take possession of the kingdom, for on

account of the kingdom the father hates his sons, and sons their

father; why then should the minister who is the sole prop of the

kingdom (be an exception to it)? There-fore he shall never discard

what has, of its own accord, fallen into his hands; for it is a general

talk among the people that a woman making love of her own

accord will, when discarded, curse the man.

\* "An opportunity will only once offer itself to a man who is

waiting for it, and will not come a second time when he may be

desirous of accomplishing his work."

"But it is," says Kautilya, "unrighteous to do an act which

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

360

excites popular fury; nor is it an accepted rule. He shall, therefore,

install in the kingdom such a son of the king as is possessed of

amiable qualities. In the absence of a prince of good character, he

may place before himself a wicked prince, or a princess, or the

pregnant queen, and tell the other ministers:--„This is your caste

(*kshepa*); look to the father of this (boy) as well as to your own

valour and descent; this (boy) is merely a flag; and yourselves are

the lords; pray, how shall I act‟?"

As he is saying this, others, taken in confidence before, shall

say in reply:--"Who else than the one of your lead is capable of

protecting the mass of the people of the four castes of the king" ?

Then the other ministers will certainly agree to it. Accordingly he

shall install a prince, a princess, or the pregnant queen, and show

him or her to all the royal relations as well as to the messengers

coming from friends or enemies. He shall provide the ministers and

military officers with increased subsistence and salary, promising

them that "This (boy) will, after attaining full age, increase your

emolument still more." He shall likewise promise the chief officers

in charge of the forts and country parts as well as the parties of both

the friends and enemies. He shall then take necessary steps to

educate and train the prince.

Or he may install a child begotten on the princess by a man

of the same caste.

He shall keep as a representative of the prince one who is of

the same family, of little valour and of beautiful appearance, lest

the mother's mind may be agitated with wild apprehensions. He

shall justly protect her. He shall not provide himself with luxurious

means of enjoyment. As to the king, he may provide him with new

chariots, horses, jewels, dress, women and palaces.

\* When the prince comes of age, he may request the prince to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

361

relieve him from the intellectual worry. He may abandon the king,

if he (the king) is displeased; and follow him if he is pleased.

\* If he is disgusted with the ministerial life, he may go to a forest or

a long sacrifice, after having informed the queen of the safeguards

and persons that are employed to bring up the prince.

\* Even if the king is held by the chiefs under their influence, the

minister may, through the medium of the king's favourites, teach

him the principles of polity with illustrations, taken from the

*Itihása* and *Purána.*

\* Having taken the garb of an accomplished ascetic, the minister

may ingratiate himself with the king; and having brought the king

under his influence, he may take coercive measure against the

seditious.

[Thus ends Chapter VI "Consolidation of the Kingdom and

Absolute Sovereignty” in Book V, “The Conduct of Courtiers” of

the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the ninety-sixth chapter from

the beginning. With this, ends the fifth Book “The Conduct of

Courtiers” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 297-318.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

362

**Book VI: The Source of Sovereign**

**States**

## CHAPTER I. THE ELEMENTS OF SOVEREIGNTY.

THE king, the minister, the country, the fort, the treasury, the

army and the friend are the elements of sovereignty.

Of these, the best qualities of the king are:--

Born of a high family, godly, possessed of valour, seeing

through the medium of aged persons, virtuous, truthful, not of a

contradictory nature, grateful, having large aims, highly

enthusiastic, not addicted to procrastination, powerful to control

his neighbouring kings, of resolute mind, having an assembly of

ministers of no mean quality, and possessed of a taste for

discipline;--these are the qualities of an inviting nature.

Inquiry, hearing, perception, retention in memory, reflection,

deliberation, inference and steadfast adherence to conclusions are

the qualities of the intellect.

Valour, determination of purpose, quickness, and probity are

the aspects of enthusiasm.

Possessed of a sharp intellect, strong memory, and keen

mind, energetic, powerful, trained in all kinds of arts, free from

vice, capable of paying in the same coin by way of awarding

punishments or rewards, possessed of dignity, capable of taking

remedial measures against dangers, possessed of foresight, ready

to avail himself of opportunities when afforded in respect of place,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

363

time, and manly efforts, clever enough to discern the causes

necessitating the cessation of treaty or war with an enemy, or to lie

in wait keeping treaties, obligations and pledges, or to avail himself

of his enemy's weak points, making jokes with no loss of dignity or

secrecy, never brow-beating and casting haughty and stern looks,

free from passion, anger, greed, obstinacy, fickleness, haste and

back-biting habits, talking to others with a smiling face, and

observing customs as taught by aged persons;--such is the nature of

self-possession.

The qualifications of a minister have been described in the

beginning, middle, and at the close of the work.

Possessed of capital cities both in the centre and the

extremities of the kingdom, productive of subsistence not only to

its own people, but also to outsiders on occasions of calamities,

repulsive to enemies, powerful enough to put down neighbouring

kings, free from miry, rocky, uneven, and desert tracts as well as

from conspirators, tigers, wild beasts, and large tracts of

wilderness, beautiful to look at, containing fertile lands, mines,

timber and elephant forests, and pasture grounds, artistic,

containing hidden passages, full of cattle, not depending upon rain

for water, possessed of land and waterways, rich in various kinds

of commercial articles, capable of bearing the burden of a vast

army and heavy taxation, inhabited by agriculturists of good and

active character, full of intelligent masters and servants, and with a

population noted for its loyalty and good character;--these are the

qualities of a good country.

The excellent qualities of forts have already been described.

Justly obtained either by inheritance or by self-acquisition,

rich in gold and silver, filled with an abundance of big gems of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

364

various colours and of gold coins, and capable to withstand

calamities of long duration is the best treasury.

Coming down directly, from father and grandfather (of the

king), ever strong, obedient, happy in keeping their sons and wives

well contented, not averse to making a long sojourn, ever and

everywhere invincible, endowed with the power of endurance,

trained in fighting various kinds of battles, skillful in handling

various forms of weapons, ready to share in the weal or woe of the

king, and consequently not falling foul with him, and purely

composed of soldiers of *Kshatriya* caste, is the best army.

Coming down directly from father and grandfather,

long-standing, open to conviction, never falling foul, and capable

of making preparations for war quickly and on a large scale, is the

best friend.

Not born of a royal family, greedy, possessed of a mean

assembly of ministers, with disloyal subjects, ever doing

unrighteous acts, of loose character, addicted to mean pleasures,

devoid of enthusiasm, trusting to fate, indiscreet in action,

powerless, helpless, impotent, and ever injurious, is the worst

enemy. Such an enemy is easily uprooted.

\* Excepting the enemy, these seven elements, possessed of

their excellent characteristics are said to be the limb-like elements

of sovereignty.

\* A wise king can make even the poor and miserable elements

of his sovereignty happy and prosperous; but a wicked king will

surely destroy the most prosperous and loyal elements of his

kingdom.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

365

\* Hence a king of unrighteous character and of vicious habits

will, though he is an emperor, fall a prey either to the fury of his

own subjects or to that of his enemies.

\* But a wise king, trained in politics, will, though he

possesses a small territory, conquer the whole earth with the help

of the best-fitted elements of his sovereignty, and will never be

defeated.

[Thus, ends Chapter I "The Elements of Sovereignty" in Book VI,

"The Source of Sovereign States" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.

End of the ninety-seventh chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. CONCERNING PEACE AND EXERTION.

ACQUISITION and security (of property) are dependent

upon peace and industry.

Efforts to achieve the results of works undertaken is industry

(*vyáyáma*).

Absence of disturbance to the enjoyment of the results

achieved from works is peace.

The application of the six-fold royal policy is the source of

peace and industry.

Deterioration, stagnation, and progress are the three aspects

of position.

Those causes of human make which affect position are policy

and impolicy (*naya* and *apanaya*); fortune and misfortune (*aya* and

*anaya*) are providential causes. Causes, both human and

providential, govern the world and its affairs.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

366

What is unforeseen is providential; here, the attainment of

that desired end which seemed almost lost is (termed) fortune.

What is anticipated is human; and the attainment of a desired

end as anticipated is (due to policy).

What produces unfavourable results is impolicy. This can be

foreseen; but misfortune due to providence cannot be known.

The king who, being possessed of good character and

best-fitted elements of sovereignty, is the fountain of policy, is

termed the conqueror.

The king who is situated anywhere immediately on the

circumference of the conqueror's territory is termed the enemy.

The king who is likewise situated close to the enemy, but

separated from the conqueror only by the enemy, is termed the

friend (of the conqueror).

A neighbouring foe of considerable power is styled an

enemy; and when he is involved in calamities or has taken himself

to evil ways, he becomes assailable; and when he has little or no

help, he becomes destructible; otherwise (*i.e.*, when he is provided

with some help), he deserves to be harassed or reduced. Such are

the aspects of an enemy.

In front of the conqueror and close to his enemy, there happen

to be situated kings such as the conqueror's friend, next to him, the

enemy's friend, and next to the last, the conqueror's friend's friend,

and next, the enemy's friend's friend.

In the rear of the conqueror, there happen to be situated a

rearward enemy ( *párshnigráha*)*,* a rearward friend (*ákranda*), an

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

367

ally of the rearward enemy (*párshnigráhásárá),* and an ally of the

rearward friend (*ákrandására).*

That foe who is equally of high birth and occupies a territory

close to that of the conqueror is a natural enemy; while he who is

merely antagonistic and creates enemies to the conqueror is a

factitious enemy.

He whose friendship is derived from father and grandfather,

and who is situated close to the territory of the immediate enemy of

the conqueror is a natural friend; while he whose friendship is

courted for self-maintenance is an acquired friend.

The king who occupies a territory close to both the conqueror

and his immediate enemy in front and who is capable of helping

both the kings, whether united or disunited, or of resisting either of

them individually is termed a *Madhyama* (mediatory) king.

He who is situated beyond the territory of any of the above

kings and who is very powerful and capable of helping the enemy,

the conqueror, and the *Madhyama* king together or individually, or

of resisting any of them individually, is a neutral king

(*udásína*),--these are the (twelve) primary kings.

The conqueror, his friend, and his friend's friend are the three

primary kings constituting a circle of states. As each of these three

kings possesses the five elements of sovereignty, such as the

minister, the country, the fort, the treasury, and the army, a circle of

states consists of eighteen elements. Thus, it needs no commentary

to understand that the (three) Circles of States having the enemy

(of the conqueror), the *Madhyama* king, or the neutral king at the

centre of each of the three circles, are different from that of the

conqueror. Thus there are four primary Circles of States, twelve

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

368

kings, sixty elements of sovereignty, and seventy-two elements of

states.

Each of the twelve primary kings shall have their elements of

sovereignty, power, and end. Strength is power, and happiness is

the end.

Strength is of three kinds: power of deliberation is intellectual

strength; the possession of a prosperous treasury and a strong army

is the strength of sovereignty; and martial power is physical

strength.

The end is also of three kinds: that which is attainable by

deliberation is the end of deliberation; that which is attainable by

the strength of sovereignty is the end of sovereignty; and that

which is to be secured by perseverance is the end of martial power.

The possession of power and happiness in a greater degree

makes a king superior to another; in a less degree, inferior; and in

an equal degree, equal. Hence a king shall always endeavor to

augment his own power and elevate his happiness.

A king who is equal to his enemy in the matter of his

sovereign elements shall, in virtue of his own righteous conduct or

with the help of those who are hostile or conspiring against his

enemy, endeavor to throw his enemy‟s power into the shade; or if

he thinks:--

"That my enemy, possessed as he is of immense power, will

yet in the near future, hurt the elements of his own sovereignty, by

using contumelious language, by inflicting severe punishments,

and by squandering his wealth; that though attaining success for a

time yet he will blindly take himself to hunting, gambling, drinking

and women; that as his subjects are disaffected, himself powerless

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

369

and haughty, I can overthrow him; that when attacked, he will take

shelter with all his paraphernalia into a fort or elsewhere; that

possessed as he is of a strong army, he will yet fall into my hands,

as he has neither a friend nor a fort to help him; that a distant king is

desirous to put down his own enemy, and also inclined to help me

to put down my own assailable enemy when my resources are

poor; or that I may be invited as a *Madhyama* king,"--for these

reasons the conqueror may allow his enemy to grow in strength and

to attain success for the time being.

\* Throwing the circumference of the Circle of States beyond

his friend's territory, and making the kings of those states as the

spokes of that circle, the conqueror shall make himself as the nave

of that circle.

\* A reducible or a conquerable enemy will, when placed

between a conqueror and the conqueror's friend, appear to be

growing in strength.

[Thus ends Chapter II "Peace and Exertion " in Book VI, "The

Source of Sovereign States" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

the ninety-eighth chapter from the beginning. With this ends the

seventh Book "The Source of Sovereign States" of the *Arthasástra*

of Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

370

# Book VII, "The End of the Six-Fold Policy"

## CHAPTER I. THE SIX-FOLD POLICY, AND DETERMINATION OF DETERIORATION, STAGNATION AND PROGRESS.

THE Circle of States is the source of the six-fold policy.

My teacher says that peace (*sandhi*), war (*vigraha*)

observance of neutrality (*ásana*), marching (*yána*), alliance

(*samsraya*), and making peace with one and waging war with

another are the six forms of state-policy.

But *Vátavyádhi* holds that there are only two forms of policy,

peace and war, inasmuch as the six forms result from these two

primary forms of policy.

While Kautilya holds that as their respective conditions

differ, the forms of policy are six.

Of these, agreement with pledges is peace; offensive

operation is war; indifference is neutrality; making preparations is

marching; seeking the protection of another is alliance; and making

peace with one and waging war with another, is termed a double

policy (*dvaidhíbháva*)*.* These are the six forms.

Whoever is inferior to another shall make peace with him;

whoever is superior in power shall wage war; whoever thinks "no

enemy can hurt me, nor am I strong enough to destroy my enemy,"

shall observe neutrality; whoever is possessed of necessary means

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

371

shall march against his enemy; whoever is devoid of necessary

strength to defend himself shall seek the protection of another;

whoever thinks that help is necessary to work out an end shall

make peace with one and wage war with another. Such is the aspect

of the six forms of policy.

Of these, a wise king shall observe that form of policy which,

in his opinion, enables him to build forts, to construct buildings and

commercial roads, to open new plantations and villages, to exploit

mines and timber and elephant forests, and at the same time to

harass similar works of his enemy.

Whoever thinks himself to be growing in power more rapidly

both in quality and quantity (than his enemy), and the reverse of his

enemy, may neglect his enemy's progress for the time.

If any two kings hostile to each other find the time of

achieving the results of their respective works to be equal, they

shall make peace with each other.

No king shall keep that form of policy, which causes him the

loss of profit from his own works, but which entails no such loss on

the enemy; for it is deterioration.

Whoever thinks that in the course of time his loss will be less

than his acquisition as contrasted with that of his enemy, may

neglect his temporary deterioration.

If any two kings hostile to each other and deteriorating,

expect to acquire equal amount of wealth in equal time, they shall

make peace with each other.

That position in which neither progress nor retrogression is

seen is stagnation.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

372

Whoever thinks his stagnancy to be of a shorter duration and

his prosperity in the long run to be greater than his enemy's may

neglect his temporary stagnation.

My teacher says that if any two kings, who are hostile to each

other and are in a stationary condition expect to acquire equal

amount of wealth and power in equal time, they shall make peace

with each other.

"Of course," says Kautilya, "there is no other alternative."

Or if a king thinks:--

"That keeping the agreement of peace, I can undertake

productive works of considerable importance and destroy at the

same time those of my enemy; or apart from enjoying the results of

my own works, I shall also enjoy those of my enemy in virtue of

the agreement of peace; or I can destroy the works of my enemy by

employing spies and other secret means; or by holding out such

inducements as a happy dwelling, rewards, remission of taxes,

little work and large profits and wages, I can empty my enemy's

country of its population, with which he has been able to carry his

own works; or being allied with a king of considerable power, my

enemy will have his own works destroyed; or I can prolong my

enemy's hostility with another king whose threats have driven my

enemy to seek my protection; or being allied with me, my enemy

can harass the country of another king who hates me; or oppressed

by another king, the subjects of my enemy will immigrate into my

country, and I can, therefore, achieve the results of my own works

very easily; or being in a precarious condition due to the

destruction of his works, my enemy will not be so powerful as to

attack me; or by exploiting my own resources in alliance with any

two (friendly) kings, I can augment my resources; or if a Circle of

States is formed by my enemy as one of its members, I can divide

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

373

them and combine with the others; or by threats or favour, I can

catch hold of my enemy, and when he desires to be a member of

my own Circle of States, I can make him incur the displeasure of

the other members. and fall a victim to their own fury,"--if a king

thinks thus, then he may increase his resources by keeping peace.

Or if a king thinks:--

"That as my country is full of born soldiers and of

corporations of fighting men, and as it possesses such natural

defensive positions as mountains, forests, rivers, and forts with

only one entrance, it can easily repel the attack of my enemy; or

having taken my stand in my impregnable fortress at the border of

my country, I can harass the works of my enemy; or owing to

internal troubles and loss of energy, my enemy will early suffer

from the destruction of his works; or when my enemy is attacked

by another king, I can induce his subjects to immigrate into my

country," then he may augment his own resources by keeping open

hostility with such an enemy.

Or if a king thinks:--

"That neither is my enemy strong enough to destroy my

works, nor am I his; or if he comes to fight with me, like a dog with

a boar, I can increase his afflictions without incurring any loss in

my own works," then he may observe neutrality and augment his

own resources.

Or if a king thinks:--

"That by marching my troops it is possible to destroy the

works of my enemy; and as for myself, I have made proper

arrangements to safeguard my own works," then he may increase

his resources by marching.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

374

Or if a king thinks:--

"That I am strong enough neither to harass my enemy‟s works

nor to defend my own against my enemy's attack," then he shall

seek protection from a king of superior power and endeavour to

pass from the stage of deterioration to that of stagnancy and from

the latter to that of progress.

Or if a king thinks:--

"That by making peace with one, I can work out my own

resources, and by waging war with another, I can destroy the works

of my enemy," then he may adopt that double policy and improve

his resources.

\* Thus, a king in the circle of sovereign state shall, by

adopting the six-fold policy, endeavour to pass from the state of

deterioration to that of stagnation and from the latter to that of

progress.

[Thus ends Chapter I, "The Six-fold Policy and Determination of

Deterioration, Stagnation and Progress” in Book VII, “The end of

the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

ninety-ninth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. THE NATURE OF ALLIANCE.

WHEN the advantages derivable from peace and war are of

equal character, one should prefer peace; for disadvantages, such

as the loss of power and wealth, sojourning, and sin, are

ever-attending upon war.

The same holds good in the case of neutrality and war. Of the

two (forms of policy), double policy and alliance, double policy

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

375

(*i.e.,* making peace with one and waging war with another) is

preferable; for whoever adopts the double policy enriches himself,

being ever attentive to his own works, whereas an allied king has to

help his ally at his own expense.

One shall make an alliance with a king who is stronger than

one's neighbouring enemy; in the absence of such a king, one

should ingratiate oneself with one's neighbouring enemy, either by

supplying money or army or by ceding a part of one's territory and

by keeping oneself aloof; for there can be no greater evil to kings

than alliance with a king of considerable power, unless one is

actually attacked by one's enemy.

A powerless king should behave as a conquered king

(towards his immediate enemy); but when he finds that the time of

his own ascendancy is at hand due to a fatal disease, internal

troubles, increase of enemies, or a friend's calamities that are

vexing his enemy, then under the pretence of performing some

expiatory rites to avert the danger of his enemy, he may get out (of

the enemy's court); or if he is in his own territory, he should not go

to see his suffering enemy; or if he is near to his enemy, he may

murder the enemy when opportunity affords itself.

A king who is situated between two powerful kings shall seek

protection from the stronger of the two; or from one of them on

whom he can rely; or he may make peace with both of them on

equal terms. Then he may begin to set one of them against the other

by telling each that the other is a tyrant causing utter ruin to

himself, and thus cause dissension between them. When they are

divided, he may pat down each separately by secret or covert

means. Or, throwing himself under the protection of any two

immediate kings of considerable power, he may defend himself

against an immediate enemy. Or, having made an alliance with a

chief in a stronghold, he may adopt double policy (*i.e.,* make peace

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

376

with one of the two kings, and wage war with another). Or, be may

adapt himself to circumstances depending upon the causes of peace

and war in order. Or, he may make friendship with traitors,

enemies, and wild chiefs who are conspiring against both the kings.

Or, pretending to be a close friend of one of them, he may strike the

other at the latter's weak point by employing enemies, and wild

tribes. Or, having made friendship with both, he may form a Circle

of States. Or, he may make an alliance with the *madhyama* or the

neutral king; and with this help he may put down one of them or

both. Or when hurt by both, he may seek protection from a king of

righteous character among the *madhyama* king, the neutral king,

and their friends or equals, or from any other king whose subjects

are so disposed as to increase his happiness and peace, with whose

help he may be able to recover his lost position, with whom his

ancestors were in close intimacy, or blood relationship, and in

whose kingdom he can find a number of powerful friends.

\* Of two powerful kings who are on amicable terms with each

other, a king shall make alliance with one of them who likes him

and whom he likes; this is the best way of making alliance.

[Thus ends Chapter II, “The Nature of Alliance” in Book VII, “The

end of the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

the hundredth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. THE CHARACTER OF EQUAL, INFERIOR AND SUPERIOR KINGS; AND FORMS OF AGREEMENT MADE BY AN INFERIOR KING.

A KING desirous of expanding his own power shall make use

of the six-fold policy.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

377

Agreements of peace shall be made with equal and superior

kings; and an inferior king shall be attacked.

Whoever goes to wage war with a superior king will be

reduced to the same condition as that of a foot-soldier opposing an

elephant.

Just as the collision of an unbaked mud-vessel with a similar

vessel is destructive to both, so war with an equal king brings ruin

to both.

Like a stone striking an earthen pot, a superior king attains

decisive victory over an inferior king.

If a superior king discards the proposal of an inferior king for

peace, the latter should take the attitude of a conquered king, or

play the part of an inferior king towards a superior.

When a king of equal power does not like peace, then the

same amount of vexation as his opponent has received at his hands

should be given to him in return; for it is power that brings about

peace between any two kings: no piece of iron that is not made

red-hot will combine with another piece of iron.

When an inferior king is all submissive, peace should be

made with him; for when provoked by causing him troubles and

anger, an inferior king, like a wild fire, will attack his enemy and

will also be favoured by (his) Circle of States.

When a king in peace with another finds that greedy,

.impoverished, and oppressed as are the subjects of his ally, they do

not yet immigrate into his own territory lest they might be called

back by their master, then he should, though of inferior power,

proclaim war against his ally.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

378

When a king at war with another finds that greedy,

impoverished, and oppressed as are the subjects of his enemy, still

they do not come to his side in consequence of the troubles of war,

then he should, though of superior power, make peace with his

enemy or remove the troubles of war as far as possible.

When one of the two kings at war with each other and equally

involved in trouble finds his own troubles to be greater than his

enemy's, and thinks that by getting rid of his (enemy's) trouble his

enemy can successful wage war with him, then he should, though

possessing greater resources, sue for peace.

When, either in peace or war, a king finds neither loss to his

enemy nor gain to himself, he should, though superior, observe

neutrality.

When a king finds the troubles of his enemy irremediable, he

should, though of inferior power, march against the enemy.

When a king finds himself threatened by imminent dangers or

troubles, he should, though superior, seek the protection of another.

When a king is sure to achieve his desired ends by making

peace with one and waging war with another, he should, though

superior, adopt the double policy.

Thus it is that the six forms of policy are applied together.

As to their special application:--

\* When a powerless king finds himself attacked by a powerful

king, leading a Circle of States, he should submissively sue for

peace on the condition of offering treasure, army, himself or his

territory.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

379

\* Agreement made on the condition that with a fixed number of

troops or with the flower of his army, a king should present himself

(when called for), is peace termed *átmámisha*, „offering himself as

flesh.‟

\* Agreement made on the condition that the commander of the

army together with the heir-apparent should present himself (when

called for), is peace styled *purushántarasandhi,* „peace with

hostages other than the king himself‟; and it is conducive to

self-preservation, as it does not require the personal attendance of

the king.

\* Agreement made on the condition that the king himself or some

one else should march with the army to some place, as required, is

peace termed *adrishtapurusha, ‘*peace with no specified person to

serve‟; and it is conducive to the safety of the king and the chiefs of

his army.

\* In the first two forms of the peace, a woman of rank should be

given as an hostage, and in the last, a secret attempt should be made

to capture the enemy; these are the forms of peace concluded on the

condition of supplying his army.

\* When,by offering wealth, the rest of the elements of sovereignty

are set free, that peace is termed *parikraya,* „price.‟

\* Similarly, when peace is concluded by offering money capable of

being taken on a man's shoulders, it is termed *upagraha*, „subsidy‟;

and it is of various forms; Owing to distance and owing to its

having been kept long, the amount of the tribute promised may

sometimes fall in arrears.

\* Yet as such a burden can tolerably be paid in future, this peace is

better than the one with a woman given as an hostage. When the

parties making an agreement of peace are amicably united, it is

termed *suvarnasandhi*, „golden peace.‟

\* Quite reverse from the former is the peace called *kapála,* „half of

a pot,‟ which is concluded on the condition of paying immense

quantity of money.

\* In the first two, one should send the supply of raw materials,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

380

elephants, horses and troops; in the third, money; and in the fourth,

one should evade the payment under the plea of loss of results from

works; these are the forms of peace concluded on the payment of

money.

\* When by ceding a part of the territory, the rest of the kingdom

with its subjects are kept safe, it is termed *ádishta*, „ceded,‟ and is

of advantage to one who is desirous of destroying thieves and other

wicked persons (infesting the ceded part).

\* When with the exception of the capital, the whole of the territory,

impoverished by exploitation of its resources is ceded, it is termed

*uchchhinnasandhi,* „peace cut off from profit,‟ and is of advantage

to one who desires to involve the enemy in troubles.

\* When by the stipulation of paying the produce of the land, the

kingdom is set free, it is termed *avakraya*, „rent.‟ That which is

concluded by the promise of paying more than the land yields is

*paribhúshana*, „ornament.‟

\* One should prefer the first; but the last two based upon the

payment of the produce should be made only when one is obliged

to submit to power. These are the forms of peace made by ceding

territory.

\* These three kinds of peace are to be concluded by an inferior

king in submission to the power of a superior king owing to the

peculiar condition of his own works, circumstances and time.

[Thus ends Chapter III, “The Character of Equal, Inferior, and

Superior Kings; and Forms of Agreement made by an Inferior

King” in Book VII, “The end of the Six-fold Policy” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and first chapter from

the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. NEUTRALITY AFTER PROCLAIMING WAR OR AFTER CONCLUDING A TREATY OF PEACE;

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

381

**MARCHING AFTER PROCLAIMING WAR OR AFTER**

**MAKING PEACE; AND THE MARCH OF COMBINED**

**POWERS.**

NEUTRALITY or marching after proclaiming war or peace

has been explained.

*Sthána* (keeping quiet), *ásana* (withdrawal from hostility),

and *upekshana* (negligence) are synonymous with the word

„*ásana*,‟ „neutrality.‟ As to the difference between three aspects of

neutrality :---Keeping quiet, maintaining a particular kind of policy

is *sthána*; withdrawal from hostile actions for the sake of one‟s

own interests is *ásana*; and taking no steps (against an enemy) is

*upekshana.*

When two kings, who, though bent on making conquests, are

desirous of peace, are unable to proceed, one against the other, they

may keep quiet after proclaiming war or after making peace.

When a king finds it possible to put down by means of his

own army, or with the help of a friend, or of wild tribes, another

king of equal or superior power, then having set up proper defences

against both internal and external enemies, he may keep quiet after

proclaiming war.

When a king is convinced that his own subjects are brave,

united, prosperous, and able not only to carry on their own works

without interference, but also to harass his enemy's works, then he

may keep quiet after proclaiming war.

When a king finds that as his enemy's subjects are ill-treated,

impoverished and greedy and are ever being oppressed by the

inroads of the army, thieves, and wild tribes, they can be made

through intrigue to join his side; or that his own agriculture and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

382

commerce are flourishing while those of his enemy are waning; or

that as the subjects of his enemy are suffering from famine, they

will immigrate into his own territory; or that, though his own

returns of agriculture and commerce are falling and those of his

enemy increasing, his own subjects will never desert him in favour

of his enemy; or that by proclaiming war, he can carry off, by force,

the grains, cattle and gold of his enemy; or that he can prevent the

import of his enemy's merchandise, which was destructive of his

own commerce; or that valuable merchandise would come to his

own territory, leaving that of his enemy; or that war being

proclaimed, his enemy would be unable to put down traitors,

enemies, and wild tribes and other rebels, and would be involved in

war with them; or that his own friend would in a very short time

accumulate wealth without much loss and would not fail to follow

him in his march, since no friend would neglect the opportunity of

acquiring a fertile land and a prosperous friend like himself,--then

in view of inflicting injuries on his enemy and of exhibiting his

own power, he may keep quiet after proclaiming war.

But my teacher says that turning against such a king, his

enemy may swallow him.

„Not so,‟ says Kautilya, „impoverishment of the enemy who is

free from troubles is all that is aimed at (when a king keeps quiet

after proclaiming war). As soon as such a king acquires sufficient

strength, he will undertake to destroy the enemy. To such a king,

the enemy‟s enemy will send help to secure his own personal

safety.‟ Hence, whoever is provided with necessary strength may

keep quiet after proclaiming war.

When the policy of keeping quiet after proclaiming war is

found productive of unfavourable results, then one shall keep quiet

after making peace.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

383

Whoever has grown in strength in consequence of keeping

quiet after proclaiming war should proceed to attack his enemy.

When a king finds that his enemy has fallen into troubles; that

the troubles of his enemy‟s subjects can by no means be remedied;

that as his enemy‟s subjects are oppressed, ill-treated, disaffected,

impoverished, become effiminate and disunited among

themselves, they can be prevailed upon to desert their master; that

his enemy‟s country has fallen a victim to the inroads of such

calamities, as fire, floods, pestilence epidemics (*maraka*), and

famine and is therefore losing the flower of its youth and its

defensive power,--then he should march after proclaiming war.

When a king is so fortunate as to have a powerful friend in

front and a powerful ally (*ákranda*) in the rear, both with brave and

loyal subjects, while the reverse is the case with he enemies both in

front and in the rear, and when he finds it possible for his friend to

hold his frontal enemy in check, and for his rear-ally to keep his

rear-enemy (*párshnigráha*) at bay, then he may march after

proclaiming war against his frontal enemy.

When a king finds it possible to achieve the results of victory

single-handed in a very short time, then he may march (against his

frontal enemy) after proclaiming war against his rear-enemies;

otherwise he should march after making peace (with his

rear-enemies).

When a king finds himself unable to confront his enemy

single-handed and when it is necessary that he should march, then

he should make the expedition in combination with kings of

inferior, equal, or superior powers.

When the object aimed at is of a definite nature, then the share

of spoils should be fixed; but when it is of a manifold or complex

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

384

nature, then with no fixity in the share of the spoils. When no such

combination is possible, he may request a king either to supply him

with the army for a fixed share, or to accompany him for an equal

share of the spoils.

When profit is certain, then they should march with fixed

shares of profit; but when it is uncertain, with no fixity of shares.

\* Share of profit proportional to the strength of the army is of

the first kind; that which is equal to the effort made is the best;

shares may be allotted in proportion to the profit earned or to the

capital invested.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, "Neutrality after Proclaiming War or after

Concluding a Treaty of Peace; Marching after Proclaiming War or

after Making Peace; and the March of Combined Powers,” in Book

VII, “The end of the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and second chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER V. CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT MARCHING AGAINST AN ASSAILABLE ENEMY AND A STRONG ENEMY; CAUSES LEADING TO THE DWINDLING, GREED, AND DISLOYALTY OF THE ARMY; AND CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT THE COMBINATION OF POWERS.

WHEN two enemies, one an assailable enemy and another a

strong enemy, are equally involved in troubles, which of them is to

be marched against first?

The strong enemy is to be marched against first; after

vanquishing him, the assailable enemy is to be attacked, for, when

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

385

a strong enemy has been vanquished, an assailable enemy will

volunteer of his own accord to help the conqueror; but not so, a

strong enemy.

Which is to be marched against---an assailable enemy

involved in troubles to a greater degree or a strong enemy troubled

to a lesser degree?

My teacher says that as a matter of easy conquest, the

assailable enemy under worse troubles should be marched against

first.

Not so, says Kautilya: The conqueror should march against

the strong enemy under less troubles, for the troubles of the strong

enemy, though less, will be augmented when attacked. True, that

the worse troubles of the assailable enemy will be still worse when

attacked. But when left to himself, the strong enemy under less

troubles will endeavour to get rid of his troubles and unite with the

assailable enemy or with another enemy in the rear of the

conqueror.

When there are two assailable enemies, one of virtuous

character and under worse troubles, and another of vicious

character, under less troubles, and with disloyal subjects, which of

them is to be marched against first?

When the enemy of virtuous character and under worse

troubles is attacked, his subjects will help him; whereas, the

subjects of the other of vicious character and under less troubles

will be indifferent. Disloyal or indifferent subjects will endeavour

to destroy even a strong king. Hence the conqueror should march

against that enemy whose subjects are disloyal.

Which is to be marched against--an enemy whose subjects are

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

386

impoverished and greedy or an enemy whose subjects are being

oppressed?

My teacher says that the conqueror should march against that

enemy whose subjects are impoverished and greedy, for

impoverished and greedy subjects suffer themselves to be won

over to the other side by intrigue, and are easily excited. But not so

the oppressed subjects whose wrath can be pacified by punishing

the chief men (of the State).

Not so, says Kautilya: for though impoverished and greedy,

they are loyal to their master and are ready to stand for his cause

and to defeat any intrigue against him; for it is in loyalty that all

other good qualities have their strength. Hence the conqueror

should march against the enemy whose subjects are oppressed.

Which enemy is to be marched against--a powerful enemy of

wicked character or a powerless enemy of righteous character?

The strong enemy of wicked character should be marched

against, for when he is attacked, his subjects will not help him, but

rather put him down or go to the side of the conqueror. But when

the enemy of virtuous character is attacked, his subjects will help

him or die with him.

\* By insulting the good and commending the wicked; by causing

unnatural and unrighteous slaughter of life;

\* by neglecting the observance of proper and righteous customs; by

doing unrighteous acts and neglecting righteous ones;

\* by doing what ought not to be done and not doing what ought to

be done; by not paying what ought to be paid and exacting what

ought not to be taken;

\* by not punishing the guilty and severely punishing the less guilty;

by arresting those who are not to be caught hold of and leaving

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

387

those who are to be arrested;

\* by undertaking risky works and destroying profitable ones; by

not protecting the people against thieves and by robbing them of

their wealth;

\* by giving up manly enterprise and condemning good works; by

hurting the leaders of the people and despising the worthy;

\* by provoking the aged, by crooked conduct, and by

untruthfulness; by not applying remedies against evils and

neglecting works in hand;

\* and by carelessness and negligence of himself in maintaining the

security of person and property of his subjects, the king causes

impoverishment, greed, and disaffection to appear among his

subjects;

\* when a people are impoverished, they become greedy; when they

are greedy, they become disaffected; when disaffected, they

voluntarily go to the side of the enemy or destroy their own master.

Hence, no king should give room to such causes as would

bring about impoverishment, greed or disaffection among his

people. If, however, they appear, he should at once take remedial

measures against them.

Which (of the three) is the worst--an impoverished people?

greedy people? or disaffected people?

An impoverished people are ever apprehensive of oppression

and destruction (by over-taxation, etc.), and are therefore desirous

of getting rid of their impoverishment, or of waging war or of

migrating elsewhere.

A greedy people are ever discontented and they yield

themselves to the intrigues of an enemy.

A disaffected people rise against their master along with his

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

388

enemy.

When the dwindling of the people is due to want of gold and

grain, it is a calamity fraught with danger to the whole of the

kingdom and can be remedied with difficulty. The dearth of

efficient men can be made up by means of gold and grain. Greed

(is) partial and is found among a few chief officers, and it can be

got rid of or satisfied by allowing them to plunder an enemy's

wealth. Disaffection or disloyalty (*virága*) can be got rid of by

putting down the leaders; for in the absence of a leader or leaders,

the people are easily governed (*bhogya*) and they will not take part

in the intrigues of enemies. When a people are too nervous to

endure the calamities, they first become dispersed, when their

leaders are put down; and when they are kept under restraint, they

endure calamities.

Having well considered the causes which bring about peace

or war, one should combine with kings of considerable power and

righteous character and march against one's enemy.

„A king of considerable power,‟ means one who is strong

enough to put down or capture an enemy in the rear of his friend or

to give sufficient help to his friend in his march.

„A king of righteous character,‟ means one who does what

one has promised to do, irrespective of good or bad results.

Having combined with one of superior power, or with two of

equal power among such kings, should the conqueror march

against his enemy?

It is better to march combined with two kings of equal power;

for, if combined with a king of superior power, the ally appears to

move, caught hold of, by his superior, whereas in marching with

two kings of equal power, the same will be the result, only, when

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

389

those two kings are experts in the art of intrigue; besides it is easy

to separate them; and when one of them is wicked, he can be put

down by the other two and made to suffer the consequence of

dissension.

Combined with one of equal power or with two of lesser

power, should a king march against his enemy?

Better to march with two kings of lesser power; for the

conqueror can depute them to carry out any two different works

and keep them under his control. When the desired end is achieved,

the inferior king will quietly retire after the satisfaction of his

superior.

\* Till his discharge, the good conduct of an ally of usually bad

character should be closely scrutinised either by suddenly coming

out at a critical time from a covert position (*sattra*) to examine his

conduct, or by having his wife as a pledge for his good conduct.

\* Though actuated with feelings of true friendship, the conqueror

has reason to fear his ally, though of equal power, when the latter

attains success in his mission; having succeeded in his mission, an

ally of equal power is likely to change his attitude even towards the

conqueror of superior power.

\* An ally of superior power should not be relied upon, for

prosperity changes the mind. Even with little or no share in the

spoils, an ally of superior power may go back, appearing

contented; but some time afterwards, he may not fail to sit on the

lap of the conqueror and carry off twice the amount of share due to

him.

\* Having been satisfied with mere victory, the leading conqueror

should discharge his allies, having satisfied them with their shares

he may allow himself to be conquered by them instead of

attempting to conquer them (in the matter of spoils); it is thus that a

king can win the good graces of his Circle of States.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

390

[Thus ends Chapter V, "Considerations about Marching against an

Assailable Enemy and a Strong Enemy; Causes Leading to the

Dwindling, Greed, and Disloyalty of the Army; and Considerations

about the Combination of Powers” in Book VII, “The end of the

Sixfold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred

and third chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER VI. THE MARCH OF COMBINED POWERS; AGREEMENT OF PEACE WITH OR WITHOUT DEFINITE TERMS; AND PEACE WITH RENEGADES.

THE Conqueror should thus over-reach the second element,

(the enemy close to his territory):--He should engage his

neighbouring enemy to undertake a simultaneous march with him

and tell the enemy: "Thou, march in that direction, and I shall

march in this direction; and the share in the spoils is equal."

If the booty is to be equally divided, it is an agreement of

peace; if otherwise, it is overpowering the enemy.

An agreement of peace may be made with promise to carry

out a definite work (*paripanita*) or with no such promise

(*aparipanita*).

When the agreement is to the effect that "Thou, march to that

place, and I shall march to this place," it is termed an agreement of

peace to carry out a work in definite locality.

When it is agreed upon that "Thou, be engaged so long, I shall

be engaged thus long," it is an agreement to attain an object in a

fixed time.

When it is agreed upon that "Thou, try to accomplish that

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

391

work, and I shall try to finish this work," it is an agreement to

achieve a definite end.

When the conqueror thinks that "my enemy (now an ally) has

to march through an unknown country, which is intersected with

mountains, forests, rivers, forts and deserts which is devoid of

food-stuffs, people, pastoral grounds, fodder, firewood and water,

and which is far away, different from other countries, and not

affording suitable grounds for the exercise of his army; and I have

to traverse a country of quite the reverse description," then he

should make an agreement to carry out a work in a definite locality.

When the conqueror thinks that "my enemy has to work with

food stuffs falling short and with no comfort during the rainy, hot

or cold season, giving rise to various kinds of diseases and

obstructing the free exercise of his army during a shorter or longer

period of time than necessary for the accomplishment of the work

in hand; and I have to work during a time of quite the reverse

nature," then he should make time a factor of the agreement.

When the conqueror thinks that "my enemy has to accomplish

a work which, not lasting but trifling in its nature, enrages his

subjects, which requires much expenditure of time and money, and

which is productive of evil consequences, unrighteous, repugnant

to the *Madhyama* and neutral kings, and destructive of all

friendship; whereas, I have to do the reverse," then he should make

an agreement to carry out a definite work.

Likewise with space and time, with time and work, with space

and work, and with space, time, and work, made as terms of an

agreement, it resolves itself into seven forms.

Long before making such an agreement, the conqueror has to

fix his own work and then attempt to overreach his enemy.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

392

When, in order to destroy an enemy who has fallen into

troubles and who is hasty, indolent, and not foresighted, an

agreement of peace with no terms of time, space, or work is made

with an enemy merely for mutual peace, and when under cover of

such an agreement, the enemy is caught hold of at his weak points

and is struck, it is termed peace with no definite terms

(*aparipanita*). With regard to this there is a saying as follows:--

"Having kept a neighbouring enemy engaged with another

neighbouring enemy, a wise king should proceed against a third

king, and having conquered that enemy of equal power, take

possession of his territory."

Peace with no specific end (*akritachikírshá*), peace with

binding terms (*kritasleshana*), the breaking of peace

(*kritavidúshana*), and restoration of peace broken (*apasírnakriyá*)

are other forms of peace.

Open battle, treacherous battle, and silent battle (*i.e.* killing an

enemy by employing spies when there is no talk of battle at all), are

the three forms of battle.

When, by making use of conciliation and other forms of

stratagem and the like, a new agreement of peace is made and the

rights of equal, inferior, and superior powers concerned in the

agreement are defined according to their respective positions, it is

termed an agreement of peace with no specific end (other than

self-preservation).

When, by the employment of friends (at the Courts of each

other), the agreement of peace made is kept secure and the terms

are invariably observed and strictly maintained so that no

dissension may creep among the parties, it is termed peace with

binding terms.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

393

When, having proved through the agency of traitors and spies

the treachery of a king, who has made an agreement of peace, the

agreement is broken, it is termed the breaking of peace.

When reconciliation is made with a servant, or a friend, or any

other renegade, it is termed the restoration of broken peace.

There are four persons who run away from, and return to,

their master : one who had reason to run away and to return; one

who had no reason either to run away or to return; one who had

reason to run away, but none to return; and one who had no reason

to run away, but had reason to come back.

He who runs away owing to his master's fault and returns in

consideration of (his master's) good nature, or he who runs away

attracted by the good nature of his master's enemy and returns

finding fault with the enemy is to be reconciled as he had reason to

run away and to return.

Whoever runs away owing to his own fault and returns

without minding the good nature either of his old or new master is a

fickle-minded person having no explanation to account for his

conduct, and he should have no terms of reconciliation.

Whoever runs away owing to his master's fault and returns

owing to his own defects, is a renegade who had reason to run

away, but none to return: and his case is to be well considered

(before he is taken back).

Whoever returns deputed by the enemy; or of his own accord,

with the intention of hurting his old master, as is natural to persons

of such bad character; or coming to know that his old master is

attempting to put down the enemy, his new master, and

apprehensive of danger to himself; or looking on the attempt of his

new master to destroy his old master as cruelty, these should be

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

394

examined; and if he is found to be actuated with good motives, he

is to be taken back respectfully; otherwise, he should be kept at a

distance.

Whoever runs away owing to his own fault and returns owing

to his new master's wickedness is a renegade who had no reason to

run away, but had reason to come back; such a person is to be

examined.

When a king thinks that "This renegade supplies me with full

information about my enemy's weakness, and, therefore, he

deserves to remain here; his own people with me are in friendship

with my friends and at enmity with my enemies and are easily

excited at the sight of greedy and cruel persons or of a band of

enemies," he may treat such a renegade as deserved.

My teacher says that whoever has failed to achieve profit

from his works, lost his strength, or made his learning a

commercial article, or is very greedy, inquisitive to see different

countries, dead to the feelings of friendship, or has strong enemies,

deserves to be abandoned.

But Kautilya says that it is timidity, unprofessional business,

and lack of forbearance (to do so). Whoever is injurious to the

king's interests should be abandoned, while he who is injurious to

the interests of the enemy should be reconciled; and whoever is

injurious to the interests of both the king and his enemy should be

carefully examined.

When it is necessary to make peace with a king with whom no

peace ought to be made, defensive measures should be taken

against that point where he can show his power.

\* In restoring broken peace, a renegade or a person inclined

towards the enemy should be kept at such a distance that till the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

395

close of his life, he may be useful to the State.

\* Or, he may be set against the enemy or may be employed as a

captain of an army to guard wild tracts against enemies, or thrown

somewhere on the boundary.

\* Or, he may be employed to carry on a secret trade in new or old

commodities in foreign countries and may accordingly be accused

of conspiracy with the enemy.

\* Or, in the interests of future peace, a renegade who must be put to

death may at once be destroyed.

\* That kind of wicked character which has from the beginning

grown upon a man owing to his association with enemies is as ever

fraught with danger as constant living in company with a snake;

\* and is ever threatening with destruction just as a pigeon living on

the seeds of *plaksha* (holy fig-tree) is to the *salmali* (silk-cotton)

tree.

\* Whenbattle is fought in daylight and in some locality, it is termed

an open battle; threatening in one direction, assault in another,

destruction of an enemy captured while he was careless or in

troubles;

\* and bribing a portion of the army and destroying another portion,

are forms of treacherous fight; and attempt to win over the chief

officers of the enemy by intrigue, is the characteristic of silent

battle.

[Thus ends Chapter VI, “The March of Combined Powers;

Agreement of Peace with or without Definite Terms; and Peace

with Renegades,” in Book VII, “The end of the Sixfold Policy” of

the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and fourth chapter

from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER VII. PEACE AND WAR BY ADOPTING THE

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

396

**DOUBLE POLICY.**

THE conqueror may overpower the second member (*i.e.,* the

immediate enemy) thus:--

Having combined with a neighbouring king, the conqueror

may march against another neighbouring king. Or if he thinks that

"(my enemy) will neither capture my rear nor make an alliance

with my assailable enemy against whom I am going to march; (for

otherwise) I shall have to fight against great odds; (my ally) will

not only facilitate the collection of my revenue and supplies and

put down the internal enemies who are causing me immense

trouble, but also punish wild tribes and their followers entrenched

in their strongholds, reduce my assailable enemy to a precarious

condition or compel him to accept the proffered peace, and having

received as much profit as he desires, he will endeavour to endear

my other enemies to me," then the conqueror may proclaim war

against one and make peace with another and endeavour to get an

army for money or money for the supply of an army from among

his neighbouring kings.

When the kings of superior, equal or inferior power make

peace with the conqueror and agree to pay a greater, or equal, or

less amount of profit in proportion to the army supplied, it is

termed even peace; that which is of the reverse character is styled

uneven peace; and when the profit is proportionally very high, it is

termed deception (*atisandhi*).

When a king of superior power is involved in troubles, or is

come to grief or is afflicted with misfortune, his enemy, though of

inferior power, may request of him the help of his army in return

for a share in the profit proportional to the strength of the army

supplied. If the king to whom peace is offered on such terms is

powerful enough to retaliate, he may declare war; and otherwise he

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

397

may accept the terms.

In view of marching for the purpose of exacting some

expected revenue to be utilised in recouping his own strength and

resources, an inferior king may request of a superior the help of the

latter's army for the purpose of guarding the base and the rear of his

territory in return for the payment of a greater share in the profit

than the strength of the arm supplied deserves. The king to whom

such a proposal is made may accept the proposal, if the proposer is

of good intentions; but otherwise he may declare war.

When a king of inferior power or one who is provided with

the aid of forts and friends has to make a short march in order to

capture an enemy without waging war or to receive some expected

profit, he may request a third king of superior power involved

under various troubles and misfortunes the help of the latter's army

in return for the payment of a share in the profit less than the

strength of the army supplied deserves. If the king to whom this

proposal is made is powerful enough to retaliate, he may declare

war; but otherwise he may accept the proposal.

When a king of superior power and free from all troubles is

desirous of causing to his enemy loss of men an money in the

latter's ill-considered undertakings, or of sending his own

treacherous army abroad, or bringing his enemy under the clutches

of an inimical army, or of causing trouble to a reducible and

tottering enemy by setting a inferior king against that enemy, or is

desirous of having peace for the sake of peace itself and is

possessed of good intentions, he may accept a less share in the

profit (promise for the army supplied to another) and endeavour to

make wealth by combining with an ally if the latter is equally of

good intentions; but otherwise he may declare war (against that

ally).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

398

A king may deceive or help his equal as follows:--

When a king proposes peace to another king of equal power

on the condition of receiving the help of the latter army strong

enough to oppose an enemy's army, or to guard the front, centre,

and rear of his territory, or to help his friend, or to protect any other

wild tracts of his territory in return for the payment of a share in the

profit proportionally equal to the strength of the army supplied, the

latter may accept the terms if the proposer is of good intentions; but

otherwise he may declare war.

When a king of equal power, capable of receiving the help of

an army from another quarter requests of another king in troubles

due to the diminished strength of the elements of sovereignty, and

with many enemies, the help of the latter's army in return for the

payment of a share in the profit less than the strength of the army

supplied deserves, the latter, if powerful, may declare war or

accept the terms otherwise.

When a king who is under troubles, who has his works at the

mercy of his neighbouring kings, and who has yet to make an army,

requests of another king of equal power the help of the latter's army

in return for the payment of a share in the profit greater than the

strength of the army supplied deserves, the latter may accept the

terms if the proposer is of good intentions: but otherwise war may

be declared.

When, with the desire of putting down a king in troubles due

to the diminished strength of the elements of sovereignty, or with

the desire of destroying his well-begun work of immense and

unfailing profit, or with the intention of striking him in his own

place or on the occasion of marching, one, though frequently

getting immense (subsidy) from an assailable enemy of equal,

inferior, or superior power, sends demands to him again and again,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

399

then he may comply with the demands of the former if he is

desirous of maintaining his own power by destroying with the

army of the former an impregnable fortress of an enemy or a friend

of that enemy or laying waste the wild tracts of that enemy, or if he

is desirous of exposing the army of the ally to wear and tear even in

good roads and good seasons, or if he is desirous of strengthening

his own army with that of his ally and thereby putting down the ally

or winning over the army of the ally.

When a king is desirous of keeping under his power another

king of superior or inferior power as an assailable enemy and of

destroying the latter after routing out another enemy with the help

of the latter, or when he is desirous of getting back whatever he has

paid (as subsidy), he may send a proposal of peace to another on

the condition of paying more than the cost of the army supplied. If

the king to whom this proposal is made is powerful enough to

retaliate he may declare war; or if otherwise, he may accept the

terms; or he may keep quiet allied with the assailable enemy; or he

may supply the proposer of peace with his army full of traitors,

enemies and wild tribes.

When a king of superior power falls into troubles owing to the

weakness of the elements of his sovereignty, and requests of an

inferior king the help of the latter's army in return for the payment

of a share in the profit proportionally equal to the strength of the

army supplied, the latter, if powerful enough to retaliate, may

declare war and if otherwise, accept the terms.

A king of superior power may request of an inferior the help

of the latter's army in return for the payment of a share in the profit

less than the cost of the army supplied; and the latter, if powerful

enough to retaliate, may declare war, or accept the terms otherwise.

\* The king who is sued for peace and also the king who offers

peace should both consider the motive with which the proposal of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

400

peace is made, and adopt that course of action which on

consideration seems to be productive of good results.

[Thus ends Chapter VII "Peace and War by Adopting the Double

Policy” in Book VII, “The end of the Six-fold Policy” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and fifth chapter from

the beginning.]

## CHAPTER VIII. THE ATTITUDE OF AN ASSAILABLE ENEMY; AND FRIENDS THAT DESERVE HELP.

WHEN an assailable enemy who is in danger of being

attacked is desirous of taking upon himself the condition which led

one king to combine with another against himself, or of splitting

them from each other, he may propose peace to one of the kings on

the condition of himself paying twice the amount of profit accruing

from the combination. The agreement having been made, he may

describe to that king the loss of men and money, the hardships of

sojourning abroad, the commission of sinful deeds, and the misery

and other personal troubles to which that king would have been

subjected. When the king is convinced of the truth, the amount

promised may be paid; or having made that king to incur enmity

with other kings, the agreement itself may be broken off.

When a king is inclined to cause to another, loss of men and

money in the ill-considered undertakings of the latter or to frustrate

the latter in the attempt of achieving large profits from well-begun

undertakings; or when he means to strike another at his (another's)

own place or while marching; or when he intends to exact subsidy

again in combination with the latter's assailable enemy; or when he

is in need of money and does not like to trust to his ally, he may, for

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

401

the time being, be satisfied with a small amount of profit.

When a king has in view the necessity of helping a friend or of

destroying an enemy, or the possibility of acquiring much wealth

(in return for the present help) or when he intends to utilize in

future the services of the one now obliged by him, he may reject the

offer of large profit at the present in preference of a small gain in

future.

When a king means to help another from the clutches of

traitors or enemies or of a superior king threatening the very

existence of the latter, and intends thereby to set an example of

rendering similar help to himself in future, he should receive no

profit either at the present or in the future.

When a king means to harass the people of an enemy or to

break the agreement of peace between a friend and a foe, or when

he suspects of another's attack upon himself, and when owing to

any of these causes, he wants to break peace with his ally, he may

demand from the latter an enhanced amount of profit long before it

is due. The latter under these circumstances may demand for a

procedure (*krama*) either at the present or in the future. The same

procedure explains the cases treated of before.

The conqueror and his enemy helping their respective friends

differ according as their friends are such or are not such as

undertake possible, praiseworthy or productive works and as are

resolute in their undertakings and are provided with loyal and

devoted subjects.

Whoever undertakes tolerable work is a beginner possible

work: whoever undertakes an unblemished work is a beginner of

praiseworthy work; whoever undertakes work of large profits is a

beginner of a productive work; whoever takes no rest before the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

402

completion of the work undertaken is a resolute worker; and

whoever has loyal and devoted subjects is in a position to

command help and to bring to a successful termination any work

without losing anything in the form of favour. When such friends

are gratified by the enemy or the conqueror, they can be of

immense help to him; friends of reverse character should never be

helped.

Of the two, the conqueror and his enemy, both of whom may

happen to have a friend in the same person, he who helps a true or a

truer friend overreaches the other; for, by helping a true friend, he

enriches himself, while the other not only incurs loss of men and

money and the hardships of sojourning abroad, but also showers

benefits on an enemy who hates the benefactor all the more for his

gratification.

Whoever of the two, the conqueror and his enemy, who may

happen to have a friend in the same *Madhyama* king, helps a

*Madhyama* king of true or truer friendship overreaches the other;

for, by helping a true friend, he enriches himself, while the other

incurs loss of men and money and the difficulties of sojourning

abroad. When a *Madhyama* king thus helped is devoid of good

qualities, then the enemy overreaches the conqueror: for, such a

*Madhyama* king, spending his energies on useless undertakings

and receiving help with no idea of returning it, withdraws himself

away.

The same thing holds good with a neutral king under similar

circumstances.

In case of helping with a portion of the army one of the two, a

*Madhyama* or a neutral king, whoever happens to help one who is

brave, skillful in handling weapons, and possessed of endurance

and friendly feelings will himself be deceived while his enemy,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

403

helping one of reverse character, will overreach him.

When a king achieves this or that object with the assistance of

a friend who is to receive the help of his army in return later on,

then he may send out of his various kinds of army--such as

hereditary army, hired army, army formed of corporations of

people, his friend's army and the army composed of wild

tribes--either that kind of army which has the experience of all

sorts of grounds and of seasons or the army of enemies or of wild

tribes, which is far removed in space and time.

When a king thinks that, "Though successful, my ally may

cause my army to move in an enemy's territory or in wild tracts,

and during unfavourable seasons and thereby he may render it

useless to me," then under the excuse of having to employ his army

otherwise, he may help his ally in any other way; but when he is

obliged to lend his army, he may send that kind of his army, which

is used to the weather of the time of operation, under the condition

of employing it till the completion of the work, and of protecting it

from dangers. When the ally has finished his work, he should,

under some excuse, try to get back his army or he may send to his

ally that army which is composed of traitors, enemies, and wild

tribes; or having made peace with the ally's assailable enemy, he

may deceive the ally.

\* When the profit accruing to kings under an agreement,

whether they be of equal, inferior, or superior power, is equal to all,

that agreement is termed peace (*sandhi*); when unequal, it is

termed defeat (*vikrama*). Such is the nature of peace and war.

[Thus ends Chapter VIII, “The Attitude of an Assailable Enemy;

and Friends that Deserve Help,” in Book VII, “The end of the

Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred

and sixth chapter from the beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

404

## CHAPTER IX. AGREEMENT FOR THE ACQUISITION OF A FRIEND OR GOLD.

OF the three gains, the acquisition of a friend, of gold, and of

territory, accruing from the march of combined powers, that which

is mentioned later is better than the one previously mentioned; for

friends and gold can be acquired by means of territory; of the two

gains, that of a friend and of gold, each can be a means to acquire

the other.

Agreement under the condition, "let us acquire a friend, etc.,"

is termed even peace; when one acquires a friend and the other

makes an enemy, etc., it is termed uneven peace; and when one

gains more than the other, it is deception.

In an even peace (*i.e*., agreement on equal terms) whoever

acquires a friend of good character or relieves an old friend from

troubles, overreaches the other; for help given in misfortune

renders friendship very firm.

Which is better of the two: a friend of long-standing, but

unsubmissive nature, or a temporary friend of submissive nature,

both being acquired by affording relief from their respective

troubles?

My teacher says that a long-standing friend of unsubmissive

nature is better inasmuch as such a friend, though not helpful, will

not create harm.

Not so, says Kautilya: a temporary friend of submissive

nature is better; for such a friend will be a true friend so long as he

is helpful; for the real characteristic of friendship lies in giving

help.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

405

Which is the better of two submissive friends: a temporary

friend of large prospects, or a longstanding friend of limited

prospects?

My teacher says that a temporary friend of large prospects is

better inasmuch as such a friend can, in virtue of his large

prospects, render immense service in a very short time, and can

stand undertakings of large outlay.

Not so, says Kautilya: a long-standing friend of limited

prospects is better, inasmuch as a temporary friend of large

prospects is likely to withdraw his friendship on account of

material loss in the shape of help given, or is likely to expect

similar kind of help in return; but a long-standing friend of limited

prospects can, in virtue of his long-standing nature, render

immense service in the long run.

Which is better, a big friend, difficult to be roused, or a small

friend, easy to be roused?

My teacher says that a big friend, though difficult to be

roused, is of imposing nature, and when he rises up, he can

accomplish the work undertaken.

Not so, says Kautilya: a small friend easy to be roused is

better, for such a friend will not, in virtue of his ready preparations,

be behind the opportune moment of work, and can, in virtue of his

weakness in power, be used in any way the conqueror may like; but

not so the other of vast territorial power.

Which is better, scattered troops, or an unsubmissive standing

army?

My teacher says that scattered troops can be collected in time

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

406

as they are of submissive nature.

Not so, says Kautilya: an unsubmissive standing army is

better as it can be made submissive by conciliation and other

strategic means; but it is not so easy to collect in time scattered

troops as they are engaged in their individual avocations.

Which is better, a friend of vast population, or a friend of

immense gold?

My teacher says that a friend of vast population is better

inasmuch as such a friend will be of imposing power and can, when

he rises up, accomplish any work undertaken.

Not so, says Kautilya: a friend possessing immense gold is

better; for possession of gold is ever desirable; but an army is not

always required. Moreover armies and other desired objects can be

purchased for gold.

Which is better, a friend possessing gold, or a friend

possessing vast territory?

My teacher says that a friend possessing gold can stand any

heavy expenditure made with discretion.

Not so, says Kautilya: for it has already been stated that both

friends and gold can be acquired by means of territory. Hence a

friend of vast territory is far better.

When the friend of the conqueror and his enemy happen to

possess equal population, their people may yet differ in possession

of qualities such as bravery, power of endurance, amicableness,

and qualification for the formation of any kind of army.

When the friends are equally rich in gold, they may yet differ

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

407

in qualities such as readiness to comply with requests,

magnanimous and munificent help, and accessibility at any time

and always.

About this topic, the following sayings are current:--

\* Long standing, submissive, easy to be roused, coming from

fathers and grandfathers, powerful, and never of a contradictory

nature, is a good friend; and these are said to be the six qualities of

a good friend;

\* that friend who maintains friendship with disinterested motives

and merely for the sake of friendship and by whom the relationship

acquired of old is kept intact, is a long-standing friend;

\* that friend whose munificence is enjoyable in various ways is a

submissive friend, and is said to be of three forms:--One who is

enjoyable only by one, one who is enjoyable by two (the enemy

and the conqueror), and one who is enjoyable by all, is the third;

\* that friend who, whether as receiving help or as giving help, lives

with an oppressive hand over his enemies, and who possesses a

number of forts and a vast army of wild tribes is said to be a

long-standing friend of unsubmissive nature;

\* that friend who, either when attacked or when in trouble, makes

friendship for the security of his own existence is temporary and

submissive friend;

\* that friend who contracts friendship with a single aim in view and

who is helpful, immutable, and amicable is a friend never falling

foul even in adversity;

\* whoever is of an amicable nature is a true friend; whoever sides

also with the enemy is a mutable friend and whoever is indifferent

to neither (the conqueror and his enemy) is a friend to both;

\* that friend who is inimical to the conqueror or who is equally

friendly to the conquerors enemy is a harmful friend, whether he is

giving help or is capable of helping;

\* whoever helps the enemy's friend, *protege*, or any vulnerable

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

408

person or a relation of the enemy is a friend common to (both) the

enemy (and the conqueror);

\* whoever possesses extensive and fertile territory and is

contented, strong, but indolent, will be indifferent (towards his

ally) when the latter becomes despicable under troubles;

\* whoever, owing to his own weakness, follows the ascendancy of

both the conqueror and his enemy, not incurring enmity with

either, is known as a common friend;

\* whoever neglects a friend who is being hurt with or without

reason and who seeks help with or without reason despises his own

danger.

Which is better, an immediate small gain, or a distant large

gain?

My teacher says that an immediate small gain is better, as it is

useful to carry out immediate undertakings.

Not so, says Kautilya: a large gain, as continuous as a

productive seed, is better; otherwise an immediate small gain.

\* Thus, having taken into consideration the good aspects of a

permanent gain or of a share in a permanent gain, should a king,

desirous of strengthening himself, march combined with others.

[Thus ends Chapter IX, “Agreement for the Acquisition of a Friend

or Gold” in the section of “Agreement for the Acquisition of a

Friend, Gold, or Land and Agreement for Undertaking a Work,” in

Book VII, “The end of the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and seventh chapter from the

beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

409

## CHAPTER X. AGREEMENT OF PEACE FOR THE ACQUISITION OF LAND.

THE agreement made under the condition, "Let us acquire

land," is an agreement of peace for the acquisition of land.

Of the two kings thus entering into an agreement whoever

acquires a rich and fertile land withstanding crops overreaches the

other.

The acquisition of rich land being equal, whoever acquires

such land by putting down a powerful enemy overreaches the

other; for not only does he acquire territory, but also destroys an

enemy and thereby augments his own power. True, there is beauty

in acquiring land by putting down a weak enemy; but the land

acquired will also be poor, and the king in the neighbourhood who

has hitherto been a friend, will now become an enemy.

The enemies being equally strong, he who acquires territory

after beating a fortified enemy overreaches the other; for the

capture of a fort is conducive to the protection of territory and to

the destruction of wild tribes.

As to the acquisition of land from a wandering enemy, there is

the difference of having a powerful or powerless enemy close to

the acquired territory; for the land which is close to a powerless

enemy is easily maintained while that bordering upon the territory

of a powerful enemy has to be kept at the expense of men and

money.

Which is better, the acquisition of a rich land close to a

constant enemy, or that of sterile land near to a temporary enemy?

My teacher say that a rich land with a constant enemy is

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

410

better, inasmuch as it yields much wealth to maintain a strong

army, by which the enemy can be put down.

Not so, says Kautilya: for a rich land creates many enemies,

and the constant enemy will ever be an enemy, whether or not he is

helped (with men and money to conciliate him); but a temporary

enemy will be quiet either from fear or favour. That land, on the

border of which there are a number of forts giving shelter to bands

of thieves, *Mlechchhas*, and wild tribes is a land with a constant

enemy; and that which is of reverse character is one with a

temporary enemy.

Which is better, a small piece of land, not far, or an extensive

piece of land, very far?

A small piece of land, not far, is better, inasmuch as it can be

easily acquired, protected, and defended, whereas the other is of a

reverse nature.

Of the above two kinds of land, which is better, that which

can be maintained by itself, or that which requires external armed

force to maintain?

The former is better, as it can be maintained with the army

and money produced by itself, whereas the latter is of a reverse

character as a military station.

Which is better, acquisition of land from a stupid or a wise

king?

That acquired from a stupid king is better, as it can be easily

acquired and secured, and cannot be taken back, whereas that

obtained from a wise king, beloved of his subjects, is of a reverse

nature.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

411

Of two enemies, of whom one can only be harassed and

another is reducible, acquisition of land from the latter is better; for

when the latter is attacked, he, having little or no help, begins to run

away, taking his army and treasure with him, and he is deserted by

his subjects; whereas the former does not do so, as he has the help

of his forts and friends..

Of two fortified kings, one who has his forts on a plain is

more easily reduced than the other owning a fort in the centre of a

river; for a fort in a plain can be easily assailed, destroyed or

captured along with the enemy in it, whereas a fort, surrounded by

a river requires twice as much effort to capture and supplies the

enemy with water and other necessaries of life.

Of two kings, one owning a fort surrounded by a river, and

another having mountainous fortifications, seizing the former's

land is better, for a fort in the centre of a river can be assailed by a

bridge formed of elephants made to stand in a row in the river or by

wooden bridges, or by means of boats; and the river will not always

be deep and can be emptied of its water, whereas a fort on a

mountain is of a self-defensive nature, and not easy to besiege or to

ascend; and when one portion of the army defending it is routed

out, the other portions can escape unhurt and such a fort is of

immense service, as it affords facilities to throw down heaps of

stone and trees over the enemy.

Which is easier, seizing land from those who fight on plains,

or from those who fight from low grounds?

Seizing the land from the latter is easier, inasmuch as they

have to fight in time and space of adverse nature whereas the

former can fight anywhere and at any time.

Of the two enemies, one fighting from ditches and another

from heights (*khanakákásayodhibhyám*), seizing land from the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

412

former is better; for they can be serviceable inasmuch as they fight

from ditches and with weapons in hand, whereas the latter can only

fight with weapons in hand.

\* Whoever, well-versed in the science of polity, wrests land

from such and other enemies will outshine both his allies in

combination with him and enemies out of combination.

[Thus ends Chapter X, "Agreement of Peace for the Acquisition of

Land" in the section of "Agreement for the Acquisition of a Friend,

Gold, or Land and Agreement for Undertaking a Work," in Book

VII, “The End of the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and eighth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XI. INTERMINABLE AGREEMENT.

THE agreement made under the condition, "Let us colonize

waste land," is termed an interminable agreement.

Whoever of the two parties of the agreement colonizes a

fertile land, reaping the harvest earlier, overreaches the other.

Which is better for colonization: a plain or watery land?

A limited tract of land with water is far better than a vast

plain, inasmuch as the former is conducive to the growth of crops

and fruits throughout the year.

Of plains, that which is conducive to the growth of both early

and late crops and which requires less labour and less rain for

cultivation is better than the other of reverse character.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

413

Of watery lands, that which is conducive to the growth of

grains is better than another productive of crops other than grains.

Of two watery tracts, one of limited area and conducive to the

growth of grains, and another, vast and productive of crops other

than grains, the latter is better, inasmuch as it affords vast area not

only to grow spices and other medicinal crops, but also to construct

forts and other defensive works in plenty: for fertility and other

qualities of lands are artificial (*kritrimah*).

Of the two tracts of land, one rich in grains and another in

mines, the latter helps the treasury, while the former can fill both

the treasury and the store-house; and besides this, the construction

of forts and other buildings requires grains. Still, that kind of land

containing mines and which yields precious metals to purchase

large tracts of land is far better.

My teacher says that of the two forests, one productive of

timber, and another of elephants, the former is the source of all

kinds of works and is of immense help in forming a store-house,

while the latter is of reverse character.

Not so, says Kautilya, for it is possible to plant any of

timber-forests in many places, but not an elephant-forest; yet it is

on elephants that the destruction of an enemy's army depends.

Of the two, communication by water and by land, the former

is not long-standing, while the latter can ever be enjoyed.

Which is better, the land with scattered people or that with a

corporation of people?

The former is better inasmuch as it can be kept under control

and is not susceptible to the intrigues of enemys while the latter is

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

414

intolerant of calamities and susceptible, of anger and other

passions.

In colonizing a land with four castes, colonization with the

lowest caste is better, inasmuch as it is serviceable in various ways,

plentiful, and permanent.

Of cultivated and uncultivated tracts, the uncultivated tract

may be suitable for various kinds of agricultural operations; and

when it is fertile, adapted for pasture grounds, manufacture of

merchandise, mercantile transactions of borrowing and lending,

and attractive to rich merchants, it is still far better (than a

cultivated tract).

Which is better of the two, the tract of land with forts or that

which is thickly populated?

The latter is better; for that which is thickly populated is a

kingdom in all its senses. What can a depopulated country like a

barren cow be productive of?

The king who is desirous of getting back the land sold for

colonization to another when the latter has lost his men and money

in colonizing it, should first make an agreement with such a

purchaser as is weak, base-born, devoid of energy, helpless, of

unrighteous character, addicted to evil ways, trusting to fate, and

indiscreet in his actions. When the colonization of a land entails

much expenditure of men and money, and when a weak and

base-born man attempts to colonize it, he will perish along with his

people in consequence of his loss of men and money. Though

strong, a base-born man will be deserted by his people who do not

like him lest they may come to grief under him; though possessing

an army, he cannot employ it if he is devoid of energy; and such an

army will perish in consequence of the loss incurred by its master;

though possessing wealth, a man who hesitates to part with his

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

415

money and shows favour to none, cannot find help in any quarter;

and when it is easy to drive out a man of unrighteous character

from the colony in which he has firmly established himself, none

can expect that a man of unrighteous character would be capable of

colonizing a tract of waste land and keeping it secure; the same fact

explains the fate of such a colonizer as is addicted to evil ways;

whoever, trusting to fate and putting no reliance on manliness,

withdraws himself from energetic work, will perish without

undertaking anything or without achieving anything from his

undertakings; and whoever is indiscreet in his actions will achieve

nothing, and is the worst of the set of the colonizers.

My teacher says that an indiscreet colonizer may sometimes

betray the weak points of his employer, the conqueror.

But Kautilya says that, just as he betrays the weak points, so

also does he facilitate his destruction by the conqueror.

In the absence of such persons to colonize waste lands, the

conqueror may arrange for the colonization of waste land in the

same way as we shall treat of later on in connection with the

"Capture of an enemy in the rear."

The above is what is termed verbal agreement

(*abhihitasandhih*).

When a king of immense power compels another to sell a

portion of the latter's fertile territory of which the former is very

fond, then the latter may make an agreement with the former and

sell the land. This is what is termed "unconcealed peace"

(*anibhritasandhih*).

When a king of equal power demands land from another as

above, then the latter may sell it after considering "whether the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

416

land can be recovered by me, or can be kept under my control;

whether my enemy can be brought under my power in consequence

of his taking possession of the land; and whether I can acquire by

the sale of the land friends and wealth, enough to help me in my

undertakings."

This explains the case of a king of inferior power, who

purchases lands.

\* Whoever, well versed in the science of polity, thus acquires

friends, wealth, and territory with or without population will

overreach other kings in combination with him.

[Thus ends Chapter XI, "Interminable Agreement" in the section of

"Agreement for the Acquisition of a Friend, Gold, or Land and

Agreement for Undertaking a Work”, Book VII, “The End of the

Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred

and ninth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XII. AGREEMENT FOR UNDERTAKING A WORK.

WHEN an agreement is made on the condition "Let us have a

fort built," it is termed agreement for undertaking a work.

Whoever of the two kings builds an impregnable fortress on a

spot naturally best fitted for the purpose with less labour and

expenditure overreaches the other.

Of forts such as a fort on a plain, in the centre of a river, and

on a mountain, that which is mentioned later is of more advantage

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

417

than the one previously mentioned; of irrigational works

(*setu-bandha*), that which is of perennial water is better than that

which is fed wit water drawn from other sources; and of works

containing perennial water, that which can irrigate an extensive

area is better.

Of timber forests, whoever plants a forest which produces

valuable articles, which expands into wild tracts, and which

possesses a river on its border overreaches the other, for a forest

containing a river is self-dependent and can afford shelter in

calamities.

Of game-forests, whoever plants a forest full of cruel beasts,

close to an enemy's forest containing wild animals, causing

therefore much harm to the enemy, and extending into an

elephant-forest at the country's border, overreaches the other.

My teacher says that of the two countries, one with a large

number of effete persons, and another with a small number of

brave persons, the latter is better inasmuch as, a few brave persons

can destroy a large mass of effete persons whose slaughter brings

about the destruction of the entire army of their master.

Not so, says Kautilya, a large number of effete persons is

better, inasmuch as they can be employed to do other kinds of

works in the camp: to serve the soldiers fighting in battlefields, and

to terrify the enemy by its number. It is also possible to infuse spirit

and enthusiasm in the timid by means of discipline and training.

Of mines, whoever exploits with less labour and expenditure

a mine of valuable output and of easy communication overreaches

the other.

Which is better of the two, a small mine of valuable yield, or a

big mine productive of commodities of inferior value?

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

418

My teacher says that the former is better inasmuch as valuable

products, such as diamonds, precious stones, pearls, corals, gold

and silver, can swallow vast quantities of inferior commodities.

Not so, says Kautilya, for there is the possibility of

purchasing valuable commodities by a mass of accumulated

articles of inferior value, collected from a vast and longstanding

mine of inferior commodities.

This explains the selection of trade-routes:

My teacher says that of the two trade-routes, one by water and

another by land, the former is better, inasmuch as it is less

expensive, but productive of large profit.

Not so, says Kautilya, for water route is liable to obstruction,

not permanent, a source of imminent dangers, and incapable of

defence, whereas a land-route is of reverse nature.

Of water-routes, one along the shore and another in

mid-ocean, the route along, and close to the shore is better, as it

touches at many trading port-towns; likewise river navigation is

better, as it is uninterrupted and is of avoidable or endurable

dangers.

My teacher says that of land-routes, that which leads to the

Himalayas is better than that which leads to the south.

Not so, says Kautilya, for with the exception of blankets,

skins, and horses, other articles of merchandise such as,

conch-shells, diamonds, precious stones, pearls and gold are

available in plenty in the south.

Of routes leading to the south, either that trade-route which

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

419

traverses a large number of mines which is frequented by people,

and which is less expensive or troublesome, or that route by taking

which plenty of merchandise of various kinds can be obtained is

better.

This explains the selection of trade-routes leading either to

the east or to the west.

Of a cart-track and a foot-path, a cart-track is better as it

affords facilities for preparations on a large scale.

Routes that can be traversed by asses or camels, irrespective

of countries and seasons are also good.

This explains the selection of trade-routes traversed by men

alone (*amsa-patha*, shoulder-path, *i.e*., a path traversed by men

carrying merchandise on their shoulders).

\* It is a loss for the conqueror to undertake that kind of work which

is productive of benefits to the enemy, while a work of reverse

nature is a gain. When the benefits are equal, the conqueror has to

consider that his condition is stagnant.

\* Likewise it is a loss to undertake a work of less out-put and of a

greater outlay, while a work of reverse nature is a gain. If the

out-put and outlay of a work are at par, the conqueror has to

consider that his condition is stagnant.

\* Hence the conqueror should find out such fort-building and other

works as, instead of being expensive, are productive of greater

profit and power. Such is the nature of agreements for undertaking

works.

[Thus ends Chapter XII, "Agreement for Undertaking a Work," in

the section of "Agreement for the Acquisition of a Friend, Gold, or

Land and Agreement for Undertaking a Work"' in Book VIII, "The

End of the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

420

the hundred and tenth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIII. CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT AN ENEMY IN THE REAR.

WHEN the conqueror and his enemy simultaneously

proceeded to capture the rear of their respective enemies who are

engaged in an attack against others, he who captures the rear of one

who is possessed of vast resources gains more advantages

(*atisandhatte*); for one who is possessed of vast resources has to

put down the rear-enemy only after doing away with one's frontal

enemy already attacked, but not one who is poor in resources and

who has not realised the desired profits.

Resources being equal, he who captures the rear of one who

has made vast preparations gains more advantages for one who has

made vast preparations has to put down the enemy in the rear only

after destroying the frontal enemy, but not one whose preparations

are made on a small scale and whose movements are, therefore,

obstructed by the Circle of States.

Preparations being equal, he who captures the rear of one who

has marched out with all the resources gains more advantages; for

one whose base is undefended is easy to be subdued, but not one

who has marched out with a part of the army after having made

arrangements to defend the rear.

Troops taken being of equal strength, he who captures the rear

of one who has gone against a wandering enemy gains more

advantages; for one who has marched out against a wandering

enemy has to put down the rear-enemy only after obtaining an easy

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

421

victory over the wandering enemy; but not one who has marched

out against an entrenched enemy, for one who has marched out

against an entrenched enemy will be repelled in his attack against

the enemy's forts and will, after his return, find himself between the

rear-enemy, and the frontal enemy who is possessed of strong forts.

This explains the cases of other enemies described before.

Enemies being of equal description, he who attacks the rear of

one who has gone against a virtuous king gains more advantages,

for one who has gone against a virtuous king will incur the

displeasure of even his own people, whereas one who has attacked

a wicked king will endear himself to all.

This explains the consequences of capturing the rear of those

who have marched against an extravagant king or a king living

from hand to mouth, or a niggardly king.

The same reasons hold good in the case of those who have

marched against their own friends.

When there are two enemies, one engaged in attacking a

friend and another an enemy, he who attacks the rear of the latter

gains more advantages: for one who has attacked a friend will, after

easily making peace with the friend, proceed against the

rear-enemy; for it is easier to make peace with a friend than with an

enemy.

When there are two kings, one engaged in destroying a friend,

and another an enemy, he who attacks the rear of the former gains

more advantages; for one who is engaged in destroying an enemy

will have the support of his friends and will thereby put down the

rear-enemy, but not the former who is engaged in destroying his

own side.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

422

When the conqueror and his enemy in their attack against the

rear of an enemy mean to enforce the payment of what is not due to

them, he whose enemy has lost considerable profits and has

sustained a great loss of men and money gains more advantages;

when they mean to enforce the payment of what is due to them,

then he whose enemy has lost profits and army, gains more

advantages.

When the assailable enemy is capable of retaliation and when

the assailant's rear-enemy, capable of augmenting his army and

other resources, has entrenched himself on one of the assailant's

flanks, then the rear-enemy gains more advantages; for a rear

enemy on one of the assailant's flanks will not only become a

friend of the assailable enemy, but also attack the base of the

assailant, whereas a rear-enemy behind the assailant can only

harass the rear.

\* Kings, capable of harassing the rear of an enemy and of

obstructing his movements are three: the group of kings situated

behind the enemy, and the group of kings on his flanks.

\* He who is situated between a conqueror and his enemy is called

an *antardhi* (one between two kings); when such a king is

possessed of forts, wild tribes, and other kinds of help, he proves an

impediment in the way of the strong.

When the conqueror and his enemy are desirous of catching

hold of a *madhyama* king and attack the latter's rear, then he who in

his attempt to enforce the promised payment separates the

*madhyama* king from the latter's friend and obtains, thereby, an

enemy as a friend, gains more advantages; for an enemy compelled

to sue for peace will be of greater help than a friend compelled to

maintain the abandoned friendship.

This explains the attempt to catch hold of a neutral king.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

423

Of attacks from the rear and front, that which affords

opportunities of carrying on a treacherous fight (*mantrayuddha*) is

preferable.

My teacher says that in an open war, both sides suffer by

sustaining a heavy loss of men and money; and that even the king

who wins a victory will appear as defeated in consequence of the

loss of men and money.

No, says Kautilya, even at considerable loss of men and

money, the destruction of an enemy is desirable.

Loss of men and money being equal, he who entirely destroys

first his frontal enemy, and next attacks his rear-enemy gains more

advantages; when both the conqueror and his enemy are severally

engaged in destroying their respective frontal enemies, he who

destroys a frontal enemy of deep rooted enmity and of vast

resources, gains more advantages.

This explains the destruction of other enemies and wild tribes:

\* When an enemy in the rear and in the front, and an assailable

enemy to be marched against happen together then the conqueror

should adopt the following policy:--

\* The rear-enemy will usually lead the conqueror's frontal enemy

to attack the conqueror's friend; then having set the *ákranda* (the

enemy of the rear-enemy) against the rear-enemy's ally,

\* and, having caused war between them, the conqueror should

frustrate the rear-enemy's designs; likewise he should provoke

hostilities between, the allies of the *ákranda* and of the rear-enemy;

\* he should also keep his frontal enemy's friend engaged in war

with his own friend; and with the help of his friend's friend, he

should avert the attack, threatened by the friend of his enemy's

friend;

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

424

\* he should, with his friend's help, hold his rear-enemy at bay; and

with the help of his friend's friend, he should prevent his

rear-enemy attacking the *ákranda* (his rear-ally);

\* thus the conqueror should, through the aid of his friends, bring

the Circle of States under his own sway both in his rear and front;

\* he should send messengers and spies to reside in each of the

states composing the Circle and having again and again destroyed

the strength of his enemies he should keep his counsels concealed,

being friendly with his friends;

\* the works of him whose counsels are not kept concealed, will,

though they may prosper for a time, perish as undoubtedly as a

broken raft on the sea.

[Thus ends Chapter XIII, "Considerations about an Enemy in the

Rear," in Book VII, “The End of the Six-fold Policy” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and eleventh chapter

from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XIV. RECRUITMENT OF LOST POWER.

WHEN the conqueror is thus attacked by the combined army

of his enemies, he may tell their leader: "I shall make peace with

you; this is the gold, and I am the friend; your gain is doubled; it is

not worthy of you to augment at your own expense the power of

your enemies who keep a friendly appearance now; for gaining in

power, they will put you down in the long run."

Or he may tell the leader so as to break the combination: "Just

as an innocent person like myself is now attacked by the combined

army of these kings, so the very same kings in combination will

attack you in weal or woe; for power intoxicates the mind; hence

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

425

break their combination."

The combination being broken, he may set the leader against

the weak among his enemies; or offering inducements, he may set

the combined power of the weak against the leader; or in whatever

way be may find it to be conducive to his own prosperity, in that

way he may make the leader incur the displeasure of others, and

thus frustrate their attempts; or showing the prospect of a larger

profit, he may through intrigue, make peace with their leader. Then

the recipients of salaries from two states, exhibiting the acquisition

of large profits (to the leader), may satirise the kings, saying, "You

are all very well combined."

If some of the kings of the combination are wicked, they may

be made to break the treaty; then the recipients of salaries from two

states may again tell them so as to break the combination entirely:

"This is just what we have already pointed out."

When the enemies are separated, the conqueror may move

forward by catching hold of any of the kings (as an ally).

In the absence of a leader, the conqueror may win him over

who is the inciter of the combination; or who is of a resolute mind,

or who has endeared himself to his people, or who, from greed or

fear, joined the combination, or who is afraid of the conqueror, or

whose friendship with the conqueror is based upon some

consanguinity of royalty, or who is a friend, or who is a wandering

enemy,--in the order of enumeration.

Of these, one has to please the inciter by surrendering oneself;

by conciliation and salutation; him who is of a resolute mind; by

giving a daughter in marriage or by availing oneself of his youth (to

beget a son on one's wife?); him who is the beloved of his people,

by giving twice the amount of profits; him who is greedy, by

helping with men and money; him who is afraid of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

426

combination, by giving a hostage to him who is naturally timid; by

entering into a closer union with him whose friendship is based

upon some consanguinity of royalty; by doing what is pleasing and

beneficial to both or by abandoning hostilities against him who is a

friend; and by offering help and abandoning hostilities against him

who is a wandering enemy; one has to win over the confidence of

any of the above kings by adopting suitable means or by means of

conciliation, gifts, dissension, or threats, as will be explained under

"Troubles."

He who is in troubles and is apprehensive of an attack from

his enemy, should, on the condition of supplying the enemy with

army and money, make peace with the enemy on definite terms

with reference to place, time, and work; he should also set right any

offence he might have given by the violation of a treaty; if he has

no supporters, he should find them among his relatives and friends;

or he may build an impregnable fortress, for he who is defended by

forts and friends will be respected both by his own and his enemy's

people.

Whoever is wanting in the power of deliberation should

collect wise men around himself, and associate with old men of

considerable learning; thus he would attain his desired ends.

He who is devoid of a good treasury and army should direct

his attention towards the strengthening of the safety and security of

the elements of his sovereignty; for the country is the source of all

those works which are conducive to treasury and army; the haven

of the king and of his army is a strong fort.

Irrigational works (*setubandha*) are the source of crops; the

results of a good shower of rain are ever attained in the case of

crops below irrigational works.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

427

The roads of traffic are a means to overreach an enemy; for it

is through the roads of traffic that armies and spies are led (from

one country to another); and that weapons, armour, chariots, and

draught-animals are purchased; and that entrance and exit (in

travelling) are facilitated.

Mines are the source of whatever is useful in battle.

Timber-forests are the source of such materials as are

necessary for building forts, conveyances and chariots.

Elephant-forests are the source of elephants.

Pasture-lands are the source of cows, horses, and camels to

draw chariots.

In the absence of such sources of his own, he should acquire

them from some one among his relatives and friends. If he is

destitute of an army, he should, as far as possible, attract to himself

the brave men of corporations, of thieves, of wild tribes, of

*Mlechchhas*, and of spies who are capable of inflicting injuries

upon enemies.

He should also adopt the policy of a weak king towards

powerful king in view of averting danger from enemies or friends.

\* Thus with the aid of one's own party, the power of

deliberation, the treasury, and the army, one should get rid of the

clutches of one's enemies.

[Thus ends Chapter XIV, “Recruitment of Lost Power,” in Book

VII, “The End of the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and twelfth chapter from the

beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

428

## CHAPTER XV. MEASURES CONDUCIVE TO PEACE WITH A STRONG AND PROVOKED ENEMY; AND THE ATTITUDE OF A CONQUERED ENEMY.

WHEN a weak king is attacked by a powerful enemy, the

former should seek the protection of one who is superior to his

enemy and whom his enemy's power of deliberation for intrigue

cannot affect. Of kings who are equal in the power of deliberation,

difference should be sought in unchangeable prosperity and in

association with the aged.

In the absence of a superior king, he should combine with a

number of his equals who are equal in power to his enemy and

whom his enemy's power of purse, army, and intrigue cannot

reach. Of kings who are equally possessed of the power of purse,

army, and intrigue, difference should be sought in their capacity for

making vast preparations.

In the absence of equals, he should combine with a number of

inferior kings who are pure and enthusiastic, who can oppose the

enemy, and whom his enemy's power of purse, army, and intrigue

cannot react. Of kings who are equally possessed of enthusiasm

and capacity for action, a difference should be sought in the

opportunity of securing favourable battle fields. Of kings who are

equally possessed of favourable battle fields, difference should be

sought in their ever being ready for war. Of kings who are equal

possessed of favourable battlefields and who are equally ready for

war, difference should be sought in their possession of weapons

and armour necessary for war.

In the absence of any such help, he should seek shelter inside

a fort in which his enemy with a large army can offer no

obstruction to the supply of food-stuff, grass, firewood and water,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

429

but would sustain a heavy loss of men and money. When there are

many forts, difference should be sought in their affording facility

for the collection of stores and supplies. Kautilya is of opinion that

one should entrench oneself in a fort inhabited by men and

provided with stores and supplies. Also for the following reasons,

one should shelter oneself in such a fort:--

"I shall oppose him (the enemy) with his rear-enemy's ally or

with a *madhyama* king, or with a neutral king; I shall either capture

or devastate his kingdom with the aid of a neighbouring king, a

wild tribe, a scion of his family, or an imprisoned prince; by the

help of my partisans with him, I shall create troubles in his fort,

country or camp; when he is near, I shall murder him with

weapons, fire, or poison, or any other secret means at my pleasure;

I shall, cause him to sustain a heavy loss of men and money in

works undertaken by himself or made to be undertaken at the

instance of my spies; I shall easily sow the seeds of dissension

among his friends or his army when they have suffered from loss of

men and money; I shall catch hold of his camp by cutting off

supplies and stores going to it; or by surrendering myself (to him), I

shall create some weak points in him and put him down with all my

resources; or having curbed his spirit, I shall compel him to make

peace with me on my own terms; when I obstruct his movements

troubles arise to him from all sides; when he is helpless, I shall slay

him with the help of my hereditary army or with his enemy's army;

or with wild tribes; I shall maintain the safety and security of my

vast country by entrenching myself within my fort; the army of

myself and of my friends will be invincible when collected

together in this fort; my army which is trained to fight from valleys,

pits, or at night, will bring him into difficulties on his way, when he

is engaged in an immediate work; owing to loss of men and money,

he will make himself powerless when he arrives here at a bad place

and in a bad time; owing to the existence of forts and of wild tribes

(on the way), he will find this country accessible only at

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

430

considerable cost of men and money; being unable to find positions

favourable for the exercise of the armies of himself and of his

friends, suffering from disease, he will arrive here in distress; or

having arrived here, he will not return."

In the absence of such circumstances, or when the enemy's

army is very strong, one may run away abandoning one's fort.

My teacher says that one may rush against the enemy like a

moth against a flame; success in one way or other (*i.e.*, death or

victory) is certain for one who is reckless of life.

No, says Kautilya, having observed the conditions conducive

to peace between himself and his enemy, he may make peace; in

the absence of such conditions, he may, by taking recourse to

threats secure peace or a friend; or he may send a messenger to one

who is likely to accept peace; or having pleased with wealth and

honour the messenger sent by his enemy, he may tell the latter:

"This is the king's manufactory; this is the residence of the queen

and the princes; myself and this kingdom are at your disposal, as

approved of by the queen and the princes."

Having secured his enemy's protection, he should behave

himself like a servant to his master by serving the protector's

occasional needs. Forts and other defensive works, acquisition of

things, celebration of marriages, installation of the heir-apparent,

commercial undertakings, capture of elephants, construction of

covert places for battle (*sattra*), marching against an enemy, and

holding sports,--all these he should undertake only at the

permission of his protector. He should also obtain his protector's

permission before making any agreement with people settled in his

country or before punishing those who may run away from his

country. If the citizens and country people living in his kingdom

prove disloyal or inimical to him, he may request of his protector

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

431

another good country; or he may get rid of wicked people by

making use of such secret means as are employed against traitors.

He should not accept the offer of a good country even from a

friend. Unknown his protector, he may see the protector's minister,

high priest, commander of the army or heir-apparent. He should

also help his protector as much as he can. On all occasions of

worshipping gods and of making prayers, be should cause his

people to pray for the long life of his protector; and he should

always proclaim his readiness to place himself at the disposal of his

protector.

\* Serving him who is strong and combined with others and

being far away from the society of suspected persons, a conquered

king should thus always behave himself towards his protector.

[Thus ends Chapter XV, “Measures Conducive to Peace with a

Strong and Provoked Enemy and the Attitude of a Conquered

Enemy,” in Book VII, “The End of the Six-fold Policy” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and thirteenth chapter

from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVI. THE ATTITUDE OF A CONQUERED KING.

IN view of causing financial trouble to his protector, a

powerful vassal king, desirous of making conquests, may, under

the permission of his protector, march on countries where the

formation of the ground and the climate are favourable for the

manoeuvre of his army, his enemy having neither forts, nor any

other defensive works, and the conqueror himself having no

enemies in the rear. Otherwise (in case of enemies in the rear), he

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

432

should march after making provisions for the defence of his rear.

By means of conciliation and gifts, he should subdue weak

kings; and by means of sowing the seeds of dissension and by

threats, strong kings. By adopting a particular, or an alternative, or

all of the strategic means, he should subdue his immediate and

distant enemies.

He should observe the policy of conciliation by promising the

protection of villages, of those who live in forests, of flocks of

cattle, and of the roads of traffic as well as the restoration of those

who have been banished or who have run away or who have done

some harm.

Gifts of land, of things, and of girls in marriage and absence

of fear,--by declaring these, he should observe the policy of gifts.

By instigating any one of a neighbouring king, a wild chief, a

scion of the enemy's family, or an imprisoned prince, he should

sow the seeds of dissension.

By capturing the enemy in an open battle, or in a treacherous

fight, or through a conspiracy, or in the tumult of seizing the

enemy's fort by strategic means, he should punish the enemy.

He may reinstate kings who are spirited and who can

strengthen his army; likewise he may reinstate those who are

possessed of a good treasury and army and who can therefore help

him with money; as well as those who are wise and who can

therefore provide him with lands.

Whoever among his friends helps him with gems, precious

things, raw materials acquired from commercial towns, villages,

and mines, or with conveyances and draught-animals acquired

from timber and elephant-forests, and herds of cattle, is a friend

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

433

affording a variety of enjoyment (*chitrabhoga*); whoever supplies

him with wealth and army is a friend affording vast enjoyment

(*mahábhoga*); whoever supplies him with army, wealth, and lands

is a friend affording all enjoyments (*sarvabhoga*); whoever

safeguards him against a side-enemy is a friend affording

enjoyments on one side (*ekatobhogi*); whoever helps also his

enemy and his enemy's allies is a friend affording enjoyment to

both sides (*ubhayatobhogi*); and whoever helps him against his

enemy, his enemy's ally, his neighbour, and wild tribes is a friend

affording enjoyment on all sides (*sarvatobogi*).

If he happens to have an enemy in the rear, or a wild chief, or

an enemy, or a chief enemy capable of being propitiated with the

gift of lands, he should provide such an enemy with a useless piece

of land,; an enemy possessed of forts with a piece of land not

connected with his (conqueror's) own territory; a wild chief with a

piece of land yielding no livelihood; a scion of the enemy's family

with a piece of land that can be taken back; an enemy's prisoner

with a piece of land which is (not?) snatched from the enemy; a

corporation of armed men with a piece of land, constantly under

troubles from an enemy; the combination of corporations with a

piece of land close to the territory of a powerful king; a corporation

invincible in war with a piece of land under both the above

troubles; a spirited king desirous of war with a piece of land which

affords no advantageous positions for the manoeuvre of the army;

an enemy's partisan with waste lands; a banished prince with a

piece of land exhausted of its resources; a king who has renewed

the observance of a treaty of peace after breaking it, with a piece of

land which can be colonized at considerable cost of men and

money; a deserted prince with a piece of land which affords no

protection, and his own protector with an uninhabitable piece of

land.

(The king who is desirous of making conquests) should

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

434

continue in following the same policy towards him, who, among

the above kings, is most helpful and keeps the same attitude;

should by secret means bring him round who is opposed; should

favour the helpful with facilities for giving further help, besides

bestowing rewards and honour at all costs upon him; should give

relief to him who is under troubles; should receive visitors at their

own choice and afford satisfaction to them; should avoid using

contemptuous, threatening, defamatory, or harsh words towards

them; should like a father protect those who are promised security

from fear; should punish the guilty after publishing their guilt; and

in order to avoid causing suspicion to the protector, the vassal-king

should adopt the procedure of inflicting secret punishments upon

offenders.

He should never covet the land, things, and sons and wives of

the king slain by him; he should reinstate in their own estates the

relatives of the kings slain. He should install in the kingdom the

heir-apparent of the king who has died while working (with the

conqueror); all conquered kings will, if thus treated, loyally follow

the sons and grandsons of the conqueror.

Whoever covets the lands, things, sons, and wives of the

kings whom he has either slain or bound in chains will cause

provocation to the Circle of States and make it rise against himself;

also his own ministers employed in his own territory will be

provoked and will seek shelter under the circle of states, having an

eye upon his life and kingdom.

\* Hence conquered kings preserved in their own lands in

accordance with the policy of conciliation will be loyal to the

conqueror and follow his sons and grandsons.

[Thus ends Chapter XVI, "The Attitude of a Conquered King," in

Book VII, "The End of the Six-fold Policy,” of the *Arthasástra* of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

435

Kautilya. End of the hundred and fourteenth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVII. MAKING PEACE AND BREAKING IT.

THE words *sama* (quiet), *sandhi* (agreement of peace), and

*samádhi* (reconcilement), are synonymous. That which is

conducive to mutual faith among kings is termed *sama*, *sandhi*, or

*samádhi*.

My teacher says that peace, depended upon honesty or oath, is

mutable, while peace with a security or an hostage is immutable.

No, says Kautilya, peace, dependent upon honesty or oath is

immutable both in this and the next world. It is for this world only

that a security or an hostage is required for strengthening the

agreement.

Honest kings of old made their agreement of peace with this

declaration: "We have joined in peace."

In case of any apprehension of breach of honesty, they made

their agreement by swearing by fire, water, plough, the brick of a

fort-wall, the shoulder of an elephant, the hips of a horse, the front

of a chariot, a weapon, seeds, scents, juice (*rasa*), wrought gold

(*suvarna*), or bullion gold (*hiranya*), and by declaring that these

things will destroy and desert him who violates the oath.

In order to avoid the contingency of violation of oath, peace

made with the security of such persons as ascetics engaged in

penance, or nobles is peace with a security. In such a peace,

whoever takes as security a person capable of controlling the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

436

enemy gains more advantages, while he who acts to the contrary is

deceived.

In peace made with children as hostages, and in the case of

giving a princess or a prince as an hostage, whoever gives a

princess gains advantages; for a princess, when taken as an

hostage, causes troubles to the receiver, while a prince is of reverse

nature.

With regard to two sons, whoever hands over a highborn,

brave and wise son, trained in military art, or an only son is

deceived, while he who acts otherwise gains advantages. It is better

to give a base-born son as an hostage than a high-born one,

inasmuch as the former has neither heirship nor the right to beget

heirs; it is better to give a stupid son than a wise one, inasmuch as

the former is destitute of the power of deliberation; better to give a

timid son than a brave one, inasmuch as the former is destitute of

martial spirit; better, a son who is not trained in military art than

one who is trained, inasmuch as the former is devoid of the

capacity for striking an enemy; and better one of many sons than an

only son, since many sons are not wanted.

With regard to a high-born and a wise son, people will

continue to be loyal to a highborn son though he is not wise; a wise

son, though base-born, is characterized with capacity to consider

state matters; but so far as capacity to consider state matters is

concerned, a. high-born prince associating himself with the aged,

has more advantages than a wise but base-born prince.

With regard to a wise and a brave prince, a wise prince,

though timid, is characterized with capacity for intellectual works;

and a brave prince though not wise, possesses warlike spirit. So far

as warlike spirit is concerned, a wise prince overreaches a brave

one just as a hunter does an elephant.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

437

With regard to a brave and a trained prince, a brave prince,

though untrained, is characterized with capacity for war; and a

trained prince, though timid, is capable of hitting objects aright.

Notwithstanding the capacity for hitting objects aright, a brave

prince excels a trained prince in determination and firm adherence

to his policy.

With regard to a king having many sons and another an only

son, the former, giving one of his sons as a hostage and being

contented with the rest, is able to break the peace but not the latter.

When peace is made by handing over the whole lot of sons,

advantage is to be sought in capacity to beget additional sons;

capacity to beget additional sons being common, he who can beget

able sons will have more advantages than another king (who is not

so fortunate); capacity to beget able sons being common, he by

whom the birth of a son is early expected will have more

advantages than another (who is not so fortunate).

In the case of an only son who is also brave, he who has lost

capacity to beget any more sons should surrender himself as an

hostage, but not the only son.

Whoever is rising in power may break the agreement of

peace. Carpenters, artisans, and other spies, attending upon the

prince (kept as an hostage) and doing work under the enemy, may

take away the prince at night through an underground tunnel dug

for the purpose. Dancers, actors, singers, players on musical

instruments, buffoons, court-bards, swimmers, and *saubhikas* (?),

previously set about the enemy, may continue under his service

and may indirectly serve the prince. They should have the privilege

of entering into, staying in and going out of, the palace at any time

without rule. The prince may therefore get out at night disguised as

any one of the above spies.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

438

This explains the work of prostitutes and other women spies

under the garb of wives; the prince may get out, carrying their

pipes, utensils, or vessels.

Or the prince may be removed concealed under things,

clothes, commodities, vessels, beds, seats and other articles by

cooks, confectioners, servants employed to serve the king while

bathing, servants employed for carrying conveyances, for

spreading the bed, toilet-making, dressing, and procuring water; or

taking something in pitch dark, he may get out, disguised as a

servant.

Or he may (pretend to) be in communion with god *Varuna* in

a reservoir (which is seen) through a tunnel or to which he is taken

at night; spies under the guise of traders dealing in cooked rice and

fruits may (poison those things and) distribute among the sentinels.

Or having served the sentinels with cooked rice and beverage

mixed with the juice of madana plant on occasions of making

offerings to gods or of performing an ancestral ceremony or some

sacrificial rite, the prince may get out; or by bribing the sentinels;

or spies disguised as a *nágaraka* (officer in charge of the city), a

court-bard, or a physician may set fire to a building filled with

valuable articles; or sentinels or spies disguised as merchants may

set fire to the store of commercial articles; or in view of avoiding

the fear of pursuit, the prince may, after putting some human body

in the house occupied by him, set fire to it and escape by breaking

open some house-joints, or a window, or through a tunnel; or

having disguised himself as a carrier of glass-beads, pots, and other

commodities, he may set out at night; or having entered the

residence of ascetics with shaven heads or with twisted hair, he

may set out at night, disguised as any one of them; or having

disguised himself as one suffering from a peculiar disease or as a

forest-man, he may get out; or spies may carry him away as a

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

439

corpse; or disguised as a widowed wife, be may follow a corpse

that is being carried away. Spies disguised as forest-people, should

mislead the pursuers of the prince by pointing out another

direction, and the prince himself may take a different direction.

Or he may escape, hiding himself in the midst of carts of

cart-drivers; if he is closely followed, he may lead the pursuers to

an ambuscade (*sattra*); in the absence of an ambuscade he may

leave here and there gold or morsels of poisoned food on both sides

of a road and take a different road.

If he is captured, he should try to win over the pursuers by

conciliation and other means, or serve them with poisoned food;

and having caused another body to be put in a sacrifice performed

to please god *Varuna* or in a fire that has broken out (the prince's

father), may accuse the enemy of the murder of his son and attack

the enemy.

\* Or taking out a concealed sword, and falling upon the

sentinels, he may quickly run away together with the spies

concealed before.

[Thus ends Chapter XVII, “Making Peace and Breaking It,” in

Book VII, “The End of the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and fifteenth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER XVIII. THE CONDUCT OF A MADHYAMA KING, A NEUTRAL KING, AND OF A CIRCLE OF STATES.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

440

THE third and the fifth states from a *madhyama* king are states

friendly to him; while the second, the fourth, and the sixth are

unfriendly. If the *madhyama* king shows favour to both of these

states, the conqueror should be friendly with him; if he does not

favour them, the conqueror should be friendly with those states.

If the *madhyama* king is desirous of securing the friendship

of the conqueor's would-be friend, then having set his own and his

friend's friends against the *madhyama*, and having separated the

*madhyama* from the latter's friends, the conqueror should preserve

his own friend; or the conqueror may incite the Circle of States

against the *madhyama* by telling them; "this *madhyama* king has

grown haughty, and is aiming at our destruction: let us therefore

combine and interrupt his march."

If the Circle of States is favourable to his cause, then he may

aggrandise himself by putting down the *madhyama*; if not

favourable, then having helped his friend with men and money, he

should, by means of conciliation and gifts, win over either the

leader or a neigbbouring king among the kings who hate the

*madhyama*, or who have been living with mutual support, or who

will follow the one that is won over (by the conqueror), or who do

not rise owing to mutual suspicion; thus by winning over a second

(king), he should double his own power; by securing a third, he

should treble his own power; thus gaining in strength, he should

put down the *madhyama* king.

When place and time are found unsuitable for success in the

above attempt, he should, by peace, seek the friendship of one of

the enemies of the *madhyama* king, or cause some traitors to

combine against the *madhyama*; if the *madhyama* king is desirous

of reducing the conqueror's friend, the conqueror should prevent it,

and tell the friend: "I shall protect you as long as you are weak,"

and should accordingly protect him when he is poor in resources; if

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

441

the *madhyama* king desires to rout out a friend of the conqueror,

the latter should protect him in his difficulties; or having removed

him from the fear of the madhyama king, the conqueror should

provide him with new lands and keep him under his (the

conqueror's) protection, lest he might go elsewhere.

If, among the conqueror's friends who are either reducible or

assailable enemies of the *madhyama* king, some undertake to help

the *madhyama*, then the conqueror should make peace with a third

king; and if among the *madhyama* king's friends who are either

reducible or assailable enemies of the conqueror, some are capable

of offence and defence and become friendly to the conqueror, then

he should make peace with them; thus the conqueror cannot only

attain his own ends, but also please the *madhyama* king.

If the *madhyama* king is desirous of securing a would-be

friend of the conqueror as a friend, then the conqueror may make

peace with another king, or prevent the friend from going to the

madhyama, telling him: "It is unworthy of you to forsake a friend

who is desirous of your friendship," or the conqueror may keep

quiet, if the conqueror thinks that the Circle of States would be

enraged against the friend for deserting his own party. If the

*madhyama* king is desirous of securing the conqueror's enemy as

his friend, then the conqueror should indirectly *(i.e.,* without being

known to the *madhyama*) help the enemy with wealth and army.

If the *madhyama* king desires to win the neutral king, the

conqueror should sow the seeds of dissension between them.

Whoever of the *madhyama* and the neutral kings is esteemed by the

Circle of States, his protection should the conqueror seek.

The conduct of the *madhyama* king explains that of the

neutral king. If the neutral king is desirous of combining with the

*madhyama* king, then the conqueror should so attempt as to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

442

frustrate the desire of the neutral king to overreach an enemy or to

help a friend or to secure the services of the army of another neutral

king. Having thus strengthened himself, the conqueror should

reduce his enemies and help his friends, though their position is

inimical towards him.

Those who may be inimical to the conqueror are a king who is

of wicked character and who is therefore always harmful, a

rear-enemy in combination with a frontal enemy, a reducible

enemy under troubles, and one who is watching the troubles of the

conqueror to invade him.

Those who may be friendly with the conqueror are one who

marches with him with the same end in view, one who marches

with him with a different end in view, one who wants to combine

with the conqueror to march (against a common enemy), one who

marches under an agreement for peace, one who marches with a set

purpose of, his own, one who rises along with others, one who is

ready to purchase or to sell either the army or the treasury, and one

who adopts the double policy (*i.e.*, making peace with one and

waging war with another).

Those neighbouring kings who can be servants to the

conqueror are a neighbouring king under the apprehension of an

attack from a powerful king, one who is situated between the

conqueror and his enemy, the rear-enemy of a powerful king, one

who has voluntarily surrendered one-self to the conqueror, one

who has surrendered oneself under fear, and one who has been

subdued. The same is the case with those kings who are next to the

territory of the immediate enemies of the conqueror.

\* Of these kings, the conqueror should, as far as possible, help that

friend who has the same end in view as the conqueror in his

conflict with the enemy, and thus hold the enemy at bay.

\* When, after having put down the enemy, and after having grown

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

443

in power, a friend becomes unsubmissive, the conqueror should

cause the friend to incur the displeasure of a neighbour and of the

king who is next to the neighbour.

\* Or the conqueror may employ a scion of the friend's family or an

imprisoned prince to seize his lands; or the conqueror may so act

that his friend, desirous of further help, may continue to be

obedient.

\* The conqueror should never help his friend when the latter is

more and more deteriorating; a politician should so keep his friend

that the latter neither deteriorates nor grows in power.

\* When,with the desire of getting wealth, a wandering friend (*i.e.*, a

nomadic king) makes an agreement with the conqueror, the latter

should so remove the cause of the friend's flight that he never flies

again.

\* When a friend is as accessible to the conqueror as to the latter's

enemy, the conqueror should first separate that obstinate friend

from the enemy, and then destroy him, and afterwards the enemy

also.

\* When a friend remains neutral, the conqueror should cause him

to incur the displeasure of his immediate enemies; and when he is

worried in his wars with them, the conqueror should oblige him

with help.

\* When, owing to his own weakness, a friend seeks protection both

from the conqueror and the latter's enemy, the conqueror should

help him with the army, so that he never turns his attention

elsewhere.

\* Or having, removed him from his own lands, the conqueror may

keep him in another tract of land, having made some previous

arrangements to punish or favour the friend.

\* Or the conqueror may harm him when he has grown powerful, or

destroy him when he does nut help the conqueror in danger and

when he lies on the conqueror's lap in good faith.

\* When an enemy furiously rises against his own enemy (*i.e.*, the

conqueror's friend) under troubles, the former should be put down

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

444

by the latter himself with troubles concealed.

\* When a friend keeps quiet after rising against an enemy under

troubles, that friend will be subdued by the enemy himself after

getting rid of his troubles.

\* Whoever is acquainted with the science of polity should clearly

observe the conditions of progress, deterioration, stagnation,

reduction, and destruction, as well as the use of all kinds of

strategic means.

\* Whoever thus knows the interdependence of the six kinds of

policy plays at his pleasure with kings, bound round, as it were, in

chains skillfully devised by himself.

[Thus ends Chapter XVIII, "The Conduct of a *Madhyama* King, a

Neutral King and of a Circle of States," in Book VII, "The End of

the Six-fold Policy” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

hundred and sixteenth chapter from the beginning. With this ends

the seventh Book “The End of the Six-fold Policy” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamashastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 327-389.

Kautilya's *Arthasastra*:

# Book VIII, "Concerning Vices and Calamities"

## CHAPTER I. THE AGGREGATE OF THE CALAMITIES OF THE ELEMENTS OF SOVEREIGNTY.

WHEN calamities happen together, the form of consideration

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

445

should be whether it is easier to take an offensive or defensive

attitude. National calamities, coming from Providence or from man

happen from one's misfortune or bad policy. The word *vyasana*

(vices or calamities), means the reverse or absence of virtue, the

preponderance of vices, and occasional troubles. That which

deprives (*vyasyati*) a person of his happiness is termed *vyasana*

(vices or calamities).

My teacher says that of the calamities, *viz*., the king in

distress, the minister in distress, the people in distress, distress due

to bad fortifications, financial distress, the army in distress, and an

ally in distress,--that which is first mentioned is more serious than

the one, coming later in the order of enumeration.

No, says Bháradvája, of the distress of the king and of his

minister, ministerial distress is more serious; deliberations in

council, the attainment of results as anticipated while deliberating

in council, the accomplishment of works, the business of

revenue-collection and its expenditure, recruiting the army, the

driving out of the enemy and of wild tribes, the protection of the

kingdom, taking remedial measures against calamities, the

protection of the heir-apparent, and the installation of princes

constitute the duties of ministers. In the absence of ministers; the

above works are ill-done; and like a bird, deprived of its feathers,

the king loses his active capacity. In such calamities, the intrigues

of the enemy find a ready scope. In ministerial distress, the king's

life itself comes into danger, for a minister is the mainstay of the

security of the king's life.

No, says Kautilya, it is verily the king who attends to the

business of appointing ministers, priests, and other servants,

including the superintendents of several departments, the

application of remedies against the troubles of his people, and of

his kingdom, and the adoption of progressive measures; when his

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

446

ministers fall into troubles, he employs others; he is ever ready to

bestow rewards on the worthy and inflict punishments on the

wicked; when the king is well off, by his welfare and prosperity, he

pleases the people; of what kind the king's character is, of the same

kind will be the character of his people; for their progress or

downfall, the people depend upon the king; the king is, as it were,

the aggregate of the people.

Visáláksha says that of the troubles of the minister and of the

people; the troubles of the people are more serious; finance, army,

raw products, free labour, carriage of things, and collection (of

necessaries) are all secured from the people. There will be no such

things in the absence of people, next to the king and his minister.

No, says Kautilya, all activities proceed from the minister,

activities such as the successful accomplishment of the works of

the people, security of person and property from internal and

external enemies, remedial measures against calamities,

colonization and improvement of wild tracts of land, recruiting the

army, collection of revenue, and bestowal of favour.

The school of Parásara say that of the distress of the people

and distress due to bad fortifications, the latter is a more serious

evil; for it is in fortified towns that the treasury and the army are

secured; they (fortified towns) are a secure place for the people;

they are a stronger power than the citizens or country people; and

they are a powerful defensive instrument in times of danger for the

king. As to the people, they are common both to the king and his

enemy.

No, says Kautilya, for forts, finance, and the army depend

upon the people; likewise buildings, trade, agricu1ture,

cattle-rearing, bravery, stability, power, and abundance (of things).

In countries inhabited by people, there are mountains and islands

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

447

(as natural forts); in the absence of an expansive country, forts are

resorted to. When a country consists purely of cultivators, troubles

due to the absence of fortifications (are apparent); while in a

country which consists purely of warlike people, troubles that may

appear are due to the absence of (an expansive and cultivated)

territory.

Pisuna says that of the troubles due to the absence of forts and

to want of finance, troubles due to want of finance are more

serious; the repair of fortifications and their maintenance depend

upon finance; by means of wealth, intrigue to capture an enemy's

fort may be carried on; by means of wealth, the people, friends, and

enemies can be kept under control; by means of it, outsiders can be

encouraged and the establishment of the army and its operations

conducted. It is possible to remove the treasure in times of danger,

but not the fort.

No, says Kautilya, for it is in the fort that the treasury and the

army are safely kept, and it is from the fort that secret war

(intrigue), control over one's partisans, the upkeep of the army, the

reception of allies and the driving out of enemies and of wild tribes

are successfully practised. In the absence of forts, the treasury is to

the enemy, for it seems that for those who own forts, there is no

destruction.

Kaunapadanta says that of distress due to want of finance or

to an inefficient army, that which is due to the want of an efficient

army is more serious; for control over one's own friends and

enemies, the winning over the army of an enemy, and the business

of administration are all dependent upon the army. In the absence

of the army, it is certain that the treasury will be lost, whereas lack

of finance can be made up by procuring raw products and lands or

by seizing an enemy's territory.

The army may go to the enemy, or murder the king himself,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

448

and bring about all kinds of troubles. But finance is the chief means

of observing virtuous acts and of enjoying desires. Owing to a

change in place, time, and policy, either finance or the army may

be a superior power; for the army is (sometimes) the means of

securing the wealth acquired; but wealth is (always) the means of

securing both the treasury and the army. Since all activities are

dependent upon finance, financial troubles are more serious.

Vátavyádhi says that of the distress of the army and of an ally,

the distress of an ally is more serious--an ally, though he is not fed

and is far off, is still serviceable; he drives off not only the

rear-enemy and the friends of the rear-enemy, but also the frontal

enemy and wild tribes; he also helps his friend with money, army,

and lands on occasions of troubles.

No, says Kautilya, the ally of him who has a powerful army

keeps the alliance; and even the enemy assumes a friendly attitude;

when there is a work that can be equally accomplished either by the

army or by an ally, then preference to the army or to the ally should

depend on the advantages of securing the appropriate place and

time for war and the expected profit. In times of sudden expedition

and on occasions of troubles from an enemy, a wild tribe, or local

rebels, no friend can be trusted. When calamities happen together,

or when an enemy has grown strong, a friend keeps up his

friendship as long as money is forthcoming. Thus the

determination of the comparative seriousness of the calamities of

the various elements of sovereignty.

\* When a part of one of the elements of sovereignty is under

troubles, the extent, affection, and strength of the serviceable part

can be the means of accomplishing a work.

\* When any two elements of sovereignty are equally under

troubles, they should be distinguished in respect of their

progressive or declining tendency, provided that the good

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

449

condition of the rest of the elements needs no description.

\* When the calamities of a single element tend to destroy the rest of

the elements, those calamities, whether they be of the fundamental

or any other element, are verily serious.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “The Aggregate of the Calamities of the

Elements of Sovereignty,” in Book VIII, “Concerning Vices and

Calamities” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and

seventeenth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT THE TROUBLES OF THE KING AND OF HIS KINGDOM.

THE king and his kingdom are the primary elements of the

state.

The troubles of the king may be either internal or external.

Internal troubles are more serious than external troubles which are

like the danger arising from a lurking snake. Troubles due to a

minister are more serious than other kinds of internal troubles.

Hence, the king should keep under his own control the powers of

finance and the army.

Of divided rule and foreign rule, divided rule or rule of a

country by two kings, perishes owing to mutual hatred, partiality

and rivalry. Foreign rule which comes into existence by seizing the

country from its king still alive, thinks that the country is not its

own, impoverishes it, and carries off its wealth, or treats it as a

commercial article; and when the country ceases to love it, it retires

abandoning the country.

Which is better, a blind king, or a king erring against the

science?

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

450

My teacher says that a blind king, *i.e.*, a king who is not

possessed of an eye in sciences, is indiscriminate in doing works,

very obstinate, and is led by others; such a king destroys the

kingdom by his own maladministration. But an erring king can be

easily brought round when and where his mind goes astray from

the procedure laid down in sciences.

No, says Kautilya, a blind king can be made by his supporters

to adhere to whatever line of policy he ought to. But an erring king

who is bent upon doing what is against the science, brings about

destruction to himself and his kingdom by maladministration.

Which is better, a diseased or a new king ?

My teacher says that a diseased king loses his kingdom owing

to the intrigue of his ministers, or loses his life on account of the

kingdom; but a new king pleases the people by such popular deeds

as the observance of his own duties and the act of bestowing

favours, remissions (of taxes), gifts, and presents upon others.

No, says Kautilya, a diseased king continues to observe his

duties as usual. But a new king begins to act as he pleases under the

impression that the country, acquired by his own might, belongs to

himself; when pressed by combined kings (for plunder), he

tolerates their oppression of the country. Or having no firm control

over the elements of the state, he is easily removed. There is this

difference among diseased kings: a king who is morally diseased,

and a king who is suffering from physical disease; there is also this

difference among new kings: a high-born king and a base-born

king.

Which is better, a weak but high-born king, or a strong but

low-born king?

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

451

My teacher says that a people, even if interested in having a

weak king, hardly allow room for the intrigues of a weak but

high-born person to be their king; but that if they desire power,

they will easily yield themselves to the intrigues of a strong but

base-born person to be their king.

No, says Kautilya, a people will naturally obey a high-born

king though he is weak, for the tendency of a prosperous people is

to follow a high-born king. Also they render the intrigues of a

strong but base-born person, unavailing, as the saying is, that

possession of virtues makes for friendship.

The destruction of crops is worse than the destruction of

handfuls (of grains), since it is the labour that is destroyed thereby;

absence of rain is worse than too much rain.

\* The comparative seriousness or insignificance of any two

kinds of troubles affecting the elements of sovereignty, in the order

of enumeration of the several kinds of distress, is the cause of

adopting offensive or defensive operations.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "Considerations about the Troubles of the

King and of his Kingdom,” in Book VIII, “Concerning Vices and

Calamities,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred

and eighteenth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. THE AGGREGATE OF THE TROUBLE OF MEN.

IGNORANCE and absence of discipline are the causes of a

man's troubles. An untrained man does not perceive the injuries

arising from vices. We are going to treat of them (vices):--

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

452

Vice's due to anger form a triad; and those due to desire are

fourfold. Of these two, anger is worse, for anger proceeds against

all. In a majority of cases, kings given to anger are said to have

fallen a prey to popular fury. But kings addicted to pleasures have

perished in consequence of serious diseases brought about by

deterioration and improverishment.

No, says Bháradvája, anger is the characteristic of a

righteous man. It is the foundation of bravery; it puts an end to

despicable (persons); and it keeps the people under fear. Anger is

always a necessary quality for the prevention of sin. But desire

(accompanies) the enjoyment of results, reconciliation, generosity,

and the act of endearing oneself to all. Possession of desire is

always necessary for him who is inclined to enjoy the fruits of what

he has accomplished.

No, says Kautilya, anger brings about enmity with, and

troubles from, an enemy, and is always associated with pain.

Addiction to pleasure (*káma*) occasions contempt and loss of

wealth, and throws the addicted person into the company of

thieves, gamblers, hunters, singers, players on musical

instruments, and other undesirable persons. Of these, enmity is

more serious than contempt, for a despised person is caught hold of

by his own people and by his enemies, whereas a hated person is

destroyed. Troubles from an enemy are more serious than loss of

wealth, for loss of wealth causes financial troubles, whereas

troubles from an enemy are injurious to life. Suffering on account

of vices is more serious than keeping company with undesirable

persons, for the company of undesirable persons can be got rid of

in a moment, whereas suffering from vices causes injury for a long

time. Hence, anger is a more serious evil.

Which is worse: abuse of language, or of money, or

oppressive punishment?

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

453

Visáláksha says that of abuse of language and of money,

abuse of language is worse; for when harshly spoken to, a brave

man retaliates; and bad language, like a nail piercing the heart,

excites anger and gives pain to the senses.

No, says Kautilya, gift of money palliates the fury occasioned

by abusive language, whereas abuse of money causes the loss of

livelihood itself. Abuse of money means gifts, exaction, loss or

abandonment of money.

The School of Parásara say that of abuse of money and

oppressive punishment, abuse of money is worse; for good deeds

and enjoyments depend upon wealth; the world itself is bound by

wealth. Hence, its abuse is a more serious evil.

No, says Kautilya, in preference to a large amount of wealth,

no man desires the loss of his own life. Owing to oppressive

punishment, one is liable to the same punishment at the hands of

one's enemies.

Such is the nature of the triad of evils due to anger.

The fourfold vices due to desire are hunting, gambling,

women and drinking.

Pisuna says that of hunting and gambling, hunting is a worse

vice; for falling into the hand of robbers, enemies and elephants,

getting into wild fire, fear, inability to distinguish between the

cardinal points, hunger, thirst and loss of life are evils consequent

upon hunting, whereas in gambling, the expert gambler wins a

victory like Jayatsena and Duryodhana.

No, says Kautilya, of the two parties, one has to suffer from

defeat, as is well known from the history of Nala and Yudhishthira;

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

454

the same wealth that is won like a piece of flesh in gambling,

causes enmity. Lack of recognition of wealth properly acquired,

acquisition of ill-gotten wealth, loss of wealth without enjoyment,

staying away from answering the calls of nature, and contracting

diseases from not taking timely meals, are the evils of gambling,

whereas in hunting, exercise, the disappearance of phlegm, bile,

fat, and sweat, the acquisition of skill in aiming at stationary and

moving bodies, the ascertainment of the appearance of beasts when

provoked, and occasional march (are its good characteristics).

Kaunapadanta says that of addiction to gambling and to

women, gambling is a more serious evil; for gamblers always play,

even at night by lamp light, and even when the mother (of one of

the players) is dead; the gambler exhibits anger when spoken to in

times of trouble; whereas in the case of addiction to women, it is

possible to hold conversation about virtue and wealth, at the time

of bathing, dressing and eating. Also it is possible to make, by

means of secret punishment, a woman to be so good as to secure

the welfare of the king, or to get rid of her, or drive her out, under

the plea of disease.

No, says Kautilya, it is possible to divert the attention from

gambling, but not so from women. (The evils of the latter are)

failure to see (what ought to be seen), violation of duty, the evil of

postponing works that are to be immediately done, incapacity to

deal with politics, and contracting the evil of drinking.

Vátavyádhi says that of addiction to women and to drinking,

addiction to women is a more serious evil: there are various kinds

of childishness among women, as explained in the chapter on „The

Harem,‟ whereas in drinking, the enjoyment of sound and other

objects of the senses, pleasing other people, honouring the

followers, and relaxation from the fatigue of work (are the

advantages).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

455

No, says Kautilya, in the case of addiction to women, the

consequences are the birth of children, self-protection, change of

wives in the harem, and absence of such consequences in the case

of unworthy outside women. Both the above consequences follow

from drinking. The auspicious effects of drinking are loss of

money, lunacy in a sensate man, corpselike appearance while

living, nakedness, the loss of the knowledge of the Vedas, loss of

life, wealth, and friends, disassociation with the good, suffering

from pain, and indulgence in playing on musical instruments and in

singing at the expense of wealth.

Of gambling and drinking, gambling causes gain or loss of the

stakes to one party or other. Even among dumb animals, it splits

them into factions and causes provocation. It is specially due to

gambling that assemblies and royal confederacies possessing the

characteristics of assemblies are split into factions, and are

consequently destroyed. The reception of what is condemned is the

worst of all evils since it causes incapacity to deal with politics.

\* The reception of what is condemned is (due to) desire; and anger

consists in oppressing the good; since both these are productive of

many evils, both of them are held to be the worst evils.

\* Hence be who is possessed of discretion should associate with

the aged, and, after controlling his passions, abandon both anger

and desire which are productive of other evils and destructive of

the very basis (of life).

[Thus ends Chapter III, "The Aggregate of the Troubles of Men,"

in Book VIII. "Concerning Vices and Calamities” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and nineteenth chapter

from the beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

456

## CHAPTER IV. THE GROUP OF MOLESTATIONS, THE GROUP OF OBSTRUCTIONS, AND THE GROUP OF FINANCIAL TROUBLES.

PROVIDENTIAL calamities are fire, floods, pestilence,

famine, and (the epidemic disease called) *maraka*.

My teacher says that of fire and floods, destruction due to fire

is irremediable; all kinds of troubles, except those due to fire, can

be alleviated, and troubles due to floods can be passed over.

No, says Kautilya, fire destroys a village, or part of a village

whereas floods carry off hundreds of villages.

My teacher says that of pestilence and famine, pestilence

brings all kinds of business to a stop by causing obstruction to work

on account of disease and death among men and owing to the flight

of servants, whereas famine stops no work, but is productive of

gold, cattle and taxes.

No, says Kautilya, pestilence devastates only a part (of the

country) and can be remedied, whereas famine causes troubles to

the whole (of the country) and occasions dearth of livelihood to all

creatures.

This explains the consequences of *maraka*.

My teacher says that of the loss of chief and vulgar men, the

loss of vulgar men causes obstruction to work.

No, says Kautilya, it is possible to recruit vulgar men, since

they form the majority of people; for the sake of vulgar men,

nobles should not be allowed to perish; one in a thousand may or

may not be a noble man; he it is who is possessed of excessive

courage and wisdom and is the refuge of vulgar people.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

457

My teacher says that of the troubles arising from one's own or

one‟s enemy's Circle of States, those due to one's own Circle are

doubly injurious and are irremediable, whereas an inimical Circle

of States can be fought out or kept away by the intervention of an

ally or by making peace.

No, says Kautilya, troubles due to one's own Circle can be got

rid of by arresting or destroying the leaders among the subjective

people; or they may be injurious to a part of the country, whereas

troubles due to an enemy's Circle of States cause oppression by

inflicting loss and destruction and by burning, devastation, and

plunder.

My teacher says that of the quarrels among the people and

among kings, quarrel among the people brings about disunion and

thereby enables an enemy to invade the country, whereas quarrel

among kings is productive of double pay and wages and of

remission of taxes to the people.

No, says Kautilya, it is possible to end the quarrel among the

people by arresting the leaders, or by removing the cause of

quarrel; and people quarrelling among themselves vie with each

other and thereby help the country, whereas quarrel among kings

causes trouble and destruction to the people and requires double

the energy for its settlement.

My teacher says that of a sportive king and a sportive country,

a sportive country is always ruinous to the results of work, whereas

a sportive king is beneficial to artisans, carpenters, musicians,

buffoons and traders.

No, says Kautilya, a sportive country, taking to sports for

relaxation from labour, causes only a trifling loss; and after

enjoyment, it resumes work, whereas a sportive king causes

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

458

oppression by showing indulgence to his courtiers, by seizing and

begging, and by obstructing work in the manufactories.

My teacher says that of a favourite wife and a prince, the

prince causes oppression by showing indulgence to his followers,

by seizing and begging, and by obstructing the work in

manufactories whereas the favourite wife is addicted to her

amorous sports.

No, says Kautilya, it is possible to prevent through the

minister and the priest, the oppression caused by the prince, but not

the oppression caused by the favourite wife, since she is usually

stubborn and keeps company with wicked persons.

My teacher says that of the troubles due to a corporation of

people and to a leader (a chief), the corporation of people people

cannot be put down since it consists of a number of men and causes

oppression by theft and violence, whereas a leader causes troubles

by obstruction to, and destruction of, work.

No, says Kautilya, it is very easy to get rid of (the troubles

from) a corporation; since it has to rise or fall with the king; or it

can be put down by arresting its leader or a part of the corporation

itself, whereas a leader backed up with support causes oppression

by injuring the life and property of others.

My teacher says that of the chamberlain and the collector of

revenue, the chamberlain causes oppression by spoiling works and

by inflicting fines, whereas the collector of revenue makes use of

the ascertained revenue in the department over which he presides.

No, says Kautilya, the chamberlain takes to himself what is

presented by others to be entered into the treasury whereas the

collector makes his own revenue first and then the kings'; or he

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

459

destroys the kings' revenue and proceeds as he pleases to seize the

property of others.

My teacher says that of the superintendent of the boundary

and a trader, the superintendent of the boundary destroys traffic by

allowing thieves and taking taxes more than he ought to, whereas a

trader renders the country prosperous by a favourable barter of

commercial articles.

No, says Kautilya, the superintendent of the boundary

increases commercial traffic by welcoming the arrival of

merchandise, whereas traders unite in causing rise and fall in the

value of articles, and live by making profits cent per cent in *panas*

or *kumbhas* (measures of grain).

Which is more desirable, land occupied by a high-born person

or land reserved for grazing a flock of cattle?

My teacher says that the land occupied by a high-born person

is very productive; and it supplies men to the army; hence it does

not deserve to be confiscated lest the owner might cause troubles,

whereas the land occupied for grazing a flock of cattle is cultivable

and deserves therefore to be freed, for cultivable land is preferred

to pasture land.

No, says Kautilya, though immensely useful, the land

occupied by a high-born person deserves to be freed, lest he might

cause troubles (otherwise), whereas the land held for grazing a

flock of cattle is productive of money and beasts, and does not

therefore deserve to be confiscated unless cultivation of crops is

impeded thereby.

My teacher says that of robbers and wild tribes, robbers are

ever bent on carrying off women at night, make assaults on

persons, and take away hundreds and thousands of *panas*, whereas

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

460

wild tribes, living under a leader and moving in the neighbouring

forests can be seen here and there causing destruction only to a

part.

No, says Kautilya, robbers carry off the property of the

careless and can be put down as they are easily recognized and

caught hold of, whereas wild tribes have their own strongholds,

being numerous and brave, ready to fight in broad daylight, and

seizing and destroying countries like kings.

Of the forests of beasts and of elephants, beasts are numerous

and productive of plenty of flesh and skins; they arrest the growth

of the grass and are easily controlled, whereas elephants are of the

reverse nature and are seen to be destructive of countries even

when they are captured and tamed.

Of benefits derived from one's own or a foreign country,

benefits derived from one's own country consists of grains, cattle,

gold, and raw products and are useful for the maintenance of the

people in calamities, whereas benefits derived from a foreign

country are of the reverse nature.

Such is the group of molestations.

Obstruction to movements caused by a chief is internal

obstruction; and obstruction to movements caused by an enemy or

a wild tribe is external obstruction.

Such is the group of obstructions.

Financial troubles due to the two kinds of obstruction and to

the molestations described above are stagnation of financial

position, loss of wealth due to the allowance of remission of taxes

in favour of leaders, scattered revenue, false account of revenue

collected, and revenue left in the custody of a neighbouring king or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

461

of a wild tribe.

Thus the group of financial troubles.

\* In the interests of the prosperity of the country, one should

attempt to avoid the cause of troubles, remedy them when they

happen, and avert obstructions and financial troubles.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, "The Group of Molestations, the Group of

Obstructions, and the Group of Financial Troubles" in BookVIII,

"Concerning Vices and Calamities," of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and twentieth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER V. THE GROUP OF TROUBLES OF THE ARMY, AND THE GROUP OF TROUBLES OF A FRIEND.

The troubles of the army are--That which is disrespected; that

which is mortified; that which is not paid for; that which is

diseased; that which has freshly arrived; that which has made a

long journey; that which is tired; that which has sustained loss; that

which has been repelled; that of which the front portion is

destroyed; that which is suffering from inclemency of weather; that

which has found itself in an unsuitable ground; that which is

displeased from disappointment; that which has run away; that of

which the men are fond of their wives; that which contains traitors;

that of which the prime portion is provoked; that which has

dissensions; that which has come from a foreign state; that which

has served in many states; that which is specially trained to a

particular kind of manoeuvre and encampment; that which is

trained to a particular movement in a particular place; that which is

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

462

obstructed; that which is surrounded; that which has its supply of

grains cut off; that which has its men and stores cut off; that which

is kept in one's own country; that which is under the protection of

an ally; that which contains inimical persons; that which is afraid

of an enemy in the rear; that which has lost its communication; that

which has lost its commander; that which has lost its leader; and

that which is blind (*i.e.*, untrained).

Of the disrespected and the mortified among these, that which

is disrespected may be taken to fight after being honoured, but not

that which is suffering from its own mortification.

Of unpaid and diseased armies, the unpaid may be taken to

fight after making full payment but not the diseased, which is unfit

for work.

Of freshly arrived and long-travelled armies, that which has

freshly arrived may be taken to fight after it has taken its position

without mingling with any other new army, but not that which is

tired from its long journey.

Of tired and reduced armies, the army that is tired may be

taken to fight after it has refreshed itself from bathing, eating, and

sleeping, but not the reduced army, *i.e.*, the army, the leaders of

which have been killed.

Of armies which have either been repelled or have their front

destroyed, that which has been repelled may be taken to fight

together with fresh men attached to it, but not the army which has

lost many of its brave men in its frontal attack.

Of armies, either suffering from inclemency of weather or

driven to an unsuitable ground, that which is suffering from

inclemency of weather may be taken to fight after providing it with

weapons and dress appropriate for the season, but not the army on

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

463

an unfavourable ground obstructing its movements.

Of disappointed and renegade armies, that which is

disappointed may be taken to fight after satisfying it but not the

army which has (once) run away.

Of soldiers who are either fond of their wives or are under an

enemy, those who are fond of their wives may be taken to fight

after separating them from their wives; but not those who are under

an enemy, and are, therefore, like internal enemies.

Of provoked and disunited armies, that, of which a part is

provoked, may be taken to fight after pacifying it by conciliation

and other strategic means but not the disunited army, the members

of which are estranged from each other.

Of armies which have left service either in one state or in

many states, that whose resignation of service in a foreign state is

not due to instigation or conspiracy may be taken to fight under the

leadership of spies and friends, but not the army which has

resigned its service in many states and is, therefore, dangerous.

Of armies which are trained either to a particular kind of

manoeuvre and encampment or to a particular movement in a

particular place, that which is taught a special kind of manoeuvre

and encampment may be taken to fight, but not the army whose

way of making encampments and marches is only suited for a

particular place.

Of obstructed and surrounded armies, that which is

prevented from its movements in one direction may be taken to

fight against the obstructor in another direction, but not the army

whose movements are obstructed on all sides.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

464

Of troops whose supply of grain is cut off or whose supply of

men and stores is cut off, that which has lost its supply of grain may

be taken to fight after providing it with grain brought from another

quarter or after supplying to it moveable and immoveable

food-stuffs (animal and vegetable food-stuffs) but not the army to

which men and provisions cannot be supplied.

Of armies kept in one's own country or under the protection of

an ally, that which is kept in one's own country can possibly be

disbanded in time of danger, but not the army under the protection

of an ally, as it is far removed in place and time.

Of armies either filled with traitors, or frightened by an

enemy in the rear, that which is full of traitors may be taken to fight

apart under the leadership of a trusted commander, but not the

army which is afraid of an attack from the rear.

Of armies without communication or without leaders, that

which has lost its communication with the base of operations may

be taken to fight after restoring the communication and placing it

under the protection of citizens and country people, but not the

army which is without a leader such as the king or any other

persons.

Of troops which have lost their leader or which are not

trained, those that have lost their leader may be taken to fight under

the leadership of a different person but not the troops which are not

trained.

\* Removal of vices and troubles, recruitment (of new men),

keeping away from places of an enemy's ambush, and harmony

among the officers of the army, are the means of protecting the

army from troubles.

\* He (the king) should ever carefully guard his army from the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

465

troubles caused by an enemy, and should ever be ready to strike his

enemy's army when the latter is under troubles;

\* Whatever he may come to know as the source of trouble to his

people, he should quickly and carefully apply antidotes against that

cause.

\* A friend who, by himself, or in combination with others or under

the influence of another king, has marched against his own ally, a

friend who is abandoned owing to inability to retain his friendship,

or owing to greediness or indifference;

\* A friend who is bought by another and who has withdrawn

himself from fighting;

\* A friend who, following the policy of making peace with one

and marching against another, has contracted friendship with one,

who is going to march either singly or in combination with others

against an ally;

\* A friend who is not relieved from his troubles owing to fear,

contempt, or indifference; a friend who is surrounded in his own

place or who has run away owing to fear;

\* A friend who is displeased owing to his having to pay much, or

owing to his not having received his due or owing to his

dissatisfaction even after the receipt of his due;

\* A friend who has voluntarily paid much or who is made by

another to pay much (to his ally); a friend who is kept under

pressure, or who, having broken the bond of friendship, sought

friendship with another;

\* A friend who is neglected owing to inability to retain his

friendship; and a friend who has become an enemy in spite of his

ally's entreaties to the contrary;--such friends are hardly acquired;

and if acquired at all, they turn away.

\*A friend who has realised the responsibilities of friendship, or

who is honourable; or whose disappointment is due to want of

information, or who, though excited, is unequal (to the task), or

who is made to turn back owing to fear from another;

\* Or who is frightened at the destruction of another friend, or who

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

466

is apprehensive of danger from the combination of enemies, or

who is made by traitors to give up his friendship,--it is possible to

acquire such a friend; and if acquired, he keeps up his friendship.

\* Henceone should not give rise to those causes which are

destructive of friendship; and when they arise, one should get rid of

them by adopting such friendly attitude as can remove those

causes.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "The Group of Troubles of the Army, and

the Group of Troubles of a Friend," in Book VIII "Concerning

Vices and Calamities," of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

hundred and twenty-first chapter from the beginning. With this

ends the eighth Book "Concerning Vices and Calamities" of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 391-409.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

467

# Book VIII: Concerning Vices and Calamities

## CHAPTER I. THE AGGREGATE OF THE CALAMITIES OF THE ELEMENTS OF SOVEREIGNTY.

WHEN calamities happen together, the form of consideration

should be whether it is easier to take an offensive or defensive

attitude. National calamities, coming from Providence or from man

happen from one's misfortune or bad policy. The word *vyasana*

(vices or calamities), means the reverse or absence of virtue, the

preponderance of vices, and occasional troubles. That which

deprives (*vyasyati*) a person of his happiness is termed *vyasana*

(vices or calamities).

My teacher says that of the calamities, *viz*., the king in

distress, the minister in distress, the people in distress, distress due

to bad fortifications, financial distress, the army in distress, and an

ally in distress,--that which is first mentioned is more serious than

the one, coming later in the order of enumeration.

No, says Bháradvája, of the distress of the king and of his

minister, ministerial distress is more serious; deliberations in

council, the attainment of results as anticipated while deliberating

in council, the accomplishment of works, the business of

revenue-collection and its expenditure, recruiting the army, the

driving out of the enemy and of wild tribes, the protection of the

kingdom, taking remedial measures against calamities, the

protection of the heir-apparent, and the installation of princes

constitute the duties of ministers. In the absence of ministers; the

above works are ill-done; and like a bird, deprived of its feathers,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

468

the king loses his active capacity. In such calamities, the intrigues

of the enemy find a ready scope. In ministerial distress, the king's

life itself comes into danger, for a minister is the mainstay of the

security of the king's life.

No, says Kautilya, it is verily the king who attends to the

business of appointing ministers, priests, and other servants,

including the superintendents of several departments, the

application of remedies against the troubles of his people, and of

his kingdom, and the adoption of progressive measures; when his

ministers fall into troubles, he employs others; he is ever ready to

bestow rewards on the worthy and inflict punishments on the

wicked; when the king is well off, by his welfare and prosperity, he

pleases the people; of what kind the king's character is, of the same

kind will be the character of his people; for their progress or

downfall, the people depend upon the king; the king is, as it were,

the aggregate of the people.

Visáláksha says that of the troubles of the minister and of the

people; the troubles of the people are more serious; finance, army,

raw products, free labour, carriage of things, and collection (of

necessaries) are all secured from the people. There will be no such

things in the absence of people, next to the king and his minister.

No, says Kautilya, all activities proceed from the minister,

activities such as the successful accomplishment of the works of

the people, security of person and property from internal and

external enemies, remedial measures against calamities,

colonization and improvement of wild tracts of land, recruiting the

army, collection of revenue, and bestowal of favour.

The school of Parásara say that of the distress of the people

and distress due to bad fortifications, the latter is a more serious

evil; for it is in fortified towns that the treasury and the army are

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

469

secured; they (fortified towns) are a secure place for the people;

they are a stronger power than the citizens or country people; and

they are a powerful defensive instrument in times of danger for the

king. As to the people, they are common both to the king and his

enemy.

No, says Kautilya, for forts, finance, and the army depend

upon the people; likewise buildings, trade, agricu1ture,

cattle-rearing, bravery, stability, power, and abundance (of things).

In countries inhabited by people, there are mountains and islands

(as natural forts); in the absence of an expansive country, forts are

resorted to. When a country consists purely of cultivators, troubles

due to the absence of fortifications (are apparent); while in a

country which consists purely of warlike people, troubles that may

appear are due to the absence of (an expansive and cultivated)

territory.

Pisuna says that of the troubles due to the absence of forts and

to want of finance, troubles due to want of finance are more

serious; the repair of fortifications and their maintenance depend

upon finance; by means of wealth, intrigue to capture an enemy's

fort may be carried on; by means of wealth, the people, friends, and

enemies can be kept under control; by means of it, outsiders can be

encouraged and the establishment of the army and its operations

conducted. It is possible to remove the treasure in times of danger,

but not the fort.

No, says Kautilya, for it is in the fort that the treasury and the

army are safely kept, and it is from the fort that secret war

(intrigue), control over one's partisans, the upkeep of the army, the

reception of allies and the driving out of enemies and of wild tribes

are successfully practised. In the absence of forts, the treasury is to

the enemy, for it seems that for those who own forts, there is no

destruction.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

470

Kaunapadanta says that of distress due to want of finance or

to an inefficient army, that which is due to the want of an efficient

army is more serious; for control over one's own friends and

enemies, the winning over the army of an enemy, and the business

of administration are all dependent upon the army. In the absence

of the army, it is certain that the treasury will be lost, whereas lack

of finance can be made up by procuring raw products and lands or

by seizing an enemy's territory.

The army may go to the enemy, or murder the king himself,

and bring about all kinds of troubles. But finance is the chief means

of observing virtuous acts and of enjoying desires. Owing to a

change in place, time, and policy, either finance or the army may

be a superior power; for the army is (sometimes) the means of

securing the wealth acquired; but wealth is (always) the means of

securing both the treasury and the army. Since all activities are

dependent upon finance, financial troubles are more serious.

Vátavyádhi says that of the distress of the army and of an ally,

the distress of an ally is more serious--an ally, though he is not fed

and is far off, is still serviceable; he drives off not only the

rear-enemy and the friends of the rear-enemy, but also the frontal

enemy and wild tribes; he also helps his friend with money, army,

and lands on occasions of troubles.

No, says Kautilya, the ally of him who has a powerful army

keeps the alliance; and even the enemy assumes a friendly attitude;

when there is a work that can be equally accomplished either by the

army or by an ally, then preference to the army or to the ally should

depend on the advantages of securing the appropriate place and

time for war and the expected profit. In times of sudden expedition

and on occasions of troubles from an enemy, a wild tribe, or local

rebels, no friend can be trusted. When calamities happen together,

or when an enemy has grown strong, a friend keeps up his

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

471

friendship as long as money is forthcoming. Thus the

determination of the comparative seriousness of the calamities of

the various elements of sovereignty.

\* When a part of one of the elements of sovereignty is under

troubles, the extent, affection, and strength of the serviceable part

can be the means of accomplishing a work.

\* When any two elements of sovereignty are equally under

troubles, they should be distinguished in respect of their

progressive or declining tendency, provided that the good

condition of the rest of the elements needs no description.

\* When the calamities of a single element tend to destroy the

rest of the elements, those calamities, whether they be of the

fundamental or any other element, are verily serious.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “The Aggregate of the Calamities of the

Elements of Sovereignty,” in Book VIII, “Concerning Vices and

Calamities” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and

seventeenth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. CONSIDERATIONS ABOUT THE TROUBLES OF THE KING AND OF HIS KINGDOM.

THE king and his kingdom are the primary elements of the

state.

The troubles of the king may be either internal or external.

Internal troubles are more serious than external troubles which are

like the danger arising from a lurking snake. Troubles due to a

minister are more serious than other kinds of internal troubles.

Hence, the king should keep under his own control the powers of

finance and the army.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

472

Of divided rule and foreign rule, divided rule or rule of a

country by two kings, perishes owing to mutual hatred, partiality

and rivalry. Foreign rule which comes into existence by seizing the

country from its king still alive, thinks that the country is not its

own, impoverishes it, and carries off its wealth, or treats it as a

commercial article; and when the country ceases to love it, it retires

abandoning the country.

Which is better, a blind king, or a king erring against the

science?

My teacher says that a blind king, *i.e.*, a king who is not

possessed of an eye in sciences, is indiscriminate in doing works,

very obstinate, and is led by others; such a king destroys the

kingdom by his own maladministration. But an erring king can be

easily brought round when and where his mind goes astray from

the procedure laid down in sciences.

No, says Kautilya, a blind king can be made by his supporters

to adhere to whatever line of policy he ought to. But an erring king

who is bent upon doing what is against the science, brings about

destruction to himself and his kingdom by maladministration.

Which is better, a diseased or a new king ?

My teacher says that a diseased king loses his kingdom owing

to the intrigue of his ministers, or loses his life on account of the

kingdom; but a new king pleases the people by such popular deeds

as the observance of his own duties and the act of bestowing

favours, remissions (of taxes), gifts, and presents upon others.

No, says Kautilya, a diseased king continues to observe his

duties as usual. But a new king begins to act as he pleases under the

impression that the country, acquired by his own might, belongs to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

473

himself; when pressed by combined kings (for plunder), he

tolerates their oppression of the country. Or having no firm control

over the elements of the state, he is easily removed. There is this

difference among diseased kings: a king who is morally diseased,

and a king who is suffering from physical disease; there is also this

difference among new kings: a high-born king and a base-born

king.

Which is better, a weak but high-born king, or a strong but

low-born king?

My teacher says that a people, even if interested in having a

weak king, hardly allow room for the intrigues of a weak but

high-born person to be their king; but that if they desire power,

they will easily yield themselves to the intrigues of a strong but

base-born person to be their king.

No, says Kautilya, a people will naturally obey a high-born

king though he is weak, for the tendency of a prosperous people is

to follow a high-born king. Also they render the intrigues of a

strong but base-born person, unavailing, as the saying is, that

possession of virtues makes for friendship.

The destruction of crops is worse than the destruction of

handfuls (of grains), since it is the labour that is destroyed thereby;

absence of rain is worse than too much rain.

\* The comparative seriousness or insignificance of any two

kinds of troubles affecting the elements of sovereignty, in the order

of enumeration of the several kinds of distress, is the cause of

adopting offensive or defensive operations.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "Considerations about the Troubles of the

King and of his Kingdom,” in Book VIII, “Concerning Vices and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

474

Calamities,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred

and eighteenth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. THE AGGREGATE OF THE TROUBLE OF MEN.

IGNORANCE and absence of discipline are the causes of a

man's troubles. An untrained man does not perceive the injuries

arising from vices. We are going to treat of them (vices):--

Vice's due to anger form a triad; and those due to desire are

fourfold. Of these two, anger is worse, for anger proceeds against

all. In a majority of cases, kings given to anger are said to have

fallen a prey to popular fury. But kings addicted to pleasures have

perished in consequence of serious diseases brought about by

deterioration and improverishment.

No, says Bháradvája, anger is the characteristic of a righteous

man. It is the foundation of bravery; it puts an end to despicable

(persons); and it keeps the people under fear. Anger is always a

necessary quality for the prevention of sin. But desire

(accompanies) the enjoyment of results, reconciliation, generosity,

and the act of endearing oneself to all. Possession of desire is

always necessary for him who is inclined to enjoy the fruits of what

he has accomplished.

No, says Kautilya, anger brings about enmity with, and

troubles from, an enemy, and is always associated with pain.

Addiction to pleasure (*káma*) occasions contempt and loss of

wealth, and throws the addicted person into the company of

thieves, gamblers, hunters, singers, players on musical

instruments, and other undesirable persons. Of these, enmity is

more serious than contempt, for a despised person is caught hold of

by his own people and by his enemies, whereas a hated person is

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

475

destroyed. Troubles from an enemy are more serious than loss of

wealth, for loss of wealth causes financial troubles, whereas

troubles from an enemy are injurious to life. Suffering on account

of vices is more serious than keeping company with undesirable

persons, for the company of undesirable persons can be got rid of

in a moment, whereas suffering from vices causes injury for a long

time. Hence, anger is a more serious evil.

Which is worse: abuse of language, or of money, or

oppressive punishment?

Visáláksha says that of abuse of language and of money,

abuse of language is worse; for when harshly spoken to, a brave

man retaliates; and bad language, like a nail piercing the heart,

excites anger and gives pain to the senses.

No, says Kautilya, gift of money palliates the fury occasioned

by abusive language, whereas abuse of money causes the loss of

livelihood itself. Abuse of money means gifts, exaction, loss or

abandonment of money.

The School of Parásara say that of abuse of money and

oppressive punishment, abuse of money is worse; for good deeds

and enjoyments depend upon wealth; the world itself is bound by

wealth. Hence, its abuse is a more serious evil.

No, says Kautilya, in preference to a large amount of wealth,

no man desires the loss of his own life. Owing to oppressive

punishment, one is liable to the same punishment at the hands of

one's enemies.

Such is the nature of the triad of evils due to anger.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

476

The fourfold vices due to desire are hunting, gambling,

women and drinking.

Pisuna says that of hunting and gambling, hunting is a worse

vice; for falling into the hand of robbers, enemies and elephants,

getting into wild fire, fear, inability to distinguish between the

cardinal points, hunger, thirst and loss of life are evils consequent

upon hunting, whereas in gambling, the expert gambler wins a

victory like Jayatsena and Duryodhana.

No, says Kautilya, of the two parties, one has to suffer from

defeat, as is well known from the history of Nala and Yudhishthira;

the same wealth that is won like a piece of flesh in gambling,

causes enmity. Lack of recognition of wealth properly acquired,

acquisition of ill-gotten wealth, loss of wealth without enjoyment,

staying away from answering the calls of nature, and contracting

diseases from not taking timely meals, are the evils of gambling,

whereas in hunting, exercise, the disappearance of phlegm, bile,

fat, and sweat, the acquisition of skill in aiming at stationary and

moving bodies, the ascertainment of the appearance of beasts when

provoked, and occasional march (are its good characteristics).

Kaunapadanta says that of addiction to gambling and to

women, gambling is a more serious evil; for gamblers always play,

even at night by lamp light, and even when the mother (of one of

the players) is dead; the gambler exhibits anger when spoken to in

times of trouble; whereas in the case of addiction to women, it is

possible to hold conversation about virtue and wealth, at the time

of bathing, dressing and eating. Also it is possible to make, by

means of secret punishment, a woman to be so good as to secure

the welfare of the king, or to get rid of her, or drive her out, under

the plea of disease.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

477

No, says Kautilya, it is possible to divert the attention from

gambling, but not so from women. (The evils of the latter are)

failure to see (what ought to be seen), violation of duty, the evil of

postponing works that are to be immediately done, incapacity to

deal with politics, and contracting the evil of drinking.

Vátavyádhi says that of addiction to women and to drinking,

addiction to women is a more serious evil: there are various kinds

of childishness among women, as explained in the chapter on „The

Harem,‟ whereas in drinking, the enjoyment of sound and other

objects of the senses, pleasing other people, honouring the

followers, and relaxation from the fatigue of work (are the

advantages).

No, says Kautilya, in the case of addiction to women, the

consequences are the birth of children, self-protection, change of

wives in the harem, and absence of such consequences in the case

of unworthy outside women. Both the above consequences follow

from drinking. The auspicious effects of drinking are loss of

money, lunacy in a sensate man, corpselike appearance while

living, nakedness, the loss of the knowledge of the Vedas, loss of

life, wealth, and friends, disassociation with the good, suffering

from pain, and indulgence in playing on musical instruments and in

singing at the expense of wealth.

Of gambling and drinking, gambling causes gain or loss of

the stakes to one party or other. Even among dumb animals, it splits

them into factions and causes provocation. It is specially due to

gambling that assemblies and royal confederacies possessing the

characteristics of assemblies are split into factions, and are

consequently destroyed. The reception of what is condemned is the

worst of all evils since it causes incapacity to deal with politics.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

478

\* The reception of what is condemned is (due to) desire; and

anger consists in oppressing the good; since both these are

productive of many evils, both of them are held to be the worst

evils.

\* Hence be who is possessed of discretion should associate

with the aged, and, after controlling his passions, abandon both

anger and desire which are productive of other evils and

destructive of the very basis (of life).

[Thus ends Chapter III, "The Aggregate of the Troubles of Men,"

in Book VIII. "Concerning Vices and Calamities” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and nineteenth chapter

from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. THE GROUP OF MOLESTATIONS, THE GROUP OF OBSTRUCTIONS, AND THE GROUP OF FINANCIAL TROUBLES.

PROVIDENTIAL calamities are fire, floods, pestilence,

famine, and (the epidemic disease called) *maraka*.

My teacher says that of fire and floods, destruction due to fire

is irremediable; all kinds of troubles, except those due to fire, can

be alleviated, and troubles due to floods can be passed over.

No, says Kautilya, fire destroys a village, or part of a village

whereas floods carry off hundreds of villages.

My teacher says that of pestilence and famine, pestilence

brings all kinds of business to a stop by causing obstruction to work

on account of disease and death among men and owing to the flight

of servants, whereas famine stops no work, but is productive of

gold, cattle and taxes.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

479

No, says Kautilya, pestilence devastates only a part (of the

country) and can be remedied, whereas famine causes troubles to

the whole (of the country) and occasions dearth of livelihood to all

creatures.

This explains the consequences of *maraka*.

My teacher says that of the loss of chief and vulgar men, the

loss of vulgar men causes obstruction to work.

No, says Kautilya, it is possible to recruit vulgar men, since

they form the majority of people; for the sake of vulgar men,

nobles should not be allowed to perish; one in a thousand may or

may not be a noble man; he it is who is possessed of excessive

courage and wisdom and is the refuge of vulgar people.

My teacher says that of the troubles arising from one's own or

one‟s enemy's Circle of States, those due to one's own Circle are

doubly injurious and are irremediable, whereas an inimical Circle

of States can be fought out or kept away by the intervention of an

ally or by making peace.

No, says Kautilya, troubles due to one's own Circle can be got

rid of by arresting or destroying the leaders among the subjective

people; or they may be injurious to a part of the country, whereas

troubles due to an enemy's Circle of States cause oppression by

inflicting loss and destruction and by burning, devastation, and

plunder.

My teacher says that of the quarrels among the people and

among kings, quarrel among the people brings about disunion and

thereby enables an enemy to invade the country, whereas quarrel

among kings is productive of double pay and wages and of

remission of taxes to the people.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

480

No, says Kautilya, it is possible to end the quarrel among the

people by arresting the leaders, or by removing the cause of

quarrel; and people quarrelling among themselves vie with each

other and thereby help the country, whereas quarrel among kings

causes trouble and destruction to the people and requires double

the energy for its settlement.

My teacher says that of a sportive king and a sportive country,

a sportive country is always ruinous to the results of work, whereas

a sportive king is beneficial to artisans, carpenters, musicians,

buffoons and traders.

No, says Kautilya, a sportive country, taking to sports for

relaxation from labour, causes only a trifling loss; and after

enjoyment, it resumes work, whereas a sportive king causes

oppression by showing indulgence to his courtiers, by seizing and

begging, and by obstructing work in the manufactories.

My teacher says that of a favourite wife and a prince, the

prince causes oppression by showing indulgence to his followers,

by seizing and begging, and by obstructing the work in

manufactories whereas the favourite wife is addicted to her

amorous sports.

No, says Kautilya, it is possible to prevent through the

minister and the priest, the oppression caused by the prince, but not

the oppression caused by the favourite wife, since she is usually

stubborn and keeps company with wicked persons.

My teacher says that of the troubles due to a corporation of

people and to a leader (a chief), the corporation of people people

cannot be put down since it consists of a number of men and causes

oppression by theft and violence, whereas a leader causes troubles

by obstruction to, and destruction of, work.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

481

No, says Kautilya, it is very easy to get rid of (the troubles

from) a corporation; since it has to rise or fall with the king; or it

can be put down by arresting its leader or a part of the corporation

itself, whereas a leader backed up with support causes oppression

by injuring the life and property of others.

My teacher says that of the chamberlain and the collector of

revenue, the chamberlain causes oppression by spoiling works and

by inflicting fines, whereas the collector of revenue makes use of

the ascertained revenue in the department over which he presides.

No, says Kautilya, the chamberlain takes to himself what is

presented by others to be entered into the treasury whereas the

collector makes his own revenue first and then the kings'; or he

destroys the kings' revenue and proceeds as he pleases to seize the

property of others.

My teacher says that of the superintendent of the boundary

and a trader, the superintendent of the boundary destroys traffic by

allowing thieves and taking taxes more than he ought to, whereas a

trader renders the country prosperous by a favourable barter of

commercial articles.

No, says Kautilya, the superintendent of the boundary

increases commercial traffic by welcoming the arrival of

merchandise, whereas traders unite in causing rise and fall in the

value of articles, and live by making profits cent per cent in *panas*

or *kumbhas* (measures of grain).

Which is more desirable, land occupied by a high-born

person or land reserved for grazing a flock of cattle?

My teacher says that the land occupied by a high-born person

is very productive; and it supplies men to the army; hence it does

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

482

not deserve to be confiscated lest the owner might cause troubles,

whereas the land occupied for grazing a flock of cattle is cultivable

and deserves therefore to be freed, for cultivable land is preferred

to pasture land.

No, says Kautilya, though immensely useful, the land

occupied by a high-born person deserves to be freed, lest he might

cause troubles (otherwise), whereas the land held for grazing a

flock of cattle is productive of money and beasts, and does not

therefore deserve to be confiscated unless cultivation of crops is

impeded thereby.

My teacher says that of robbers and wild tribes, robbers are

ever bent on carrying off women at night, make assaults on

persons, and take away hundreds and thousands of *panas*, whereas

wild tribes, living under a leader and moving in the neighbouring

forests can be seen here and there causing destruction only to a

part.

No, says Kautilya, robbers carry off the property of the

careless and can be put down as they are easily recognized and

caught hold of, whereas wild tribes have their own strongholds,

being numerous and brave, ready to fight in broad daylight, and

seizing and destroying countries like kings.

Of the forests of beasts and of elephants, beasts are numerous

and productive of plenty of flesh and skins; they arrest the growth

of the grass and are easily controlled, whereas elephants are of the

reverse nature and are seen to be destructive of countries even

when they are captured and tamed.

Of benefits derived from one's own or a foreign country,

benefits derived from one's own country consists of grains, cattle,

gold, and raw products and are useful for the maintenance of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

483

people in calamities, whereas benefits derived from a foreign

country are of the reverse nature.

Such is the group of molestations.

Obstruction to movements caused by a chief is internal

obstruction; and obstruction to movements caused by an enemy or

a wild tribe is external obstruction.

Such is the group of obstructions.

Financial troubles due to the two kinds of obstruction and to

the molestations described above are stagnation of financial

position, loss of wealth due to the allowance of remission of taxes

in favour of leaders, scattered revenue, false account of revenue

collected, and revenue left in the custody of a neighbouring king or

of a wild tribe.

Thus the group of financial troubles.

\* In the interests of the prosperity of the country, one should

attempt to avoid the cause of troubles, remedy them when they

happen, and avert obstructions and financial troubles.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, "The Group of Molestations, the Group of

Obstructions, and the Group of Financial Troubles" in BookVIII,

"Concerning Vices and Calamities," of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and twentieth chapter from the

beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

484

## CHAPTER V. THE GROUP OF TROUBLES OF THE ARMY, AND THE GROUP OF TROUBLES OF A FRIEND.

The troubles of the army are--That which is disrespected; that

which is mortified; that which is not paid for; that which is

diseased; that which has freshly arrived; that which has made a

long journey; that which is tired; that which has sustained loss; that

which has been repelled; that of which the front portion is

destroyed; that which is suffering from inclemency of weather; that

which has found itself in an unsuitable ground; that which is

displeased from disappointment; that which has run away; that of

which the men are fond of their wives; that which contains traitors;

that of which the prime portion is provoked; that which has

dissensions; that which has come from a foreign state; that which

has served in many states; that which is specially trained to a

particular kind of manoeuvre and encampment; that which is

trained to a particular movement in a particular place; that which is

obstructed; that which is surrounded; that which has its supply of

grains cut off; that which has its men and stores cut off; that which

is kept in one's own country; that which is under the protection of

an ally; that which contains inimical persons; that which is afraid

of an enemy in the rear; that which has lost its communication; that

which has lost its commander; that which has lost its leader; and

that which is blind (*i.e.*, untrained).

Of the disrespected and the mortified among these, that

which is disrespected may be taken to fight after being honoured,

but not that which is suffering from its own mortification.

Of unpaid and diseased armies, the unpaid may be taken to

fight after making full payment but not the diseased, which is unfit

for work.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

485

Of freshly arrived and long-travelled armies, that which has

freshly arrived may be taken to fight after it has taken its position

without mingling with any other new army, but not that which is

tired from its long journey.

Of tired and reduced armies, the army that is tired may be

taken to fight after it has refreshed itself from bathing, eating, and

sleeping, but not the reduced army, *i.e.*, the army, the leaders of

which have been killed.

Of armies which have either been repelled or have their front

destroyed, that which has been repelled may be taken to fight

together with fresh men attached to it, but not the army which has

lost many of its brave men in its frontal attack.

Of armies, either suffering from inclemency of weather or

driven to an unsuitable ground, that which is suffering from

inclemency of weather may be taken to fight after providing it with

weapons and dress appropriate for the season, but not the army on

an unfavourable ground obstructing its movements.

Of disappointed and renegade armies, that which is

disappointed may be taken to fight after satisfying it but not the

army which has (once) run away.

Of soldiers who are either fond of their wives or are under an

enemy, those who are fond of their wives may be taken to fight

after separating them from their wives; but not those who are under

an enemy, and are, therefore, like internal enemies.

Of provoked and disunited armies, that, of which a part is

provoked, may be taken to fight after pacifying it by conciliation

and other strategic means but not the disunited army, the members

of which are estranged from each other.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

486

Of armies which have left service either in one state or in

many states, that whose resignation of service in a foreign state is

not due to instigation or conspiracy may be taken to fight under the

leadership of spies and friends, but not the army which has

resigned its service in many states and is, therefore, dangerous.

Of armies which are trained either to a particular kind of

manoeuvre and encampment or to a particular movement in a

particular place, that which is taught a special kind of manoeuvre

and encampment may be taken to fight, but not the army whose

way of making encampments and marches is only suited for a

particular place.

Of obstructed and surrounded armies, that which is prevented

from its movements in one direction may be taken to fight against

the obstructor in another direction, but not the army whose

movements are obstructed on all sides.

Of troops whose supply of grain is cut off or whose supply of

men and stores is cut off, that which has lost its supply of grain may

be taken to fight after providing it with grain brought from another

quarter or after supplying to it moveable and immoveable

food-stuffs (animal and vegetable food-stuffs) but not the army to

which men and provisions cannot be supplied.

Of armies kept in one's own country or under the protection

of an ally, that which is kept in one's own country can possibly be

disbanded in time of danger, but not the army under the protection

of an ally, as it is far removed in place and time.

Of armies either filled with traitors, or frightened by an

enemy in the rear, that which is full of traitors may be taken to fight

apart under the leadership of a trusted commander, but not the

army which is afraid of an attack from the rear.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

487

Of armies without communication or without leaders, that

which has lost its communication with the base of operations may

be taken to fight after restoring the communication and placing it

under the protection of citizens and country people, but not the

army which is without a leader such as the king or any other

persons.

Of troops which have lost their leader or which are not

trained, those that have lost their leader may be taken to fight under

the leadership of a different person but not the troops which are not

trained.

\* Removal of vices and troubles, recruitment (of new men),

keeping away from places of an enemy's ambush, and harmony

among the officers of the army, are the means of protecting the

army from troubles.

\* He (the king) should ever carefully guard his army from the

troubles caused by an enemy, and should ever be ready to strike his

enemy's army when the latter is under troubles;

\* Whatever he may come to know as the source of trouble to

his people, he should quickly and carefully apply antidotes against

that cause.

\* A friend who, by himself, or in combination with others or

under the influence of another king, has marched against his own

ally, a friend who is abandoned owing to inability to retain his

friendship, or owing to greediness or indifference;

\* A friend who is bought by another and who has withdrawn

himself from fighting;

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

488

\* A friend who, following the policy of making peace with

one and marching against another, has contracted friendship with

one, who is going to march either singly or in combination with

others against an ally;

\* A friend who is not relieved from his troubles owing to

fear, contempt, or indifference; a friend who is surrounded in his

own place or who has run away owing to fear;

\* A friend who is displeased owing to his having to pay

much, or owing to his not having received his due or owing to his

dissatisfaction even after the receipt of his due;

\* A friend who has voluntarily paid much or who is made by

another to pay much (to his ally); a friend who is kept under

pressure, or who, having broken the bond of friendship, sought

friendship with another;

\* A friend who is neglected owing to inability to retain his

friendship; and a friend who has become an enemy in spite of his

ally's entreaties to the contrary;--such friends are hardly acquired;

and if acquired at all, they turn away.

\*A friend who has realised the responsibilities of friendship,

or who is honourable; or whose disappointment is due to want of

information, or who, though excited, is unequal (to the task), or

who is made to turn back owing to fear from another;

\* Or who is frightened at the destruction of another friend, or

who is apprehensive of danger from the combination of enemies,

or who is made by traitors to give up his friendship,--it is possible

to acquire such a friend; and if acquired, he keeps up his friendship.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

489

\* Hence one should not give rise to those causes which are

destructive of friendship; and when they arise, one should get rid of

them by adopting such friendly attitude as can remove those

causes.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "The Group of Troubles of the Army, and

the Group of Troubles of a Friend," in Book VIII "Concerning

Vices and Calamities," of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

hundred and twenty-first chapter from the beginning. With this

ends the eighth Book "Concerning Vices and Calamities" of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

490

# Book IX, "The Work of an Invader"

## CHAPTER I. THE KNOWLEDGE OF POWER, PLACE, TIME, STRENGTH, AND WEAKNESS; THE TIME OF INVASION.

THE conqueror should know the comparative strength and

weakness of himself and of his enemy; and having ascertained the

power, place, time, the time of marching and of recruiting the

army, the consequences, the loss of men and money, and profits

and danger, he should march with his full force; otherwise, he

should keep quiet.

My teacher says that of enthusiasm and power, enthusiasm is

better: a king, himself energetic, brave, strong, free from disease,

skilful in wielding weapons, is able with his army as a secondary

power to subdue a powerful king; his army, though small, will,

when led by him, be, capable of turning out any work. But a king

who has no enthusiasm in himself, will perish though possessed of

a strong army.

No, says Kautilya, he who is possessed of power overreaches,

by the sheer force of his power, another who is merely enthusiastic.

Having acquired, captured, or bought another enthusiastic king as

well as brave soldiers, he can make his enthusiastic army of horses,

elephants, chariots, and others to move anywhere without

obstruction. Powerful kings, whether women, young men, lame or

blind, conquered the earth by winning over or purchasing the aid of

enthusiastic persons.

My teacher says that of power (money and army) and skill in

intrigue, power is better; for a king, though possessed of skill for

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

491

intrigue (*mantrasakti*) becomes a man of barren mind if he has no

power; for the work of intrigue is well defined. He who has no

power loses his kingdom as sprouts of seeds in drought vomit their

sap.

No, says Kautilya, skill for intrigue is better; he who has the

eye of knowledge and is acquainted with the science of polity can

with little effort make use of his skill for intrigue and can succeed

by means of conciliation and other strategic means and by spies

and chemical appliances in over-reaching even those kings who are

possessed of enthusiasm and power. Thus of the three

acquirements, *viz*., enthusiasm, power and skill for intrigue, he

who posesses more of the quality mentioned later than the one

mentioned first in the order of enumeration will be successful in

over- reaching others.

Country (space) means the earth; in it the thousand *yojanas* of

the northern portion of the country that stretches between the

Himalayas and the ocean form the dominion of no insignificant

emperor; in it there are such varieties of land, as forests, villages,

waterfalls, level plains, and uneven grounds. In such lands, he

should undertake such works as he considers to be conducive to his

power and prosperity. That part of the country, in which his army

finds a convenient place for its manoeuvre and which proves

unfavourable to his enemy, is the best; that part of the country

which is of the reverse nature, is the worst; and that which partakes

of both the characteristics, is a country of middling quality.

Time consists of cold, hot, and rainy periods. The divisions of

time are: the night, the day, the fortnight, the month, the season,

solstices, the year, and the Yuga (cycle of five years). In these

divisions of time he should undertake such works as are conducive

to the growth of his power and prosperity. That time which is

congenial for the manoeuvre of his Army, but which is of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

492

reverse nature for his enemy is the best; that which is of the reverse

nature is the worst; and that which possesses both the

characteristics is of middling quality.

My teacher says that of strength, place, and time, strength is

the best; for a man who is possessed of strength can overcome the

difficulties due either to the unevenness of the ground or to the

cold, hot, or rainy periods of time. Some say that place is the best

for the reason that a dog, seated in a convenient place, can drag a

crocodile and that a crocodile in low ground can drag a dog.

Others say that time is the best for the reason that during the

day-time the crow kills the owl, and that at night the owl the crow.

No, says Kautilya, of strength, place, and time, each is helpful

to the other; whoever is possessed of these three things should,

after having placed one-third or one fourth of his army to protect

his base of operations against his rear-enemy and wild tribes in his

vicinity and after having taken with him as much army and treasure

as is sufficient to accomplish his work, march during the month of

*Márgásírsha* (December) against his enemy whose collection of

food-stuffs is old and insipid and who has not only not gathered

fresh food-stuffs, but also not repaired his fortifications, in order to

destroy the enemy's rainy crops and autumnal handfuls (*mushti*).

He should march during the month of *Chaitra* (March), if he means

to destroy the enemy's autumnal crops and vernal handfuls. He

should march during the month of *Jyestha* (May-June) against one

whose storage of fodder, firewood and water has diminished and

who has not repaired his fortifications, if he means to destroy the

enemy's vernal crops and handfuls of the rainy season. Or he may

march during the dewy season against a country which is of hot

climate and in which fodder and water are obtained in little

quantities. Or he may march during the summer against a country

in which the sun is enshrouded by mist and which is full of deep

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

493

valleys and thickets of trees and grass, or he may march during the

rains against a country which is suitable for the manoeuvre of his

own army and which is of the reverse nature for his enemy's army.

He has to undertake a long march between the months of

*Márgasírsha* (December) and *Taisha* (January), a march of mean

length between March and April, and a short march between May

and June; and one, afflicted with troubles, should keep quiet.

Marching against an enemy under troubles has been

explained in connection with "March after declaring war."

My teacher says that one should almost invariably march

against an enemy in troubles.

But Kautilya says: that when one's resources are sufficient

one should march, since the troubles of an enemy cannot be

properly recognised; or whenever one finds it possible to reduce or

destroy an enemy by marching against him, then one may

undertake a march.

When the weather is free from heat, one should march with an

army mostly composed of elephants. Elephants with profuse sweat

in hot weather are attacked by leprosy; and when they have no

water for bathing and drinking, they lose their quickness and

become obstinate. Hence, against a country containing plenty of

water and during the rainy season, one should march with an army

mostly composed of elephants. Against a country of the reverse

description, *i.e.*, which as little rain and muddy water, one should

march with an army mostly composed of asses, camels, and horses.

Against a desert, one should march during the rainy season

with all the four constituents of the army (elephants, horses,

chariots, and men). One should prepare a programme of short and

long distances to be marched in accordance with the nature of the

ground to be traversed, *viz.*, even ground, uneven ground, valleys

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

494

and plains.

When the work to be accomplished is small, march against all

kinds of enemies should be of short duration; and when it is great, it

should also be of long duration; during the rains, encampment

should be made abroad.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “The Knowledge of Power, Place, Time,

Strength and Weakness, the Time of Invasion,” in Book IX, “The

Work of an Invader,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the

hundred and twenty-second chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. THE TIME OF RECRUITING THE ARMY; THE FORM OF EQUIPMENT; AND THE WORK OF ARRAYING A RIVAL FORCE.

THE time of recruiting troops, such as hereditary troops

(*maula*), hired troops, corporation of soldiers (*srení*), troops

belonging to a friend or to an enemy, and wild tribes.

When he (a king) thinks that his hereditary army is more than

he requires for the defence of his own possessions or when he

thinks that as his hereditary army consists of more men than he

requires, some of them may be disaffected; or when he thinks that

his enemy has a strong hereditary army famous for its attachment,

and is, therefore, to be fought out with much skill on his part; or

when he thinks that though the roads are good and the weather

favourable, it is still the hereditary army that can endure wear and

tear; or when he thinks that though they are famous for their

attachment, hired soldiers and other kinds of troops cannot be

relied upon lest they might lend their ears to the intrigues of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

495

enemy to be invaded; or when he thinks that other kinds of force

are wanting in strength, then is the time for taking the hereditary

army.

When he thinks that the army he has hired is greater than his

hereditary army; that his enemy's hereditary army is small and

disaffected, while the army his enemy has hired is insignificant and

weak; that actual fight is less than treacherous fight; that the place

to be traversed and the time required do not entail much loss; that

his own army is little given to stupor, is beyond the fear of intrigue,

and is reliable; or that little is the enemy's power which he has to

put down, then is the time for leading the hired army.

When he thinks that the immense corporation of soldiers he

possesses can be trusted both to defend his country and to march

against his enemy; that he has to be absent only for a short time; or

that his enemy's army consists mostly of soldiers of corporations,

and consequently the enemy is desirous of carrying on treacherous

fight rather than an actual war, then is the time for the enlistment of

corporations of soldiers (*srení*).

When he thinks that the strong help he has in his friend can be

made use of both in his own country and in his marches; that he has

to be absent only for a short time, and actual fight is more than

treacherous fight; that having made his friend's army to occupy

wild tracts, cities, or plains and to fight with the enemy's ally, he,

himself, would lead his own army to fight with the enemy's army;

that his work can be accomplished by his friend as well; that his

success depends on his friend; that he has a friend near and

deserving of obligation; or that he has to utilize the excessive force

of his friend, then is the time for the enlistment of a friend's army.

When he thinks that he will have to make his strong enemy to

fight against another enemy on account of a city, a plain, or a wild

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

496

tract of land, and that in that fight he will achieve one or the other

of his objects, just like an outcast person in the fight between a dog

and a pig; that through the battle, he will have the mischievous

power of his enemy's allies or of wild tribes destroyed; that he will

have to make his immediate and powerful enemy to march

elsewhere and thus get rid of internal rebellion which his enemy

might have occasioned; and that the time of battle between enemies

or between inferior kings has arrived, then is the time for the

exercise of an enemy's forces.

This explains the time for the engagement of wild tribes.

When he thinks that the army of wild tribes is living by the

same road (that his enemy has to traverse); that the road is

unfavourable for the march of his enemy's army; that his enemy's

army consists mostly of wild tribes; that just as a wood-apple

(*bilva*) is broken by means of another wood-apple, the small army

of his enemy is to be destroyed, then is the time for engaging the

army of wild tribes.

That army which is vast and is composed of various kinds of

men and is so enthusiastic as to rise even without provision and

wages for plunder when told or untold; that which is capable of

applying its own remedies against unfavourable rains; that which

can be disbanded and which is invincible for enemies; and that, of

which all the men are of the same country, same caste, and same

training, is (to be considered as) a compact body of vast power.

Such are the periods of time for recruiting the army.

Of these armies, one has to pay the army of wild tribes either

with raw produce or with allowance for plunder.

When the time for the march of one's enemy's army has

approached, one has to obstruct the enemy or send him far away, or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

497

make his movements fruitless, or, by false promise, cause him to

delay the march, and then deceive him after the time for his march

has passed away. One should ever be vigilant to increase one's own

resources and frustrate the attempts of one's enemy to gain in

strength.

Of these armies, that which is mentioned first is better than

the one subsequently mentioned in the order of enumeration.

Hereditary army is better than hired army inasmuch as the

former has its existence dependent on that of its master, and is

constantly drilled.

That kind of hired army which is ever near, ready to rise

quickly, and obedient, is better than a corporation of soldiers.

That corporation of soldiers which is native, which has the

same end in view (as the king), and which is actuated with similar

feelings of rivalry, anger, and expectation of success and gain, is

better than the army of a friend. Even that corporation of soldiers

which is further removed in place and time is, in virtue of its having

the same end in view, better than the army of a friend.

The army of an enemy under the leadership of an *Arya* is

better than the army of wild tribes. Both of them (the army of an

enemy and of wild tribes) are anxious for plunder. In the absence of

plunder and under troubles, they prove as dangerous as a lurking

snake.

My teacher says that of the armies composed of *Bráhmans*,

*Kshatriyas*, *Vaisyas*, or *Súdras*, that which is mentioned first is, on

account of bravery, better to be enlisted than the one subsequently

mentioned in the order of enumeration.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

498

No, says Kautilya, the enemy may win over to himself the

army of *Bráhmans* by means of prostration. Hence, the army of

*Kshatriyas* trained in the art of wielding weapons is better; or the

army of *Vaisyas* or *Súdras* having great numerical strength (is

better).

Hence one should recruit one‟s army, reflecting that "such is

the army of my enemy; and this is my army to oppose it."

The army which possesses elephants, machines,

*sakatagarbha* (?), *Kunta* (a wooden rod), *prása* (a weapon, 24

inches long, with two handles), *Kharvataka* (?), bamboo sticks,

and iron sticks is the army to oppose an army of elephants.

The same possessed of stones, clubs, armour, hooks, and

spears in plenty is the army to oppose an army of chariots.

The same is the army to oppose cavalry.

Men, clad in armour, can oppose elephants.

Horses can oppose men, clad in armour.

Men , clad in armour, chariots, men possessing defensive

weapons, and infantry can oppose an army consisting of all the four

constituents (elephants, chariots, cavalry and infantry).

\* Thusconsidering the strength of the constituents of one‟s

own quadripartite army, one should recruit men to it so as to

oppose an enemy‟s army successfully.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "The Time of Recruiting the Army, the

Form of Equipment, and the Work of Arraying a Rival Force," in

Book IX, "The Work of an Invader," of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and twenty-third chapter from the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

499

beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. CONSIDERATION OF ANNOYANCE IN THE REAR; AND REMEDIES AGAINST INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL TROUBLES.

OF the two things, slight annoyance in the rear, and

considerable profit in the front, slight annoyance in the rear is more

serious; for traitors, enemies, and wild tribes augment on all sides

the slight annoyance which one may have in the rear. The members

of one's own state may be provoked about the acquisition of

considerable profit in the front.

When one under the protection of another has come to such a

condition (*i.e.*, slight annoyance in the rear and considerable profit

in the front), then one should endeavour so as to cause to the rear

enemy the loss and impoverishment of his servants and friends;

and in order to fetch the profit in the front, one should also employ

the commander of the army or the heir-apparent to lead the army.

Or the king himself may go in person to receive the profit in

the front, if he is able to ward off the annoyance in the rear. If he is

apprehensive of internal troubles, he may take with him the

suspected leaders. If he is apprehensive of external troubles, he

should march after keeping inside his capital as hostages the sons

and wives of suspected enemies and after having split into a

number of divisions the troops of the officer in charge of waste

lands (*súnyapála*) and having placed those divisions under the

command of several chiefs, or he may abandon his march, for it has

been already stated that internal troubles are more serious than

external troubles.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

500

The provocation of any one of the minister, the priest, the

commander-in-chief, and the heir-apparent is what is termed

internal trouble. The king should get rid of such an internal enemy

either by giving up his own fault or by pointing out the danger

arising from an external enemy. When the priest is guilty of the

gravest treason, relief should be found either by confining him or

by banishing him; when the heir-apparent is so, confinement or

death (*nigraha*), provided that there is another son of good

character. From these, the case of the minister and the

commander-in-chief is explained.

When a son, or a brother, or any other person of the royal

family attempts to seize the kingdom, he should be won over by

holding out hopes; when this is not possible, he should be

conciliated by allowing him to enjoy what he has already seized, or

by making an agreement with him, or by means of intrigue through

an enemy, or by securing to him land from an enemy, or any other

person of inimical character. Or he may be sent out on a mission

with an inimical force to receive the only punishment he deserves;

or a conspiracy may be made with a frontier king or wild tribes

whose displeasure he has incurred; or the same policy that is

employed in securing an imprisoned prince or in seizing an

enemy's villages may be resorted to.

The provocation of ministers other than the prime minister is

what is called the internal ministerial troubles. Even in this case,

necessary strategic means should be employed.

The provocation of the chief of a district (*ráshramukhya*), the

officer in charge of the boundary, the chief of wild tribes, and a

conquered king is what is termed external trouble. This should be

overcome by setting one against the other. Whoever among these

has strongly fortified himself should be caught hold of through the

agency of a frontier king, or the chief of wild tribes, or a scion of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

501

his family, or an imprisoned prince; or he may be captured through

the agency of a friend, so that he may not combine with an enemy;

or a spy may prevent him from combining with an enemy by

saying: "This enemy makes a cat's-paw of you and causes you to

fall upon your own lord; When his aim is realised, he makes you to

lead an army against enemies or wild tribes, or to sojourn in a

troublesome place; or he causes you to reside at a frontier station

far from the company of your sons and wife. When you have lost

all your strength, he sells you to your own lord; or having made

peace with you, he will please your own lord. Hence it is advisable

for you to go to the best friend of your lord." When he agrees to the

proposal, he is to be honoured; but when he refuses to listen, he is

to be told: "I am specially sent to separate you from the enemy."

The spy should however appoint some persons to murder him; or

he may be killed by some concealed persons; or some persons

pretending to be brave soldiers may be made to accompany him

and may be told by a spy (to murder him). Thus the end of troubles.

One should cause such troubles to one's enemy and ward off those

of one's own.

In the case of a person who is capable of causing or

alleviating troubles, intrigue should be made use of; and in the case

of a person who is of reliable character, able to undertake works,

and to favour his ally in his success, and to afford protection

against calamities, counter-intrigue (*pratijápa*) should be made use

of (to keep his friendship secure). It should also be considered

whether the person is of good disposition or of obstinate temper

(*satha*).

The intrigue carried on by a foreigner of obstinate temper

with local persons is of the following form:--"If after killing his

own master, he comes to me, then I will secure these two objects,

the destruction of my enemy and the acquisition of the enemy's

lands; or else my enemy kills him, with the consequence that the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

502

partisans of the relations killed, and other persons who are equally

guilty and are therefore apprehensive of similar punishment to

themselves will perturb my enemy's peace when my enemy has no

friends to count; or when my enemy falls to suspect any other

person who is equally guilty, I shall be able to cause the death of

this or that officer under my enemy's own command."

The intrigue carried on by a local person of obstinate temper

with a foreigner is of the following form:--"I shall either plunder

the treasury of this king or destroy his army; I shall murder my

master by employing this man; if my master consents, I shall cause

him to march against an external enemy or a wild tribe; let his

Circle of States be brought to confusion, let him incur enmity with

them; then it is easy to keep him under my power, and conciliate

him; or I myself shall seize the kingdom; or, having bound him in

chains, I shall obtain both my master's land and outside land; or

having caused the enemy (of my master) to march out, I shall cause

the enemy to be murdered in good faith; or I shall seize the enemy's

capital when it is empty (of soldiers).

When a person of good disposition makes a conspiracy for the

purpose of acquiring what is to be enjoyed by both then an

agreement should be made with him. But when a person of

obstinate temper so conspires, he should be allowed to have his

own way and then deceived. Thus the form of policy to be adopted

should be considered.

\* Enemies from enemies, subjects from subjects, subjects

from enemies, and enemies from subjects should ever be guarded;

and both from his subjects and enemies, a learned man should ever

guard his own person.

[Thus ends Chapter III, "Consideration of Annoyance in the Rear,

and Remedies Against Internal and External Troubles," in Book

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

503

IX, "The Work of an Invader," of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End

of the hundred and twenty-fourth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. CONSIDERATION ABOUT LOSS OF MEN, WEALTH, AND PROFIT.

Loss of trained men is what is called *kshaya*, loss of men.

Diminution of gold and grains is loss of wealth.

When the expected profit overweighs both these; then one

should march (against an enemy).

The characteristics of an expected profit are: that which is

receivable, that which is to be returned, that which pleases all, that

which excites hatred, that which is realised in a short time, that

which entails little loss of men to earn, that which entails little loss

of wealth to earn, that which is vast, that which is productive, that

which is harmless, that which is just, and that which comes first.

When a profit is easily acquired and secured without the

necessity of returning it to others, it is termed „receivable‟; that

which is of the reverse nature is „repayable‟; whoever goes to

receive a repayable profit or is enjoying it gets destruction.

When he, however, thinks that "by taking a repayable profit I

shall cause my enemy‟s treasury, army, and other defensive

resources to dwindle; I shall exploit to impoverishment the mines,

timber and elephant forests, irrigational works and roads of traffic

of my enemy; I shall impoverish his subjects, or cause them to

migrate, or conspire against him; when they are reduced to this

condition, my enemy inflames their hatred (by punishing them); or

I shall set my enemy against another enemy; my enemy will give

up his hopes and run away to one who has some blood-relationship

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

504

with him; or having improved his lands, I shall return them to him,

and when he is thus brought to ascendancy, he will be a lasting

friend of mine,"--then he may take even a repayable profit. Thus

receivable and repayable profits are explained.

That profit which a virtuous king receives from a wicked king

pleases both his own and other people; that which is of the reverse

nature excites hatred; that profit which is received at the advice of

ministers excites hatred, for they think: „This king has reduced our

party and impoverished us." That profit which is received without

caring for the opinion of treacherous ministers excites hatred, for

they think: "Having made the profit, this king destroys us." But that

which is of the reverse nature pleases. Thus pleasing and

provoking profits are explained.

That which is acquired by mere marching is what is acquired

soon.

That which is to be realised by negotiation (*mantrasáddhya*)

entails little loss of men.

That which requires merely the expenditure of provisions (for

servants employed to earn it) entails little loss of wealth.

That which is immediately of considerable value is vast.

That which is the source of wealth is productive.

That which is attained with no troubles is harmless.

That which is acquired best is just.

That which is acquired without any hindrance from allies is

profit coming first.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

505

When profits (from two sources) are equal, he should

consider the place and time, the strength and means (required to

acquire it), affection and disaffection (caused by it), intrigue and

absence of intrigue (involving it), its nearness and distance, its

present and future effects, its constant worth or worthlessness, and

its plentifulness and usefulness; and he should accept only that

profit which is possessed of most of the above good characteristics.

Obstructions to profit are: passion, anger, timidity, mercy,

bashfulness, living like one who is not an *Arya*, haughtiness, pity,

desire for the other world, strict adherence to virtuous life,

deception, neediness, envy, negligence of what is at hand,

generosity, want of faith, fear, inability to endure cold, heat, and

rain, and faith in the auspiciousness of lunar days and stars.

\*Wealth will pass away from that childish man who inquires

most after the stars; for wealth is the star for wealth; what will the

stars do?

\*Capable men will certainly secure wealth at least after a

hundred trials; and wealth is bound by wealth just as elephants are

bound by counter-elephants.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, “Consideration about Loss of Men, Wealth

and Profit,‟ in Book IX, “The Work of an Invader,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and twenty-fifth

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER V. EXTERNAL AND INTERNAL DANGERS.

THE formation of a treaty and other settlements otherwise

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

506

than they ought to have been made is impolicy. From it arise

dangers.

The various kinds of dangers are: that which is of external

origin and of internal abetment; that which is of internal origin and

of external abetment; that which is of external origin and of

external abetment; and that which is of internal origin and of

internal abetment.

Where foreigners carry on an intrigue with local men or local

men with foreigners, there the consequence of the intrigue carried

on by the combination of local and foreign persons will be very

serious. Abettors of an intrigue have a better chance of success than

its originators; for when the originators of an intrigue are put down,

others will hardly succeed in undertaking any other intrigue.

Foreigners can hardly win over local persons by intrigue; nor can

local men seduce foreigners. Foreigners will find their vast efforts

after all unavailing, and only conducive, to the prosperity of the

king (against whom they want to conspire).

When local persons are abetting (with foreigners), the means

to be employed to suppress them are conciliation (*sáma*) and gifts

(*dána*).

The act of pleasing a man with a high rank and honour is

conciliation; favour and remission of taxes or employment to

conduct state-works is what is termed gifts.

When foreigners are abetting, the king should employ the

policy of dissension and coercion. Spies under the guise of friends

may inform foreigners: "Mind, this man is desirous of deceiving

you with the help of his own spies who are disguised as traitors."

Spies under the garb of traitors may mix with traitors and separate

them from foreigners, or foreigners from local traitors. Fiery spies

may make friendship with traitors and kill them with weapons or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

507

poison; or having invited the plotting foreigners, they may murder

the latter.

Where foreigners carry on an intrigue with foreigners, or local

men with local men, there the consequences of the intrigue,

unanimously carried on with a set purpose, will be very serious.

When guilt is got rid of, there will be no guilty persons; but when a

guilty person is got rid of, the guilt will contaminate others. Hence,

when foreigners carry on an intrigue, the king should employ the

policy of dissension and coercion. Spies under the guise of friends

may inform foreign conspirators: "Mind, this your king, with the

desire of enriching himself, is naturally provoked against you all."

Then fiery spies may mix with the servants and soldiers of the

abettor (of foreign conspirators) and kill them with weapons,

poison, and other means. Other spies may then expose or betray the

abettor.

When local men carry on an intrigue with local men, the king

should employ necessary strategic means to put it down. He may

employ the policy of conciliation with regard to those who keep the

appearance of contentment, or who are naturally discontented or

otherwise. Gifts may be given under the pretext of having been

satisfied with a favoured man's steadfastness in maintaining the

purity of his character, or under the plea of anxious care about his

weal or woe. A spy under the garb of a friend may tell the local

persons: „Your king is attempting to find your heart; you should

tell him the truth." Or local men may be separated from each other,

by telling them: "This man carries such a tale to the king against

you." And coercive measures may be employed as described in the

Chapter on "Awards of Punishments."

Of these four kinds of danger, internal danger should first be

got rid of; for it has been already stated that internal troubles like

the fear from a lurking snake are more serious than external

troubles.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

508

\* One must consider that of these four kinds of danger, that

which is mentioned first is less grave than the one subsequently

mentioned, whether or not it is caused by powerful persons;

otherwise (*i.e*., when the danger is caused by insignificant

persons), simple means may be used to get rid of it.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "External and Internal Dangers" in Book

IX, "The Work of an Invader,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End

of the hundred and twenty-sixth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER VI. PERSONS ASSOCIATED WITH TRAITORS AND ENEMIES

THERE are two kinds of innocent persons, those who have

disassociated themselves from traitors and those who have kept

themselves away from enemies.

In order to separate citizens and country-people from traitors,

the king should employ all the strategic means, except coercion. It

is very difficult to inflict punishment on an assembly of influential

men; and if inflicted at all, it may not produce the desired effect,

but may give rise to undesirable consequences. He may, however,

take steps against the leaders of the seditious as shown in the

chapter on "Awards of Punishments."

In order to separate his people from an enemy, he should

employ conciliation and other strategic means to frustrate the

attempt of those who are the enemy's principal agents or by whom

the enemy's work is to be carried out.

Success in securing the services of capable agents depends

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

509

upon the king; success of efforts depends upon ministers; and

success to be achieved through capable agents is, therefore,

dependent both upon the king and his ministers.

When, in spite of the combination of traitors and loyal

persons, success is achieved, it is mixed success; when people are

thus mixed, success is to be achieved through the agency of loyal

persons; for in the absence of a support, nothing that requires a

support for its existence can exist. When success is involved in the

union of friends and enemies it is termed a success contaminated

by an enemy; when success is contaminated by an enemy, it is to be

achieved through the agency of a friend; for it is easy to attain

success through a friend, but not through an enemy.

When a friend does not come to terms, intrigue should be

frequently resorted to. Through the agency of spies, the friend

should be won over after separating him from the enemy. Or

attempts may be made to win him over who is the last among

combined friends; for when he who is the last among combined

friends is secured, those who occupy the middle rank will be

separated from each other; or attempts may be made to win over a

friend who occupies middle rank; for when a friend occupying

middle rank among combined kings is secured, friends, occupying

the extreme ranks cannot keep the union. (In brief) all those

measures which tend to break their combination should be

employed.

A virtuous king may be conciliated by praising his birth,

family, learning and character, and by pointing out the relationship

which his ancestors had (with the proposer of peace), or by

describing the benefits and absence of enmity shown to him.

Or a king who is of good intentions, or who has lost his

enthusiastic spirits, or whose strategic means are all exhausted and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

510

thwarted in a number of wars, or who has lost his men and wealth,

or who has suffered from sojourning abroad, or who is desirous of

gaining a friend in good faith, or who is apprehensive of danger

from another, or who cares more for friendship than anything else,

may be won over by conciliation.

Or a king who is greedy or who has lost his men may be won

over by giving gifts through the medium of ascetics and chiefs who

have been previously kept with him for the purpose.

Gifts are of five kinds: abandonment of what is to be paid;

continuance of what is being given; repayment of what is received;

payment of one's own wealth; and help for a voluntary raid on the

property of others.

When any two kings are apprehensive of enmity and seizure

of land from each other, seeds of dissension may be sown between

them. The timid of the two may be threatened with destruction and

may be told: "Having made peace with you, this king works against

you; the friend of this other king is permitted to make an open

peace."

When from one's own country or from another's country

merchandise or commodities for manufacture in a manufactory are

going to an enemy's country, spies may spread the information that

those commodities are obtained from one whom the enemy wanted

to march against. When commodities are thus gathered in

abundance (the owner of the articles) may send a message to the

enemy: "These commodities and merchandise are sent by me to

you; please declare war against the combined kings or desert them;

you will then get the rest of the tribute." Then spies may inform the

other kings of the combination; "These articles are given to him by

your enemy."

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

511

The conqueror may gather some merchandise peculiar to his

enemy's country and unknown elsewhere. Spies, under the garb of

merchants, may sell that merchandise to other important enemies

and tell them that that merchandise was given (to the conqueror) by

the enemy (whose country's product it is).

Or having pleased with wealth and honour those who are

highly treacherous (among an enemy's people), the conqueror may

cause them to live with the enemy, armed with weapons, poison

and fire. One of the ministers of the enemy may be killed. His sons

and wife may be induced to say that the minister was killed at night

(by such and such a person). Then the enemy's minister may ask

every one of the family of the murdered minister (as to the cause of

the death). If they say in reply as they are told, they may be caused

to be set free; if they do not do so, they may be caused to be caught

hold of. Whoever has gained the confidence of the king may tell

the king (the enemy) that he (the enemy) has to guard his own

person from such and such a minister. Then the recipient of salaries

from the two states (the conqueror's and the enemy's state) may

inform the suspected minister to destroy (the king).

Or such kings as are possessed of enthusiasm and power may

be told: "Seize the country of this king, our treaty of peace standing

as before." Then spies should inform the particular king of the

attempt of these kings and cause the destruction of the

commissariat and of the followers of one of these kings. Other

spies, pretending to be friends, should inform these kings of the

necessity of destroying the particular king.

When an enemy's brave soldier, elephant, or horse dies, or is

killed, or carried off by spies, other spies may tell the enemy that

the death is due to mutual conflict among his followers. The man

who is employed to commit such murders may be asked to repeat

his work again on the condition of his receiving the balance due to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

512

him. He should receive the amount from the recipient of salaries

from two states; when the king's party is thus divided, some may be

won over (to the side of the conqueror).

This explains the case of the commander-in-chief, the prince,

and the officers of the army (of the enemy).

Likewise seeds of dissension may be sown among combined

states. Thus the work of sowing the seeds of dissension.

Spies under concealment may, without the help of a fiery spy,

murder by means of weapons, poison or other things a fortified

enemy who is of mean character or who is under troubles; any one

of hidden spies may do the work when it is found easy; or a fiery

spy alone may do the work by means of weapons, poison or fire;

for a fiery spy can do what others require all the necessary aids to

do.

Thus the four forms of strategic means.

Of these means, that which comes first in the order of

enumeration is, as stated in connection with "invaders," easier than

the rest. Conciliation is of single quality; gift is two-fold, since

conciliation precedes it; dissension is threefold, since conciliation

and gift precede it; and conciliatory coercion is fourfold, since

conciliation, gift, and dissension precede it.

The same means are employed in the case of local enemies,

too; the difference is this: the chief messengers known to the

manufactories may be sent to any one of the local enemies in order

to employ him for the purpose of making a treaty or for the purpose

of destroying another person. When he agrees to the proposal, the

messengers should inform (their master) of their success. Then

recipients of salaries from two states should inform the people or

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

513

enemies concerned in the local enemy's work: "This person (the

local enemy) is your wicked king." When a person has reason to

fear or hate another, spies may augment dissension between them

by telling one of them: "This man is making an agreement with

your enemy, and will soon deceive you; hence make peace (with

the king) soon and attempt to put down this man." Or by bringing

about friendship or marriage connection between persons who

have not been hitherto connected, spies may separate them from

others; or through the aid of a neighbouring king, a wild chief, a

scion of an enemy‟s family, or an imprisoned prince, local enemies

may be destroyed outside the kingdom; or through the agency of a

caravan or wild tribes, a local enemy may be killed along with his

army; or persons, pretending to be the supporters of a local enemy

and who are of the same caste, may under favourable opportunities

kill him; or spies under concealment may kill local enemies with

fire, poison, and weapons.

\* Whenthe country is full of local enemies, they may be got

rid of by making them drink poisonous (liquids); an obstinate

(clever) enemy may be destroyed by spies or by means of

(poisoned) flesh given to him in good faith.

[Thus ends Chapter VI, "Persons Associated with Traitors and

Enemies,” in Book IX, “The Work of an Invader,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and twenty-seventh

chapter from the beginning,]

## CHAPTER VII. DOUBTS ABOUT WEALTH AND HARM; AND SUCCESS TO BE OBTAINED BY THE EMPLOYMENT OF ALTERNATIVE STRATEGIC MEANS.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

514

INTENSITY of desire and other passions provoke one's own

people; impolicy provokes external enemies. Both these are the

characteristics of demoniac life. Anger disturbs the feelings of

one's own men. Those causes which are conducive to the

prosperity of one's enemy are dangerous wealth, provocative

wealth, and wealth of doubtful consequences.

Wealth which, when obtained, increases the enemy's

prosperity, or which, though obtained, is repayable to the enemy,

or which causes loss of men and money, is dangerous wealth; for

example, wealth which is enjoyed in common by neighbouring

kings and which is acquired at their expense; or wealth which is

asked for by an enemy; or wealth which is seized like one's own

property; or wealth which is acquired in the front and which causes

future troubles or provokes an enemy in the rear; or wealth which is

obtained by destroying a friend or by breaking a treaty and which is

therefore detested by the Circle of States--all these are the varieties

of dangerous wealth.

Wealth which causes fear from one's own people or from an

enemy is provocative wealth.

When, in connection with these two kinds of wealth, there

arise doubts, such as: "Is it provocative wealth or not? Harmless

wealth or provocative wealth? First provocative and then

harmless? Is it profitable to encourage an enemy or a friend?

Would the bestowal of wealth and honour on an enemy's army

excite hatred or not?"--of these doubts, doubt regarding the

acquirement of wealth is preferable to (doubts regarding harm or

provocation).

Wealth productive of wealth; wealth productive of nothing;

wealth productive of harm; loss or harm productive of wealth;

sustenance of harm for no profit; harm productive of harm--these

are the six varieties of harmful wealth.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

515

Destruction of an enemy in the front resulting in the

destruction of an enemy in the rear is what is termed "wealth

productive of wealth."

Wealth acquired by helping a neutral king with the army is

what is called "wealth productive of nothing."

The reduction of the internal strength of an enemy is "wealth

productive of harm."

Helping the neighbouring king of an enemy with men and

money is "harm productive of wealth."

Withdrawal after encouraging or setting a king of poor

resources (against another) is "harm productive of nothing."

Inactivity after causing excitement to a superior king is

"harm productive of harm."

Of these, it is better to pursue that which is mentioned first in

the order of enumeration than that which is subsequently

mentioned. Thus the procedure of setting to work.

When the surrounding circumstances are conducive to

wealth, it is known as wealth from all sides.

When the acquirement of wealth from all sides is obstructed

by an enemy in the rear, it takes the form of dangerous wealth

involved in doubts.

In these two cases, success can be achieved by securing the

help of a friend and the enemy of the rear-enemy.

When there is reason to apprehend fear from enemies on all

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

516

sides, it is a dangerous trouble; when a friend comes forward to

avert this fear, that trouble becomes involved in doubt. In these two

cases, success can be achieved by securing the support of a

nomadic enemy and the enemy of the rear-enemy.

When the prospect of acquiring profit from one or the other

side is irremediably obstructed by enemies, it is called "dangerous

wealth." In this case as well as in the case of profit from all sides,

one should undertake to march for acquiring profitable wealth.

When the prospects of getting wealth (from two sides) are equal,

one should march to secure that which is important, near, unfailing,

and obtainable by easy means.

When there is the apprehension of harm from one quarter as

well as from another, it is wealth beset with danger from two sides.

In this case as well as in the case of wealth involved in danger from

all sides, success is to be desired with the help of friends. In the

absence of friends, he should attempt to ward off harm from one

side with the help of an ally who can be easily won over; he should

ward off harm from two sides with help of an ally of superior

power; and he should ward off harm from all sides with all the

resources he can command. When it is impossible to do this, he

should run away, leaving all that belongs to him; for if he lives, his

return to power is certain as in the case of *Suyátra* and *Udayana*.

When there is the prospect of wealth from one side and the

apprehension of an attack from another, it is termed a situation

beset with wealth and harm. In this case, he should march to

acquire that wealth which will enable him to ward off the attack;

otherwise he should attempt to avert the attack. This explains the

situation which is beset with wealth and harm on all sides.

When there is the apprehension of harm from one side and

when the prospect of acquiring wealth from another side is

involved in doubt, it is termed doubt of harm and wealth from two

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

517

sides. In this, he should ward off the harm first; when this is done,

he should attempt to acquire the doubtful wealth. This explains the

doubtful situation of harm and wealth from all sides.

When there is the prospect of wealth from one side and the

apprehension of doubtful harm from another, it is a doubtful

situation of harm and wealth from two sides. This explains the

situation of doubtful harm and wealth from all sides. In this, he

should attempt to ward off the doubts of harm against each of the

elements of his sovereignty in order; for it is better to leave a friend

under circumstances of doubtful harm, than the army; also the

army may be left under circumstances of doubtful harm, but not the

treasury. When all the elements of his sovereignty cannot be

relieved from harm, he should attempt to relieve some of them at

least. Among the elements, he should attempt to relieve first those

animate elements which are most loyal, and free from firebrands

and greedy men; of inanimate elements (he should relieve) that

which is most precious and useful. Such elements as are capable of

easy relief may be relieved by such means as an agreement of

peace, observance of neutrality, and making peace with one and

waging war with another. Those which require greater efforts may

be relieved by other means.

Of deterioration, stagnation and progress, he should attempt

to secure that which is mentioned later in the order of enumeration;

or in the reverse order, if he finds that deterioration and other

stages are conducive to future prosperity. Thus the determination

of situations. This explains the situation of doubtful harm and

wealth in the middle or at the close of a march.

Since doubts of wealth and harm are constantly associated

with all expeditions, it is better to secure wealth by which it is easy

to destroy an enemy in the rear and his allies, to recoup the loss of

men and money, to make provisions during the time of sojourning

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

518

abroad, to make good what is repayable, and to defend the state.

Also harm or doubtful prospects of wealth in one's own state are

always intolerable.

This explains the situation of doubtful harm in the middle of

an expedition. But at the close of an expedition, it is better to

acquire wealth either by reducing or destroying a reducible or

assailable enemy than to get into a situation of doubtful harm, lest

enemies might cause troubles. But, for one who is not the leader of

combination of states, it is better to risk the situation of doubtful

wealth or harm in the middle or at the close of an expedition, since

one is not obliged to continue the expedition.

Wealth, virtue, and enjoyment form the aggregate of the three

kinds of wealth. Of these, it is better to secure that which is

mentioned first than that which is subsequently mentioned in the

order of enumeration.

Harm, sin and grief form the aggregate, of the three kinds of

harm. Of these, it is better to provide against that which is

mentioned first, than that which is subsequently mentioned.

Wealth or harm, virtue or sin, and enjoyment or grief, are the

aggregate of the three kinds of doubts. Of these, it is better to try

that which is mentioned first than that which is mentioned later in

the order of enumeration, and which it is certain to shake off. Thus

the determination of opportunities. Thus ends the discourse on

danger.

Regarding success in these dangerous situations and times: in

the case of troubles from sons, brothers or relatives, it is better to

secure relief by means of conciliation and gifts; in the case of

troubles from citizens, country people, or chiefs of the army, it is

by means of gifts and sowing the seeds of dissension; in the case of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

519

troubles from a neighbouring king or wild tribes, it is by means of

sowing the seeds of dissension and coercion. This is following the

order of the means. In other kinds of situations, the same means

may be employed in the reverse order.

Success against friends and enemies is always achieved by

complicated means; for strategic means help each other. In the case

of suspected ministers of an enemy, the employment of

conciliation does not need the use of the other means; in the case of

treacherous ministers it is by means of gifts; in the case of

combination of states, it is by means of sowing the seeds of

dissension; and in the case of the powerful, it is by means of

coercion.

When grave and light dangers are together apprehended, a

particular means, or alternative means or all the means may be

employed.

By this alone, but not by any other means, is what is meant

by a particular means.

By this or that, is what is meant by alternative means.

By this as well as by that, is what is meant by all the means.

Of these, the single means as well as the combination of any

three means are four; the combinations of any two means are six;

and the combination of all the four is one. Thus there are fifteen

kinds of strategic means. Of the same number are the means in the

reverse order.

When a king attains success by only one means among these

various means, he is called one of single success; when by two, one

of double success; when by three, one of treble success; and when

by four, one of four-fold success.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

520

As virtue is the basis of wealth and as enjoyment is the end of

wealth, success in achieving that kind of wealth which promotes

virtue, wealth and enjoyment is termed success in all

*(sarvárthasiddhi).* Thus varieties of success.

Such providential visitations as fire, floods, disease,

pestilence (*pramara*), fever (*vidrava*), famine, and demoniac

troubles are dangerous.

Success in averting these is to be sought by worshipping

gods and Bráhmans.

\* Whether demoniacal troubles are absent, or are too many, or

normal, the rites prescribed in the *Atharvaveda* as well as the rites

undertaken by accomplished ascetics are to be performed for

success.

[Thus ends Chapter VII, “Doubts about Wealth and Harm; and

Success to be Obtained by the Employment of Alternative

Strategic Means” in Book IX, “The Work of an Invader,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and twenty-eighth

chapter from the beginning. With this, ends the ninth Book “The

Work of an Invader” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 411-436.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

521

# Book X, "Relating to War"

## CHAPTER I. ENCAMPMENT.

ON a site declared to be the best according to the science of

buildings, the leader (*náyaka*), the carpenter (*vardhaki*), and the

astrologer (*mauhúrtika*) should measure a circular, rectangular, or

square spot for the camp which should, in accordance with the

available space, consist of four gates, six roads, and nine divisions.

Provided with ditches, parapets, walls, doors, and watch

towers for defence against fear, the quarters of the king, 1,000

bows long and half as broad, should be situated in one of the nine

divisions to the north from the centre, while to the west of it his

harem, and at its extremity the army of the harem are to be situated.

In his front, the place for worshipping gods; to his right the

departments of finance and accounts; and to his left the quarters of

elephants and horses mounted by the king himself. Outside this and

at a distance of 100 bows from each other, there should be fixed

four cart-poles (*sakatamedhi*) pillars and walls. In the first (of these

four divisions), the prime minister and the priest (should have their

quarters); to its right the store-house and the kitchen: to its left the

store of raw products and weapons; in the second division the

quarters of the hereditary army and of horses and chariots: outside

this, hunters and keepers of dogs with their trumpets and with fire;

also spies and sentinels; also, to prevent the attack of enemies,

wells, mounds and thorns should be arranged. The eighteen

divisions of sentinels employed for the purpose of securing the

safety of the king should be changing their watches in turn. In order

to ascertain the movements of spies, a time-table of business

should also be prepared during the day. Disputes, drinking, social

gatherings, and gambling should also be prohibited. The system of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

522

passports should also be observed. The officer in charge of the

boundary (of the camp) should supervise the conduct of the

commander-in-chief and the observance of the instructions given

to the army.

\* The instructor (*prasástá*) with his retinue and with

carpenters and free labourers should carefully march in front on the

road, and should dig wells of water.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “Encampment,” in Book X, “Relating to

War,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and

twenty-ninth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. MARCH OF THE CAMP; AND PROTECTION OF THE ARMY IN TIMES OF DISTRESS AND ATTACK.

HAVING prepared a list of the villages and forests situated

on the road with reference to their capacity to supply grass,

firewood and water, march of the army should be regulated

according to the programme of short and long halts. Food-stuffs

and provisions should be carried in double the quantity that may be

required in any emergency. In the absence of separate means to

carry food-stuffs, the army itself should be entrusted with the

business of carrying them; or they may be stored in a central place.

In front the leader (*náyaka*); in the centre the harem and the

master (the king); on the sides horses and bodyguards (*báhútsára*);

at the extremity of the (marching) circular-array, elephants and the

surplus army; on all sides the army habituated to forest-life; and

other troops following the camp, the commissariat, the army of an

ally, and his followers should select their own road: for armies who

have secured suitable positions will prove superior in fight to those

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

523

who are in bad positions.

The army of the lowest quality can march a *yojana* (5 5/44

miles a day); that of the middle quality a *yojana* and a half and the

best army two *yojanas*. Hence, it is easy to ascertain the rate of

march. The commander should march behind and put up his camp

in the front.

In case of any obstruction, the army should march in

crocodile array in the front, in cart-like array behind, and on the

sides in diamond-like array (*i.e.*, in four or five rows, each having

its front, rear and sides) and in a compact array on all sides. When

the army is marching on a path passable by a single man, it should

march in pin-like array. When peace is made with one and war is to

be waged with another, steps should be taken to protect the friends

who are bringing help against enemies, such as an enemy in the

rear, his ally, a *madhyama* king, or a neutral king. Roads with

obstructions should be examined and cleared. Finance, the army,

the the strength of the armies of friends, enemies, and wild tribes,

the prospect of rains, and the seasons should be thoroughly

examined.

When the protective power of fortifications and stores (of the

enemies) is on its decay, when it is thought that distress of the hired

army or of a friend's army (of the enemy) is impending; when

intriguers are not for a quick march; or when the enemy is likely to

come to terms (with the invader), slow march should be made;

otherwise quick march should be made.

Waters may be crossed by means of elephants, planks spread

over pillars erected, bridges, boats, timber and mass of bamboos, as

well as by means of dry sour gourds, big baskets covered with

skins, rafts, *gandiká* (i), and *veniká* (i).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

524

When the crossing of a river is obstructed by the enemy, the

invader may cross it elsewhere together with his elephants and

horses, and entangle the enemy in an ambuscade (*sattra*).

He should protect his army when it has to pass a long desert

without water; when it is without grass, firewood and water; when

it has to traverse a difficult road; when it is harassed by an enemy's

attacks; when it is suffering from hunger and thirst after a journey;

when it is ascending or descending a mountainous country full of

mire, water-pools, rivers and cataracts; when it finds itself crowded

in a narrow and difficult path; when it is halting, starting or eating;

when it is tired from a long march; when it is sleepy; when it is

suffering from a disease, pestilence or famine; when a great portion

of its infantry, cavalry and elephants is diseased; when it is not

sufficiently strong; or when it is under troubles. He should destroy

the enemy's army under such circumstances.

When the enemy's army is marching through a path

traversable by a single man, the commander (of the invader's army)

should ascertain its strength by estimating the quantity of

food-stuffs, grass, bedding, and other requisites, fire pots

(*agninidhána*), flags and weapons. He should also conceal those of

his own army.

\* Keeping a mountainous or river fortress with all its

resources at his back in his own country he should fight or put up

his camp.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "March of the Camp; and Protection of the

Army in Times of Distress and Attack" in Book X, "Relating to

War" of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and

thirtieth chapter from the beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

525

## CHAPTER III. FORMS OF TREACHEROUS FIGHTS; ENCOURAGEMENT TO ONE'S OWN ARMY AND FIGHT BETWEEN ONE'S OWN AND ENEMY'S ARMIES.

HE who is possessed of a strong army, who has succeeded in

his intrigues, and who has applied remedies against dangers may

undertake an open fight, if he has secured a position favourable to

himself; otherwise a treacherous fight.

He should strike the enemy when the latter's army is under

troubles or is furiously attacked; or he who has secured a

favourable position may strike the enemy entangled in an

unfavourable position. Or he who possesses control over the

elements of his own state may, through the aid of the enemy's

traitors, enemies and inimical wild tribes, make a false impression

of his own defeat on the mind of the enemy who is entrenched in a

favourable position, and having thus dragged the enemy into an

unfavourable position, he may strike the latter. When the enemy's

army is in a compact body, he should break it by means of his

elephants; when the enemy has come down from its favourable

position, following the false impression of the invader's defeat, the

invader may turn back and strike the enemy's army, broken or

unbroken. Having struck the front of the enemy's army, he may

strike it again by means of his elephants and horses when it has

shown its back and is running away. When frontal attack is

unfavourable, he should strike it from behind; when attack on the

rear is unfavourable, he should strike it in front; when attack on one

side is unfavourable, he should strike it on the other.

Or having caused the enemy to fight with his own army of

traitors, enemies and wild tribes, the invader should with his fresh

army strike the enemy when tired. Or having through the aid of the

army of traitors given to the enemy the impression of defeat, the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

526

invader with full confidence in his own strength may allure and

strike the over-confident enemy. Or the invader, if he is vigilant,

may strike the careless enemy when the latter is deluded with the

thought that the invader's merchants, camp and carriers have been

destroyed. Or having made his strong force look like a weak force,

he may strike the enemy's brave men when falling against him. Or

having captured the enemy's cattle or having destroyed the enemy's

dogs (*svapadavadha*?), he may induce the enemy's brave men to

come out and may slay them. Or having made the enemy's men

sleepless by harassing them at night, he may strike them during the

day, when they are weary from want of sleep and are parched by

heat, himself being under the shade. Or with his army of elephants

enshrouded with cotton and leather dress, he may offer a

night-battle to his enemy. Or he may strike the enemy's men during

the afternoon when they are tired by making preparations during

the forenoon; or he may strike the whole of the enemy's army when

it is facing the sun.

A desert, a dangerous spot, marshy places, mountains,

valleys, uneven boats, cows, cart-like array of the army, mist, and

night are *sattras* (temptations alluring the enemy against the

invader).

The beginning of an attack is the time for treacherous fights.

As to an open or fair fight, a virtuous king should call his

army together, and, specifying the place and time of battle, address

them thus: "I am a paid servant like yourselves; this country is to be

enjoyed (by me) together with you; you have to strike the enemy

specified by me."

His minister and priest should encourage the army by saying

thus:--

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

527

"It is declared in the *Vedas* that the goal which is reached by

sacrificers after performing the final ablutions in sacrifices in

which the priests have been duly paid for is the very goal which

brave men are destined to attain." About this there are the two

verses--

\* Beyond those places which Bráhmans, desirous of getting into

heaven, attain together with their sacrificial instruments by

performing a number of sacrifices, or by practising penance are the

places which brave men, losing life in good battles, are destined to

attain immediately.

\* Let not a new vessel filled with water, consecrated and covered

over with *darbha* grass be the acquisition of that man who does not

fight in return for the subsistence received by him from his master,

and who is therefore destined to go to hell.

Astrologers and other followers of the king should infuse

spirit into his army by pointing out the impregnable nature of the

array of his army, his power to associate with gods, and his

omnisciency; and they should at the same time frighten the enemy.

The day before the battle, the king should fast and lie down on his

chariot with weapons. He should also make oblations into the fire

pronouncing the *mantras* of the *Atharvaveda,* and cause prayers to

be offered for the good of the victors as well as of those who attain

to heaven by dying in the battle-field. He should also submit his

person to Bráhmans; he should make the central portion of his

army consist of such men as are noted for their bravery, skill, high

birth, and loyalty and as are not displeased with the rewards and

honours bestowed on them. The place that is to be occupied by the

king is that portion of the army which is composed of his father,

sons, brothers, and other men, skilled in using weapons, and having

no flags and head-dress. He should mount an elephant or a chariot,

if the army consists mostly of horses; or he may mount that kind of

animal, of which the army is mostly composed or which is the most

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

528

skillfully trained. One who is disguised like the king should attend

to the work of arraying the army.

Soothsayers and court bards should describe heaven as the

goal for the brave and hell for the timid; and also extol the caste,

corporation, family, deeds, and character of his men. The followers

of the priest should proclaim the auspicious aspects of the

witchcraft performed. Spies, carpenters and astrologers should also

declare the success of their own operations and the failure of those

of the enemy.

After having pleased the army with rewards and honours, the

commander-in-chief should address it and say:--

A hundred thousand (*panas*) for slaying the king (the enemy);

fifty thousand for slaying the commander-in-chief, and the

heir-apparent; ten thousand for slaying the chief of the brave; five

thousand for destroying an elephant, or a chariot; a thousand for

killing a horse, a hundred (*panas*) for slaying the chief of the

infantry; twenty for bringing a head; and twice the pay in addition

to whatever is seized. This information should be made known to

the leaders of every group of ten (men).

Physicians with surgical instruments (*sastra*), machines,

remedial oils, and cloth in their hands; and women with prepared

food and beverage should stand behind, uttering encouraging

words to fighting men.

The army should be arrayed on a favourable position, facing

other than the south quarter, with its back turned to the sun, and

capable to rush as it stands. If the array is made on an unfavourable

spot, horses should be run. If the army arrayed on an unfavourable

position is confined or is made to run away from it (by the enemy),

it will be subjugated either as standing or running away; otherwise

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

529

it will conquer the enemy when standing or running away. The

even, uneven, and complex nature of the ground in the front or on

the sides or in the rear should be examined. On an even site,

staff-like or circular array should be made; and on an uneven

ground, arrays of compact movement or of detached bodies should

be made.

Having broken the whole army (of the enemy), (the invader)

should seek for peace; if the armies are of equal strength, he should

make peace when requested for it; and if the enemy's army is

inferior, he should attempt to destroy it, but not that which has

secured a favourable position and is reckless of life.

\* When a broken army, reckless of life, resumes its attack, its

fury becomes irresistible; hence he should not harass a broken

army (of the enemy).

[Thus ends Chapter III, "Forms of Treacherous Fights;

Encouragement to One's Own Army, and Fight Between One's

Own and Enemy's Armies," in Book X, "Relating to War," of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and thirty-first chapter

from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. BATTLEFIELDS; THE WORK OF INFANTRY, CAVALRY, CHARIOTS, AND ELEPHANTS.

FAVOURABLE positions for infantry, cavalry, chariots, and

elephants are desirable both for war and camp.

For men who are trained to fight in desert tracts, forests,

valleys, or plains, and for those who are trained to fight from

ditches or heights, during the day or night, and for elephants which

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

530

are bred in countries with rivers, mountains, marshy lands, or

lakes, as well as for horses, such battlefields as they would find

suitable (are to be secured).

That which is even, splendidly firm, free from mounds and

pits made by wheels and foot-prints of beasts, not offering

obstructions to the axle, free from trees, plants, creepers and trunks

of trees, not wet, and free from pits, ant-hills, sand, and thorns is

the ground for chariots.

For elephants, horses and men, even or uneven grounds are

good, either for war or for camp.

That which contains small stones, trees and pits that can be

jumped over and which is almost free from thorns is the ground for

horses.

That which contains big stones, dry or green trees, and

ant-hills is the ground for the infantry.

That which is uneven with assailable hills and valleys, which

has trees that can be pulled down and plants that can be torn, and

which is full of muddy soil free from thorns is the ground for

elephants.

That which is free from thorns, not very uneven, but very

expansive, is an excellent ground for the infantry.

That which is doubly expansive, free from mud, water and

roots of trees, and which is devoid of piercing gravel is an excellent

ground for horses.

That which possesses dust, muddy soil, water, grass and

weeds, and which is free from thorns (known as dog's teeth) and

obstructions from the branches of big trees is an excellent ground

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

531

for elephants.

That which contains lakes, which is free from mounds and

wet lands, and which affords space for turning is an excellent

ground for chariots.

Positions suitable for all the constituents of the army have

been treated of. This explains the nature of the ground which is fit

for the camp or battle of all kinds of the army.

Concentration on occupied positions, in camps and forests;

holding the ropes (of beasts and other things) while crossing the

rivers or when the wind is blowing hard; destruction or protection

of the commissariat and of troops arriving afresh; supervision of

the discipline of the army; lengthening the line of the army;

protecting the sides of the army; first attack; dispersion (of the

enemy's army); trampling it down; defence; seizing; letting it out;

causing the army to take a different direction; carrying the treasury

and the princes; falling against the rear of the enemy; chasing the

timid; pursuit; and concentration--these constitute the work of

horses.

Marching in the front; preparing the roads, camping grounds

and path for bringing water; protecting the sides; firm standing,

fording and entering into water while crossing pools of water and

ascending from them; forced entrance into impregnable places;

setting or quenching the fire; the subjugation of one of the four

constituents of the army; gathering the dispersed army; breaking a

compact army; protection against dangers; trampling down (the

enemy's army); frightening and driving it; magnificence; seizing;

abandoning; destruction of walls, gates and towers; and carrying

the treasury--these constitute the work of elephants.

Protection of the army; repelling the attack made by all the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

532

four constituents of the enemy's army; seizing and abandoning

(positions) during the time of battle; gathering a dispersed army;

breaking the compact array of the enemy's army; frightening it;

magnificence; and fearful noise--these constitute the work of

chariots.

Always carrying the weapons to all places; and

fighting--these constitute the work of the infantry.

The examination of camps, roads, bridges, wells and rivers;

carrying the machines, weapons, armours, instruments and

provisions; carrying away the men that are knocked down, along

with their weapons and armours---these constitute the work of free

labourers.

\* The king who has a small number of horses may combine

bulls with horses; likewise when he is deficient in elephants, he

may fill up the centre of his army with mules, camels and carts.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, “Battlefields; the Work of Infantry,

Cavalry, Chariots and Elephants,” in Book X, “Relating to War,”

of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and

thirty-second chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER V. THE DISTINCTIVE ARRAY OF TROOPS IN RFSPECT OF WINGS, FLANKS, AND FRONT;DISTINCTION BETWEEN STRONG AND WEAK TROOPS; AND BATTLE WITH INFANTRY, CAVALRY, CHARIOTS AND ELEPHANTS.

HAVING fortified a camp at the distance of five hundred

bows he should begin to fight. Having detached the flower of the

army and kept it on a favourable position not visible (to the

enemy), the commander-in-chief and the leader should array the

rest of the army. The infantry should be arrayed such that the space

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

533

between any two men is a *sama* (14 *angulas*); cavalry with three

*samas*; chariots with four *samas;* and elephants with twice or thrice

as much space (as between any two chariots). With such an array

free to move and having no confusion, one should fight. A bow

means five *aratnis* (5 x 54 = 120 *angulas*). Archers should be

stationed at the distance of five bows (from one line to another); the

cavalry at the distance of three bows; and chariots or elephants at

the distance of five bows.

The intervening space (*aníkasandhi*) between wings, flanks

and front of the army should be five bows. There must be three men

to oppose a horse (*pratiyoddha*); fifteen men or five horses to

oppose a chariot or an elephant; and as many (fifteen) servants (

*pádagopa)* for a horse, a chariot and an elephant should be

maintained.

Three groups (*aníka*) of three chariots each should be

stationed in front; the same number on the two flanks and the two

wings. Thus, in an array of chariots, the number of chariots

amounts to forty-five, two hundred and twenty-five horses, six

hundred and seventy-five men, and as many servants to attend

upon the horses, chariots and elephants--this is called an even array

of troops. The number of chariots in this array (of three groups of

three chariots each) may be increased by two and two till the

increased number amounts to twenty-one. Thus, this array of odd

numbers of chariots gives rise to ten odd varieties. Thus the surplus

of the army may therefore be distributed in the above manner.

Two-thirds of the (surplus) chariots may be added to the flanks and

the wings, the rest being put in front. Thus the added surplus of

chariots should be one-third less (than the number added to the

flanks and wings). This explains the distribution of surplus

elephants and horses. As many horses, chariots, and elephants may

be added as occasion no confusion in fighting.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

534

Excess of the army is called surplus (*ávápa*); deficiency in

infantry is called absence of surplus (*pratyávápa*); excess of any

one of the four constituents of the army is akin to surplus

(*anvávápa*); excess of traitors is far from surplus (*atyávápa*); in

accordance with one's own resources, one should increase one's

army from four to eight times the excess of the enemy's army or the

deficiency in the enemy's infantry.

The array of elephants is explained by the array of chariots.

An array of elephants, chariots, and horses mixed together may

also be made: at the extremities of the circle (array), elephants; and

on the flanks, horses and principal chariots. The array in which the

front is occupied by elephants, the flanks by chariots, and the

wings by horses is an array which can break the centre of the

enemy's army; the reverse of this can harass the extremities of the

enemy's army. An array of elephants may also be made: the front

by such elephants as are trained for war; the flanks by such as are

trained for riding; and the wings by rogue elephants. In an array of

horses, the front by horses with mail armour; and the flanks and

wings by horses without armour. In an array of infantry, men

dressed in mail armour in front, archers in the rear, and men

without armour on the wings; or horses on the wings, elephants on

the flanks, and chariots in front; other changes may also be made so

as to oppose the enemy's army successfully.

The best army is that which consists of strong infantry and of

such elephants and horses as are noted for their breed, birth,

strength, youth, vitality, capacity to run even in old age, fury, skill,

firmness, magnanimity, obedience, and good habits.

One-third of the best of infantry, cavalry and elephants should

be kept in front; two-thirds on both the flanks and wings; the array

of the army according to the strength of its constituents is in the

direct order; that which is arrayed mixing one-third of strong and

weak troops is in the reverse order. Thus, one should know all the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

535

varieties of arraying the array.

Having stationed the weak troops at the extremities, one

would be liable to the force of the enemy's onslaught. Having

stationed the flower of the army in front, one should make the

wings equally strong. One-third of the best in the rear, and weak

troops in the centre--this array is able to resist the enemy; having

made an array, he should strike the enemy with one or two of the

divisions on the wings, flanks, and front, and capture the enemy by

means of the rest of the troops.

When the enemy's force is weak, with few horses and

elephants, and is contaminated with the intrigue of treacherous

ministers, the conqueror should strike it with most of his best

troops. He should increase the numerical strength of that

constituent of the army which is physically weak. He should array

his troops on that side on which the enemy is weak or from which

danger is apprehended.

Running against; running round; running beyond; running

back; disturbing the enemy's halt; gathering the troops; curving,

circling, miscellaneous operations; removal of the rear; pursuit of

the line from the front, flanks and rear; protection of the broken

army; and falling upon the broken army--these are the forms of

waging war with horses.

The same varieties with the exception of (what is called)

miscellaneous operations; the destruction of the four constituents

of the army, either single or combined; the dispersion of the flanks,

wings and front trampling down; and attacking the army when it is

asleep--these are the varieties of waging war with elephants.

The same varieties with the exception of disturbing the

enemy's halt; running against; running back; and fighting from

where it stands on its own ground--these are the varieties of waging

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

536

war with chariots.

Striking in all places and at all times, and striking by surprise

are varieties of waging war with infantry.

\* In this way, he should make odd or even arrays, keeping the

strength of the four constituents of the army equal.

\* Having gone to a distance of 200 bows, the king should take his

position together with the reserve of his army; and without a

reserve, he should never attempt to fight, for it is by the reserved

force that dispersed troops are collected together.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "The Distinctive Array of Troops in

Respect of Wings, Flanks and Front; Distinction between Strong

and Weak Troops; and Battle with Infantry, Cavalry, Chariots and

Elephants,” in Book X, “Relating to War,” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and thirty-third chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER VI. THE ARRAY OF THE ARMY LIKE A STAFF, A SNAKE, A CIRCLE, OR IN DETACHED ORDER; THE ARRAY OF THE ARMY AGAINST THAT OF AN ENEMY.

WINGS and front, capable to turn (against an enemy is what

is called) a snake-like array (*bhoga*); the two wings, the two flanks,

the front and the reserve (form an array) according to the school of

Brihaspati. The principal forms of the array of the army, such as

that like a staff, like a snake, like a circle, and in detached order, are

varieties of the above two forms of the array consisting of wings,

flanks and front.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

537

Stationing the army so as to stand abreast, is called a

staff-like array (*danda*).

Stationing the army in a line so that one may follow the other,

is called a snake-like array (*bhoga*).

Stationing the army so as to face all the directions, is called a

circle-like array (*mandala*).

Detached arrangement of the army into small bodies so as to

enable each to act for itself, is termed an array in detached order

(*asamhata*).

That which is of equal strength on its wings, flanks and front,

is a staff-like array.

The same array is called *pradara* (breaking the enemy's array)

when its flanks are made to project in front.

The same is called *dridhaka* (firm) when its wings and flanks

are stretched back.

The same is called *asahya* (irresistible) when its wings are

lengthened.

When, having formed the wings, the front is made to bulge

out, it is called an eagle-like array.

The same four varieties are called "a bow," "the centre of a

bow," "a hold," and "a strong hold," when they are arranged in a

reverse form.

That, of which the wings are arrayed like a bow, is called

*sanjaya* (victory).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

538

The same with projected front is called *vijaya* (conqueror);

that which has its flanks and wings formed like a staff is called

*sthúlakarna* (big ear); the same with its front made twice as strong

as the conqueror, is called *visálavijaya* (vast victory); that which

has its wings stretched forward is called *chamúmukha* (face of the

army); and the same is called *ghashásya* (face of the fish) when it is

arrayed in the reverse form.

The staff-like array in which one (constituent of the army) is

made to stand behind the other is called a pin-like array.

When this array consists of two such lines, it is called an

aggregate (*valaya*); and when of four lines, it is called an invincible

array--these are the varieties of the staff-like array.

The snake-like array in which the wings, flanks and front are

of unequal depth is called *sarpasári* (serpentine movement), or

*gomútrika* (the course of a cow's urine).

When it consists of two lines in front and has its wings

arranged as in the staff-like array, it is called a cart-like array; the

reverse of this is called a crocodile-like array; the cart-like array

which consists of elephants, horses and chariots is called

*váripatantaka* (?)--these are the varieties of the snake-like array.

The circle-like array in which the distinction of wings, flanks

and front is lost is called *sarvatomukha* (facing all directions), or

*sarvatobhadra* (all auspicious), *ashtáníka* (one of eight divisions),

or *vijaya* (victory)--these are the varieties of the circle-like array.

That, of which the wings, flanks and front are stationed apart

is called an array in detached order; when five divisions of the

army are arranged in detached order, it is called *vajra* (diamond),

or *godha* (alligator); when four divisions, it is called *udyánaka*

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

539

(park), or *kákapadi* (crow‟s foot); when three divisions, it is called

a*rdhachandrika* (halfmoon), or *karkátakasringi* (?)--these are the

varieties of the array in detached-order.

The array in which chariots form the front, elephants the

wings, and horses the rear, is called *arishta* (auspicious).

The array in which infantry, cavalry, chariots and elephants

stand one behind the other is called *achala* (immovable).

The array in which elephants, horses, chariots and infantry

stand in order one behind the other is called *apratihata*

(invincible).

Of these, the conqueror should assail the *pradara* by means

of the *dridhaka*; *dridhaka* by means of the *asahya*; *syena*

(eagle-like array) by means of *chápa* (an array like a bow); a hold

by means of a strong-hold; *sanjaya* by means of *vijaya*;

*sthúlakarna* by means of *visálavijaya; váripatantaka* by means of

*sarvatobhadra.* He may assail all kinds of arrays by means of the

*durjaya*.

Of infantry, cavalry, chariots and elephants, he should strike

the first-mentioned with that which is subsequently mentioned; and

a small constituent of the army with a big one.

For every ten members of each of the constituents of the

army, there must be one commander, called *padika*; ten *padikas*

under a *senápati*; ten *senápatis* under a náyaka, (leader).

The constituents of the array of the army should be called

after the names of trumpet sounds, flags and ensigns. Achievement

of success in arranging the constituents of the army, in gathering

the forces, in camping, in marching, in turning back, in making

onslaughts, and in the array of equal strength depends upon the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

540

place and time of action.

\* By the display of the army, by secret contrivances, by fiery spies

employed to strike the enemy engaged otherwise, by witch-craft,

by proclaiming the conqueror's association with gods, by carts, by

the ornaments of elephants;

\* By inciting traitors, by herds of cattle, by setting fire to the camp,

by destroying the wings and the rear of the enemy's army, by

sowing the seeds of dissension through the agency of men under

the guise of servants;

\* Or by telling the enemy that his fort was burnt, stormed, or that

some one of his family, or an enemy or a wild chief rose in

rebellion--by these and other means the conqueror should cause

excitement to the enemy.

\* Thearrow shot by an archer may or may not kill a single man; but

skilful intrigue devised by wise men can kill even those who are in

the womb.

[Thus ends Chapter VI, “The Array of the Army like a Staff, a

Snake, a Circle, or in Detached Order; The Array of the Army

against that of an Enemy,”in Book X, “Relating to War,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and thirty-fourth

chapter from the beginning. With this ends the tenth Book

“Relating to War” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 437-453.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

541

**Book XI, "The Conduct of**

**Corporations"**

**CHAPTER I. CAUSES OF DISSENSION; AND SECRET**

**PUNISHMENT.**

THE acquisition of the help of corporations is better than the

acquisition of an army, a friend, or profits. By means of

conciliation and gifts, the conqueror should secure and enjoy the

services of such corporations as are invincible to the enemy and are

favourably disposed towards himself. But those who are opposed

to him, he should put down by sowing the seeds of dissension

among them and by secretly punishing them.

The corporations of warriors (*kshattriyasrení*) of Kámbhoja,

and Suráshtra, and other countries live by agriculture, trade and

wielding weapons.

The corporations of Lichchhivika,Vrijika, Mallaka,

Mudraka, Kukura, Kuru, Pánchála and others live by the title of a

Rája.

Spies, gaining access to all these corporations and finding out

jealousy, hatred and other causes of quarrel among them, should

sow the seeds of a well-planned dissension among them, and tell

one of them: "This man decries you." Spies, under the guise of

teachers (*áchárya*) should cause childish embroils among those of

mutual enmity on occasions of disputations about certain points of

science, arts, gambling or sports. Fiery spies may occasion quarrel

among the leaders of corporations by praising inferior leaders in

taverns and theatres; or pretending to be friends, they may excite

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

542

ambition in the minds of princes by praising their high birth,

though they (the princes) are low-born; they may prevent the

superiors from interdining and intermarriage with others; they may

persuade the superiors to interdine or to intermarry with inferiors;

or they may give publicity to the consideration of priority shown to

inferior persons in social intercourse in the face of the established

custom of recognising the status of other persons by birth, bravery

and social position; or fiery spies may bring about quarrel among

them at night by destroying the things, beasts, or persons

concerned in some legal disputes. In all these disputes, the

conqueror should help the inferior party with men and money and

set them against the superior party. When they are divided, he

should remove them (from their country); or he may gather them

together and cause them to settle in a cultivable part of their own

country, under the designation of "five households" and "ten

households"; for when living together, they can be trained in the art

of wielding weapons. Specified fines should also be prescribed

against any treacherous combinations among them. He may install

as the heir-apparent a prince born of a high family, but dethroned

or imprisoned. Spies, under the guise of astrologers and others,

should bring to the notice of the corporations the royal

characteristics of the prince, and should induce the virtuous leaders

of the corporations to acknowledge their duty to the prince who is

the son of such and such a king, and who is the hearer of their

complaints. To those who are thus prevailed upon, the conqueror

should send men and money for the purpose of winning over other

partisans. On occasions of any affray spies under the guise of

vintners, should, under the plea of the birth of a son, of marriage or

of the death of a man, distribute as toast (*naishechanika*) hundreds

of vessels of liquor adulterated with the juice of *madana* plant.

Near the gates of altars (*chaitya*), temples, and other places under

the watch of sentinels, spies should pretend to declare their

agreement (with the enemy of the corporations), their mission,

their rewards, and bags of money with the golden seals of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

543

enemy; when the corporations appear before the spies, they may

tell the corporations that they (the spies) have sold themselves to

the enemy, and challenge the corporations for war. Or having

seized the draught animals and golden articles belonging to the

corporations, they may give the most important of those animals

and articles to the chief of the corporations, and tell the

corporations, when asked for, that it was given to the chief (for the

purpose of causing quarrel among them).

This explains the method of sowing the seeds of dissension in

camps and among wild tribes.

Or a spy may tell a self-confident son of the chief of

corporations: "You are the son of such and such a king and are kept

here under the apprehension of danger from enemies." When he is

deluded with this belief, the conqueror may help him with men and

money and set him against the corporations. When the object in

view is realised, the conqueror may also banish him.

Keepers of harlots or dancers, players, and actors may, after

gaining access, excite love in the minds of the chiefs of

corporations by exhibiting women endowed with bewitching youth

and beauty. By causing the woman to go to another person or by

pretending that another person has violently carried her off, they

may bring about quarrel among those who love that woman; in the

ensuing affray, fiery spies may do their work and declare: "Thus

has he been killed in consequence of his love."

A woman who has disappointed her lover and has been

forgiven, may approach a chief and say: "This chief is troubling me

when my mind is set upon you; when he is alive, I cannot stay

here," and thus induce the former to slay the latter.

A woman who has been violently carried off at night may

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

544

cause the death of her violator in the vicinity of a park or in a

pleasure house, by means of fiery spies or with poison

administered by herself. Then she may declare: "This beloved

person of mine has been killed by such and such a person."

A spy, under the garb of an ascetic, may apply to a lover such

medical ointments as are declared to be capable of captivating the

beloved woman and as are adulterated with poison; and then he

may disappear. Other spies may ascribe the incident to an enemy's

action.

Widows or women, employed as spies with secret

instructions, may dispute among themselves about the claim for a

deposit kept with the king, and attract the chiefs of the corporations

(by their beauty when they present themselves before the king).

Harlots, or a dancing woman, or a songstress may make an

appointment to meet a lover in some secret house; and when the

lover comes to the house with the desire of meeting her there, fiery

spies may kill him or carry him off bound (in chains).

A spy may tell the chief of a corporation who is fond of

women: "In this village, the family of a poor man is bereaved (of

the householder); his wife deserves to be the wife of a king; seize

her." Half a month after she has been seized, an ascetic spy may

accuse the chief in the midst of the corporation by saying: "This

man has illegally kept my chief wife, or sister-in-law, or sister, or

daughter." If the corporation punishes the chief, the conqueror may

take the side of the corporation and set it against wicked persons.

Fiery spies should always cause an ascetic spy to go abroad at

night. Spies, selected suitably, should accuse (the chiefs) by

saying: "This man is the slayer of a *Bráhman* and also the adulterer

of a *Bráhman* woman."

A spy, under the guise of an astrologer, may describe to a

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

545

chief the destiny of a maiden who is at the point of being married to

another, and say: "This man's daughter deserves to be the wife of a

king and will bring forth a son, destined to be a king; purchase her

with all your wealth, or seize her by force." When it is not possible

to secure her, spies should enrage the parties; but when she is

secured, quarrel will necessarily ensue.

A mendicant woman may tell a chief who is fond of his wife:

"This (another) chief, proud of his youth, has sent me to entice your

wife; being afraid of him, I have taken with me his letter and

jewellery (for your wife); your wife: is free from sin; secret steps

should be taken against him; and I am very anxious (about your

success)."

Thus in these and other kinds of brawls which have originated

of themselves or which have been brought about by spies, the

conqueror should help the inferior party with men and money and

set them against the wicked or cause them to migrate (to other parts

of the country).

Thus he should live as the only monarch of all the

corporations; the corporations also, under the protection of such a

single monarch, should guard themselves against all kinds of

treachery.

\* The chief of corporations should endear himself to all the

people by leading a virtuous life, by controlling his passions, and

by pursuing that course of action which is liked by all those who

are his followers.

[Thus ends Chapter I, "Causes of Dissension, and Secret

Punishment," in Book XI, "The Conduct of Corporations," of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and thirtyfifth chapter

from the beginning. With this ends the eleventh Book, "The

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

546

Conduct of Corporations," of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 455-459.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

547

# Book XII, "Concerning a Powerful Enemy"

## CHAPTER I. THE DUTIES OF A MESSENGER.

WHEN a king of poor resources is attacked by a powerful

enemy, he should surrender himself together with his sons to the

enemy and live like a reed (in the midst of a current of water).

Bháradvája says that he who surrenders himself to the strong,

bows down before Indra (the god of rain).

But Visáláksha says that a weak king should rather fight with

all his resources, for bravery destroys all troubles; this (fighting) is

the natural duty of a *Kshatriya*, no matter whether he achieves

victory or sustains defeat in battle.

No, says Kautilya, he who bows down to all like a crab on the

banks (of a river) lives in despair; whoever goes with his small

army to fight perishes like a man attempting to cross the sea

without a boat. Hence, a weak king should either seek the

protection of a powerful king or maintain himself in an

impregnable fort.

Invaders are of three kinds: a just conqueror, a demon-like

conqueror, and a greedy conqueror.

Of these, the just conqueror is satisfied with mere obeisance.

Hence, a weak king should seek his protection.

Fearing his own enemies, the greedy conqueror is satisfied

with what he can safely gain in land or money. Hence, a weak king

should satisfy such a conqueror with wealth.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

548

The demon-like conqueror satisfies himself not merely by

seizing the land, treasure, sons and wives of the conquered, but by

taking the life of the latter. Hence, a weak king should keep such a

conqueror at a distance by offering him land and wealth.

When any one of these is on the point of rising against a weak

king, the latter should avert the invasion by making a treaty of

peace, or by taking recourse to the battle of intrigue

(*mantrayuddha*), or by a treacherous fight in the battle-field. He

may seduce the enemy's men either by conciliation or by giving

gifts, and should prevent the treacherous proceedings of his own

men either by sowing the seeds of dissension among them or by

punishing them. Spies, under concealment, may capture the

enemy's fort, country, or camp with the aid of weapons, poison, or

fire. He may harass the enemy's rear on all sides; and he may

devastate the enemy's country through the help of wild tribes. Or he

may set up a scion of the enemy's family or an imprisoned prince to

seize the enemy's territory. When all this mischief has been

perpetrated, a messenger may be sent to the enemy, (to sue for

peace); or he may make peace with the enemy without offending

the latter. If the enemy still continues the march, the weak king

may sue for peace by offering more than one-fourth of his wealth

and army, the payment being made after the lapse of a day and

night.

If the enemy desires to make peace on condition of the weak

king surrendering a portion of this army, he may give the enemy

such of his elephants and cavalry as are uncontrollable or as are

provided with poison; if the enemy desires to make peace on

condition of his surrendering his chief men, he may send over to

the enemy such portion of his army as is full of traitors, enemies

and wild tribes under the command of a trusted officer, so that both

his enemy and his own undesirable army may perish; or he may

provide the enemy with an army composed of fiery spies, taking

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

549

care to satisfy his own disappointed men (before sending them over

to the enemy); or he may transfer to the enemy his own faithful and

hereditary army that is capable to hurt the enemy on occasions of

trouble; if the enemy desires to make peace on condition of his

paying certain amount of wealth, he may give the enemy such

precious articles as do not find a purchaser or such raw products as

are of no use in war; if the enemy desires to make peace on

condition of his ceding a part of his land, he should provide the

enemy with that kind of land which he can recover, which is

always at the mercy of another enemy, which possesses no

protective defences, or which can be colonized at considerable cost

of men and money; or he may make peace, surrendering his whole

state except his capital.

\* He should so contrive as to make the enemy accept that

which another enemy is likely to carry off by force; and he should

take care more of his person than of his wealth, for of what interest

is perishing wealth?

[Thus ends Chapter I, "The Duties of a Messenger, and Request for

Peace," in Book XII, “Concerning a Powerful Enemy,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and thirty-sixth

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. BATTLE OF INTRIGUE.

IF the enemy does not keep peace, he should be told :--

"These kings perished by surrendering themselves to the

aggregate of the six enemies; it is not worthy of you to follow the

lead of these unwise kings; be mindful of virtue and wealth; those

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

550

who advise you to brave danger, sin and violation of wealth, are

enemies under the guise of friends; it is danger to fight with men

who are reckless of their own lives; it is sin to cause the loss of life

on both sides; it is violation of wealth to abandon the wealth at

hand and the friend of no mean character (meaning the addresser

himself); that king has many friends whom he will set against you

with the same wealth (that is acquired with your help at my

expense), and who will fall upon you from all sides; that king has

not lost his influence over the Circle of the *madhyama* and neutral

States; but you have lost that power over them who are, therefore,

waiting for an opportunity to fall upon you; patiently bear the loss

of men and money again; break peace with that friend; then we

shall be able to remove him from that stronghold over which he has

lost his influence. Hence, it is not worthy of you to lend your ear to

those enemies with the face of friends, to expose your real friends

to trouble, to help your enemies to attain success, and to involve

yourself in dangers costing life and wealth."

If without caring for the advice, the enemy proceeds on his

own way, the weak king should create disaffection among the

enemy's people by adopting such measures as are explained in the

chapters, "The Conduct of Corporations," and "Enticement of the

enemy by secret contrivances." He should also make use of fiery

spies and poison. Against what is described as deserving protection

in the chapter, "Safety of his own person," fiery spies and poisoners

should be employed (in the enemy's court). Keepers of harlots

should excite love in the minds of the leaders of the enemy's army

by exhibiting women endowed with youth and beauty. Fiery spies

should bring about quarrels among them when one or two of them

have fallen in love. In the affray that ensues they should prevail

upon the defeated party to migrate elsewhere or to proceed to help

the master (of the spies) in the invasion undertaken by the latter.

Or to those who have fallen in love, spies, under the guise of

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

551

ascetics, may administer poison under the plea that the medical

drugs given to them are capable of securing the object of love.

A spy, under the guise of a merchant, may, under the plea of

winning the love of an immediate maid-servant of the beautiful

queen (of the enemy), shower wealth upon her and then give her

up. A spy in the service of the merchant may give to another spy,

employed as a servant of the maid-servant, some medical drug,

telling the latter that (in order to regain the love of the merchant),

the drug may be applied to the person of the merchant (by the

maid-servant). On her attaining success (the maid-servant) may

inform the queen that the same drug may be applied to the person

of the king (to secure his love), and then change the drug for

poison.

A spy, under the guise of an astrologer, may gradually delude

the enemy's prime minister with the belief that he is possessed of

all the physiognomical characteristics of a king; a mendicant

woman may tell the minister's wife that she has the characteristics

of a queen and that she will bring forth a prince; or a woman,

disguised as the minister's wife, may tell him that, "The king is

troubling me; and an ascetic woman has brought to me this letter

and jewellery."

Spies, under the guise of cooks, may, under the pretence of

the king's (the enemy's) order, take some covetable wealth (to the

minister) meant for use in an immediate expedition. A spy under

the guise of a merchant may, by some contrivance or other, take

possession of that wealth and inform the minister of the readiness

of all the preparations (for the expedition). Thus by the

employment of one, two, or three of the strategic means, the

ministers of each of the combined enemies may be induced to set

out on the expedition and thus to be away from the inimical kings.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

552

Spies, under the service of the officer in charge of the enemy's

waste lands, may inform the citizens and country people residing in

the enemy's fortified towns of the condition of the officer's

friendship with the people, and say: "The officer in charge of the

waste lands tells the warriors and departmental officers thus:--'The

king has hardly escaped from danger and scarcely returns with life.

Do not hoard up your wealth and thereby create enemies; if so, you

will all be put to death.'" When all the people are collected

together, fiery spies may take the citizens out of the town and kill

their leaders, saying: "Thus will be treated those who do not hear

the officer in charge of the waste lands." On the waste lands under

the charge of the officer, the spies may throw down weapons,

money and ropes bespattered with blood. Then other spies may

spread the news that the officer in charge of the waste lands

destroys the people and plunders them. Similarly, spies may cause

disagreement between the enemy's collector-general and the

people. Addressing the servants of the collector-general in the

centre of the village at night, fiery spies may say: "Thus will be

treated those who subject the people to unjust oppression." When

the fault of the collector-general or of the officer in charge of the

waste lands is widely known, the spies may cause the people to

slay either of them, and employ in his place one of his family or

one who is imprisoned.

\* Spreading the false news of the danger of the enemy, they

(spies) may set fire to the harem, the gates of the town and the

store-house of grains and other things, and slay the sentinels who

are kept to guard them.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "The Duties of a Messenger and Battle of

Intrigue," in Book XII, “Concerning a Powerful Enemy,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of “Battle of Intrigue.” End of the

hundred and thirty-seventh chapter from the beginning.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

553

## CHAPTER III. SLAYING THE COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF AND INCITING A CIRCLE OF STATES.

SPIES in the service of the king (the enemy) or of his

courtiers may, under the pretence of friendship, say in the presence

of other friends that the king is angry with the chiefs of infantry,

cavalry, chariots and elephants. When their men are collected

together, fiery spies, having guarded themselves against night

watches, may, under the pretence of the king's (the enemy's) order,

invite the chiefs to a certain house and slay the chiefs when

returning from the house. Other spies in the vicinity may say that it

has been the king's (the enemy's) order to slay them. Spies may also

tell those who have been banished from the country: "This is just

what we foretold; for personal safety, you may go elsewhere."

Spies may also tell those who have not received what they

requested of the king (the enemy) that the officer in charge of waste

lands has been told by the king: "Such and such a person has

begged of me what he should not demand; I refused to grant his

request; he is in conspiracy with my enemy. So make attempts to

put him down." Then the spies may proceed in their usual way.

Spies may also tell those who have been granted their request

by the king (the enemy) that the officer in charge of waste lands has

been told by the king: "Such and such persons have demanded their

due from me; I have granted them all their requests in order to gain

their confidence. But they are conspiring with my enemy. So make

attempts to put them down." Then the spies may proceed in their

usual way.

Spies may also tell those who do not demand their due from

the king that the officer in charge of waste lands has been told:

"Such and such persons do not demand their due from me. What

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

554

else can be the reason than their suspicion about my knowledge of

their guilt? So make attempts to put them down." Then the spies

may proceed in their usual way.

This explains the treatment of partisans.

A spy employed as the personal servant of the king (the

enemy) may inform him that such and such ministers of his are

being interviewed by the enemy's servants. When he comes to

believe this, some treacherous persons may be represented as the

messengers of the enemy, specifying as "this is that."

The chief officers of the army may be induced by offering

land and gold to fall against their own men and secede from the

enemy (their king). If one of the sons of the commander-in-chief is

living near or inside the fort, a spy may tell him: "You are the most

worthy son; still you are neglected; why are you indifferent? Seize

your position by force; otherwise the heir-apparent will destroy

you."

Or some one of the family (of the commander-in-chief or the

king), or one who is imprisoned may be bribed in gold and told:

"Destroy the internal strength of the enemy, or a portion of his

force in the border of his country."

Or having seduced wild tribes with rewards of wealth and

honour, they may be incited to devastate the enemy's country. Or

the enemy's rear-enemy may be told : "I am, as it were, a bridge to

you all; if I am broken like a rafter, this king will drown you all; let

us, therefore, combine and thwart the enemy in his march."

Accordingly, a message may be sent to individual or combined

states to the effect : "After having done with me, this king will do

his work of you: beware of it. I am the best man to be relied upon."

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

555

\* In order to escape from the danger from an immediate

enemy, a king should frequently send to a *madhyama* or a neutral

king (whatever would please him); or one may put one's whole

property at the enemy's disposal.

[Thus ends Chapter III, "Slaying the Commander-in-Chief and

Inciting a Circle of States,” in Book XII, “Concerning a Powerful

Enemy,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and

thirty-eighth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. SPIES WITH WEAPONS, FIRE, AND POISON; AND DESTRUCTION OF SUPPLY, STORES AND GRANARIES.

THE conqueror's spies who are residing as traders in the

enemy's forts, and those who are living as cultivators in the

enemy's villages, as well as those who are living as cowherds or

ascetics in the district borders of the enemy's country may send

through merchants, information to another neighbouring enemy, or

a wild chief, or a scion of the enemy's family, or an imprisoned

prince that the enemy's country is to be captured. When their secret

emissaries come as invited, they are to be pleased with rewards of

wealth and honour and shewn the enemy's weak points; and with

the help of the emissaries, the spies should strike the enemy at his

weak points.

Or having put a banished prince in the enemy's camp; a spy

disguised as a vintner in the service of the enemy, may distribute as

a toast hundreds of vessels of liquor mixed with the juice of the

*madana* plant; or, for the first day, he may distribute a mild or

intoxicating variety of liquor, and on the following days such

liquor as is mixed with poison; or having given pure liquor to the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

556

officers of the enemy's army, he may give them poisoned liquor

when they are in intoxication.

A spy, employed as a chief officer of the enemy's army, may

adopt the same measures as those employed by the vintner.

Spies, disguised as experts in trading in cooked flesh, cooked

rice, liquor, and cakes, may vie with each other in proclaiming in

public the sale of a fresh supply of their special articles at cheap

price and may sell the articles mixed with poison to the attracted

customers of the enemy.

Women and children may receive in their poisoned vessels,

liquor, milk, curd, ghee, or oil from traders in those articles, and

pour those fluids back into the vessels of the traders, saying that at

a specified rate the whole may be sold to them. Spies, disguised as

merchants, may purchase the above articles, and may so contrive

that servants, attending upon the elephants and horses of the

enemy, may make use of the same articles in giving rations and

grass to those animals. Spies, under the garb of servants, may sell

poisoned grass and water. Spies, let off as traders in cattle for a

long time, may leave herds of cattle, sheep, or goats in tempting

places so as to divert the attention of the enemy from the attack

which they (the enemy) intend to make; spies as cowherds may let

off such animals as are ferocious among horses, mules, camels,

buffaloes and others beasts, having smeared the eyes of those

animals with the blood of a musk-rat (*chuchundari*); spies as

hunters may let off cruel beasts from traps; spies as snake charmers

may let off highly poisonous snakes; those who keep elephants

may let off elephants (near the enemy's camp); those who live by

making use of fire may set fire (to the camp, etc.). Secret spies may

slay from behind the chiefs of infantry, cavalry, chariots and

elephants, or they may set fire to the chief residences of the enemy.

Traitors, enemies and wild tribes, employed for the purpose, may

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

557

destroy the enemy's rear or obstruct his reinforcement; or spies,

concealed in forests, may enter into the border of the enemy's

country, and devastate it; or they may destroy the enemy's supply,

stores, and other things, when those things are being conveyed on a

narrow path passable by a single man.

Or in accordance with a preconcerted plan, they may, on the

occasion of a night-battle, go to the enemy's capital, and blowing a

large number of trumpets, cry aloud: "We have entered into the

capital, and the country has been conquered." After entering into

the king's (the enemy's) palace, they may kill the king in the tumult;

when the king begins to run from one direction to another,

*Mlechchhas*, wild tribes, or chiefs of the army, lying in ambush

(*sattra*), or concealed near a pillar or a fence, may slay him; or

spies, under the guise of hunters, may slay the king when he is

directing his attack, or in the tumult of attack following the plan of

treacherous fights. Or occupying an advantageous position, they

may slay the enemy when he is marching in a narrow path passable

by a single man, or on a mountain, or near the trunk of a tree, or

under the branches of a banian tree, or in water; or they may cause

him to be carried off by the force of a current of water let off by the

destruction of a dam across a river, or of a lake or pond; or they

may destroy him by means of an explosive fire or poisonous snake

when he has entrenched himself in a fort, in a desert, in a forest, or

in a valley. He should be destroyed with fire when he is under a

thicket; with smoke when he is in a desert; with poison when he is

in a comfortable place; with crocodile and other cruel beasts when

he is in water; or they may slay him when he is going out of his

burning house.

\* By means of such measures as are narrated in the chapter,

"Enticement of the Enemy by Secret Means" or by any other

measures, the enemy should be caught hold of in places to which

he is confined or from which he is attempting to escape.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

558

[Thus ends Chapter IV, "Spies with Weapons, Fire and Poison; and

Destruction of Supply, Stores and Granaries,” in Book XII,

“Concerning a Powerful Enemy,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.

End of the hundred and thirty-ninth chapter from the beginning.]

**CHAPTER V. CAPTURE OF THE ENEMY BY MEANS OF**

**SECRET CONTRIVANCES OR BY MEANS OF THE**

**ARMY; AND COMPLETE VICTORY.**

CONTRIVANCES to kill the enemy may be formed in those

places of worship and visit, which the enemy, under the influence

of faith, frequents on occasions of worshipping gods, and of

pilgrimage.

A wall or a stone, kept by mechanical contrivance, may, by

loosening the fastenings, be let to fall on the head of the enemy

when he has entered into a temple; stones and weapons may be

showered over his head from the topmost storey; or a door-panel

may be let to fall; or a huge rod kept over a wall or partly attached

to a wall may be made to fall over him; or weapons kept inside the

body of an idol may be thrown over his head; or the floor of those

places where he usually stands, sits, or walks may be be sprinkled

with poison mixed with cow-dung or with pure water; or under the

plea of giving him flowers, scented powders, or of causing scented

smoke, he may be poisoned; or by removing the fastenings made

under a cot or a seat, he may be made to fall into a pit containing

pointed spears; or when he is eager to escape from impending

imprisonment in his own country, he may be led away to fall into

the hands of a wild tribe or an enemy waiting for him not far from

his country; or when he is eager to get out of his castle he may be

like-wise misled or made to enter an enemy's country which is to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

559

be restored (to the conqueror); the enemy's people should also be

kept under the protection of sons and brothers (of the conqueror) in

some forts on a mountain, or in a forest, or in the midst of a river

separated from the enemy's country by wild tracts of lands.

Measures to obstruct the movements of the enemy are

explained in the chapter, "The Conduct of a Conquered King."

Grass and firewood should be set on fire as far as a *yojana* (5

5/44 miles); water should be vitiated and caused to flow away;

mounds, wells, pits and thorns (outside the fort wall) should be

destroyed; having widened the mouth of the underground tunnel of

the enemy's fort, his stores and leaders may be removed; the enemy

may also be likewise carried off; when the underground tunnel has

been made by the enemy for his own use, the water in the ditch

outside the fort may be made to flow into it; in suspicious places

along the parapet (of the enemy's fort) and in the house containing

a well outside the fort, empty pots or bronze vessels may be placed

in order to find out the direction of the wind (blowing from the

underground tunnel); when the direction of the tunnel is found out,

a counter-tunnel may be formed; or having opened the tunnel, it

may be filled with smoke or water.

Having arranged for the defence of the fort by a scion of his

family, the enemy may run in an opposite direction where it is

possible for him to meet with friends, relatives, or wild tribes, or

with his enemy's treacherous friends of vast resources, or where he

may separate his enemy from the latter's friends, or where he may

capture the enemy's rear, or country, or where he may prevent the

transport of supplies to his enemy, or whence he may strike his

enemy by throwing down trees at hand, or where he can find means

to defend his own country or to gather reinforcements for his

hereditary army; or he may go to any other country whence he can

obtain peace on his own terms.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

560

His enemy's (the conqueror's) allies may send a mission to

him, saying: "This man, your enemy, has fallen into our hands;

under the plea of merchandise or some presentation, send gold and

a strong force; we shall either hand over to you your enemy bound

in chains, or banish him." If he approves of it, the gold and the

army he may send may be received (by the conqueror).

Having access to the enemy's castle, the officer in charge of

the boundaries (of the enemy's country) may lead a part of his force

and slay the enemy in good faith under the plea of destroying a

people in some place, he may take the enemy to an inimical army;

and having led the enemy to the surrounded place, he may slay the

enemy in good faith.

A pretending friend may send information to an outsider:

"Grains, oil and jaggery and salt stored in the fort (of the enemy)

have been exhausted; a fresh supply of them is expected to reach

the fort at such and such a place and time; seize it by force." Then

traitors, enemies, or wild tribes, or some other persons, specially

appointed for the purpose, may send a supply of poisoned grains,

oil, jaggery, and salt to the fort. This explains the seizure of all

kinds of supply.

Having made peace with the conqueror, he may give the

conqueror part of the gold promised and the rest gradually. Thus he

may cause the conqueror's defensive force to be slackened and then

strike them down with fire, poison or sword; or he may win the

confidence of the conqueror's courtiers deputed to take the tribute.

Or if his resources are exhausted, he may run away

abandoning his fort; he may escape through a tunnel or through a

hole newly made or by breaking the parapet.

Or having challenged the conqueror at night, he may

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

561

successfully confront the attack; if he cannot do this, he may run

away by a side path; or disguised as a heretic, he may escape with a

small retinue; or he may be carried off by spies as a corpse; or

disguised as a woman, he may follow a corpse (as it were, of her

husband to the cremation ground); or on the occasion of feeding

the people in honour of gods or of ancestors or in some festival, he

may make use of poisoned rice and water, and having conspired

with his enemy's traitors, he may strike the enemy with his

concealed army; or when he is surrounded in his fort, he may lie

concealed in a hole bored into the body of an idol after eating

sacramental food and setting up an altar; or he may lie in a secret

hole in a wall, or in a hole made in the body of an idol in an

underground chamber; and when he is forgotten, he may get out of

his concealment through a tunnel, and, entering into the palace,

slay his enemy while sleeping, or loosening the fastenings of a

machine (*yantra*), he may let it fall on his enemy; or when his

enemy is lying in a chamber which is besmeared with poisonous

and explosive substances or which is made of lac, he may set fire to

it. Fiery spies, hidden in an underground chamber, or in a tunnel, or

inside a secret wall, may slay the enemy when the latter is

carelessly amusing himself in a pleasure park or any other place of

recreation; or spies under concealment may poison him; or women

under concealment may throw a snake, or poison, or fire or

poisonous smoke over his person when he is asleep in confined

place; or spies, having access to the enemy's harem, may, when

opportunities occur, do to the enemy whatever is found possible on

the occasion, and then get out unknown. On such occasions, they

should make use of the signs indicative of the purpose of their

society.

\* Having by means of trumpet sounds called together the

sentinels at the gate as well as aged men and other spies stationed

by others, the enemy may completely carry out the rest of his work.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "Capture of the Enemy by Means of Secret

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

562

Contrivances or by Means of the Army; and Complete Victory," in

Book XII, "Concerning a Powerful Enemy,” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and fortieth chapter from the

beginning. With this ends the twelfth Book, “Concerning a

Powerful Enemy,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 461-474.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

563

**Book XIII, "Strategic Means to**

**Capture a Fortress"**

**CHAPTER I. SOWING THE SEEDS OF DISSENSION.**

WHEN the conqueror is desirous of seizing an enemy's

village, he should infuse enthusiastic spirit among his own men

and frighten his enemy's people by giving publicity to his power of

omniscience and close association with gods.

Proclamation of his omniscience is as follows:--rejection of

his chief officers when their secret, domestic and other private

affairs are known; revealing the names of traitors after receiving

information from spies specially employed to find out such men;

pointing out the impolitic aspect of any course of action suggested

to him; and pretensions to the knowledge of foreign affairs by

means of his power to read omens and signs invisible to others

when information about foreign affairs is just received through a

domestic pigeon which has brought a sealed letter.

Proclamation of his association with gods is as

follows:--Holding conversation with, and worshipping, the spies

who pretend to be the gods of fire or altar when through a tunnel

they come to stand in the midst of fire, altar, or in the interior of a

hollow image; holding conversation with, and worshipping, the

spies who rise up from water and pretend to be the gods and

goddesses of *Nágas* (snakes); placing under water at night a mass

of sea-foam mixed with burning oil, and exhibiting it as the

spontaneous outbreak of fire, when it is burning in a line; sitting on

a raft in water which is secretly fastened by a rope to a rock; such

magical performance in water as is usually done at night by bands

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

564

of magicians, using the sack of abdomen or womb of water animals

to hide the head and the nose, and applying to the nose the oil,

prepared from the entrails of red spotted deer and the serum of the

flesh of the crab, crocodile, porpoise and otter; holding

conversation, as though, with women of *Varuna* (the god of water),

or of *Nága* (the snake-god) when they are performing magical

tricks in water; and sending out volumes of smoke from the mouth

on occasions of anger.

Astrologers, sooth-sayers, horologists, story-tellers,

(*Pauránika*), as well as those who read the forebodings of every

moment, together with spies and their disciples, inclusive of those

who have witnessed the wonderful performances of the conqueror

should give wide publicity to the power of the king to associate

with gods throughout his territory. Likewise in foreign countries,

they should spread the news of gods appearing before the

conqueror and of his having received from heaven weapons and

treasure. Those who are well versed in horary and astrology and the

science of omens should proclaim abroad that the conqueror is a

successful expert in explaining the indications of dreams and in

understanding the language of beasts and birds. They should not

only attribute the contrary to his enemy, but also show to the

enemy's people the shower of firebrand (*ulká*) with the noise of

drums (from the sky) on the day of the birth-star of the enemy.

The conqueror‟s chief messengers, pretending to be friendly

towards the enemy, should highly speak of the conqueror's

respectful treatment of visitors, of the strength of his army, and of

the likelihood of impending destruction of his enemy's men. They

should also make it known to the enemy that under their master,

both ministers and soldiers are equally safe and happy, and that

their master treats his servants with parental care in their weal or

woe.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

565

By these and other means, they should win over the enemy's

men as pointed out above, and as we are going to treat of them

again at length:--

They should characterise the enemy as an ordinary donkey

towards skilful persons; as the branch of *lakucha* (*Artocarpus*

*Lacucha*) broken to the officers of his army; as a crab on the shore

to anxious persons; as a downpour of lightnings to those who are

treated with contempt; as a reed, a barren tree, or an iron ball, or as

false clouds to those who are disappointed; as the ornaments of an

ugly woman to those who are disappointed in spite of their

worshipful service; as a tiger's skin, or as a trap of death to his

favourites; and as eating a piece of the wood of *pílu*

(*Careya-Arborea*), or as churning the milk of a she-camel or a

she-donkey (for butter) to those who are rendering to him valuable

help.

When the people of the enemy are convinced of this, they

may be sent to the conqueror to receive wealth and, honour. Those

of the enemy who are in need of money and food should be

supplied with an abundance of those things. Those who do not like

to receive such things may be presented with ornaments for their

wives and children.

When the people of the enemy are suffering from famine and

the oppression of thieves and wild tribes, the conqueror's spies

should sow the seeds of dissension among them, saying: "Let us

request the king for favour and go elsewhere if not favoured."

\* When they agree to such proposals, they should be supplied

with money, grains, and other necessary help: thus, much can be

done by sowing the seeds of dissension.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “Sowing the Seeds of Dissension,” in Book

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

566

XIII, “Strategic Means to Capture a Fortress” of the *Arthasástra*, of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and forty-first chapter from the

beginning.]

**CHAPTER II. ENTICEMENT OF KINGS BY SECRET**

**CONTRIVANCES.**

AN ascetic, with shaved head or braided hair and living in the

cave of a mountain, may pretend to be four hundred years old, and,

followed by a number of disciples with braided hair, halt in the

vicinity of the capital city of the enemy. The disciples of the ascetic

may make presentations of roots and fruits to the king and his

ministers and invite them to pay a visit to the venerable ascetic. On

the arrival of the king on the spot, the ascetic may acquaint him

with the history of ancient kings and their states, and tell him:

"Every time when I complete the course of a hundred years, I enter

into the fire and come out of it as a fresh youth (*bála*). Now, here in

your presence, I am going to enter into the fire for the fourth time.

It is highly necessary that you may be pleased to honour me with

your presence at the time. Please request three boons." When the

king agrees to do so, he may be requested to come and remain at

the spot with his wives and children for seven nights to witness the

sacrificial performance. When he does so, he may be caught hold

of.

An ascetic, with shaved head or braided hair, and followed by

a number of disciples with shaved heads or braided hair, and

pretending to be aware of whatever is contained in the interior of

the earth, may put in the interior of an ant-hill either a bamboo stick

wound round with a piece of cloth drenched in blood and painted

with gold dust, or a hollow golden tube into which a snake can

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

567

enter and remain. One of the disciples may tell the king: "This

ascetic can discover blooming treasure trove." When he asks the

ascetic (as to the veracity of the statement), the latter should

acknowledge it, and produce a confirmatory evidence (by pulling

out the bamboo stick); or having kept some more gold in the

interior of the ant-hill, the ascetic may tell the king: "This treasure

trove is guarded by a snake and can possibly be taken out by

performing necessary sacrifice. When the king agrees to do so, he

may be requested to come and remain. . . (as before).

When an ascetic, pretending to be able to find out hidden

treasure trove, is seated with his body burning with magical fire at

night in a lonely place, his disciples may bring the king to see him

and inform the king that the ascetic can find out treasure trove.

While engaged in performing some work at the request of the king,

the latter may be requested to come and remain at the spot for

seven nights . . . (as before).

An accomplished ascetic may beguile a king by his

knowledge of the science of magic known as *jambhaka*, and

request him to come and remain . . . (as before).

An accomplished ascetic, pretending to have secured the

favour of the powerful guardian deity of the country, may often

beguile the king's chief ministers with his wonderful performance

and gradually impose upon the king.

Any person, disguised as an ascetic and living under water or

in the interior of an idol entered into through a tunnel or an

underground chamber, may be said by his disciples to be *Varuna*,

the god of water, or the king of snakes, and shown to the king.

While going to accomplish whatever the king may desire, the latter

may be requested to come and remain . . . (as before.)

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

568

An accomplished ascetic, halting in the vicinity of the capital

city, may invite the king to witness the person (of his enemy) when

he comes to witness the invocation of his enemy's life in the image

to be destroyed, he may be murdered in an unguarded place.

Spies, under the, guise of merchants come to sell horses, may

invite the king to examine and purchase any of the animals. While

attentively examining the horses, he may be murdered in the tumult

or trampled down by horses.

Getting into an altar at night in the vicinity of the capital city

of the enemy and blowing through tubes or hollow reeds the fire

contained in a few pots, some fiery spies may shout aloud: "We are

going to eat the flesh of the king or of his ministers; let the worship

of the gods go on." Spies, under the guise of sooth-sayers and

horologists may spread the news abroad.

Spies, disguised as Nagas (snake-gods and with their body

besmeared with burning oil (*tejánataila*), may stand in the centre

of a sacred pool of water or of a lake at night, and sharpening their

iron swords or spikes, may shout aloud as before.

Spies, wearing coats formed of the skins of bears and sending

out volumes of smoke from their mouth, may pretend to be

demons, and after circumambulating the city thrice from right to

left, may shout aloud as before at a place full of the horrid noise of

antelopes and jackals; or spies may set fire to an altar or an image

of a god covered with a layer of mica besmeared with burning oil at

night, and shout aloud as before. Others may spread this news

abroad; or they may cause (by some contrivance or other) blood to

flow out in floods from revered images of gods. Others may spread

this news abroad and challenge any bold or brave man to come out

to witness this flow of divine blood. Whoever accepts the

challenge may be beaten to death by others with rods, making the

people believe that he was killed by demons. Spies and other

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

569

witnesses may inform the king of this wonder. Then spies,

disguised as sooth-sayers and astrologers may prescribe auspicious

and expiatory rites to avert the evil consequences which would

otherwise overtake the king and his country. When the king agrees

to the proposal he may be asked to perform in person special

sacrifices and offerings with special *mantras* every night for seven

days. Then (while doing this, he may be slain) as before.

In order to delude other kings, the conqueror may himself

undertake the performance of expiatory rites to avert such evil

consequences as the above and thus set an example to others.

In view of averting the evil consequences of unnatural

occurrences, he (the conqueror) may collect money (from his

subjects).

When the enemy is fond of elephants, spies may delude him

with the sight of a beautiful elephant reared by the officer in charge

of elephant forests. When he desires to capture the elephant, he

may be taken to a remote desolate part of the forest, and killed or

carried off as a prisoner. This explains the fate of kings addicted to

hunting.

When the enemy is fond of wealth or women, he may be

beguiled at the sight of rich and beautiful widows brought before

him with a plaint for the recovery of a deposit kept by them in the

custody of one of their kinsmen; and when he comes to meet with a

woman at night as arranged, hidden spies may kill him with

weapons or poison.

When the enemy is in the habit of paying frequent visits to

ascetics, altars, sacred pillars (*stúpa*), and images of gods, spies

hidden in underground chambers or in subterranean passages, or

inside the walls, may strike him down.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

570

\* Whatever may be the sights or spectacles which the king goes in

person to witness; wherever he may engage himself in sports or in

swimming in water;

\* Wherever he may be careless in uttering such words of rebuke as

"*Tut*" or on the occasions of sacrificial performance or during the

accouchement of women or at the time of death or disease (of some

person in the palace), or at the time of love, sorrow, or fear;

\* Whatever may be the festivities of his own men, which the king

goes to attend, wherever he is unguarded or during a cloudy day, or

in the tumultuous concourse of people;

\* Or in an assembly of *Bráhmans*, or whenever he may go in

person to see the outbreak of fire, or when, he is in a lonely place,

or when he is putting on dress or ornaments, or garlands of flower,

or when he is lying in his bed or sitting on a seat;

\* Or when he is eating or drinking, on these and other occasions,

spies, together with other persons previously hidden at those

places, may strike him down at the sound of trumpets.

\*And they may get out as secretly as they came there with the

pretence of witnessing the sights; thus it is that kings and other

persons are enticed to come out and be captured.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "Enticement of Kings by Secret

Contrivances," in Book XIII, "Strategic means to Capture a

Fortress," of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and

forty-second chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. THE WORK OF SPIES IN A SIEGE.

THE conqueror may dismiss a confidential chief of a

corporation. The chief may go over to the enemy as a friend and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

571

offer to supply him with recruits and other help collected from the

conqueror's territory or followed by a band of spies, the chief may

please the enemy by destroying a disloyal village or a regiment or

an ally of the conqueror and by sending as a present the elephants,

horses, and disaffected persons of the conqueror's army or of the

latter's ally; or a confidential chief officer of the conqueror may

solicit help from a portion of the territory (of the enemy), or from a

corporation of people (*sreni*) or from wild tribes; and when he has

gained their confidence, he may send them down to the conqueror

to be routed down on the occasion of a farcical attempt to capture

elephants or wild tribes.

This explains the work of ministers and wild chiefs under the

mission of the conqueror.

After making peace with the enemy, the conqueror may

dismiss his own confidential ministers. They may request the

enemy to reconcile them to their master. When the enemy sends a

messenger for this purpose, the conqueror may rebuke him and

say: "Thy master attempts to sow the seeds of dissension between

myself and my ministers; so thou should not come here again."

Then one of the dismissed ministers may go over to the enemy,

taking with him a band of spies, disaffected people, traitors, brave

thieves, and wild tribes who make no distinction between a friend

and a foe. Having secured the good graces of the enemy, the

minister may propose to him the destruction of his officers, such as

the boundary-guard, wild chief, and commander of his army,

telling him: "These and other persons are in concert with your

enemy." Then these persons may be put to death under the

unequivocal orders of the enemy.

The conqueror may tell his enemy: "A chief with a powerfu1

army means to offend us, so let us combine and put him down; you

may take possession of his treasury or territory." When the enemy

agrees to the proposal and comes out honoured by the conqueror,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

572

he may be slain in a tumult or in an open battle with the chief (in

concert with the conqueror). Or having invited the enemy to be

present as a thick friend on the occasion of a pretended gift of

territory, or the installation of the heir-apparent, or the performance

of some expiatory rites, the conqueror may capture the enemy.

Whoever withstands such inducements may be slain by secret

means. If the enemy refuses to meet any man in person, then also

attempts may be made to kill him by employing his enemy. If the

enemy likes to march alone with his army, but not in company with

the conqueror, then he may be hemmed in between two forces and

destroyed. If, trusting to none, he wants to march alone in order to

capture a portion of the territory of an assailable enemy, then he

may be slain by employing one of his enemies or any other person

provided with all necessary help. When he goes to his subdued

enemy for the purpose of collecting an army, his capital may be

captured. Or he may be asked to take possession of the territory of

another enemy or a friend of the conqueror; and when he goes to

seize the territory, the conqueror may ask his (the conqueror's)

friend to offend him (the conqueror), and then enable the friend to

catch hold of the enemy. These and other contrivances lead to the

same end.

When the enemy is desirous of taking possession of the

territory of the conqueror's friend, then the conqueror may, under

the pretence of compliance, supply the enemy with army. Then

having entered into a secret concert with the friend, the conqueror

may pretend to be under troubles and allow himself to be attacked

by the enemy combined with the neglected friend. Then, hemmed

from two sides, the enemy may be killed or captured alive to

distribute his territory among the conqueror and his friend.

If the enemy, helped by his friend, shuts himself in an

impregnable fort, then his neighbouring enemies may be employed

to lay waste his territory. If he attempts to defend his territory by

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

573

his army, that army may be annihilated. If the enemy and his ally

cannot be separated, then each of these may be openly asked to

come to an agreement with the conqueror to seize the territory of

the other. Then they will, of course, send such of their messengers

as are termed friends and recipients of salaries from two states to

each other with information: "This king (the conqueror), allied

with my army, desires to seize thy territory." Then one of them

may, with enragement and suspicion, act as before (*i.e.*, fall upon

the conqueror or the friend).

The conqueror may dismiss his chief officers in charge of his

forests, country parts, and army, under the pretence of their

intrigue with the enemy. Then going over to 'the enemy, they may

catch hold of him on occasions of war, siege, or any other troubles;

or they may sow the seeds of dissension between the enemy and his

party, corroborating the causes of dissension by producing

witnesses specially tutored.

Spies, disguised as hunters, may take a stand near the gate of

the enemy's fort to sell flesh, and make friendship with the

sentinels at the gate. Having informed the enemy of the arrival of

thieves on two or three occasions, they may prove themselves to be

of reliable character and cause him to split his army into two

divisions and to station them in two different parts of his territory.

When his villages are being plundered or besieged, they may tell

him that thieves are come very near, that the tumult is very great,

and that a large army is required. They may take the army supplied,

and surrendering it to the commander laying waste the villages,

return at night with a part of the commander's army, and cry aloud

at the gate of the fort that the thieves are slain, that the army has

returned victorious, and that the gate may be opened. When the

gate is opened by the watchmen under the enemy‟s order or by

others in confidence, they may strike the enemy with the help of

the army.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

574

Painters, carpenters, heretics, actors, merchants, and other

disguised spies belonging to the conqueror's army may also reside

inside the fort of the enemy. Spies, disguised as agriculturists, may

supply them with weapons taken in carts loaded with firewood,

grass, grains, and other commodities of commerce, or disguised as

images and flags of gods. Then spies, disguised as priests, may

announce to the enemy, blowing their conch shells and beating

their drums, that a besieging army, eager to destroy all, and armed

with weapons, is coming closely behind them. Then in the ensuing

tumult, they may surrender the fort-gate and the towers of the fort

to the army of the conqueror or disperse the enemy‟s army and

bring about his fall.

Or taking advantage of peace and friendship with the enemy,

army and weapons may be collected inside the enemy's fort by

spies disguised as merchants, caravans, processions leading a

bride, merchants selling horses, peddlers trading in miscellaneous

articles, purchasers or sellers of grains, and as ascetics. These and

others are the spies aiming on the life of a king.

The same spies, together with those described in "Removal of

thorns" may, by employing thieves, destroy the flock of the

enemy's cattle or merchandise in the vicinity of wild tracts. They

may poison with the juice of the *madana* plant, the food-stuffs and

beverage kept, as previously arranged, in a definite place for the

enemy's cowherds, and go out unknown. When the cowherds show

signs of intoxication in consequence of their eating the above

food-stuffs, spies, disguised as cowherds, merchants, and thieves,

may fall upon the enemy's cowherds, and carry off the cattle.

Spies disguised as ascetics with shaved head or braided hair

and pretending to be the worshippers of god, *Sankarshana*, may

mix their sacrificial beverage with the juice of the *madana* plant

(and give it to the cowherds), and carry off the cattle.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

575

A spy, under the guise of a vintner, may, on the occasion of

procession of gods, funeral rites, festivals, and other congregations

of people, go to sell liquor and present the cowherds with some

liquor mixed with the juice of the *madana* plant. Then others may

fall upon the intoxicated cowherds (and carry off the cattle).

\* Those spies, who enter into the wild tracts of the enemy

with the intention of plundering his villages, and who, leaving that

work, set themselves to destroy the enemy, are termed spies under

the garb of thieves.

[Thus ends Chapter III, “The Work of Spies in a Siege,” in Book

XIII, “The Strategic Means to Capture a Fortress,” of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and forty-third chapter

from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. THE OPERATION OF A SIEGE.

REDUCTION (of the enemy) must precede a siege. The

territory that has been conquered should be kept so peacefully that

it might sleep without any fear. When it is in rebellion, it is to be

pacified by bestowing re-wards and remitting taxes, unless the

conqueror means to quit it. Or he may select his battle fields in a

remote part of the enemy's territory, far from the populous centres;

for, in the opinion of Kautilya, no territory deserves the name of a

kingdom or country unless it is full of people. When a people resist

the attempt of the conqueror, then he may destroy their stores,

crops, and granaries, and trade.

\* By the destruction of trade, agricultural produce, and

standing crops, by causing the people to run away, and by slaying

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

576

their leaders in secret, the country will be denuded of its people.

When the conqueror thinks: "My army is provided with

abundance of staple corn, raw materials, machines, weapons, dress,

labourers, ropes and the like, and has a favourable season to act,

whereas my enemy has an unfavourable season and is suffering

from disease, famine and loss of stores and defencive force, while

his hired troops as well as the army of his friend are in a miserable

condition,"--then he may begin the siege.

Having well guarded his camp, transports, supplies and also

the roads of communication, and having dug up a ditch and raised a

rampart round his camp, he may vitiate the water in the ditches

round the enemy's fort, or empty the ditches of their water or fill

them with water if empty, and then he may assail the rampart and

the parapets by making use of underground tunnels and iron rods.

If the ditch (*dváram*) is very deep, he may fill it up with soil. If it is

defended by a number of men, he may destroy it by means of

machines. Horse soldiers may force their passage through the gate

into the fort and smite the enemy. Now and then in the midst of

tumult, he may offer terms to the enemy by taking recourse to one,

two, three, or all of the strategic means.

Having captured the birds such as the vulture, crow, *naptri,*

*bhása,* parrot, *máina*, and pigeon which have their nests in the

fort-walls, and having tied to their tails inflammable powders

(*agniyoga*), he may let them fly to the forts. If the camp is situated

at a distance from the fort and is provided with an elevated post for

archers and their flags, then the enemy's fort may be set on fire.

Spies, living as watchmen of the fort, may tie inflammable powder

to the tails of mongooses, monkeys, cats and dogs and let them go

over the thatched roofs of the houses. A splinter of fire kept in the

body of a dried fish may be caused to be carried off by a monkey,

or a crow, or any other bird (to the thatched roofs of the houses).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

577

Small balls prepared from the mixture of *sarala* (*Pinus*

*Longifolia*), *devadáru* (deodár), *pútitrina* (stinking grass), *guggulu*

(Bdellium), *sriveshtaka* (turpentine), the juice of *sarja* (*Vatica*

*Robusta*), and *láksha* (*lac*) combined with dungs of an ass, camel,

sheep, and goat are inflammable (*agnidharanah*, *i.e.*, such as keep

fire.)

The mixture of the powder of *priyala* (*Chironjia Sapida*), the

charcoal of *avalguja* (*oanyza*, *serratula, anthelmintica*),

*madhúchchhishta* (wax), and the dung of a horse, ass, camel, and

cow is an inflammable powder to be hurled against the enemy.

The powder of all the metals (*sarvaloha*) as red as fire, or the

mixture of the powder of *kumbhí* (*gmelia arberea*, *sísa* (lead),

*trapu* (zinc), mixed with the charcoal powder of the flowers of

*páribhadraka* (deodar), *palása* (B*utea Frondosa*), and hair, and

with oil, wax, and turpentine, is also an inflammable powder.

A stick of *visvásagháti* painted with the above mixture and

wound round with a bark made of hemp, zinc, and lead, is a

fire-arrow (to be hurled against the enemy).

When a fort can be captured by other means, no attempt

should be made to set fire to it; for fire cannot be trusted; it not only

offends gods, but also destroys the people, grains, cattle, gold, raw

materials and the like. Also the acquisition of a fort with its

property all destroyed is a source of further loss. Such is the aspect

of a siege.

When the conqueror thinks: "I am well provided with all

necessary means and with workmen whereas my enemy is diseased

with officers proved to be impure under temptations, with

unfinished forts and deficient stores, allied with no friends, or with

friends inimical at heart," then he should consider it as an

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

578

opportune moment to take up arms and storm the fort.

When fire, accidental or intentionally kindled, breaks out;

when the enemy's people are engaged in a sacrificial performance,

or in witnessing spectacles or the troops, or in a quarrel due to the

drinking of liquor; or when the enemy's army is too much tired by

daily engagements in battles and is reduced in strength in

consequence of the slaughter of a number of its men in a number of

battles; when the enemy's people wearied from sleeplessness have

fallen asleep; or on the occasion of a cloudy day, of floods, or of a

thick fog or snow, general assault should be made.

Or having concealed himself in a forest after abandoning the

camp, the conqueror may strike the enemy when the latter comes

out.

A king pretending to be the enemy's chief friend or ally, may

make the friendship closer with the besieged, and send a messenger

to say: "This is thy weak point; these are thy internal enemies; that

is the weak point of the besieger; and this person (who, deserting

the conqueror, is now coming to thee) is thy partisan." When this

partisan is returning with another messenger from the enemy, the

conqueror should catch hold of him and, having published the

partisan's guilt, should banish him, and retire from the siege

operations. Then the pretending friend may tell the besieged:

"Come out to help me, or let us combine and strike the besieger."

Accordingly, when the enemy comes out, he may be hemmed

between the two forces (the conqueror's force and the pretending

friend's force) and killed or captured alive to distribute his territory

(between the conqueror and the friend). His capital city may be

razed to the ground; and the flower of his army made to come out

and destroyed.

This explains the treatment of a conquered enemy or wild

chief.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

579

Either a conquered enemy or the chief of a wild tribe (in

conspiracy with the conqueror) may inform the besieged: "With

the intention of escaping from a disease, or from the attack in his

weak point by his enemy in the rear, or from a rebellion in his

army, the conqueror seems to be thinking of going elsewhere,

abandoning the siege." When the enemy is made to believe this, the

conqueror may set fire to his camp and retire. Then the enemy

coming out may be hemmed . . . as before.

Or having collected merchandise mixed with poison, the

conqueror may deceive the enemy by sending that merchandise to

the latter.

Or a pretending ally of the enemy may send a messenger to

the enemy, asking him: "Come out to smite the conqueror already

struck by me." When he does so, he may be hemmed . . . as before.

Spies, disguised as friends or relatives and with passports and

orders in their hands, may enter the enemy's fort and help to its

capture.

Or a pretending ally of the enemy may send information to the

besieged: "I am going to strike the besieging camp at such a time

and place; then you should also fight along with me." When the

enemy does so, or when he comes out of his fort after witnessing

the tumult and uproar of the besieging army in danger, he may be

slain as before.

Or a friend or a wild chief in friendship with the enemy may

be induced and encouraged to seize the land of the enemy when the

latter is besieged by the conqueror. When accordingly any one of

them attempts to seize the enemy's territory, the enemy's people or

the leaders of the enemy's traitors may be employed to murder him

(the friend or the wild chief); or the conqueror himself may

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

580

administer poison to him. Then another pretending friend may

inform the enemy that the murdered person was a fratricide (as he

attempted to seize the territory of his friend in troubles). After

strengthening his intimacy with the enemy, the pretending friend

may sow the seeds of dissension between the enemy and his

officers and have the latter hanged. Causing the peaceful people of

the enemy to rebel, he may put them down, unknown to the enemy.

Then having taken with him a portion of his army composed of

furious wild tribes, he may enter the enemy's fort and allow it to be

captured by the conqueror. Or traitors, enemies, wild tribes and

other persons who have deserted the enemy, may, under the plea of

having been reconciled, honoured and rewarded, go back to the

enemy and allow the fort to be captured by the conqueror.

Having captured the fort or having returned to the camp after

its capture, he should give quarter to those of the enemy's army

who, whether as lying prostrate in the field, or as standing with

their back turned to the conqueror, or with their hair dishevelled,

with their weapons thrown down or with their body disfigured and

shivering under fear, surrender themselves. After the captured fort

is cleared of the enemy's partisans and is well guarded by the

conqueror's men both within and without, he should make his

victorious entry into it.

Having thus seized the territory of the enemy close to his

country, the conqueror should direct his attention to that of the

*madhyama* king; this being taken, he should catch hold of that of

the neutral king. This is the first way to conquer the world. In the

absence of the *madhyama* and neutral kings, he should, in virtue of

his own excellent qualities, win the hearts of his enemy's subjects,

and then direct his attention to other remote enemies. This is the

second way. In the absence of a Circle of States (to be conquered),

he should conquer his friend or his enemy by hemming each

between his own force and that of his enemy or that of his friend

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

581

respectively. This is the third way.

Or he may first put down an almost invincible immediate

enemy. Having doubled his power by this victory, he may go

against a second enemy; having trebled his power by this victory,

he may attack a third. This is the fourth way to conquer the world.

Having conquered the earth with its people of distinct castes

and divisions of religious life, he should enjoy it by governing it in

accordance with the duties prescribed to kings.

\* Intrigue, spies, winning over the enemy's people, siege, and

assault are the five means to capture a fort.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, "The Operation of a Siege and Storming a

Fort," in Book XIII, "Strategic Means to Capture a Fortress," of the

*Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and forty-fourth

chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER V. RESTORATION OF PEACE IN A CONQUERED COUNTRY.

THE expedition which the conqueror has to undertake may be

of two kinds: in wild tracts or in single villages and the like.

The territory which he acquires may be of three kinds: that

which is newly acquired, that which is recovered (from an usurper)

and that which is inherited.

Having acquired a new territory, he should cover the enemy's

vices with his own virtues, and the enemy's virtues by doubling his

own virtues, by strict observance of his own duties, by attending to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

582

his works, by bestowing rewards, by remitting taxes, by giving

gifts, and by bestowing honours. He should follow the friends and

leaders of the people. He should give rewards, as promised, to

those who deserted the enemy for his cause; he should also offer

rewards to them as often as they render help to him; for whoever

fails to fullfil his promises becomes untrustworthy both to his own

and his enemy's people. Whoever acts against the will of the people

will also become unreliable. He should adopt the same mode of

life, the same dress, language, and customs as those of the people.

He should follow the people in their faith with which they celebrate

their national, religious and congregational festivals or

amusements. His spies should often bring home to the mind of the

leaders of provinces, villages, castes, and corporations the hurt

inflicted on the enemies in contrast with the high esteem and

favour with which they are treated by the conqueror, who finds his

own prosperity in theirs. He should please them by giving gifts,

remitting taxes, and providing for their security. He should always

hold religious 1ife in high esteem. Learned men, orators, charitable

and brave persons should be favoured with gifts of land and money

and with remission of taxes. He should release all the prisoners,

and afford help to miserable, helpless, and diseased persons. He

should prohibit the slaughter of animals for half a month during the

period of *Cháturmásya* (from July to September), for four nights

during the full moon, and for a night on the day of the birth-star of

the conqueror or of the national star. He should also prohibit the

slaughter of females and young ones (*yonibálavadham*) as well as

castration. Having abolished those customs or transactions which

he might consider either as injurious to the growth of his revenue

and army or as unrighteous, he should establish righteous

transactions. He should compel born thieves as well as the

*Mlechchhas* to change their habitations often and reside in many

places. Such of his chief officers in charge of the forts, country

parts, and the army, and ministers and priests as are found to have

been in conspiracy with the enemy should also be compelled to

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

583

have their habitations in different places on the borders of the

enemy's country. Such of his men as are capable to hurt him, but

are convinced of their own fall with that of their master, should be

pacified by secret remonstrance. Such renegades of his own

country as are captured along with the enemy should be made to

reside in remote corners. Whoever of the enemy's family is capable

to wrest the conquered territory and is taking shelter in a wild tract

on the border, often harassing the conqueror, should be provided

with a sterile portion of territory or with a fourth part of a fertile

tract on the condition of supplying to the conqueror a fixed amount

of money and a fixed number of troops, in raising which he may

incur the displeasure of the people and may be destroyed by them.

Whoever has caused excitement to the people or incurred their

displeasure should be removed and placed in a dangerous locality.

Having recovered a lost territory, he should hide those vices

of his, owing to which he lost it, and increase those virtues by

which he recovered it.

With regard to the inherited territory, he should cover the

vices of his father, and display his own virtues.

\* He should initiate the observance of all those customs,

which, though righteous and practised by others, are not observed

in his own country, and give no room for the practice of whatever is

unrighteous, though observed by others.

[Thus ends Chapter V, "Restoration of Peace in a Conquered

Country,” in Book XIII, “Strategic Means to Capture a Fortress,”

of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred and forty-fifth

chapter from the beginning. With this ends the thirteenth Book

“Strategic Means to Capture a Fortress,” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

584

# Book XIV, "Secret Means"

## CHAPTER I. MEANS TO INJURE AN ENEMY.

IN order to protect the institution of the four castes, such

measures as are treated of in secret science shall be applied against

the wicked. Through the instrumentality of such men or women of

*Mlechchha* class as can put on disguises, appropriate to different

countries, arts, or professions, or as can put on the appearance of a

hump-backed, dwarfish, or short-sized person, or of a dumb, deaf,

idiot, or blind person, *kálakúta* and other manifold poisons should

be administered in the diet and other physical enjoyments of the

wicked. Spies lying in wait or living as inmates (in the same house)

may make use of weapons on occasions of royal sports or musical

and other entertainments. Spies, under the disguise of

night-walkers (*rátrichári*) or of fire-keepers (*agni*-*jívi*) may set fire

(to the houses of the wicked).

The powder (prepared from the carcass) of animals such as

chitra (?)*, bheka* (frog), *kaundinyaka* (?)*, krikana* (*perdix*

*sylvatika*)*, panchakushtha* (?), and *satapadi,* (centipede); or of

animals such as *uchchitinga* (crab), *kambali* (?), *krikalása* (lizard)

with the powder of the bark of *satakanda* (*Phyalis Flexuosa*); or of

animals such as *grihagaulika* (a small house-lizard), *andháhika* (a

blind snake), *krakanthaka* (a kind of partridge), *pútikíta* (a stinking

insect), and *gomárika* (?) combined with the juice of bhallátaka

(*Semecarpus Anacardium*), and *valgaka* (?);--the smoke caused by

burning the above powders causes instantaneous death.

\* Any of the (above) insects may be heated with a black snake

and *priyangu* (panic seed) and reduced to powder. This mixture,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

585

when burnt, causes instantaneous death.

The powder prepared from the roots of *dhámárgava* (*lufta*

*foetida*) and *yátudhána* (?) mixed with the powder of the flower of

*bhallátaka* (*Semecarpus Anacardium*) causes, when administered,

death in the course of half a month. The root of *vyágháta* (*casia*

*fistula*) reduced to powder with the flower of *bhallátaka*

(*Semecarpus A nacardium*) mixed with the essence of an insect

(*kíta*) causes, when administered, death in the course of a month.

As much as a *kalá* (16th of a *tola*) to men; twice as much to

mules and horses; and four times as much to elephants and camels.

The smoke caused by burning the powder of *satakardama* (?),

*uchchitinga* (crab), *karavira* (*nerium odorum*), *katutumbi* (a kind

of bitter gourd), and fish together with the chaff of the grains of

*madana* (?) and *kodrava* (*paspalam scrobiculatum*), or with the

chaff of the seeds of *hastikarna* (castor oil tree) and *palása* (*butea*

*frondosa*) destroys animal life as far as it is carried off by the wind.

The smoke caused by burning the powder of *pútikita* (a

stinking insect), fish, *katutumbi* (a kind of bitter gourd), the bark of

*satakardama* (?), and *indragopa* (the insect cochineal), or the

powder of *pútikita, kshudrárála* (the resin of the plant, *shorea*

*robusta*), and *hemavidári* (?) mixed with the powder of the hoof

and horn of a goat causes blindness.

The smoke caused by burning the leaves of *pútikaranja*

(*guilandina bonducella*), yellow arsenic, realgar, the seeds of

*gunja* (*abrus precatorius*), the chaff of the seeds of red cotton,

*ásphota* (a plant, *careya arborea*), *khácha* (salt ?), and the dung

and urine of a cow causes blindness.

The smoke caused by burning the skin of a snake, the dung of

a cow and a horse, and the head of a blind snake causes blindness.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

586

The smoke caused by burning the powder made of the

mixture of the dung and urine of pigeons, frogs, flesh-eating

animals, elephants, men, and boars, the chaff and powder of barley

mixed with *kásísa* (green sulphate of iron), rice, the seeds of

cotton, kutaja (*nerium antidysentericum*), and *kosátaki* (*lufta*

*pentandra*), cow's urine, the root of *bhándi* (*hydroeotyle asiatica*),

the powder of *nimba* (*nimba meria*), *sigru* (*hyperanthera*

*morunga*), *phanirjaka* (a kind of *tulasi* plant), *kshíbapíluka* (ripe

*coreya arborea*), and bhánga (a common intoxicating drug), the

skin of a snake and fish, and the powder of the nails and tusk of an

elephant, all mixed with the chaff of *madana* and *kodravá*

(*paspalam scrobiculatum*), or with the chaff of the seeds *of*

*hastikarna* (castor oil tree) and *palása* (*butea frondosa*) causes

instantaneous death wherever the smoke is carried off by the wind.

When a man who has kept his eyes secure with the application

of ointment and medicinal water burns, on the occasion of the

commencement of a battle and the assailing of forts, the roots of

*káli (tragia involucrata), kushtha* (*costus*), *nada* (a kind of reed)

and *satávari (asperagus racemosus),* or the powder of (the skin of)

a snake, the tail of a peacock, *krikana* (a kind of partridge), and

*panchakushtha* (?), together with the chaff as previously described

or with wet or dry chaff, the smoke caused thereby destroys the

eyes of all animals.

The ointment prepared by mixing the excretion of *sáriká*

(*maina*), *kapota* (pigeon), *baka* (crane), and *baláka* (a kind of small

crane) with the milk of *kákshiva* (*hyperanthera morunga*), *píluka*

(a species of *careya arborea*) and *snuhi* (*euphorbia*) causes

blindness and poisons water.

The mixture of *yavaka* (a kind of barley), the root of *sála*

(*achyrantes triandria*), the fruit of *madana* (*dattúra* plant?), the

leaves of *játí* (nutmeg?), and the urine of a man mixed with the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

587

powder of the root of *plaksha* (fig tree), and *vidári* (liquorice), as

well as the essence of the decoction of *musta* (a kind of poison),

*udumbara* (glomerous fig tree), and *kodrava* (*paspalam*

*scrobiculatum*) or with the decoction of *hastikarna* (castor oil tree)

and *palása* (*butea frondosa*) is termed the juice of *madana*

(*madanayoga*).

The mixture of the powders of *sringi* (*atis betula*),

*gaumevriksha* (?), *kantakára* (*solanum xanthocarpum*), and

*mayúrapadi* (?), the powder of *gunja* seeds, *lánguli* (*jusseina*

*repens*), *vishamúlika* (?), and *ingudi* (heart-pea), and the powder of

*karavira* (oleander), *akshipiluka* (*careya arborea*), *arka* plant, and

*mrigamáríni* (?) combined with the decoction of *madana* and

*kodrava* or with that of *hastikarna* and *palása* is termed *madana*

mixture (*madanayoga*).

The combination of (the above two) mixtures poisons grass

and water when applied to them.

The smoke caused by burning the mixture of the powders of

*krikana* (a kind of partridge), krikalása (lizard), *grihagaulika* (a

small house-lizard) and *andháhika* (a blind snake) destroys the

eyes and causes madness.

The (smoke caused by burning the) mixture of *krikalása* and

*grihagaulika* causes leprosy.

The smoke caused by burning the same mixture together with

the entrails of *chitrabheka* (a kind of frog of variegated colour),

and *madhu* (*celtis orientalis*?*)* causes gonorrhoea.

The same mixture, wetted with human blood causes

consumption.

The powder of *dúshívisha* (?), *madana* (dattúra plant ?), and

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

588

*kodrava* (*paspalam scrobiculatum*) destroys the tongue.

The mixture of the powder of *mátriváhaka* (?), jalúka (leech),

the tail of a peacock, the eyes of a frog, and *píluká* (*careya*

*arborea*) causes the disease known as *vishúchika.*

The mixture of *panchakushtha* (?), *kaundinyaka* (?),

*rájavriksha* (*cassia fistula*), and *madhupushpa* (*bassia latifolia*)

and *madhu* (honey?) causes fever.

The mixture prepared from the powder of the knot of the

tongue of *bhája* (?), and *nakula* (mongoose) reduced to a paste with

the milk of a she-donkey causes both dumbness and deafness.

The proportion of a dose to bring on the desired deformities in

men and animals in the course of a fortnight or a month is as laid

down before.

Mixtures become very powerful when, in the case of drugs,

they are prepared by the process of decoction; and in the case of

animals, by the process of making powders; or in all cases by the

process of decoction.

Whoever is pierced by the arrow prepared from the grains of

*sálmali* (*bombax heptaphyllum*) and *vidári* (liquorice) reduced to

powder and mixed with the powder of *múlavatsanábha* (a kind of

poison) and smeared over with the blood of *chuchundari*

(musk-rat) bites some ten other persons who in their turn bite

others.

The mixture prepared from the flowers of *bhallátaka*

(*semecarpus anacardium*), *yátudhána* (?), *dhámárgava*

(*achyranthes aspera*), and *bána* (sal tree) mixed with the powder

of *elá* (large cardamom), *kákshi* (red aluminous earth), *guggulu*

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

589

(bdellium), and *háláhala* (a kind of poison) together with the blood

of a goat and a man causes biting madness.

When half a *dharana* of this mixture together with flour and

oil-cakes is thrown into water of a reservoir measuring a hundred

bows in length, it vitiates the whole mass of water; all the fish

swallowing or touching this mixture become poisonous; and

whoever drinks or touches this water will be poisoned.

No sooner does a person condemned to death pull out from

the earth an alligator or iguana (*godhá*) which, with three or five

handfuls of both red and white mustard seeds, is entered into the

earth than he dies at its sight.

When, on the days of the stars of *krittiká* or *bharaní* and

following the method of performing fearful rites, an oblation with a

black cobra emitting froth at the shock of lightning or caught hold

of by means of the sticks of a tree struck by lightning and perfumed

is made into the fire, that fire continues to burn unquenchably.

\* An oblation of honey shall be made into the fire fetched from the

house of a blacksmith; of spirituous liquor into the fire brought

from the house of a vintner; of clarified butter into the fire of a

sacrificer (?);

\* Of a garland into the fire kept by a sacrificer with one wife; of

mustard seeds into the fire kept by an adulterous woman; of curds

into the fire kept during the birth of a child; of rice-grain into the

fire of a sacrificer;

\* Of flesh into the fire kept by a *chandala*; of human flesh into the

fire burning in cremation grounds; an oblation of the serum of the

flesh of a goat and a man shall be made by means of a sacrificial

ladle into the fire which is made of all the above fires;

\* Repeating the *mantras* addressed to the fire, an oblation of the

wooden pieces of *rájavriksha* (*cassia fistula*) into the same fire.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

590

This fire will unquenchably burn deluding the eyes of the enemies.

Salutation to Aditi, salutation to Anumati, salutation to

Sarasvati and salutation to the Sun; oblation to Agni, oblation to

soma, oblation to the earth, and oblation to the atmosphere.

[Thus ends Chapter I, “Means to Injure an Enemy,” in Book XIV,

“Secret Means,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of the hundred

and forty-sixth chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER II. WONDERFUL AND DELUSIVE CONTRIVANCES.

A DOSE of the powder of *sirísha* (*mimosa sirísa*), *udumbara*

(glomerous fig-tree), and *sami* (*acacia suma*) mixed with clarified

butter, renders fasting possible for half a month; the scum prepared

from the mixture of the root of *kaseruka* (a kind of water-creeper),

*utpala* (*costus*), and sugar-cane mixed with *bisa* (water-lily), *dúrva*

(grass), milk, and clarified butter enables a man to fast for a month.

The powder of *másha* (*phraseolus radiatus*), *yava* (barley),

*kuluttha* (horse-gram) and the root of *darbha* (sacrificial grass)

mixed with milk and clarified butter; the milk of *valli* (a kind of

creeper) and clarified butter derived from it and mixed in equal

proportions and combined with the paste prepared from the root of

*sála* (*shorea robusta*) and *prisniparni* (*hedysarum lagopodioides*),

when drunk with milk; or a dose of milk mixed with clarified butter

and spirituous liquor, both prepared from the above substances,

enables one to fast for a month.

The oil prepared from mustard seeds previously kept for

seven nights in the urine of a white goat will, when used

(externally) after keeping the oil inside a large bitter gourd for a

month and a half, alter the colour of both biped and quadruped

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

591

animals.

The oil extracted from white mustard seeds mixed with the

barley-corns contained in the dung of a white donkey, which has

been living for more than seven nights on a diet of butter, milk and

barley, causes alteration in colour.

The oil prepared from mustard seeds which have been

previously kept in the urine and fluid dung of any of the two

animals, a white goat and a white donkey, causes (when applied)

such white colour as that of the fibre of *arka* plant or the down of a

(white) bird.

The mixture of the dung of a white cock and *ajagara*

(boa-constrictor) causes white colour.

The pastry made from white mustard seeds kept for seven

nights in the urine of a white goat mixed with butter-milk, the milk

of *arka* plant, salt, and grains (*dhánya*), causes, when applied for a

fortnight, white colour.

The paste, prepared from white mustard seeds which have

been previously kept within a large bitter gourd and with clarified

butter prepared from the milk of *valli* (a creeper) for half a month,

makes the hair white.

\* A bitter gourd, a stinking insect (*pútikíta*), and a white

house-lizard; when a paste prepared from these is applied to the

hair, the latter becomes as white as a conch-shell.

When any part of the body of a man is rubbed over with the

pastry (*kalka*) prepared from *tinduka* (*glutinosa*) and *arishta*

(soap-berry), together with the dung of a cow, the part of the body

being also smeared over with the juice of *bhallátaka* (*semecarpus*

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

592

*anacardium*), he will catch leprosy in the course of a month.

(The application of the paste prepared from) *gunja* seeds kept

previously for seven nights in the mouth of a white cobra or in the

mouth of a house-lizard brings on leprosy.

External application of the liquid essence of the egg of a

parrot and a cuckoo brings on leprosy.

The pastry or decoction prepared from *priyála* (*chironjia*

*sapida* or *vitis vinifera* ?) is a remedy for leprosy.

Whoever eats the mixture of the powders of the roots of

*kukkuta* (*marsilia dentata*), *kosátaki* (*duffa pentandra*), and

*satávari* (*asparagus racemosus*) for a month will become white.

Whoever bathes in the decoction of *vata* (banyan tree) and

rubs his body with the paste prepared from *sahachara* (yellow

*barleria*) becomes black.

Sulphuret of arsenic and red arsenic mixed with the oil

extracted from *sakuna* (a kind of bird) and *kanka* (a vulture) causes

blackness.

The powder of *khadyota* (fire-fly) mixed with the oil of

mustard seeds emits light at night.

The powder of *khadyota* (fire-fly) and *gandúpada*

(earth-worm) or the powder of ocean animals mixed with the

powder of *bhringa* (*malabathrum*), *kapála* (a pot-herb), and

*khadira* (*mimosa catechu*), and *karnikára* (*pentapetes acerifolia*),

combined with the oil of *sakuna* (a bird) and *kanka* (vulture), is

*tejanachúrna* (ignition powder).

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

593

When the body of a man is rubbed over with the powder of the

charcoal of the bark of *páribhadraka* (*erythrina indica*) mixed with

the serum of the flesh of *mandúka* (a frog), it can be burnt with fire

(without causing hurt).

The body which is painted with the pastry (*kalka*) prepared

from the bark of *páribhadraka* (*erythrina indica*) and sesamum

seeds burns with fire.

The ball prepared from the powder of the charcoal of the bark

of *pílu* (*careya arborea*) can be held in hand and burnt with fire.

When the body of a man is smeared over with the serum of the

flesh of a frog, it burns with fire (with no hurt).

When the body of a man is smeared over with the above

serum as well as with the oil extracted from the fruits of *kusa* (*ficus*

*religiosa*), and ámra (mango tree), and when the powder prepared

from an ocean frog (*samdura mandúki*), *phenaka* (sea-foam), and

*sarjarasa* (the juice of *vatica robusta*) is sprinkled over the body, it

burns with fire (without being hurt).

When the body of a man is smeared over with sesamum oil

mixed with equal quantities of the serum of the flesh of a frog,

crab, and other animals, it can burn with fire (without hurt).

The body which is smeared over with the serum of the flesh of

a frog burns with fire.

The body of a man, which is rubbed over with the powder of

the root of bamboo (*venu*) and *saivála* (aquatic plant), and is

smeared over with the serum of the flesh of a frog, burns with fire.

Whoever has anointed his legs with the oil extracted from the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

594

paste prepared from the roots of *páribhadraka* (*erythrina indica*),

*pratibala* (?), *vanjula* (a kind of *ratan* or tree), *vajra* (*andropogon*

*muricatum* or *euphorbia*), and *kadali* (banana), mixed with the

serum of the flesh of a frog, can walk over fire (without hurt).

\* Oil should be extracted from the paste prepared from the roots of

*pratibala*, *vanjula* and *páribhadraka*, all growing near water, the

paste being mixed with the serum of the flesh of a frog.

\* Having anointed one's legs with this oil, one can walk over a

white-hot mass of fire as though on a bed of roses.

When birds such as a *hamsa* (goose), *krauncha* (heron),

*mayúra* (peacock) and other large swimming birds are let to fly at

night with a burning reed attached to their tail it presents the

appearance of a fire-brand falling from the sky (*ulká*).

Ashes caused by lightning quench the fire.

When, in a fireplace, kidney beans (*másha*) wetted with the

menstrual fluid of a woman, as well as the roots of *vajra*

(*andropogon muricatum*) and *kadali* (banana), wetted with the

serum of the flesh of a frog are kept, no grains can be cooked there.

Cleansing the fire place is its remedy.

By keeping in the mouth a ball-like piece of *pilu* (*careya*

*arberea*) or a knot of the root of linseed tree (*suvarchala*) with fire

inserted within the mass of the ball and wound round with threads

and cotton (*pichu*), volumes of smoke and fire can be breathed out.

When the oil extracted from the fruits of *kusa* (*ficus religiosa*)

and *ámra* (mango) is poured over the fire, it burns even in the

storm.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

595

Sea-foam wetted with oil and ignited keeps burning when

floating on water.

The fire generated by churning the bone of a monkey by

means of a bamboo stick of white and black colour (*kalmáshavenu*)

burns in water instead of being quenched.

There will burn no other fire where the fire generated by

churning, by means of a bamboo stick of white and black colour,

the left side rib-bone of a man killed by a weapon or put to the

gallows; or the fire generated by churning the bone of a man or

woman by means of the bone of another man is circumambulated

thrice from right to left.

\* When the paste prepared from the animals such as

*chuchundari* (musk-rat), *khanjaríta* (?) and *khárakíta* (?), with the

urine of a horse is applied to the chains with which the legs of a

man are bound, they will be broken to pieces.

The sun-stone (*ayaskánta*) or any other stone (will break to

pieces) when wetted with the serum of the flesh of the animals

*kulinda* (?), *dardura* (?), and *khárakíta* (?).

The paste prepared from the powder of the rib-bone of *náraka*

(?), a donkey, *kanka* (a kind of vulture), and *bhása* (a bird), mixed

with the juice of water-lily, is applied to the legs of bipeds and

quadrupeds (while making a journey).

When a man makes a journey, wearing the shoes made of the

skin of a camel, smeared over with the serum of the flesh of an owl

and a vulture and covered over with the leaves of the banyan tree,

he can walk fifty *yojanas* without any fatigue.

(When the shoes are smeared over with) the pith, marrow or

sperm of the birds, *syena*, *kanka, káka, gridhra, hamsá, krauncha*,

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

596

and *vichiralla*, (the traveller wearing them) can walk a hundred

*yojanas* (without any fatigue).

The fat or serum derived from roasting a pregnant camel

together with *saptaparna* (*lechites scholaris*) or from roasting dead

children in cremation grounds, is applied to render a journey of a

hundred *yojanas* easy.

\* Terror should be caused to the enemy by exhibiting these

and other wonderful and delusive performances; while anger

causing terror is common to all, terrification by such wonders is

held as a means to consolidate peace.

[Thus ends Chapter II, "Wonderful and Delusive Contrivances," in

Book XIV, "Secret Means,” of the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya. End of

the hundred and forty-seventh chapter from the beginning.]

## CHAPTER III. THE APPLICATION OF MEDICINES AND MANTRAS.

HAVING pulled out both the right and the left eye-balls of a

cat, camel, wolf, boar, porcupine, *váguli* (?), *naptri* (?), crow and

owl, or of any one, two, or three, or many of such animals as roam

at nights, one should reduce them to two kinds of powder.

Whoever anoints his own right eye with the powder of the left eye

and his left eye with the powder of the right eye-ball can clearly see

things even in pitch dark at night.

\* One is the eye of a boar; another is that of a *khadyota*

(fire-fly), or a crow, or a mina bird. Having anointed one's own

eyes with the above, one can clearly see things at night.

Having fasted for three nights, one should, on the day of the

star, *Pushya*, catch hold of the skull of a man who has been killed

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

597

with a weapon or put to the gallows. Having filled the skull with

soil and barley seeds, one should irrigate them with the milk of

goats and sheep. Putting on the garland formed of the sprouts of the

above barley crop, one can walk invisible to others.

Having fasted for three nights and having afterwards pulled

out on the day of the star of *Pushya* both the right and the left eyes

of a dog, a cat, an owl, and a *váguli* (?), one should reduce them to

two kinds of powder. Then having anointed one's own eyes with

this ointment as usual, one can walk invisible to others.

Having fasted for three nights, one should, on the day of the

star of *Pushya*, prepare a round-headed pin (*saláká*) from the

branch of *purushagháti* (*punnága* tree). Then having filled with

ointment (*anjana*) the skull of any of the animals which roam at

nights, and having inserted that skull in the organ of procreation of

a dead woman, one should burn it. Having taken it out on the day of

the star of *Pushya* and having anointed one's own eyes with that

ointment, one can walk invisible to others.

Wherever one may happen to see the corpse burnt or just

being burnt of a *Bráhman* who kept sacrificial fire (while alive),

there one should fast for three nights; and having on the day of the

star of *Pushya* formed a sack from the garment of the corpse of a

man who has died from natural causes, and having filled the sack

with the ashes of the *Bráhman's* corpse, one may put on the sack on

one's back, and walk invisible to others.

The slough of a snake filled with the powder of the bones and

marrow or fat of the cow sacrificed during the funeral rites of a

*Bráhman*, can, when put on the back of cattle, render them

invisible.

The slough of *prachaláka* (a bird?) filled with the ashes of the

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

598

corpse of a man dead from snake-bite, can render beasts (*mriga*)

invisible.

The slough of a snake (*ahi*) filled with the powder of the bone

of the knee-joint mixed with that of the tail and dung (*purísha*) of

an owl and a *váguli* (?), can render birds invisible.

Such are the eight kinds of the contrivances causing

invisibility.

\* I bow to *Bali*, son of *Virochana*; to *Sambara* acquainted with a

hundred kinds of magic; to *Bhandírapáka*, *Naraka*, *Nikumbha*, and

*Kumbha*.

\* I bow to *Devala* and *Nárada*; I bow to *Sávarnigálava*; with the

permission of these I cause deep slumber to thee.

\* Just as the snakes, known as *ajagara* (boa-constrictor) fall into

deep slumber, so may the rogues of the army who are very anxious

to keep watch over the village;

\* With their thousands of dogs (*bhandaka*) and hundreds of ruddy

geese and donkeys, fall into deep slumber; I shall enter this house,

and may the dogs be quiet.

\* Having bowed to Manu, and having tethered the roguish dogs

(*sunakaphelaka*), and having also bowed to those gods who are in

heaven, and to *Bráhmans* among mankind;

\* To those who are well versed in their Vedic studies, those who

have attained to *Kailása* (a mountain of god *Siva*) by observing

penance, and to all prophets, I do cause deep slumber to thee.

The fan (*chamari*) comes out; may all combinations retire.

Oblation to *Manu*, O *Aliti* and *Paliti*.

The application of the above *mantra* is as follows:--

Having fasted for three nights, one should, on the fourteenth

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

599

day of the dark half of the month, the day being assigned to the star

of *Pushya*, purchase from a low-caste woman (*svapáki*)

*vilikhávalekhana* (finger nails?). Having kept them in a basket

(*kandolika*), one should bury them apart in cremation grounds.

Having unearthed them on the next fourteenth day, one should

reduce them to a paste with *kumári* (aloe ?) and prepare small pills

out of the paste. Wherever one of the pills is thrown, chanting the

above *mantra*, there the whole animal life falls into deep slumber.

Following the same procedure, one should separately bury in

cremation grounds three white and three black dart-like hairs

(*salyaka*) of a porcupine. When, having on the next fourteenth day

taken them out, one throws them together with the ashes of a burnt

corpse, chanting the above *mantra*, the whole animal life in that

place falls into deep slumber.

\* I bow to the goddess *Suvarnapushpi* and to *Brahmáni*, to the god

*Bráhma*, and to *Kusadhvaja*; I bow to all serpents and goddesses; I

bow to all ascetics.

\* May all *Bráhmans* and *Kshattriyas* come under my power; may

all *Vaisyas* and, *Súdras* be at my beck and call,

Oblation to thee, O, *Amile*, *Kimile*, *Vayujáre*, *Prayoge*,

*Phake*, *Kavayusve*, *Vihále*, and *Dantakatake*, oblation to thee.

\* May the dogs which are anxiously keeping watch over the village

fall into deep and happy slumber; these three white dart-like hairs

of the porcupine are the creation of *Bráhma*.

\* All prophets (*siddha*) have fallen into deep slumber. I do cause

sleep to the whole village as far as its boundary till the sun rises.

Oblation!

The application of the above *mantra* is as follows:--

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

600

When a man, having fasted for seven nights and secured three

white dart-like hairs of a porcupine, makes on the fourteenth day of

the dark half of the month oblations into the fire with 108 pieces of

the sacrificial fire-wood of *khadira* (*mimosa catechu*) and other

trees together with honey and clarified butter chanting the above

*mantra*, and when, chanting the same *mantra*, he buries one of the

hairs at the entrance of either a village or a house within it, he

causes the whole animal life therein to fall into deep slumber.

\* I bow to *Bali*, the son of *Vairochana*, to *S'atamáya*, *S'ambara*,

*Nikumbha*, *Naraka*, *Kumbha*, *Tantukachchha*, the great demon;

\* To *Armálava*, *Pramíla*, *Mandolúka*, *Ghatodbala*, to *Krishna* with

his followers, and to the famous woman, *Paulomi*.

\* Chanting the sacred mantras, I do take the pith or the bone of the

corpse (*savasárika*) productive of my desired ends--may *S'alaka*

demons be victorious; salutation to them; oblation!--May the dogs

which are anxiously keeping watch over the village fall into deep

and happy slumber.

\* May all prophets (*siddhártháh*) fall into happy sleep about the

object which we are seeking from sunset to sunrise and till the

attainment of my desired end. Oblation!

The application of the above *mantra* is as follows:--

Having fasted for four nights and having on the fourteenth

day of the dark half of the month performed animal sacrifice (*bali*)

in cremation grounds, one should, repeating the above mantra,

collect the pith of a corpse (*savasárika*) and keep it in a basket

made of leaves (*pattrapauttaliká*). When this basket, being pierced

in the centre by a dart-like hair of a porcupine, is buried, chanting

the above *mantra*, the whole animal life therein falls into deep

slumber.

\* I take refuge with the god of fire and with all the goddesses

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

601

in the ten quarters; may all obstructions vanish and may all things

come under my power. Oblation.

The application of the above *mantra* is as follows:--

Having fasted for three nights and having on the day of the

star of *Pushya* prepared twenty-one pieces of sugar-candy, one

should make oblation into the fire with honey and clarified butter;

and having worshipped the pieces of sugar-candy with scents and

garlands of flowers, one should bury them. When, having on the

next day of the star of *Pushya* unearthed the pieces of sugar-candy,

and chanting the above *mantra*, one strikes the door-panel of a

house with one piece and throws four pieces in the interior, the

door will open itself.

Having fasted for four nights, one should on the fourteenth

day of the dark half of the month get a figure of a bull prepared

from the bone of a man, and worship it, repeating the above

*mantra*. Then a cart drawn by two bulls will be brought before the

worshipper who can (mount it and) drive in the sky and tell all that

is connected with the sun and other planets of the sky.

O, *Chandáli Kumbhi*, *Tumba Katuka*, and *Sárigha*, thou art

possessed of the *bhaga* of a woman, oblation to thee.

When this *mantra* is repeated, the door will open and the

inmates fall into sleep.

Having fasted for three nights, one should on the day of the

star of *Pushya* fill with soil the skull of a man killed with weapons

or put to the gallows, and, planting in it *valli* (*vallari* ?) plants,

should irrigate them with water. Having taken up the grown-up

plants on the next day of the star of *Pushya* (*i.e.*, after 27 days), one

should manufacture a rope from them. When this rope is cut into

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

602

two pieces before a drawn bow or any other shooting machine, the

string of those machines will be suddenly cut into two pieces.

When the slough of a water-snake (*udakáhi*) is filled with the

breathed-out dirt (*uchchhvásamrittika?*) of a man or woman (and is

held before the face and nose of any person), it causes those organs

to swell.

When the sack-like skin of the abdomen of a dog or a boar is

filled with the breathed-out dirt (*uchchhvásamrittika*) of a man or

woman and is bound (to the body of a man) with the ligaments of a

monkey, it causes the man's body to grow in width and length

(*ánáha*),

When the figure of an enemy carved out of *rájavriksha*

(*cassia fistula*) is besmeared with the bile of a brown cow killed

with a weapon on the fourteenth day of the dark half of the month,

it causes blindness (to the enemy).

Having fasted for four nights and offered animal sacrifice

(*bali*) on the fourteenth day of the dark half of the month, one

should get a few bolt-like pieces prepared from the bone of a man

put to the gallows. When one of these pieces is put in the feces or

urine (of an enemy), it causes (his) body to grow in size (*ánáha*);

and when the same piece is buried under the feet or seat (of an

enemy), it causes death by consumption; and when it is buried in

the shop, fields, or the house (of an enemy), it causes him loss of

livelihood.

The same process of smearing and burying holds good with

the bolt-like pieces (*kílaka*) prepared from *vidyuddanda* tree.

\* When the nail of the little finger (*punarnavam aváchínam* ?)

*nimba* (*nimba melia*), *káma* (*bdellium*), *madhu* (*celtis orientalis*),

the hair of a monkey, and the bone of a man, all wound round with

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

603

the garment of a dead man.

\* Is buried in the house of, or is trodden down by, a man, that man

with his wife, children and wealth will not survive three fortnights.

\* When the nail of the little finger, *nimba* (*nimba melia*), *káma*

(*bdellium*), *madhu* (*celtis orientalis*), and the bone of a man dead

from natural causes are buried under the feet of,

\* Or near the house of, a man or in the vicinity of the camp of an

army, of a village, or of a city, that man (or the body of men) with

wife, children, and wealth will not survive three fortnights.

\* When the hair of a sheep and a monkey, of a cat and mongoose,

of *Bráhmans*, of low-caste men (*svapáka*), and of a crow and an

owl is collected,

\* And is made into a paste with fæces (*vishtávakshunna*), its

application brings on instantaneous death. When a flower garland

of a dead body, the ferment derived from burning corpse, the hair

of a mangoose,

\* And the skin of scorpion, a bee, and a snake are buried under the

feet of a man, that man will lose all human appearance so long as

they are not removed.

Having fasted for three nights and having on the day of the

star of *Pushya* planted *gunja* seeds in the skull, filled with soil, of a

man killed with weapons or put to the gallows, one should irrigate

it with water. On the new or full moon day with the star of *Pushya*,

one should take out the plants when grown, and prepare out of

them circular pedestals (*mandaliká*). When vessels containing food

and water are placed on these pedestals, the food stuffs will never

decrease in quantity.

When a grand procession is being celebrated at night, one

should cut off the nipples of the udder of a dead cow and burn them

in a torch-light flame. A fresh vessel should be plastered in the

interior with the paste prepared from these burnt nipples, mixed

with the urine of a bull. When this vessel, taken round the village in

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

604

circumambulation from right to left, is placed below, the whole

quantity of the butter produced by all the cows (of the village) will

collect itself in the vessel.

On the fourteenth day of the dark half of the month combined

with the star of *Pushya*, one should thrust into the organ of

procreation of a dog or heat an iron seal (*kataláyasam mudrikam*)

and take it up when it falls down of itself. When, with this seal in

hand, a collection of fruits is called out, it will come of itself

(before the magician).

\* By the power of mantras, drugs, and other magical

performances, one should protect one's own people and hurt those

of the enemy.

[Thus ends Chapter III, “The Application of Medicine and

Mantras,” in Book XIV, “Secret Means,” of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and forty-eighth chapter from the

beginning.]

## CHAPTER IV. REMEDIES AGAINST THE INJURIES OF ONE'S OWN ARMY.

WITH regard to remedies against poisons and poisonous

compounds applied by an enemy against one's own army or

people:--

When the things that are meant for the king's use, inclusive of

the limbs of women, as well as the things of the army are washed in

the tepid water prepared from the decoction of *sleshmátaki*

(*sebesten* or *cordia myk*), *kapi* (*emblica officinalis*), *madanti* (?),

*danta* (ivory), satha (Citron tree), *gojigi* (*gojihva* ?--*elephantophus*

*scaber*), *visha* (*aconitum ferox*), *pátali* (*bignonia suave olens*),

*bala* (*lida cardifolia et rombifolia*), *syonáka* (*bignonia indica*),

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

605

*punarnava* (?), *sveta* (*andropogon aciculatum*), and *tagara*

(*tabernæmontana coronaria*), mixed with *chandana* (*sandal*) and

the blood of *salávriki* (jackal), it removes the bad effects of poison.

The mixture prepared from the biles of *prishata* (red-spotted

deer), *nakula* (mongoose), *nílakantha* (peacock), and *godhá*

(alligator), with charcoal powder (*mashíráji*), combined with the

sprouts (*agra*) of *sinduvára* (*vitex trifolia*), *tagara*

(*tabernæmontana coronaria, varuna*)(*teriandium indicum*),

*tandulíyaka* (*amaranthus polygamus*), and *sataparva* (*convolvulus*

*repens*) together with *pindítaka* (*vangueria spinosa*) removes the

effects of the mixture of *madana*.

Among the decoctions of the roots of *srigála* (*bignonia*

*indica*), *vinna* (?), *madana*, *sinduvára* (*vitex trifolia*), *tagara*

(*tabernæmontana coronaria*), and *valli*, (a creeper ?), any one or

all mixed with milk removes, when drunk, the effects of the

mixture of *madana*.

The stinking oil extracted from *kaidarya* (*vangueria spinosa*)

removes madness.

The mixture prepared from *priyangu* (panic seed) and

*naktamála* (*galedupa arborea*) removes, when applied through the

nose, leprosy.

The mixture prepared from *kushtha* (*costus*) and *lodhra*

(*symplocus*) removes consumption.

The mixture prepared from *katuphala* (*glelina arborea*),

*dravanti* (*anthericum tuberosum*), and *vilanga* (a kind of seed)

removes, when applied through the nose, headache and other

diseases of the head.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

606

The application of the mixture prepared from *priyangu* (panic

seed), *manjishtha (rubia manjit*), *tagara* (*tabernæmontana*

*coronaria*), *lákshárasa* (the juice or essence of lac) *madhuka* (?),

*haridrá* (turmeric), and kshaudra (honey) to persons who have

fallen senseless by being beaten by a rope, by falling into water, or

by eating poison, or by being whipped, or by falling, resuscitates

them.

The proportion of a dose is as much as an *aksha* (?) to men;

twice as much to cows and horses; and four times as much to

elephants and camels.

A round ball (*mani*) prepared from the above mixture and

containing gold (*rukma*) in its centre, removes the the effects due to

any kind of poison.

A round ball (*mani*) prepared from the wood of *asvattha* (holy

fig tree) growing wound round with the plants such as *jívantí* (a

medicinal plant), *sveta* (*andropogan aciculatum*) the flower of

*mushkaka* (a species of tree), and *vanadáka* (*epidendrum*

*tesseloides*), removes the effects due to any kind of poison.

\* The sound of trumpets painted with the above mixture destroys

poison; whoever looks at a flag or banner besmeared with the

above mixture will get rid of poison.

\* Having applied these remedies to secure the safety of himself and

his army, a king should make use of poisonous smokes and other

mixtures to vitiate water against his enemy.

[Thus ends Chapter IV, "Remedies against the Injuries of One's

Own Army," in Book XIV, "Secret Means," of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya. End of the hundred and forty-ninth chapter from the

beginning. With this, ends the fourteenth Book “Secret Means,” of

the *Arthasástra* of Kautilya.]

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

607

# Book XV, "The Plan of a Treatise"

## CHAPTER I. PARAGRAPHICAL DIVISIONS OF THIS TREATISE**.**

THE subsistence of mankind is termed *artha*, wealth; the

earth which contains mankind is also termed *artha*, wealth; that

science which treats of the means of acquiring and maintaining the

earth is the *Arthasástra*, Science of Polity.

It contains thirty-two paragraphical divisions; the book

(*adhikarana*), contents (*vidhána*), suggestion of similar facts

(*yoga*), the meaning of a word (*padártha*), the purport of reason

(*hetvartha*), mention of a fact in brief (*uddesa*), mention of a fact in

detail (*nirdesa*), guidance (*upadesa*), quotation, (*apadesa*),

application (*atidesa*) the place of reference (*pradesa*), simile

(*upamána*), implication (*arthápatti*), doubt (*samsaya*), reference to

similar procedure (*presanga*), contrariety (*viparyaya*), ellipsis

(*vakyasesha*), acceptance (*anumata*), explanation (*vyákhayána*),

derivation (*nirvachana*), illustration (*nidarsana*), exception

(*apavarga*), the author‟s own technical terms (*svasanjá*), *prima*

*facie* view (*púrva paksha*), rejoinder (*uttrapaksha*), conclusion

(*ekánta*), reference to a subsequent portion (*anágatávekshana*),

reference to a previous portion (*atikrantávekshana*), command

(*niyoga*), alternative (*vikalpa*), compounding together

(*samuchchaya*), and determinable fact (*úhya*).

That portion of a work in which a subject or topic is treated of

is a book, as for example: “This Arthasástra or Science of Polity

has been made as a compendium of all those Arthasástras which, as

a guidance to kings in acquiring and maintaining the earth, have

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

608

been written by ancient teachers.”

A brief description of the matter contained in a book is its

contents, as: "the end of learning; association with the aged;

control of the organs of sense; the creation of ministers, and the

like."

Pointing out similar facts by the use of such words as „These

and the like,‟ is suggestion of similar facts; for example: "The

world consisting of the four castes and the four religious divisions

and the like."

The sense which a word has to convey is its meaning; for

example, with regard to the words *múlahara*: "Whoever squanders

the wealth acquired for him by his father and grandfather is a

*múlahara*, prodigal son."

What is meant to prove an assertion is the purport of reason;

for example: "For charity and enjoyment of life depend upon

wealth."

Saying in one word is mentioning a fact in brief; for example:

"It is the control of the organs of sense on which success in learning

and discipline depend."

Explanation in detached words is the mentioning of a fact in

detail; for example: "Absence of discrepancy in the perception of

sound, touch, colour, flavour, and scent by means of the ear, the

skin, the eyes, the tongue, and the nose, is what is meant by

restraint of the organs of sense."

Such statement as "Thus one should live," is guidance; for

example: "Not violating the laws of righteousness and economy, he

should live."

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

609

Such statement, as „he says thus,‟ is a quotation; for example:

"The school of Manu say that a king should make his assembly of

ministers consist of twelve ministers; the school of *Brihaspati* say

that it should consist of sixteen ministers; the school of *Usans* say it

should contain twenty members; but *Kautilya* holds that it should

contain as many ministers as the need of the kingdom requires.”

When a rule dwelt upon in connection with a question is said

to apply to another question also, it is termed application; for

example: "What is said of a debt not repaid holds good with failure

to make good a promised gift."

Establishing a fact by what is to be treated of later on is „place

of reference;‟ for example: "By making use of such strategic means

as conciliation, bribery, dissension, and coercion, as we shall

explain in connection with calamities."

Proving an unseen thing or course of circumstances by what

has been seen is simile; for example: "Like a father his son, he

should protect those of his subjects who have passed the period of

the remission of taxes."

What naturally follows from a statement of facts, though not

spoken of in plain terms, is implication; for example, "Whoever

has full experience of the affairs of this world should, through the

medium of the courtiers and other friends, win the favour of a king

who is of good character and worthy sovereign. It follows from this

that no one should seek the favour of a king through the medium of

the king's enemies."

When the statement of a reason is equally applicable to two

cases of circumstances, it is termed doubt; for example: "Which of

the two should a conqueror march against: one whose subjects are

impoverished and greedy, or one whose subjects are oppressed?"

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

610

When the nature of procedure to be specified in connection

with a thing is said to be equal to what has already been specified in

connection with another, it is termed reference to similar

procedure; for example: "On the lands allotted to him for the

purpose of carrying on agricultural operations, he should do as

before."

The inference of a reverse statement from a positive

statement is termed contrariety; for example: "The reverse will be

the appearance of a king who is not pleased with the messenger."

That portion of a sentence which is omitted, though necessary

to convey a complete sense, is ellipsis; for example: "With his

feathers plucked off, he will lose his power to move." Here „like a

bird‟ is omitted.

When the opinion of another person is stated but not refuted,

it is acceptance of that opinion; for example: “Wings, front, and

reserve, is the form of an array of the army according to the school

of *Usanas*.”

Description in detail is explanation; for example: "Especially

amongst assemblies and confederacies of kings possessing the

characteristics of assemblies, quarrel is due to gambling ; and

destruction of persons due to the quarrel. Hence, among evil

propensities, gambling is the worst evil, since it renders the king

powerless for activity."

Stating the derivative sense of a word, is derivation; for

example: "That which throws off (*vyasyati*) a king from his

prosperous career is propensity (*vyasana*).

The mentioning of a fact to illustrate a statement, is

illustration; for example: "In war with a superior, the inferior will

be reduced to the same condition as that of a foot-soldier fighting

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

611

with an elephant."

Removal of an undesired implication from a statement is

exception; for example: "A king may allow his enemy's army to be

present close to his territory, unless he suspects of the existence of

any internal trouble."

Words which are not used by others in the special sense in

which they are used by the author are his own technical terms; for

example: "He who is close to the conqueror's territory is the first

member; next to him comes the second member; and next to the

second comes the third."

The citation of another's opinion to be refuted, is *prima facie*

view; for example: "Of the two evils, the distress of the king and

that of his minister, the latter is worse."

Settled opinion is rejoinder; for example: "The distress of the

king is worse, since everything depends upon him; for the king is

the central pivot, as it were."

That which is universal in its application is conclusion or an

established fact: for example: "A king should ever be ready for

manly effort."

Drawing attention to a later chapter is reference to a

subsequent portion; for example: "We shall explain balance and

weights in the chapter, „The Superintendent of Weights and

Measures‟."

The statement that it has been already spoken of is reference

to a previous portion: for example, "The qualifications of a

minister have already been described."

„Thus and not otherwise‟ is command; for example: "Hence

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

612

he should be taught the laws of righteousness and wealth, but not

unrighteousness and non-wealth."

„This or that‟ is alternative; for example: "or daughters born

of approved marriage (*dharmaviváha*)."

„Both with this and that‟ is compounding together; for

example: "Whoever is begotten by a man on his wife is agnatic

both to the father and the father's relatives."

That which is to be determined after consideration is

determinable fact; for example: "Experts shall determine the

validity or invalidity of gifts so that neither the giver nor the

receiver is likely to be hurt thereby."

\* Thus this *Sástra*, conforming to these paragraphic divisions is

composed as a guide to acquire and secure this and the other world.

\* In the light of this *Sástra* one cannot only set on foot righteous,

economical, and aesthetical acts and maintain them, but also put

down unrighteous, uneconomical and displeasing acts.

\* This *Sástra* has been made by him who from intolerance

(of misrule) quickly rescued the scriptures and the science of

weapons and the earth which had passed to the *Nanda* king.

[Thus ends the Chapter I, „Paragraphic divisions of the

Treatise‟ in the fifteenth Book, „Plan of Treatise.‟ This is the one

hundred and fiftieth chapter from the first chapter of the entire

work. The fifteenth book, „Plan of Treatise, of the *Arthasástra* of

Kautilya is thus brought to a close.]

\* Having seen discrepancies in many ways on the part of the

writers of commentaries on the *Sástras*, Vishnu Gupta himself has

made (this) *Sútra* and commentary.

From: Kautilya. *Arthashastra*. Translated by R. Shamasastry.

Bangalore: Government Press, 1915, 515-520.

**Kautilya's Arthashastra**

613